



Bodleian Libraries

UNIVERSITY OF OXFORD

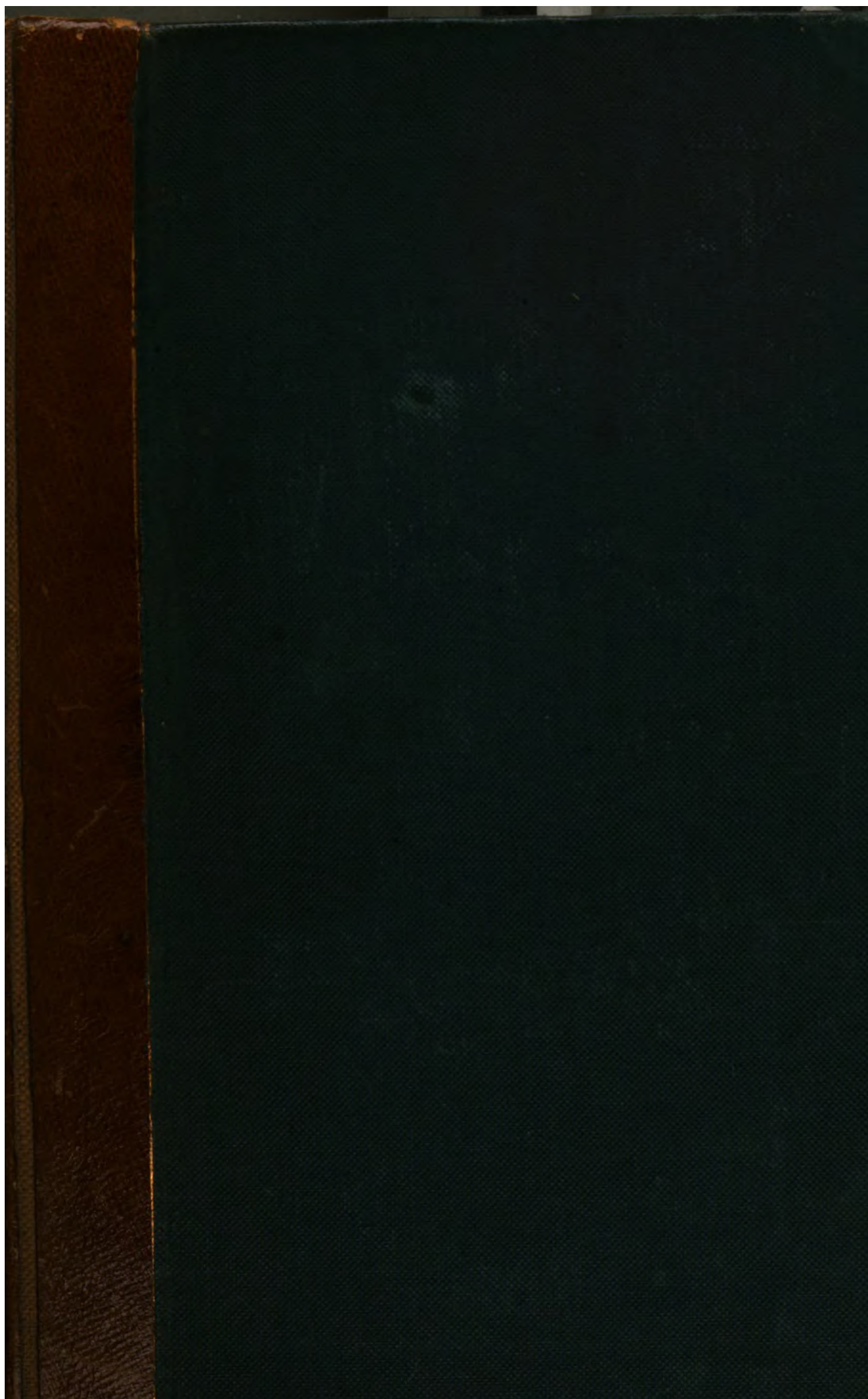
This book is part of the collection held by the Bodleian Libraries and scanned by Google, Inc. for the Google Books Library Project.

For more information see:

<http://www.bodleian.ox.ac.uk/dbooks>



This work is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 2.0 UK: England & Wales (CC BY-NC-SA 2.0) licence.



]

all sw-
416

← 100
/ 100

REA-2)





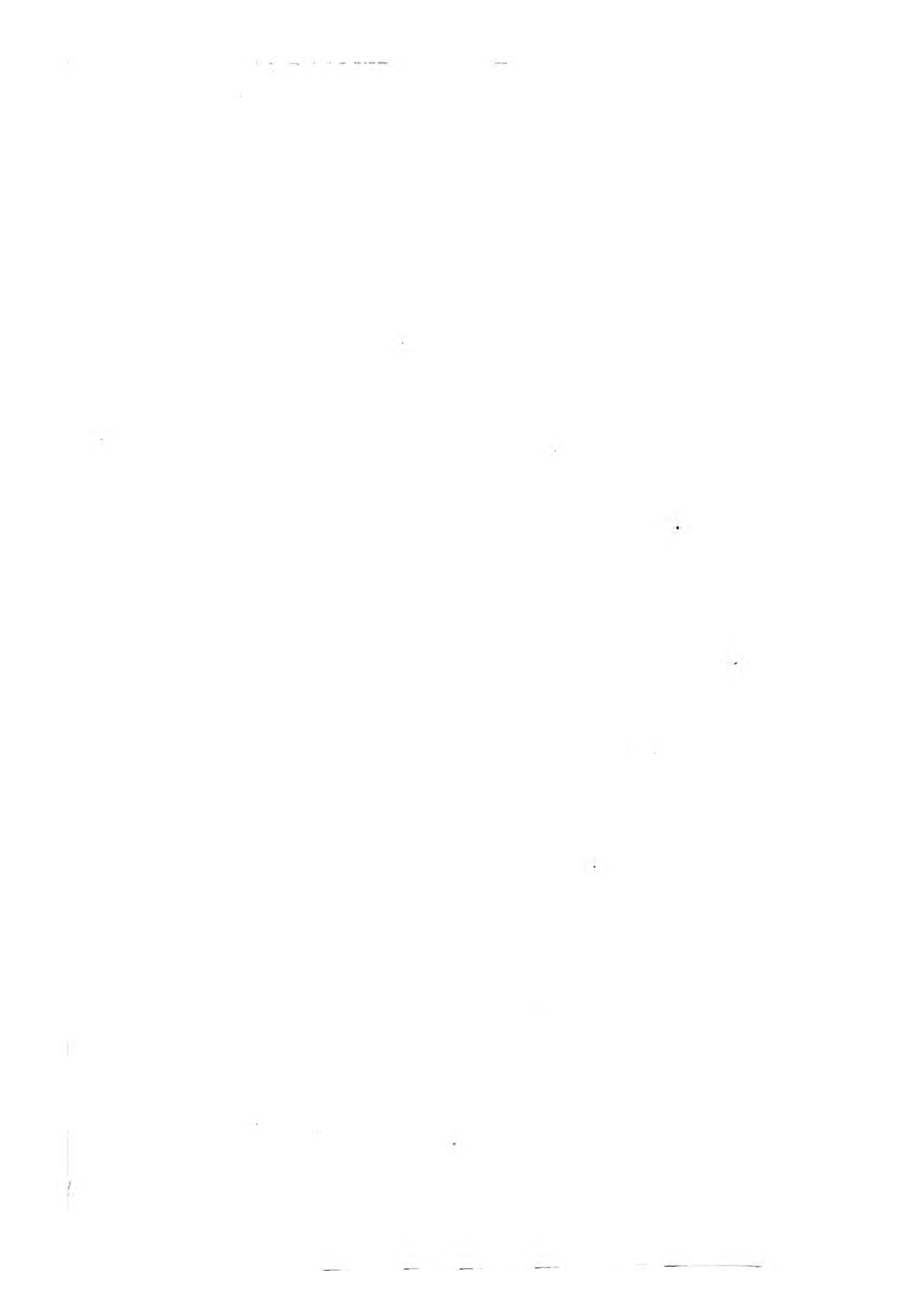
RERUM BRITANNICARUM MEDIÆ EVI
SCRIPTORES,

OR

CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN
AND IRELAND

DURING

THE MIDDLE AGES.



THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS
OF
GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND
DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF HER MAJESTY'S TREASURY, UNDER
THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

On the 26th of January 1857, the Master of the Rolls submitted to the Treasury a proposal for the publication of materials for the History of this Country from the Invasion of the Romans to the Reign of Henry VIII.

The Master of the Rolls suggested that these materials should be selected for publication under competent editors without reference to periodical or chronological arrangement, without mutilation or abridgment, preference being given, in the first instance, to such materials as were most scarce and valuable.

He proposed that each chronicle or historical document to be edited should be treated in the same way as if the editor were engaged on an *Editio Princeps*; and for this purpose the most correct text should be formed from an accurate collation of the best MSS.

To render the work more generally useful, the Master of the Rolls suggested that the editor should give an account of the MSS. employed by him, of their age and their peculiarities; that he should add to the work a brief account of the life and times of the author, and any remarks necessary to explain the chronology; but no other note or comment was to be allowed, except what might be necessary to establish the correctness of the text.

The works to be published in octavo, separately, as they were finished; the whole responsibility of the task resting upon the editors, who were to be chosen by the Master of the Rolls with the sanction of the Treasury.

The Lords of Her Majesty's Treasury, after a careful consideration of the subject, expressed their opinion in a Treasury Minute, dated February 9, 1857, that the plan recommended by the Master of the Rolls "was well calculated for the accomplishment of this important national object, in an effectual and satisfactory manner, within a reasonable time, and provided proper attention be paid to economy, in making the detailed arrangements, without unnecessary expense."

They expressed their approbation of the proposal that each Chronicle and historical document should be edited in such a manner as to represent with all possible correctness the text of each writer, derived from a collation of the best MSS., and that no notes should be added, except such as were illustrative of the various readings. They suggested, however, that the preface to each work should contain, in addition to the particulars proposed by the Master of the Rolls, a biographical account of the author, so far as authentic materials existed for that purpose, and an estimate of his historical credibility and value.

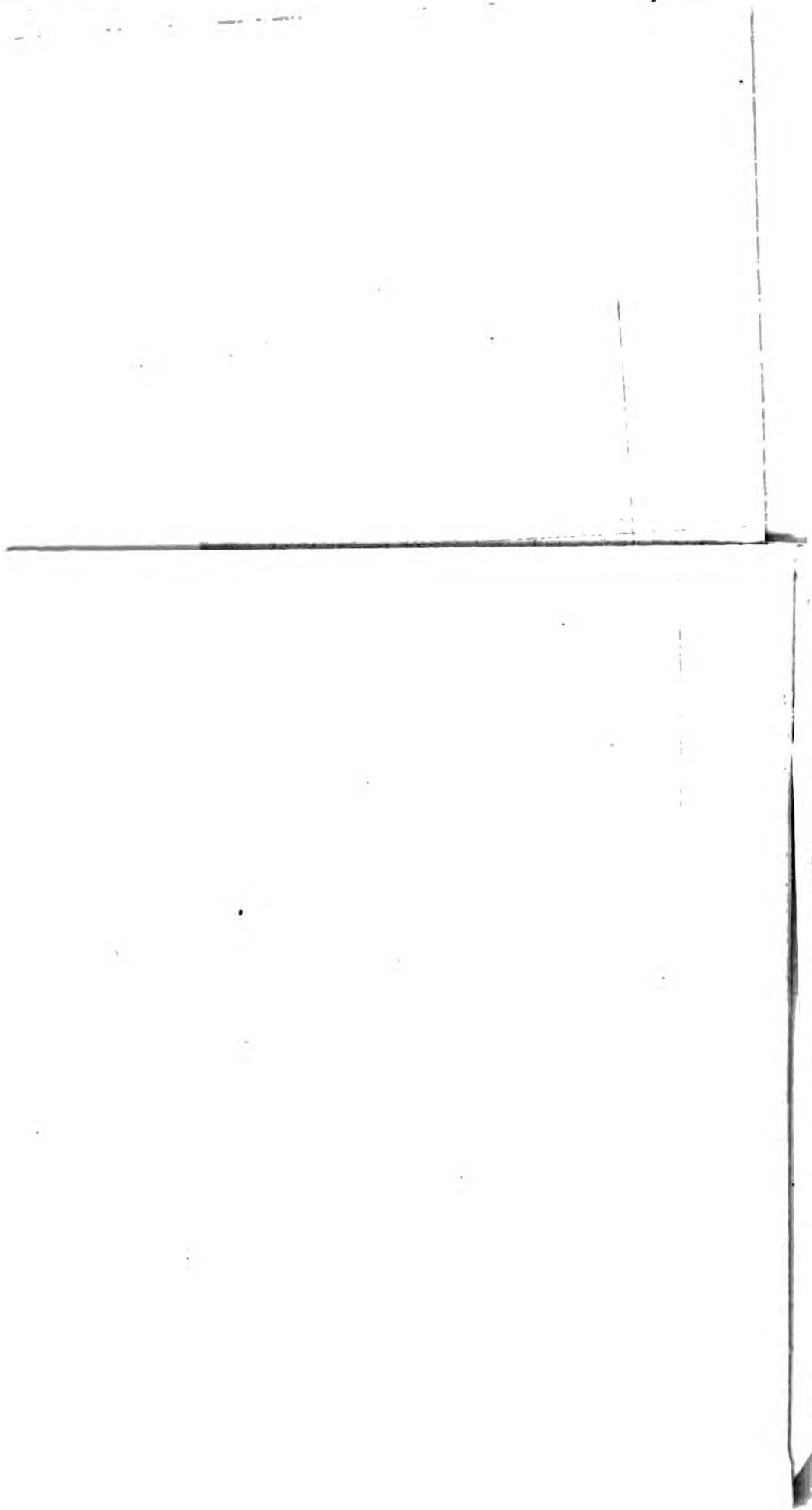
Rolls House,
December 1857.



P

Handwritten scribble or mark, possibly a signature or initials, located in the lower-left quadrant of the page.





POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN
MONACHI CESTRENSIS;

TOGETHER WITH THE

ENGLISH TRANSLATIONS OF JOHN TREVISA
AND OF AN UNKNOWN WRITER OF
THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

EDITED

BY

CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., F.L.S., ETC.,

DISNEY PROFESSOR OF ARCHAEOLOGY IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE; RECTOR
OF COCKFIELD, SUFFOLK; LATE FELLOW OF ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE.

VOL. II.

PUBLISHED BY THE AUTHORITY OF THE LORDS COMMISSIONERS OF HER MAJESTY'S
TREASURY, UNDER THE DIRECTION OF THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS.

LONDON:
LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.

1869.

R. S. +

Printed by
EYRE and SPOTTISWOODE, Her Majesty's Printers.
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

CONTENTS.

	Page
INTRODUCTION - - - - -	vii
SUMMARY OF CONTENTS - - - - -	xi
POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN, LIBER PRIMUS, CAP. XXXIX. - - - - -	2
— LIBER SECUNDUS - - - - -	174



INTRODUCTION.

INTRODUCTION.

THE remainder of Higden's First Book, or Map of the World, is taken up with an account of England, and this is given in much more detail than any other, occupying in fact nearly a third of the whole book (capp. xxxix.-lx.).

Higden's account of England concludes his First Book.

In the thirty-ninth chapter he announces the ten divisions under which he proposes to treat of England, viz., its name, site, productions, marvels, principal divisions, adjacent islands, roads, rivers, cities, and counties. He then enlarges on the first of these, and notes that the island was originally called Albion, a name which he connects with the whiteness of its marine rocks, and afterwards Britannia, so called, according to Higden, from Brutus, the grandson of Æneas, in accordance with the Trojanising notions which held our medieval historians spell-bound.¹ Upon the Saxons or Angles conquering it, it obtained the name of Anglia, for which Higden gives more than one derivation,² not forgetting the jocularly pious etymology of Pope Gregory, recorded

Names of England.

¹ Dr. Lingard points out that Nennius says he extracted his history of Brutus "ex veteribus scriptis veterum nostrorum;" which, as he observes, makes it older than Geoffrey or Tyssilio. *Hist. of Eng.* c. i. p. 14, note (6th ed., 1854). Some accounts make Brutus the great grandson of Æneas. See p. 442 of this volume.

² He refers to Isid. *Hisp. Etym.* lib. xv., as deriving Anglia "ab angulo orbis." The passage does not occur in that book, and I much doubt if Isidore gives any such

derivation anywhere. But Higden's citations are so frequently inaccurate that I am compelled to say of his quotations and references generally, *Caveat lector.* (See vol. i. p. xxiii. note.) With regard to the derivation itself, Bede has led the way to it, who speaks of the native country of the Angli as "illa patria, quæ Angulus dicitur." *Hist. Eccl.* lib. i. c. 15. According to a late Italian tradition, Anglus was a son of Ascanius. *Trés de Numism. et de Glypt. Méd. coul. et cis. en Italie*, vol. i. p. 2, Paris, 1834.

in Bede's well-known story.¹ He refers also to Solinus (c. 22), as well as to Alfred of Beverley,² for the importance of Britain, who speak of it as in a manner "another world."

Site and dimensions.

Higden next proceeds to speak of the site and dimensions of Britain in his fortieth chapter, and begins by defining its position nearly in the words of Pliny (lib. iv. c. 30, ed. Hard.³), to whom, as well as to Bede, he also refers for the duration of the longest day in Britain.⁴ The length and breadth of the island are set down according to the estimates of Solinus and Alfred of Beverley,⁵ and the circumference according to that of Bede; thus giving eight hundred miles for its length from the Land's End to the extremity of Caithness; two hundred miles for its breadth, measuring from St. David's to Yarmouth; and between three and four thousand for its outline.⁶

Natural productions.

The natural productions of the island are enumerated in the forty-first chapter. It is to be regretted that Higden, instead of stating facts which must have come within his own knowledge, should have done little else but remand us to the classical authors Pliny and Solinus, and to earlier medieval writers, as Isidore, Bede, William of Malmesbury, Alfred of Beverley, and Henry of Huntingdon. There is little or nothing in their accounts of the animals, plants, and minerals of England to call for

¹ Lib. ii. c. 1. (Not lib. i., as Higden says.)

² I have failed to find the passages quoted.

³ The MSS. both of the text and versions refer to lib. ii. c. 77, and this reference has been consequently allowed to stand in the edited text (p. 6). Higden does in fact quote from this book and chapter later on, p. 8, where he only gives *Plinius*.

⁴ Pliny (lib. ii. c. 77) makes it xvii. hours, and so does his copyist, Marcianus Capella (see Hardouin's

note); but Higden makes Pliny as well as Bede (lib. i. c. 1, not c. 11) say xviii. The MSS. of Bede appear to agree in xviii.

⁵ Solinus, c. 22. I cannot discover the citation from Alfred in his *Annals*.

⁶ The true greatest length is about 587 miles, and the true greatest breadth about 360 miles; the outline scarcely admits of satisfactory measurement. Bede excludes the tongues of the longer promontories.

remarks here.¹ Higden himself remarks principally on the richness of our ores, marbles, and other minerals; of our exports of wool to Flanders, of iron and lead to Gascony, of salt to Ireland, and of white metal (so Trevisa renders *cera nivea*) to all Europe.

An enumeration of some of the marvels of England ^{Marvels.} follow, which may be passed over lightly (c. xlii.). They are principally derived from Alfred of Beverley,² Giraldus Cambrensis, and William of Malmesbury. Among the marvels are recounted various petrifying springs and windy caverns, while others are of a magical or supernatural character in connexion with lakes, mountains, and caves.³ In conclusion it is observed that in no country are there more bodies of saints preserved from corruption than in England, as instanced in St. Ethelreda, St. Edmund, St. Elphege, and St. Cuthbert.

In his forty-third chapter Higden gives an account of ^{Principal} the principal parts of Britain, which are England, Wales, ^{divisions.}

¹ The assertion of Isidore, which however I cannot find in his *Origines*, that wolves were scarce in Britain in his time, *i.e.* early in the seventh century, is somewhat surprising, when we remember how numerous they afterwards became in the reigns of Athelstan and Edgar. In Higden's own age they were, perhaps, scarcely extinct, in spite of the vigorous war of extermination waged against them by Edward the First.

² Alfr. Bev. *Ann.* lib. i. p. 6. (Ed. Hearne.) The names of places which are given here and elsewhere, require more topographical knowledge than I can claim to identify with their modern sites in all cases. One of these is Pecum or Pectum (p. 22), for the identity of *c* and *t* in the MSS. becomes, in cases like this, very embarrassing. As MS. C. has Peckum, I had supposed in the note that some Peckham was

intended, and there are three places bearing this name in Surrey and Kent. But in Henry of Huntingdon, lib. 1. (p. 694, *Mon. Hist. Brit.*) for Pecum we have "in monte qui vocatur Pec," which strongly suggests the Peak of Derbyshire to be meant; and I have now very little doubt that this is so (see Mr. Dimock's glossary to Giraldus Cambrensis, vol. vi. p. 253). In the same place mention is made of one Cherdhole, or Sherdehoole, which only tends to mislead; but in Henry of Huntingdon the word is written Chederhole or Chedernhole, which leaves little doubt that at Cheddar in Somersetshire is to be sought the cavern described.

³ The observation of Alfred that it is not clearly understood how or for what purpose Stonehenge was constructed is even now scarcely antiquated.

and Scotland. The ancient names of these he derives from three sons of Brutus; Loegria (England) from Loerinus; Cambria (Wales) from Camber; Albania (Scotland) from Albanactus. With the exception of a small extract from Bede's first book, Higden quotes no authorities in this chapter. The fountain-head however of much of what he says is no doubt Geoffrey of Monmouth. The chapter ends with a somewhat lengthy account of Offa's Dyke, which long separated England from Wales. We learn at the same time from the concluding sentence that in Higden's time Englishmen and Welshmen were found living together on both sides of the dyke, more particularly in Cheshire, Shropshire, and Herefordshire.

Adjacent islands.

He then proceeds to give some account (c. xlv.) of the principal islands adjacent to Britain, viz., the isles of Wight, Anglesey, and Man, which are described from Bede¹ and Giraldus Cambrensis;² a few observations about the Isle of Thanet being added from Bede.³ He observes, apparently from his own knowledge, that various superstitions (as selling wind to sailors) prevailed in the Isle of Man.

The Four Royal Roads.

Higden's account of the Four great Royal Roads (c. xlv.) is more important, and has given rise to a good deal of discussion. He tells us, from Geoffrey of Monmouth, that Molmutius, king of the Britons, protected ploughs, temples of gods, and city roads by the privilege of refuge; and that in after times his son Belinus defined and reconstructed four royal roads,⁴ which should

¹ Bed. *Hist. Eccl.* i. 3, ii. 9, iv. 16 (not 15, as Higden says).

² See Girald. *Cambrens. Itin. Camb.* ii. 7, 9. *Top. Hib.* ii. 15. (*Op.* vol. vi. pp. 127, 135; vol. v. p. 97 in this series.)

³ The reference is to lib. ii., which is false. Lib. 1, c. 25, seems to be intended; but Higden has added sundry absurdities, which Bede has not.

⁴ Geoffrey does not mention the

names of the roads; his first road was probably the Foss road; "the second, there can be doubt," says Dr. Guest, "was meant for the Roman road which passed from South Wales through Monmouthshire to Gloucester, and thence to Winchester and Southampton." It is impossible to fix the identity of the others, as he thinks, beyond dispute. See *Archæological Journal*, No. 54.

have this privilege exclusively.¹ Higden defines these four to be, the Foss, Watling-street, Ermyngge-street, and Rykenild-street, and he gives the course of them all. Dr. Guest speaks of Higden's account of the two roads, the Watling-street and the Foss, as (with some exceptions) accurate and important, and observes that "the minute details into which he has entered, more particularly with respect to the Watling-street, are extremely valuable." About the other roads, Ermyngge-street and Rykenild-street, there is some difficulty and uncertainty, and the reader is referred to Dr. Guest's paper for a learned disquisition upon them.²

Passing lightly over his account of the courses of the three famous rivers, the Thames, the Severn, and the Humber (c. xlvi.), as well as their political significance, taken principally from Alfred of Beverley and William of Malmesbury, we arrive at his enumeration and description of the ancient cities of Britain (capp. xlvii. and xlviii.). The sources from which he derived his information are not always set down; ³ but some parts of his account are taken from William of Malmesbury's work, *De Pontificibus*; from the *Itinerary* of Giraldus, and from Bede's *Ecclesiastical History*. He quotes likewise from Geoffrey of Monmouth and Alfred of Beverley. Upon the whole these chapters contain a good deal of interesting matter, especially what relates to the changes of names which certain towns and cities underwent.⁴ The cities and

Rivers,
cities, and
shires.

¹ The privilege was known in Norman times as *the King's peace*. Gal. Mon. lib. ii. c. 17; lib. iii. c. 5.

² It deserves attention that for *Rykenildstrete* one MS. of Higden has *Hikenildstrete*. It seems probable that Higden himself made a confusion between the Roman road called Rykenild-street, passing through Warwickshire and Staffordshire (whose course may be seen in the map of *Britannia Romana* in

the *Monumenta Historica* of Petrie) and the British trackway or Icknield-street, passing from Old Sarum towards Bury St. Edmund's.

³ For his account of Gloucester, Lincoln, and Leicester (pp. 60, 62,) see Gal. Mon. iv. 15; ix. 3; ii. 11.

⁴ His statements, however, must not be received implicitly. Thus he makes Brutus build a city *Trinovantum*, which Lud afterwards called *Caerlud*; and the Angles,

towns described are Canterbury, Winchester, Bath, Gloucester, Shrewsbury, Nottingham, Lincoln, York, Edinburgh, Alclud (for whose identification the reader

still later, termed it Lundene; a form changed by the Normans into Loundres, and called in Latin Londonia (p. 56). It may be that Trinovantum or Augusta Trinobantum occupied the site of London; this opinion has been maintained, though not without doubts, by various scholars, from C. Stephens to our own time; but it was a great mistake in Higden to suppose that London is an English name, seeing that it occurs in slightly varied forms in Tacitus, Ptolemy, Eumenius, and Ammianus Marcellinus, as well as on Roman coins of the fourth century. But I now perceive that he was misled by Geoffrey of Monmouth (iii. 20), and Alfred of Beverley (i. p. 12). His account of Canterbury (p. 56) is substantially correct (setting aside Rudhudibras and his Caerkent), but Dorovernis, not Dorobernia, is the earliest medieval or English form of the word, as coins and charters prove beyond doubt (*Numism. Chron.* vol. iv. p. 120). Dorobernia was in use A.D. 790, as appears by a charter so dated, and continued so to be till about the middle of the tenth century, when we find Cantwara occurring on coins of Edgar. "Urbs quæ nunc Cantuaria vocatur," says Lanfranc (*Will. Malm. Gest. Pont.* i. p. 207. Sav.), "antiquis temporibus ab ipsius terræ incolis Dorobernia vocabatur." At what time however it first came into use for the name of Dover it would be interesting to know. It is, of course, older than Higden, but it may be suspected to

be later than the Conquest. Florence of Worcester, at the beginning of the twelfth century, writes, "Doroberniam, id est, Cantuariorum civitatem," (*Chron. s.*, A.D. 851), as though Dorobernia was then obsolete as a name of Canterbury; he calls Dover sometimes Dovera, sometimes Dorvernia (see *Mon. Hist. Brit.*, Index), as if no other place in Kent then bore such a name. Dorobernia is used for Dover by Henry of Huntingdon, lib. i. (p. 694. B. in *Mon. Hist. Brit.*), and Alfred of Beverley (p. 120). Dover, Dofera, Dofran, and Dofra are forms which occur on coins of Ethelred II. and Canute; and we have also Dofrenn and Dofre on those of Harold I. and William I. In the 14th century it was often called Dovorria. *Dugd. Monast.* iv. pp. 530-532, ed. Lond. 1823. In the Itinerary of Antoninus Canterbury and Dover are named Durovernum and Dubris respectively; so that the medieval or English names are, in fact, only modifications of the Roman names. Again, in what Higden says of Lincoln (p. 62), it is manifest that he was not aware that in Roman times it was called Lindum, before it was changed in medieval times into Lindecolinum. It would take up too much space to pursue Higden's topography farther. One of the more important sections is that which relates to Chester, which is in good part original, though to some extent taken from Gir. Cambr. (*Itin. Cambr.* lib. ii. c. 11.) The supposed tomb of the emperor Henry IV.

may consult Higden himself¹), Carlisle, Hexham, Caerleon, and Chester, besides brief allusions to a few others.²

With regard to the enumeration of the British names of towns with which the forty-seventh chapter opens, which is taken from Alfred of Beverley,³ there can be little doubt that the fountain head of some of the information is the sixty-seventh chapter of Nennius.

Higden's account of the shires of England (c. xlix.) is professedly taken from Alfred of Beverley,⁴ but there are many things in Higden of which Alfred says nothing. His enumeration moreover of the different laws which prevailed at different times and places (c. l.) is to some slight extent borrowed from the same source, though without acknowledgment. Higden would seem to have added much from some legal authority which he does not name.⁵ The law terms which occur in the laws of

(or rather Henry V.), who is said to have assumed the name of Godeséal or Godestal, is still to be seen in the south aisle of the cathedral, not far from a tomb reasonably believed to belong to Higden himself. But the whole story is full of uncertainty, as may be seen by reference to Lyson's *Magna Britannia*, in his account of Chester (vol. ii. p. 558). See also for this, and for the true burial-place of Harold II., Mr. Dimock's notes on Giraldus, *u. s.*

¹ In the *Monumenta Historica Britannica* (Index) and in A. K. Johnson's *Dictionary of Geography* it is identified with Dumbarton. Higden evidently inclines to Aldburgh, in Yorkshire (p. 67, where he refers to Gal. Mon. iii. 17), but thinks Bede means some place close to Carlisle, which he assuredly does not. Higden has made a confusion between the two Roman walls.

² It may be here observed that the orthography of medieval names of persons and places differs a good deal in the various MSS. of Higden; their variations have been conscientiously noticed; but the contractions which abound, and the similarity of certain letters to one another (particularly *c* and *t*, *u* and *n*) increase an editor's difficulties considerably. I am now convinced that Ebrancus, which I have edited (p. 64, &c.), following Gale, should be Ebraucus. Possibly Mevania (p. 36, where see note) should be changed into Menavia; see Hearne on Alfr. Bev., p. 154.

³ *Annal*, lib. i. p. 9.

⁴ See his *Annals*, lib. vi. p. 97.

⁵ In the notes I had supposed that the *Chronicon* of John Brompton was the fountain-head of his account, being misled by Cave, who considers (*Hist. Lit.* s. v.) that Brompton wrote about A.D. 1198. But it

Edward the Confessor, and which are explained by Higden, vary somewhat in the different MSS., and I am happy to acknowledge the kind assistance which Dr. Bosworth has rendered me in editing the text of some of them.¹

Succession
of rulers.

The fifty-first chapter, on the succession of kingdoms in Britain, is taken, according to most MSS.,² from Alfred of Beverley. It gives an epitome of the forms of government from Brutus to Julius Cæsar, from Cæsar to Septimius Severus, thence to Gratian; and proceeds at length to describe the cessation of Roman power and the foundation and durations of the kingdoms of the Heptarchy. The history and chronology are not always accurate, but it is an interesting chapter nevertheless.³

appears that Brompton, as he is now edited, quotes Higden, so that his chronicle "seems to have taken its present form at least after the middle of the fourteenth century." Hardy, *Descript. Cat. Mater. Brit. Hist.*, vol. ii. p. 540. What now appears in Brompton, therefore, was probably copied from Higden, not *vice versa*.

¹ "I have," (he writes), "a great objection to conjectural readings, but I think you will be safe in reading self finde in warde, p. 94, 13, (see Note 18, B., pelffindinward). It will then read in Anglo-Saxon: "In-fangen þeof self finde in warde, i. e., a thief taken within his own ward or lordship; or as in your text, 'id est, infra suum [attachia-mentum] capere reum.' I think that in your MSS. the A.S. *r* is probably written *p* or *þ*, easily taken for *þ* or *p*."

"(1.) Fiht-wite and (2.) Flit-
(3.) wite are both good compounds.

"(1.) Fiht, fyht, feoht, e; *f. A* fighting, from feohtan to contend, fight.

"(2.) Flit, es; *n. Strife, contention*, from flitan to strive, quarrel.

"(3.) Wite, es; *n. A fine, a fine or penalty to the state or crown.*

"All the other words are clear enough."

² Both versions however as well as MS. B., omit the reference. The words do not occur, I believe, in Alfred; the substance occurs more or less in every chronicle of England.

³ It is hardly credible that Higden should mean that all the Roman emperors who were rulers of Britain, from Septimius Severus down to Gratian, were of British extraction; but I scarcely know how else to interpret his words: Reges tamen habuit ex seipsa a Severo quoque usque ad ultimum municipem Gratianum. The usurper Gratian here meant, who died A.D. 407, was indeed a native of England (Orosius, vii. 40.), and some claim Magnus Maximus to be one also; but Higden's assertion is beyond doubt erroneous. Carausius, who, as well as Allectus, kept exclusive possession of Britain in spite of the other emperors, Dioclesian and

Higden devotes no less than six chapters to the history of episcopal sees in England. He begins by alluding to the well-known story of the three archiepiscopal sees, (London, York, and Caerleon,) and the twenty-eight episcopal sees in the time of Lucius, whose occupants were called *flamens*, and refers to Alfred of Beverley as his authority; but the original historian of this and of many more legendary accounts transferred to the *Polychronicon* is Geoffrey of Monmouth.¹ Higden then describes the episcopal constitutions of the Saxons, as well as the ancient regulations of the Welsh episcopate, which, till the time of Henry the Second, made no profession of subjection to any other church. Beginning with Canterbury, the principal see, he proceeds to mention the temporary erection of Lichfield into an archbishopric in the time of Offa, and the restitution of the primacy to the archbishop of Canterbury in the time of Kenulphus. In like manner he slightly touches on the varied fortunes of the other archbishops, viz., of York and Caerleon; and proceeds to name the suffragan bishops of England and Wales in order, mentioning the changes of the sees of some of them and the extinction of others, noticing also the creation of new sees from time to time; and concludes by an enumeration of the bishoprics as they existed in his own

Maximian, was not a Briton. Again, the chronology of the departure of the Romans from Britain is false. Magnus Maximus went over with the British soldiers to Gaul against the Emperor Gratian in 383, and the Roman mint does indeed appear to have ceased in England in his reign; but there were Romans fighting in Britain towards the middle of the fifth century. (See *Mon. Hist. Brit. Chron. Abstract.*)

The account of the kingdoms of the Heptarchy is more trustworthy. Edgar however, and not Athelstan,

“solus et primus monarchiam Angliæ tenuit” (p. 108), though Athelstan says as much of himself. (Hawkins’ *Silver Coins of England*, pp. 61, 65.) Athelstan’s conquests, moreover, are misdated by a century (p. 108); but this may be a slip or a blunder of the scribes, which however, if it be one, occurs also in the versions.

¹ Alf. Bev. iii. p. 32., Gal. Mon. v. c. 19. See Fuller’s dissection (or rather vivisection) of Geoffrey in his *Church Hist. of Brit.*, book i. cent. ii. § 9.

time, when thirteen bishops were subject to the archbishop of Canterbury, the primate of all England, and four were under the archbishop of York, the primate of England.

The principal authorities referred to for England are Bede and William of Malmesbury, and for Wales, Giraldus Cambrensis. He also makes a good many statements on his own authority. This part of his work has evidently cost him some labour, and it appears to be one of the most trustworthy parts of his history.¹

Successive
inhabitants
of Britain.

Higden next enters (c. lviii.) on the subject of British ethnology, and enumerates seven tribes or peoples who successively inhabited the country or settled therein; viz., the Britons, Picts, Scots (from Ireland), Saxons or

¹ I have compared a good deal of it with Professor Stubbs' valuable *Registrum Sacrum Anglicanum*, and find that it commonly agrees; Higden however converts the bishopric of Leicester into a bishopric of Chester; an error arising from the name Legecestria being common to the two. Considering that Higden himself long dwelt in Chester, his blunder is the more extraordinary. That it is a blunder there can, I think, be no doubt; the following extract from a letter of Professor Stubbs will allay all misgivings. "The original authority for placing Wilfrid's Mercian bishopric at Leicester is the list of bishops appended to Florence of Worcester, which is of course much earlier than Florence's own time. This gives a list of the bishops of Mid-Anglia, 'nomina Præsulum Leogerensium.' Of these, Leofwin, sec. xi., united the 'Leogerensian' and Lindsey bishoprics into the modern diocese of Lincoln in the time of Edgar; proof that the maker of the list believed Leicester

" to be the place signified, as indeed
" is quite certain with reference to
" all the later bishops. Totta, Ead-
" berht, Unwona, Werenbert, Ret-
" hun, Aldred, and Ceoldred all sat
" at Leicester. In 874 the Danes
" conquered Middle Anglia, and
" thenceforth the see was at *Dor-*
" *chester* in Oxfordshire. I believe
" there is no doubt about this. And
" the statement about Wilfrid stands
" on the same authority. I should
" question whether Chester could
" be regarded as a Middle Angle or
" Mercian town in Wilfrid's time,
" and certainly no bishop could
" unite *Chester* and *Lindsey* without
" including Lichfield also. The
" confusion between *Chester* and
" *Leicester* in the early chronicles
" is very trying, but on this point I
" am quite sure." William of Mal-
" mesbury also, who gives a list of the
" bishops (*Gest. Pont.* iv. p. 289,
" Sav.) clearly meant Leicester to be
" their see; *Legecestra est civitas*
" *antiqua in mediterraneis Angliæ*;
" but Higden as clearly meant Ches-
" ter (p. 128).

Angles, Danes, Normans, and Flandrians. His authorities are Bede, Geoffrey of Monmouth, Giraldus Cambrensis, Marianus Scotus, and Alfred of Beverley, and he also interpolates various remarks of his own.

In tacit allusion to the Trojan story about Brutus, Higden considers the Britons the first inhabitants of our island, and that they came over from Armorica four hundred and thirty-two years before the building of Rome.¹

It is remarkable that he does not consider the Romans as worthy to be reckoned among the peoples who settled amongst us, but passing them over without notice, he proceeds to say that the Picts came over from Scythia in Vespasian's time, first to Ireland, where the Scoti dwelt, and thence to the northern parts of Britain, about Caithness. Bede, from whom the account professes to be taken, probably intended Scandinavia by Scythia, but says nothing about Vespasian, and seems to place their arrival at a more remote period;² their connexion with the age of Vespasian is due to Geoffrey of Monmouth,³ from whom Higden has derived other untrustworthy statements in this chapter.⁴ Higden then quotes Giraldus

¹ Notwithstanding all our laborious examinations, both of literary records and of archæological monuments, we are scarcely even now able to replace the medieval figments on this subject by anything which can well be called historical. "Who were the first inhabitants of Britain, is among the unsettled questions of history," says Professor Pearson (*Early and Middle Ages of England*, c. i., London, 1861); and if the question is ever to be settled, it must be by a careful comparison of the remains of man and of the art of man found in this country with those found in other countries.

² See Bede, lib. i. c. 1., where Smith observes that the Scoti, who came after the Picts, appear to have arrived, in Bede's opinion, "ante Romanorum tempora."

³ Lib. iv. c. 17.

⁴ As that Carausius gave a settlement to the Picts in Scotland (lib. v. c. 3). Higden's speculation that we must understand the south of Scotland seems to be a castle built on air. Stukeley however persuades himself of the reality of Carausius' expedition into Scotland, which he places A.D. 290 (*Med. Hist. of Carausius*, pp. 128-138), as does also Dr. Lingard (*Hist. Engl. c. i. p. 35*). The additions to Nennius

Cambrensis (*De Instruct. Princ.*, lib. i. c. 6.) in favour of the view that the Picts are the same as the Agathyrsi, and of Gothic stock.¹

He proceeds to relate the migration of some of the Scoti from Ireland under the leadership of Reuda to the district of Argyle, in the country which several centuries afterwards became known as Scotland. This Dalriadic kingdom, which is commonly dated from the beginning of the sixth century, expanded itself, according to Higden, into a dominion over the whole of Scotland in the reign of Kenneth MacAlpine, king of Scots, in the middle of the ninth century, who destroyed the Pictish kingdom of the north of Scotland.²

He next tells us how the Saxons, or as the Britons called them Germans, being invited by the Britons against the Picts and Scots, by degrees forced the Britons into Wales, and extended their own empire as far as the Scotch sea; and at length, in the reign of Egbert, were known by the common appellation of Angles or Englishmen.

The Danes, who kept invading the country from the reign of Egbert to that of the Confessor, left, according to Higden, no trace behind, and like the Picts completely died out.

(p. 19, ed. Stev.) connect Carausius with the river Carron in Stirlingshire, but no author of credit, so far as I know, mentions any deed of Carausius done in Scotland. I know not on what authority Dr. Lingard says that "the Caledonians were compelled to flee before his arms," unless it be the pseudo-Nennius.

¹ The best modern critics, according to Professor Pearson, consider *Pict* (painted) as merely the Latin rendering of *Briton*, and that the Picts are consequently not of Gothic origin; he thinks them

of the Kymric variety. Pearson, as above, c. ii. p. 17 (note). Dr. Lingard feels confident that they are the Caledonians under a new name (*Hist. Engl.* c. i. p. 39).

² On the obscurity and difficulty of the history of this event, for which Higden's authority is Giraldus, see *Penny Cyclopædia*, s. v. Scotland. According to Giraldus, the Pictish chiefs were fraudulently murdered at a banquet. His account is tinged with a mythological colouring, but may very possibly be founded on fact.

The Normans, who came in with the Conqueror, remained in possession of the soil in Higden's time, the English being still in a state of subjugation.

The Flandrians, or Flemings, are the seventh and last people, according to Higden, who settled in the island. He tells us, from Alfred of Beverley,¹ that King Henry I. gave them a temporary abode at Melrose in Roxburghshire, but that he afterwards removed them to Haverfordwest in Wales; and it appears that their descendants remain there to this day, being readily distinguished from the aboriginal inhabitants both by language and manners.²

Higden sums up by saying, that as the Picts and Danes had vanished, there were five nations at present living in the island, viz., the Scots in Albania or Scotland, the Britons in Wales, the Flemings in West Wales, the Normans and English mixed in the whole island.

The fifty-ninth chapter, on the languages of the natives of Britain, is almost entirely Higden's own. The Scotch and Welsh (he observes) retain their own dialects nearly pure, as mingling but little with the other tribes; though the Pictish element may perhaps have somewhat entered into the Scotch speech. The Flemings had adopted the English language, and spoke it tolerably well. The English dialects were originally three, Southern, Midland or Mercian, and Northern or Northumbrian; being due to as many German tribes. These forms however, which extended east and west, became much corrupted by Danish and Norman mixtures. The midland dialect partook of many northern and southern forms, so that a midlander might understand these in some degree; but a North-Englander and a South-Englander were barbarians to each other. Higden observes that one great cause of the corruption was the neglect of the English language in schools, boys being always taught to construe

Languages
and dia-
lects
spoken in
Britain.

¹ See lib. i. p. 10, and lib. ix. p. 147.

² Lewis, *Topogr. Dict. Wales*, vol. i. s.v. Haverfordwest. Lond. 1833.

their lessons in French, and, among the noble class, to speak French from their infancy. Trevisa inserts here an interesting passage, in which he notes a great change since Higden's time. He tells us, writing in 1385, that in all the grammar schools of England English was then taught and French laid aside;¹ and that gentlemen taught their sons French less than formerly. He also observes, in reference to Higden's assertion that the Anglo-Norman French is one and the same in all England, that there are as many forms of French, in France at least, as of English in England. Another cause of the debasement of our language is due, in Higden's judgment, to the affectation of the words and language of their betters by the ignorant rustics, who "francigenated" or frenchified their talk to the utmost of their power.

Character
of the
English.

The sixtieth and last chapter of the first book, on the manners of the English, is mostly by Higden, who has certainly shown little disposition to paint his countrymen in too favourable colours. His bombastic and not very intelligible periods warn us that he must not be taken too literally. Among our faults he especially reckons the discontented spirit in every class, which affects to appear and to be thought above itself. Thus the yeoman affects the squire; the squire the knight; the knight the duke; the duke the king. Consequently such a variety of dress had been introduced that a man's clothes gave little indication of his degree. Gluttony, drunkenness, dishonesty, and irreligion appear to have taken deep root amongst us. The first two vices he dates more especially from the days of Harthacnut (1041-1042), whose death was occasioned thereby.

Among our better qualities he enumerates our aptitude for every kind of industry, our desire to visit foreign

¹ The authors of the change were, | of a grammar school, and his pupil,
it seems, John Cornwaile, a master | Richard Pencrich.

parts with a view to learn, our bravery in war, and the excellent discipline of our soldiers, both horse and foot.

He observes that the southerners were more civilized and gentle than men of the north; those of middle Anglia occupying an intermediate position, socially as well as geographically.¹

The Welsh Flemings, he observes from Giraldus,² had become in a manner anglicised by contact with the English; they were industrious, enterprising, and equally successful in the arts of peace and of war. They were addicted, however, to some singular superstitions, such as divining with the boiled shoulder bone of a ram, by which they both dived into futurity, and saw, as by a kind of clairvoyance, what was going on or had been performed afar off. They entertained a cordial hatred towards the Welsh.

Thus ends Higden's First Book, or Geographical Introduction to his Universal History. Of the sixty chapters of which it is composed, twenty-nine are occupied with an account of Great Britain and Ireland, twenty-two of these, all comprised in the present volume, being devoted to England alone, the country, as he tells us himself, on whose account he compiled and elaborated his chronicle. This is the only part of his introduction of which, as being to some slight extent original, the historian or antiquary can well make use;³ the remainder, relating to foreign parts, being derived from other sources, and those not always the most trustworthy.

¹ Higden quotes from Henry of Huntingdon (lib. vi. p. 359, Sav.), the prophecy of a holy anchorite, which bears every appearance of being composed after the event. It was written, or ought to have been written, in the time of king Egelfred or Egilred, by whom he intends Ethelred the Second, who is called Egilred by Roger de Hoveden (p. 472, Sav.) and William of

Malmesbury. (*Gest. Reg.* ii. § 159, p. 255, Hardy.)

² *Itin. Cambr.* i. 11.

³ It has been published by Gale, *Hist. Brit. Script.* xv. pp. 191-212. The only other portion of this volume contained in his collection are parts of lib. ii. c. 27 (nearly all), and c. 28 (a few lines); they occupy less than a folio page. See Gale, *u. s.* pp. 212, 213.

The Welsh Flemings.

End of Higden's First Book; which is not without value for the History of England.

The book however, taken as a whole, is not without its value, as indicating the geographical knowledge of a writer, who in his own and in the next age was widely read and generally followed.

Higden's
Second
Book.
Doctrine
of the
microcosm.

The second book has for its prologue (cap. i.) a comparison between man and the world. The geography of the world is properly followed by the history of the world, that is of man, who is himself the microcosm or little world. He then proceeds to point out the similarities between man and the world in their dimensions, composition, and operations. The doctrine of the microcosm is as old as Pythagoras, or at least was espoused by some of his disciples,¹ and found numerous adherents in after times, and has survived almost down to our own age.² Higden's application of it may be in good measure his own; at least he refers to no authority, except for slight details.³ For the facts in natural history which he adduces in illustration he is indebted principally to

¹ See the anonymous *Life of Pythagoras* in Phot. *Bibl. Cod.* 249 (p. 440, ed. Bekk.), where we learn that man is called a little world, not only because he is composed of the four elements, but also because he possesses all the forces of the world. Higden's account is an expansion of these views.

² See a note on *Nicholas Ferrar*, pp. 239, 240, Cambridge, 1855, by my learned friend Mr. J. E. B. Mayor, to which add that Nathan Wanley wrote a book entitled *The Wonders of the Little World, or a General History of Man*, first published in 1678 (fol. London). It was re-printed with additions in the last and also in the present century. Wanley much resembles Higden in style, and he sometimes refers to the same examples. See more especially his eighth chapter (*On the*

strange constitution and marvellous properties of some human bodies), in which he refers to the great toe of Pyrrhus. See Higden, p. 188. Robinet, who considered certain natural objects, as the brain-stone coral, to be types of parts of man, died in the present century. See also Shakesp. *Rich. II.* Act V. sc. 5, and the notes. (Clar. Press Series).

³ As St. Gregory the Great. The "Homily on the Ascension," as Higden calls it (p. 182), occurs in his *Moral. in Job*, lib. vi. vol. i. p. 190 (ed. Ben. Paris, 1705). The "Homily on Advent" (quoted at p. 184) will be found among *In Evang. Homil.* (vol. i. p. 1439). The passage of Plato to which he alludes, p. 180, is, perhaps, *Phæd.*, p. 81. E. (ed. Steph.); but if so, it is not quite accurately rendered.

Pliny,¹ and in a smaller degree to St. Augustine, Hugutio, Livy, and Avicenna; for the historical allusions he refers to Pliny and Seneca. On these we need not dwell; but merely observe that for the only historical facts or pretended facts in this chapter, not otherwise known, we are under obligation not to Higden, but to Trevisa, who relates some marvellous peculiarities in the constitution of one Roger Bagge, and (in the following chapter) in the conformation of a child born in Lorraine, on the eyewitness of one of his own parishioners at Berkeley, William Wayte.² But on these points, as well as on the details and speculations given by Higden respecting monstrous forms of the human species, as cyclopes, sciapodes, &c., which form the subject of his second chapter, we shall only say that he is indebted for almost all his remarks to St. Augustine and to Isidore of Seville. He does not, like Augustine, entirely repudiate the notion of the Antipodes, and cites with approbation the astronomical views of Marcianus Capella on this subject.

Higden's third chapter is a rhetorical flourish on the differences between man and the world. Before his fall he had prerogatives above the rest of nature; afterwards he fell below the creatures themselves, being destitute of their natural defences, as he observes from Pliny.

The fourth and fifth chapters comprise his History of FIRST AGE OF THE WORLD. From the Creation of Adam to Noah's flood. the First Age of the World,³ which commences with the creation of Adam, and ends with Noah's flood. The greatest part of it is naturally taken from Scripture, but a few speculations and traditional details are added from

¹ Whom in one instance he misnames Trogius (p. 196). Some other of his references to Pliny are more or less erroneous (see pp. 190, 196, 198, 214, 422 notes). His capitulation of lib. vii. (see pp. 176, 178, 188, 194, 200) apparently differs a little from that now adopted; his chapters are capp. 17, 16, 15, 18,

and 10 respectively in the edition of Franzius. (Lips. 1778.)

² See pp. 195, 209.

³ His division of the history of the world into six ages agrees with that of Isidore (lib. v. c. 39), from whom he probably takes it. It was adopted by various other writers.

Pseudo-Methodius, Petrus Comestor, Isidore of Seville Hugutio Pisanus, Jerome, and Josephus, which scarcely require to be discussed in this place.

In adjusting his chronology he has made constant use of Isidore (lib. v. c. 39) and of Marianus Scotus, whom he mentions at the beginning of his *Polychronicon* (lib. i. c. 2) as one of his main authorities in this matter. From them he probably derives most or all that he knew of the patriarchal chronology followed by the Septuagint, which differs from the Hebrew text.¹

SECOND
AGE OF
THE
WORLD.
From
Noah's
flood to the
birth of
Abraham.

The
children of
Shem.

The History of the Second Age of the World, from Noah's departure from the ark to the birth of Abraham, is comprised in the sixth, seventh, eighth, and ninth chapters. The eighth chapter, however, is in a great measure anticipatory, being occupied with an account of the rise and progress of the great empires of the ancient world generally, some of which originated in times long posterior to Abraham. Higden commences his sixth chapter with a notice of God's covenant with Noah after he came forth from the ark, as signified by the rainbow, and notes from Petrus Comestor the figurative or rather fanciful significance of its outer and inner colours.² After remarking that "secundum sanctos" there was neither rain nor rainbow before the flood, and that neither fish, flesh, nor wine were in use till after the flood, he proceeds to give a pedigree of Shem's children, noticing the differences between the chronology of the Hebrew text and that of the Septuagint, till he at length comes down to Terah and the birth of Abraham, at which point the second age terminates,

¹ Thus Marianns writes:—Septuaginta interpretes ante natum Seth duxerunt annos ducentos triginta, et postea annos septingentos (col. 4, ed. Bas. 1559). This is in substance, though not in words, what we have in Higden, p. 220.

² Here and elsewhere the number

of the chapters as cited by Higden does not agree with the capitulation of the *Historia Scholastica* in the edition which I have consulted, printed at Lyons in 1543; and I am inclined to believe that his copy was differently capitulated; but the trivial variations cause but little difficulty.

comprising 992¹ years according to the Hebrews, or 1072 according to the LXX., which leads him to discuss the cause of the diversity after Bede and Augustine.² He takes this occasion to say, following Eusebius, that from Adam to Abraham we have no history either of the Greeks or barbarians.³

Higden now takes into account the other sons of Noah and their descendants, and begins by borrowing from the spurious "Revelations" of Methodius a history of Ionichus, a son of Noah, who reigned as far as the sea Eliochora, that is to say, as Methodius explains, the region where the sun rises, or, in other words, the Indian Ocean; his disciple Nemphrot or Nimrod ruled in Babylon among the children of Ham.⁴ In Nimrod's time, according to Higden, following Josephus, the tower of Babel was built; and he observes in conclusion from Petrus Comestor, that Nimrod was the first founder of Nineveh as well as of Babylon, and the inventor of fire worship.

The seventh chapter, which mentions the seats of the first descendants of Shem, Ham, and Japhet, and the kingdoms of Assyria, Egypt, Scythia, and Sicyon, which

The other sons of Noah, and their descendants.

Their respective seats; rise of kingdoms; their progress traced here by anticipation.

¹ For *ducentos* in the Latin text of the MSS. (which Trevisa also read) we should, no doubt, read *nongentos* with the Harleian translator.

² The quotations, like many others, are derived from Marianus Scotus (coll. 49, 50.)

³ The passage occurs in the author's preface to his *Chronicon* (i.e. his *Canon*), translated by St. Jerome, which is the Chronicle of Eusebius as known to Higden. (See Hieron. *Op.* t. viii. p. 57, ed. Migne, and Higden. *Polychron.*, vol. i p. 38.) It will be found at p. 32 of the Armenian version of the entire work (the second part), published by Aucher in 1818; see his

remarks, *Pref.* § v. p. xiv. Higden seems, however, to derive much of his acquaintance with Eusebius' chronicle from Marianus Scotus, who quotes it by name frequently, and more often copies it tacitly. This passage is quoted by him from Eusebius at lib. i. c. ii. (col. 72, ed. Basil, 1559.)

⁴ See Pseudo-Method. *Revel.* Sig. a. vii., ed. Bas. 1504. His words are (in the Latin version): Ionichus autem filius Noe tenuit introitum in Etham usque ad mare quod vocatur Eliochora; id est, regio solis in quo solis ortus fit, et habitavit ibidem. For the very late production itself see Cave's *Hist. Lit.* s. v. Methodius.

were founded nearly contemporaneously with the first dispersion of nations, is mostly derived from St. Augustine and from Isidore of Seville, a few unimportant remarks being added from other authors. The kingdoms of Assyria, Persia, Greece, and Rome, which succeeded each other, became most notable for their progress, but Higden promises to take first into consideration the earlier kingdoms contemporary with Assyria.

Brief history of the kingdoms contemporary with Assyria ;
of Scythia ;
of Sicyon ;

The eighth chapter gives an outline of the three kingdoms which arose, according to Higden, about the same time as the Assyrian monarchy, viz., those of Scythia, Sicyon, and Egypt.

For the first the longer text ¹ gives no authority, but the latter part of the account is certainly derived from Justin. The former portion has the appearance of being to some extent borrowed from Isidore.²

The notice of the kingdom of Sicyon is taken from Petrus Comestor,³ who derives it in all likelihood from Jerome's version of the Canon of Eusebius.⁴ There is, however, some slight variation in the number of years during which the kings are said to have reigned.⁵ Higden in conclusion notes an imaginary discrepancy in the chronology of Dionysius Exiguus.⁶

¹ The shorter MSS. C. D. prefix *Willelmus* here and before §§ 4, 5, 6. William of Malmesbury is usually so cited in this work, and the only other William mentioned by Higden in his catalogue of authorities is William of Rievaulx, who may perhaps be the same as William of Newbury. (See Cave and Hardy). I do not know whence these citations from William are derived. For the last sentence, see Justin, lib. ii. c. 3., whose Zopyrion is transformed into Zephiron by Higden.

² Lib. xiii. c. 21. § 24.

³ *Hist. Lib. Gen. c. 64.* (not 60, as Higden says.)

⁴ See Hieron., *Op. t. viii. coll. 76,*

111, 281 (Migne), and Euseb., *Can. pp. 13, 79.* (Vers. Arm.)

⁵ 967 (Arm. version) ; 962 (Jerome's version) ; 971 (Petrus and Higden).

⁶ Dionysius says that in the 50th year of Terah, Europs, whom Higden miscalls Cecrops, was the *second* king of Sicyon, (not quod regnum Sicyoniorum *inceperit*), and that Ægialeus, the first king, reigned 52 years, *i.e.*, according to his computation, in the 28th year of Nahor. This differs from Petrus only by four years, who places him in the 24th year of Nahor. See Marianus Scotus, who follows Dionysius (coll. 69-71).

The account of the third kingdom, Egypt, is nearly all derived from Eusebius, more or less blundered,¹ one sentence being added from Josephus.

Fourth in order, but first in time, the Assyrian kingdom is described in outline. A well-chosen passage adapted from Augustine commences the section, followed by another, taken from the same chapter of Petrus, but ultimately derived from Eusebius,² which brings the history down to the death of Sardanapalus. Higden then gives in his own view the state of Assyrian affairs afterwards, and following the language of Scripture, calls Sennacherib, &c. *kings* of Assyria, whom he considers to have been *independent*, but not monarchs of the whole country (*reges potentes, quamvis non monarchæ*), of whom Sargon was the last. He goes on to say that some consider a Median monarchy over the entire East arose after the death of Sardanapalus, beginning with Arbaces, and ending with Astyages, (whom Cyrus overthrew, and so transferred the empire to Persia,) or in other words that the Assyrian kings, so called, were but Median tributaries. In saying this he seems to express his disagreement with Eusebius, who makes no more mention of an Assyrian kingdom after the death of Sardanapalus. Still giving no authority he proceeds to the end, and notices the rise of the Babylonian and Chaldean kingdoms, giving a catalogue of their kings according to his own view.³

After this he traces the Persian kings from the begin-

The Persian kings.

¹ Jerome's version says: "Porro apud Ægyptios xvi. potestas erat, quam vocant dynastiam; quo tempore regnabant Thebæi, qui præfuerunt Ægyptiis annis exc." (col. 108.) But Higden says (p. 260): "Deinde Thebæi tenuerunt xvi. dynastias," which completely destroys the sense. It is not worth while to point out other errors.

² See Hier. u. s. coll. 337, 339.

³ It is mostly derived from Marianus Scotus (who refers to Josephus), but with variations of spelling (coll. 52.) Higden has Balthasar, *qui et Nabar*, (*Naban* is read in the printed text of Marianus), but Josephus has Naboandelus (*Ant.* x. 11), writing elsewhere (*Lib.* 1. c. *Ap.* § 20) Nabonnedus. Ruffin, however, has Naboar. See the notes in Havercamp's edition, vol. i. p. 539.

ning to the end of the monarchy, professing herein to follow Giraldus;¹ but Eusebius seems to be the original source from which the history is mostly drawn.² He gives little besides their names, some of which are corrupt.³

Foundation and destruction of the Greek kingdoms. Having observed that Alexander the Great absorbed the kingdom of Persia into that of Macedonia, he goes on to add that this kingdom, which lasted 636 years, was founded by Caranus, whom he erroneously calls Cranaus, and lasted till the capture and dethronement of Perseus by the Romans.⁴ This computation nearly agrees with Eusebius.⁵ He concludes by remarking that there were other kingdoms of Greece in Sicyon, Argos, Athens, Sparta, and Epirus, which, like Macedonia, ultimately formed part of the great empire of Rome. For this section, as well as for the following, the MSS. of the longer form of the Chronicle refer to no authority; in the shorter form reference is made in each case to William of Malmesbury.

Rise and progress of the Roman empire. The concluding section sketches the rise and progress of the Roman empire, from the Latin, Alban, and Roman kings, to the consuls, tribunes of the people, dictators, and emperors. Tacitly following St. Jerome's version of the Canon of Eusebius, he makes Philip Senior the first Christian emperor.⁶ He seems also to allude to the

¹ The *Chronographia metrica* of Giraldus may possibly be intended (see *De libris a se scriptis*, Gir. Cambr. Op., tom. i. p. 414.), but I rather suspect that *Giraldus* is an error.

² See Euseb. *Chron.* pars. 1, p. 50; pars. 2, p. 19 (ed. Auch.) for the list of kings, and Euseb. *Canon*, s. a. 1487 for what is said of Judith, and s. a. 1540 for Esther; and compare Marianus Scotus *passim*.

³ He has Ermeides for Smerdis; Fogodianus for Sogdianus; to say nothing of smaller errors.

⁴ Higden errs in saying "quem *occiderunt Romani*."

⁵ He makes Caranus begin to reign 1203 years after Abraham; and Perseus' reign to end 1850 years after Abraham.

⁶ See Euseb. *Canon*, s. a. 2261. But the words "primusque omnium ex Romanis imperatoribus Christianus fuit" have no counterpart in the Armenian version, and are probably an addition by Jerome himself. (See Aucher's note, p. 197.)

fabulous donation of Constantine to the pope at the conclusion.

The ninth chapter is devoted to the early history of Assyria, from the times of Belus, the son of Nimrod, and second founder of Babylon, and of Ninus, the son of Belus, and second founder of Nineveh. The chapter concludes with the exploits of Semiramis, wife of Ninus, who had also a son of the same name. The authorities referred to are St. Augustine, Orosius, Petrus Comestor, Isidore of Seville, and Justin. It would be useless to dwell upon the history, where all is mythology and fable. Higden in the same chapter discusses the origin of pagan idolatry from Petrus Comestor, Isidore of Seville, St. Augustine, and an Alexander who is doubtless Alexander Neckham.¹ He also mentions from St. Jerome a strange superstition connected with the worship of Fortune. In the course of his quotations are many things which may reasonably be questioned, but their discussion need hardly be entered upon in this place.²

The histories of Abraham and the patriarchs comprised in the tenth, eleventh, and twelfth chapters need not detain us long. The life of the former is mostly taken from Genesis, a few particulars about him being added from Josephus and Petrus Comestor. Melchisedech's history and interview with Abraham are slightly enlarged from St. Jerome and Petrus Comestor; from the latter Higden explains the meaning of Kirjath-Arba to be the City of Four.³ From the same authority he tells us that the Jews give their sons names, when they are circumcised, in allusion to Abram's name being

Early
history of
Assyria
up to
the age of
Abraham.

THIRD
AGE OF
THE
WORLD.
Lives of
Abraham
and of his
children.

¹ See Fabricius, *Bibl. Med. et Inf. Latin.* s. v. p. 174. His *Mythologia* has not, I believe, been printed.

² As the identification of Zoroastes, king of Bactria, with Ham, and of Belus with Baal. They are

taken from Petrus Comestor, *Hist. Lib. Genes.* capp. 39, 40.

³ The Rabbins and St. Jerome are the original authorities for this view, which seems contrary to the derivation given in Josh. xiv. 15. See Mr. Grove's remarks in *Smith's Dict. of the Bible*, s. v.

changed into Abraham at the time of his circumcision ; also that Keturah, Abraham's wife after Sarah's death, was Hagar under a new name.¹ For the other patriarchs, Isaac, Jacob, and his family, as well as Lot, Higden has scarcely anything to say which is not contained in the Old Testament,² though he sometimes prefers to refer to other books, and not to the original authority itself.

Contem-
porary
events in
Greece and
Egypt.

The eleventh and twelfth chapters contain a few particulars relating to the early traditions of Greece and Egypt ; Higden regards them as real events, and, like Eusebius and others, assigns dates to their occurrence.³ His remarks on Minerva and Prometheus are mostly taken from St. Augustine ; also those on the kingdom of the Argives, and on Egyptian affairs. The last are further illustrated in some slight degree from Isidore, Petrus Comestor, and Hugutio Pisanus. The myths of Atlas, Triptolemus, and Ceres, are related from Isidore and Petrus Comestor. It is needless to say anything of these in this place ; but it may be observed Higden's knowledge of them is not very profound.⁴

¹ The derivation of Ishmael's descendants, the Saracens, from Sarah (p. 292), occurs in Isidore, lib. ix. c. 2., and in Marianus Scotus, Col. 76.

² St. Augustine's remarks, if indeed they be his, quoted by Higden (p. 304), about Potiphar, arise from the misrendering, as it would seem, of the LXX. and Vulgate. The identification of Potiphar with Potipherah is very questionable, and is not mentioned with favour by Augustine, *Quæst in Gen.* 136. (tom. iii. Col. 307, ed. ant. v. 1700.) But Higden appears to copy not from Augustine, but from Petrus Comestor, capp. 88 and 92.

³ The events which Higden no-

tices are in several instances tacitly taken from Eusebius ; his history of Cres, for example, p. 294. Cf. Euseb. *Can.* s. a. 56, p. 37, Auch. The dates however do not always accurately correspond. Higden's date of the Ogygian deluge (p. 300) is 265 years after Abraham ; the MSS., however, vary ; in Eusebius it is eleven years earlier. See Euseb. *Chron.* s. a. 254, and Migne's notes, col. 142. Marianus Scotus places it (col. 80), 260 years after Abraham.

⁴ Thus we have (p. 296) professedly from St. Augustine : " Ap-
paruit virgo Tritonia nomine,
" quam Græci Minervam dicunt."
The passage about Tritonia is in *De*

Higden's account of Moses (capp. xiii. and xiv.) is mostly to be found in the Pentateuch, though he prefers to derive it from secondary authorities, such as Josephus and Petrus Comestor.¹ There are however traditional stories mingled with the scriptural account, nearly all of which are preserved by Josephus.² In the same chapters are brief allusions to Grecian history and mythology (see summary of contents), on which we need not dwell,³ for which Higden refers to Josephus,

Histories
of Moses,

Civit. Dei lib. xviii. c. 8., but St. Augustine (as may be supposed) does not say that Minerva is a Greek name; this error was derived from Petrus Comestor, who doubtless was thinking of this same passage, but in ignorance of Greek wrote "apud lacum Tritonidem" "virgo apparuit, quam Græci "Minervam dixerunt." *Hist. Gen.* c. 76. Elsewhere, when Higden professes to refer to St. Augustine, he is in reality closely copying Petrus Comestor. At p. 310, his account of Prometheus agrees almost word for word with Petrus (*Hist. Gen.* c. 86), though he refers to Aug. *C. D.* lib. xviii., meaning no doubt c. 8, which however does not contain all that Petrus says, and which Higden transfers. Probably in Higden's MS. of Petrus, the authorities were set down in the margin. Higden's reference in the same place to Isidore, lib. xiii. should be lib. xix. [c. 32.], and ought to be prefixed to the sentence beginning *Et etiam*; but here also he is really copying Comestor.

¹ Higden, when he refers to the Pentateuch directly, misquotes it. Thus at p. 318, and at p. 324, he refers to *Genesis*, when he should have written *Exodus*. At p. 328 *Genesis* is similarly an error for

Exodus; but, as most MSS. omit all reference, this false reference may not be due to Higden himself.

² As the name (Thermuth) of Pharaoh's daughter; the treading under foot of Pharaoh's crown by Moses; the war of Moses against the Ethiopians; his marriage with Tharbis, daughter of the king of Ethiopia; and a few other smaller matters (*Ant.* ii. 9, 10.) The story of Moses burning his tongue with live coals is taken from Petrus Comestor (*Hist. Lib. Exod.* c. 5.), and does not, I believe, occur in Josephus. Petrus indicates that it is derived from Hebrew sources. The story about Moses making a ring of memory and a ring of forgetfulness, also preserved by Petrus (*Hist. Lib. Exod.* c. 6), savours of an Arabian origin. See Higden, p. 322.

³ For Dasaneus, which is the name by which he tells us (p. 336) that Marianus Scotus calls the Phœnician Hercules, we should perhaps read Doseanus, as in Herold's edition of Marianus, col. 90. Eusebius, in Jerome's version, has Desinaus; in the Armenian, Desaudas; in Syn-cellus, Dibdas. See Hieron. *Op.* tom. viii. col. 182, and the notes in Migne's edition (Paris, 1846), and Euseb. *Canon. Vers. Arm.* p. 59. (Auch.)

St. Augustine, and Orosius; he has likewise tacitly incorporated some parts of the Canon of Eusebius.¹

and of
Joshua.

The history of Joshua is very briefly contained in the fifteenth chapter; with the exception of the length of his government, which is added from Josephus,² and of the confirmation of his dying covenant, by the pouring out of water, related from Petrus Comestor,³ the whole may be found in the Old Testament.

History of
other
nations in
their times.

The allusions to profane history and mythology are numerous, but mostly brief. Some of them are evidently taken from Eusebius, or rather from his copyist Marianus Scotus, as, for example, those relating to Erichthonius, Phenix, Cadmus, and Asterius.⁴ He is more particular about the legends relating to Jove and Saturn, for which he refers to St. Augustine, Isidore, Eutropius, as well as to Alexander Neckham and Henricus, who may be Henry of Huntingdon. Higden himself properly points out the inconsistencies in the accounts which authors have delivered. In this chapter we have (from Isidore) an example of the rationalizing method of explaining myths, viz., in the case of Europa, which in a succeeding chapter is set forth at length.

Sacred and
profane
history in

In the following chapters Higden gives an account of Jewish affairs under the judges, most usually assigning

¹ As the building of the temple of Delphi by Erysichthon (p. 334). This is also included in the Chronicle of Marianus Scotus, cap. *Moses*, as well as the change of the name Aerea into Egypt.

² The allusion to Josephus (*Ant. Jud.* v. 1. § 29.) occurs in the midst of a sentence said to be taken from Isidore, *Etym.* lib. v. No such passage occurs there, nor elsewhere in Isidore, so far as I know. The versions may be right in omitting all reference.

³ *Hist. Lib. Jos.* c. 16, where both quotations on p. 346 will be

found. I have in vain sought for Comestor's authority for his statements, which are very positive and explicit. At p. 346. l. 5. *Petrus* and not *Genesis* (see versions) must be the true reading.

⁴ Higden's reference to Marianus as the authority for saying that Asterius and not Jupiter is the father of Rhadamanthus and his brothers, shows that he did not consult Eusebius himself in this instance, from whom Marianus borrows. See *Euseb. Can.* s. a. 570, and Marianus Scotus, Col. 94.

one chapter to each judge in order. He also takes notice of profane history, as the events occur in the times of the government of the successive judges. The sixteenth chapter is devoted to a notice of Othniel, the first of the judges, and to mythical events in Greece and Italy supposed to be contemporary, particularly the birth of the Delian Apollo, and of the Theban Bacchus; also the introduction of letters into Greece and Phenicia by Cadmus and Phenix. These and other matters in this chapter are tacitly derived, as usual, from Eusebius, probably through Marianus Scotus. The only authors referred to in this unimportant chapter are Petrus Comestor, St. Augustine, and Isidore.

The Jewish history in the times of Ehud is related very briefly in the seventeenth chapter. The allusions to Grecian history and mythology are numerous, and mostly the same as those given in Eusebius; they are often expressed in the very words of Jerome's version. Of Hercules we have a full account at the end of the chapter, derived from Justin, Lucan, Virgil, Claudian, and others. Following St. Augustine, he considers that more heroes than one bore the name of Hercules; and mentions the opinion of some, that the word itself signifies a glorious man.

The eighteenth chapter is devoted to the explanations of the Greek mythology which have been proposed by St. Augustine and others, and to the different kinds of fables current in antiquity. Higden quotes Eusebius² as an authority for saying that mythological

the times
of the
Judges.
Othniel.

Ehud.

The Greek
myths arose
principally
in the time
of Ehud.

¹ From this chapter we infer that Higden was not absolutely ignorant of Greek, or at least not ignorant of the numerical value of the Greek letters. It is curious to observe the improvement of the sentence in the later form of the chronicle. But his knowledge perhaps well nigh ended with the alphabet; he mani-

festly shows ignorance of the language in various places.

² The heading is, *Eusebius in Chronicis*. I have in vain searched the Canon of Eusebius for the passage. It is true that Eusebius places a good many of the myths in Ehud's time in the body of his chronicle.

fables were invented in Greece principally in the time of Ehud, and Augustine's opinion that they arose between the time of Joshua's death and the Trojan war. It is not necessary to say anything here of the different kinds of fables, or of the interpretations given to the different myths. Higden refers in the course of his remarks upon them to St. Augustine, Isidore, Peter Comestor,¹ and Alexander Neckham. He concludes with an account of Mercury and his inventions.

Events in
the time of
Deborah ;

The history of the judges is continued in chapter nineteen, which contains the history of Deborah (or, as Higden, in common with Petrus Comestor, writes her name, Delborah) and of Barak. He notices, from St. Augustine, the fall of the Argive kingdom, which is translated to Mycenæ, and the rise of the Laurentine monarchy in Italy. The death of Liber Pater, the reign of Midas, and the foundation of Troy, are introduced here after Eusebius, though without reference to any authority.

of Gideon ;

Higden proceeds in the twentieth chapter to notice very briefly the history of Gideon, and observes, from Josephus,² that Tyre was founded in his days. He then touches on the histories of Minos, Theseus and the Minotaur, Helen, Dædalus, his son Icarus, and his nephew Perdix, from Isidore and Petrus Comestor. This leads him to describe the various Labyrinths from Hugo Pisanus.³ From the same authority he gives an account

¹ See p. 378. Comestor, who refers to Walafrid Strabus, strangely supposes the chorus introduced into Greece to be a kind of musical instrument. See *Hist. Lib. Jud.* c. 9. The passage quoted at p. 376 occurs in c. 8 of the same book, but Comestor places the event in time of Gideon; this is not the only chronological discrepancy between Higden and Comestor. The former places the rape of Helen in the

time of Gideon, quoting the words of Comestor very closely (p. 382), who places it in the time of Jair. (*Hist. Lib. Jud.* c. 11.)

² The citation is probably derived from Marianus Scotus, cap. *Gedeon*, who, copying Eusebius, refers to his *Ant. Jud.* lib. iii. The true reference is to lib. viii. c. 3.

³ Hugo however does but copy Isidore, lib. xv. cap. 2. § 36.

of the plague which afflicted the Athenians in consequence of their murder of Icarus and of the suicide of his daughter Erigone; and of its expiation by images oscillating in the air.¹

The histories of Abimelech and Tola are briefly related in the twenty-first chapter, in which Higden introduces (after Eusebius) allusions to the battle of the Lapithæ and the Centaurs, and to the departure of Medea to Colchis. From Justin an account is given of Faunus, king of Italy, and of his wife Fatua; also of the birth of king Latinus. He concludes with an account of Vesores, who is possibly the same as Sesostris, king of Egypt, and his war with the Scythians, and thence passes to the origin and history of the Amazons, herein copying pretty closely the fourteenth and fifteenth chapters of the first book of Orosius.

After alluding to the history of Jair in his twenty-second chapter, Higden mentions (after Eusebius) the opinion of some that Carthage was now founded. He alludes also (still following the same authority,) to the war of Minos with Dædalus, and ends this short chapter with an account of the introduction of the Latin alphabet into Italy by Carmentis, mother of king Latinus, and one of the Camenæ, to which is appended a brief history of the four stages of Latinity; the whole being taken from Isidore.² Of Jephthah, the successor of Jair, Higden mentions little more than the name (c. xxiii.), but immediately passes on to mention the rise of the Latin kingdom under Latinus, the first king. He then tells us, from Isidore, that the Erythrean Sibyl flourished in his reign, and gives an account of the ten Sybils, and a derivation of the word Sibylla. From St. Augustine, who places

¹ Hugo derives his account from Servius on Virg. *Georg.* ii. 389. See also Facciolati, *Lex.* s. v. *Oscillum.*

² Lib. i. c. 4. (not 10.), and Lib. ix. c. 1. (not 7).

The Argonautic expedition and the Trojan war.

the Erythrean Sibyl in the time of Romulus, he quotes a prophecy of hers relating to Christ. He then goes on to give an account of the Argonautic expedition and of the Trojan war, principally from Justin and Dares Phrygius. The history of the latter is pursued throughout the whole of the twenty-fourth chapter, which also relates (or rather, barely alludes to) the government of Israel by Ibzan, or, as Higden writes it, Abessa.¹

Sacred and profane history in the times of the later judges, Elon, Abdon, and Sampson.

In the twenty-fifth chapter we have brief notices of Elon (Aylon. *Higden*; Ahialon, *Vulg.*), and of some variations of chronology of Josephus and Eusebius, tacitly derived from Marianus Scotus;² also of Abdon or Labdon, in the third year of whose government Troy was taken, 432 years before the building of Rome. He then goes on to remark, from St. Augustine, that the Greeks

Return of the Greeks from Troy; certain miraculous accounts discussed.

on their return home from Troy met with many disasters, mentioning particularly the change of the companions of Diomedes into birds. This gives Higden an opportunity of bringing together a number of curious stories to the same effect from Varro, Pliny, St. Augustine, Apuleius, and William of Malmesbury. These need not be discussed here, entertaining as they are. He concludes with quotations from St. Augustine and Giraldus,³ which incline to recognize demoniacal agency in these histories.

Trojans' affairs.

Higden now passes on (c. xxvi.) to the affairs of the Trojans after the siege of Troy, and relates the wanderings of Eneas to Sicily and Africa after Martinus Polonus,⁴ but expresses his doubts about the truth of his meeting with Dido, as Eneas probably lived more than three centuries before Carthage was built, if Justin and

¹ The Vulgate (*Jud.* xii. 8) has Abesan; Petrus Comestor (*Hist. Lib. Jud.* c. 13) calls him Abessan.

² Marian. Scot. cap. *Achialon*, 105.

³ Aug. *C.D.* lib. xviii. c. 18. and

Girald. Cambr. *Top. Hib.* ii. 19., who refers to the same passage of Augustine.

⁴ Mart. Polon. *Chron.* p. 4, ed. Bas, 1559.

others are to be trusted. He then proceeds to relate, after the same Martinus, the conquests of Eneas in Italy, the foundation of Lavinium, and the death of Eneas, who was succeeded by his son Ascanius, the founder of Alba Longa. He left his kingdom to Silvius Posthumus, his half-brother, because his own son Iulus, from whom the Julian family sprang, was of too tender an age. For these events Higden appears mainly to follow Eusebius, Marianus Scotus (cap. *Samson*), and Martinus Polonus, but there is some error in the references in his MSS. (see notes.)¹ He then, following Eusebius, makes mention of the events in the time of Sampson, such as the escape of Ulysses from Scylla and the Sirens, and the murder of Pyrrhus, the son of Achilles, by Orestes.² He concludes by observing (after Eusebius) that some place Homer's age here, but notes the variations of ancient authors in determining the time when he flourished.

Our author now approaches the fabulous history of Britain. After slightly touching the history of Eli (noticing the variations in chronology between Josephus and the Septuagint), and of Ruth, and of the recovery of Troy by Hector's sons after Eusebius (who however places the event earlier) he proceeds, still following Eusebius, with the succession of the Latin kings. Silvius Posthumus, the third king, son of Eneas, and brother of Ascanius, now begins to reign, whose son Brutus, according to the British accounts, invaded Britain. The Roman account, he observes (with which

¹ I now believe that *Eutropius* is an error for *Eusebius*, whose Canon (s. a. 870) contains part of Higden's account.

² The word *Ægyptiorum* (p. 438), which perplexed me (see notes), is taken from Marianus Scotus (cap. *Samson*), who intended *regnum* or *rex* to be supplied. (In Eusebius,

however, whom he miscopies, the name occurs in the column headed *Atheniensium* [*regnum*,] s. a. 854.) But Pyrrhus was doubtless king of some part of Northern Greece, perhaps Epirus, as the later kings of Epirus claimed affinity with Achilles. See also Isidore, xv. 1. § 43.

Eusebius agrees), differs from our own respecting the father of Brutus, and then, after entering minutely into the pedigree and history of the Latin kings, he concludes that Silvius Posthumus cannot be the father of Brutus. He proceeds, however, with the history of Brutus according to Geoffrey of Monmouth,¹ and in due course notices his invasion of Britain, of which he became the first king, after his destruction of the giants. The British history is now slightly interrupted by a notice of Samuel and his chronology according to Josephus; but Higden soon returns to it, and notices, after Geoffrey, the reigns of Loctrinus, son of Brutus, and of his wife Guendolena, who murdered him.

History of
Saul.

In the twenty-eighth chapter we have an account of Saul, and of the length of his reign according to Josephus; also a notice (after Eusebius) of the succession of the Latin kings, and of Codrus, the last king of Athens, which he partly derives from St. Augustine. Higden then reverts to Britain, and, following Geoffrey tacitly,² relates that Maddan succeeded his father Loctrinus, leaving two sons, Mempricius and Maulus.

Termination of the third age of the world.

With Saul's death terminates the third age of the world, from the birth of Abraham to the reign of David, and Higden notices the unimportant variation of the chronology between Isidore and Josephus.

Description of MSS. β. and γ. which have been occasionally collated for this volume.

In bringing the second volume of Higden to a close, I should observe that I have occasionally consulted two MSS. of Trevisa's translation, which were not made use of in the first volume.³ The older of these (γ. of the notes) is Cotton MS. Tiberius D. vii. in the British Museum. In the last printed catalogue it is said to be wanting, "Desideratur;" but a note in the copy in the Museum

¹ *Hist. Reg. Brit.* lib. i. c. 3, et seq. Alfred of Beverley (p. 10. et seq.) copies his account, to whom Higden also refers.

² Lib. ii. c. 6. Geoffrey writes

Malim for Maulus; Alfred has Maulim (p. 13.)

³ Some corrections of the text made by their aid in vol. i. will be found in the addenda to the present volume.

says, "Restored, J. Holmes." It had been seen by T. Smith, who wrote the Catalogue of the Cotton MSS. printed at Oxford in 1696, and afterwards by the Hon. W. Burton in the following century, who annotated the copy in the British Museum. It is likewise mentioned in the Report on the Cotton MSS. after the fire, printed in 1732. The MS. is in quarto, on vellum of 296 leaves, each page containing about 37 lines, and is rubricated and slightly illuminated. It contains moreover the Dialogue of Dominus and Clericus, and Trevisa's Epistle to Lord Berkeley. It is injured by fire, though not very considerably; a few leaves however at the beginning and end are only partially legible. It would seem to be written towards the close of the fourteenth century, or rather a little later. Some extracts from it have been lately printed in Mr. Morris's *Specimens of Early English*, whose book first made me acquainted with its existence.¹ It differs much from the standard MS. and α . in the forms of the pronouns, and preserves in some cases the true text, where they have corrupted it. The other MS. (β of the notes) which has been collated in cases of difficulty is MS. Harl. 1900; it has been sufficiently described in the Harleian Catalogue of 1808. It would appear to belong to the beginning of the fifteenth century.

Cockfield Rectory,
February 13, 1869.

¹ Printed at Oxford, in 1867. See pp. 333-344; in which are contained the forty-first, forty-second, and fifty-ninth chapters of the first book. Compare pp. 13-31, and pp. 157-163 of the present volume.



SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

BOOK THE FIRST—(*continued*).

CAP. XXXIX.

Great Britain or England. Various designations of the island.

Originally called Albion, from its white rocks. Afterwards denominated Anglia by the Angles, the derivation being uncertain. Considered by some another world in itself. Charlemagne's opinion of its fertility. - - pp. 2-6.

CAP. XL.

England, continued. Its site and dimensions.

England's position defined in reference to Spain, Germany, and France. The channel fifty miles across at Boulogne. The longest day has eighteen hours. England is broadest in the middle. Richborough the first city that attracts the eye of sailors. Britain is in length eight hundred miles, in breadth two hundred, in circumference between three and four thousand. . . . pp. 6-12.

CAP. XLI.

England, continued. The richness of its natural productions.

The climate of England more dry than that of Ireland; not more healthy. Cattle and horses abundant; also various wild animals and birds; freshwater fish in great numbers, particularly pike and eel. Fish used as food for hogs. Whales, porpoises, and seals often taken, many shell-fish also, as the pearl-mussel; others are used in dyeing. Wolves are met with in small quantity. Salt wells and hot springs also occur. Metals abundant, copper, iron, lead, tin, and silver. Marl, chalk, amber, various marbles, white and red clay for earthenware and bricks. Wool, hides, skins, iron, lead, salt, and white metal among its principal exports. England a rich and noble country, sufficient for its own needs, and indispensable to the rest of the world. - - - pp. 12-20.

CAP. XLII.

England, continued. The marvels therein explained.

Britain contains hot springs, over which Minerva presides, which are splendidly decorated as baths. In Peccum (the Peak of Derbyshire?) are caverns full of mighty winds; and at Cherdhole (Cheddar?) is an endless cave under ground. At Stonehenge are marvellous stones of unknown origin and significance. Britain has several wonderful lakes; one containing sixty inhabited islands, surrounded by sixty rocks, and having sixty rivers flowing into it. Also a lake, which becomes hot or cold according as the bather desires. Other lakes with various miraculous qualities. Petrifying springs near Winchester and Bath. Prophetic fluctuations of the Dee near Chester. No salmon found in Bala lake, though abundant in the Dee. Many bodies of saints preserved in England uncorrupt, as SS. Ethelreda, Edmund king of East Anglia, Elphege, Cuthbert. - - - - pp. 22-30.

CAP. XLIII.

England, continued. The principal divisions of the island.

After the time of Brutus Britain was divided into three parts: Loegria, now England; Cambria, now Wales; and Albania, now Scotland; so named from Loerinus, Camber, and Albanactus, sons of Brutus. Their limits described. Full account of Offa's dyke, which afterwards artificially separated Wales from England. - - - - pp. 30-34.

CAP. XLIV.

England, continued. The islands adjacent to Britain.

The Isle of Wight described; its dimensions. The dimensions, population, and fertility of the Isle of Anglesey. The Isle of Man and its superstitions. The Isle of Thanet. - pp. 36-42.

CAP. XLV.

England, continued. The Royal Roads.

Immunities attached to ploughs, temples and city roads by Molmutius, king of the Britons. King Belinus, his son, to

prevent ambiguity, defined and repaired four royal roads to be maintained in all their privileges. The Foss road; its course traced. Watling street; its course traced. Erming street; its course traced. Rikenild street; its course traced. pp. 42-47.

CAP. XLVI.

England, continued. The famous rivers.

The Thames, Severn, and Humber divided the ancient kingdoms of Loegria, Cambria, and Northumbria. Course of the Thames described; it was the boundary of the kingdoms of Kent, Essex, Wessex, and Mercia. Origin of the name Sabrina; or Severn. Course and character of the river. Derivation of the name Humber. Its course and affluents. - pp. 48-52.

CAP. XLVII.

England, continued. The famous cities and towns.

Enumeration of ancient British towns and their more recent appellations. Description of several of the more important cities and boroughs: London, Canterbury, Winchester, Bath, Gloucester, Shrewsbury, Nottingham, Lincoln, Leicester. pp. 52-62.

CAP. XLVIII.

England, continued. Cities and towns, continued.

Description of York, Edinburgh, Alcluid or Aldborough, Carlisle, Hexham, Lindsey, Lindisfarn or Holy Island, Chester. pp. 62-84.

CAP. XLIX.

England, continued. The counties or shires.

England contains thirty-two provinces or shires, called counties. The nine southern counties anciently governed by the law called West Saxenelaga. They are Kent, Sussex, Surrey, Hampshire, Berkshire, Wiltshire, Somersetshire, Dorsetshire, and Devonshire. The fifteen eastern and northern shires governed by the Denelaga. They are Essex, Middlesex, Suffolk, Norfolk, Hertfordshire, Huntingdonshire, Northamptonshire, Cambridgeshire, Bedfordshire, Buckinghamshire,

Leicestershire, Derbyshire, Nottinghamshire, Lincolnshire, Yorkshire, Durhamshire, Northumberland, Carlislehire with Cumberland, Applebyshire with Westmorland, Lancashire with its fifteen small shires. The eight midland and western counties governed by the Merchenelaga; viz., Oxfordshire, Warwickshire, Gloucestershire, Worcestershire, Herefordshire, Shropshire, Staffordshire, Cheshire. Explanation of the terms wapentake, hundred, cantred. Ancient extent of Northumbria. William the Conqueror's survey of the country. pp. 84-90.

CAP. L.

England, continued. Different kinds of laws and law terms explained.

Laws of Molmutius; Merchenelaga; Westsaxenelaga; Dene-laga. Laws of Edward the Confessor. Explanation of various law terms therein contained. - - - pp. 90-96.

CAP. LI.

England, continued. The separate kingdoms and their limits.

Line of British monarchs unbroken from Brutus to Julius Caesar. The island tributary to Rome from his time to that of Septinius Severus. The island had kings of its own from Severus to Gratian; when the British succession failed, the Romans were sovereigns. The Picts and Scots harassing the island, the Roman soldiers were withdrawn by Magnus Maximus. The Britons invite the Saxons against the Picts. The Saxons conquer both Picts and Britons, set up kings of their own and found the Heptarchy. This lasted till Athelstan's reign, the first king of all Britain. The Danes infested the kingdom for a hundred and seventy years from the time of Ethelwolf; and held the throne thirty years. The Norman Conquest. The kingdoms of the Heptarchy briefly described. Limits and durations of the kingdoms of Kent, of the South Saxons, of the East Saxons, of the East Angles, of the West Saxons, of the Mercians, of the Northumbrians. Northumbria divided into two provinces, Deira and Bernicia, separated by the Tyne. The Mersey separated Mercia from Northumbria. pp. 96-108.

CAP. LII.

England, continued. The Episcopal sees.

Three archiepiscopal and twenty-eight episcopal sees in Britain in the time of Lucius. The former were London, York, Caerleon. Augustine constituted Canterbury the principal see in place of London. Temporary erection of Lichfield into an archbishopric. York always an archiepiscopal see, but Scotland at length ceased to be subject to its jurisdiction. In king Arthur's time this archbishopric was removed from Caerleon to St. David's. Sampson, the twenty-fourth bishop of St. David's, retired in consequence of the prevalence of the plague to Dol in Brittany; twenty-one archbishops from Sampson to the time of Henry I. Up to this time the Welsh bishops were wholly independent of the authority of any other church. From the time of Boniface, archbishop of Canterbury in the reign of Henry II., the Welsh bishops became subject to that see. Two primates now in England; the archbishop of Canterbury, primate of all England; the archbishop of York, primate of England. From and after the time of the Conqueror various sees, (Dorchester, Lichfield, Thetford, Sherburn, Wells, Cornwall, and Selsey,) were translated to more important cities. The bishop of Rochester is only the chaplain of the archbishop of Canterbury, and has no diocese. pp. 110-118.

CAP. LIII.

England, continued. The Western bishops.

Foundation of the sees of Dorchester (near Oxford) and Winchester. The see of Sherburn separated from Winchester by archbishop Théodore. King Edward the Elder created the sees of Wells, Crediton, and St. German in Cornwall. Ramsbury created soon after. All these sees, except Winchester, translated to larger places by William the Conqueror. pp. 118-122.

CAP. LIV.

England, continued. The Eastern bishops.

The sees of Dunwich and Elmham founded. The former see suppressed. In the Conqueror's time Elmham transferred to Thetford. William Rufus removed the see of Thetford to Norwich. Henry I. separates Ely from the see of Lincoln. pp. 122-124.

CAP. LV.

England, continued. The Midland bishops.

Lichfield the only original see in Mercia. It was in Offa's time an archbishopric. Succession of bishops of Lichfield. Archbishop Theodore constituted three additional sees for Mercia viz., Worcester, Chester, and Lindsey. The see of Dorchester was then transferred from Wessex to Mercia. William the Conqueror removes the see of Lindsey to Lincoln.

pp. 126-130.

CAP. LVI.

England, continued. The Northern bishops.

York the only original see of Northumbria. Early civil and ecclesiastical commotions have disturbed the succession of York. Aidan, bishop of Lindisfarne, in the district of Bernicia. Archbishop Theodore ordains Tunbert to the see of Hexham, Eatas to Lindisfarne, Eadhed to Ripon, Trunwynne to Whithorne in Galloway. These four sees gradually became extinct. Their history traced. Durham takes the place of Hexham and Lindisfarne in the reign of Ethelred II. The see of Carlisle founded by Henry I.

pp. 130-136.

CAP. LVII.

England, continued. The Number of the episcopal sees.

The archbishop of Canterbury has four Welsh bishops and thirteen English bishops under his jurisdiction. Enumeration of these; the limits of their dioceses. The York metropolitan has only two suffragans. The archbishop of Canterbury, the primate of all England; the archbishop of York, the primate of England. The rights of either primate. This subject to be discussed more fully hereafter.

- - - pp. 136-142.

CAP. LVIII.

England, continued. The different Tribes that peopled the country.

The Britons the first inhabitants of the island. They came over from Armorica to the south of Britain four hundred and thirty-two years before the building of Rome. In Vespasian's time the Picts came from Scythia to the north of Ireland, where

they found the Scots dwelling. These recommended them to settle in the north of Britain about Caithness, and promised them aid against the Britons. The Picts and Scots intermarry. The Picts said by some to be synonymous with the Agathyrsi or with the Goths. The tyrant Maximus, A.D. 383, carried them to Gaul to aid him against Gratian. Carausius, the tyrant (circa 290) gave them a dwelling-place in the south of Scotland, where they have since remained mingled with the Britons. This tract afterwards belonged to Northumbria, but was at length made by Kenneth (Macalpine), king of Scotland (circa 840), part of his own dominions. The Irish Scot-afterwards (circa 500) came over with their chief Reuda to Scotland, and settled about Argyle. The Saxons or Angles assisted from Germany by the Britons against the Scots and Picts, drive the Britons themselves into Wales. In the time of Egbert, king of the Westsaxons, all the natives of England were called Angles. The Danes next invade the country and ravage it for about two hundred years; they afterwards fail. The Normans next come over with duke William. Last of all, men of Flanders sailed hither in the reign of Henry I., and settled at Haverfordwest. In Higden's time the Scots lived in Scotland, the Britons in Wales, the Flemings in West Wales, the Normans and Angles mixed in the whole island. The Danes have vanished insensibly, but the Picts were exterminated by fraud by the Scots. - - pp. 142-156.

CAP. LIX.

England, continued. The languages of the natives.

The native dialects are of the same number as the native tribes. The Scotch and Welsh being less mixed with the rest retain their dialects most uncorrupt. The Flemings of West Wales speak English fairly. The English dialects were formerly three, southern, midland, and northern; these originated with the three Germanic tribes who peopled these districts; they became corrupted by Danish and Norman mixtures. The corruption of English is increased by two causes; the first is, that boys construe their lessons in school in French, and are taught to speak French to the neglect of their own language; the second is, that rustics endeavour to ape their betters and to appear as Frenchified as possible. The three English dialects extend east and west across the island, and consequently the inhabitant of Mid-Anglia is better able to understand a North Briton or a South Briton than these can understand each other. The Northumbrian dialect, especially in Yorkshire, is almost un-

intelligible to the southerners, who have little intercourse with their less civilised countrymen of the north, whither the Court seldom repairs. - - - - - pp 156-162.

CAP. LX.

England, continued. The manners of the natives.

The Welsh Flemings brave and enterprising, apt for the arts of war and peace, English in feeling, hostile to the Welsh. Their superstitions. The southern English are of a more quiet and mild disposition than the northern; the midlanders intermediate in character. Gluttony, drunkenness, and excess of apparel, are vices especially English. Skill of the English in war; their love of travel, and wide dispersion over the world. Their industry of all kinds. Pope Eugenius' praise and blame of the nation. Higden's invectives against their fastidious and discontented spirit, ever affecting the dress and manners of those above their own station. A prophecy of a holy hermit against their vices. - - - - - pp. 164-174.

BOOK THE SECOND.

The History of the World down to the Destruction of the First Temple.

CAP. I.

The Prologue. Man. His likeness to the World.

A description of the countries of the world must be followed by the history of the world's actions. The great world was made for the little world, which is Man, on whom the Creator impressed the likeness of the great world. Man and the world resemble each other in three respects; in their dimensions, in their composition, and in their operations.

(1.) As from the zenith to the nadir the distance is as great as from east to west, so the height of a man from head to foot is as great as the space from the end of one extended arm to that of the other.

(2.) Secondly, in the great and little world the natural disposition is similar; its parts and members correspond to one another, and a dislocation of any part is followed by disturbance in both. The world and man are both framed on a system of adaptation and gradation. Existence, life, and

sensation are common to man and the three kingdoms of nature. They are also composed of the same four elements, fire, water, earth, and air. The very word *ἄνθρωπος* is, as it were, a tree upturned (*ἀνατροπή*), his hair being the roots, his arms and legs the branches.

(3.) In their operations both man and the world have much in common. Both develop their powers; both have their childhood, youth, and age. His energies resemble those of the elements and of the planets. As the outer world, especially in its extremities, has its miracles, so has man. In the human face, consisting of few parts, there is such diversity that of the many thousands of faces scarcely any two are alike. Various miraculous and venomous powers found in some tribes of men. Marvellous qualities found in the parts of some men's bodies. The great toe of Pyrrhus; the teeth of the son of Prusias; the eyes of Strabo and Tiberius. The mental powers of others no less marvellous. The memory of Seneca and Cineas. The manifold capacity of Cæsar. Sexual mutations and other peculiarities of physical structure and constitution of various persons. Different kinds of conception in women. - - - - - pp. 174-201.

CAP. II.

On human monsters.

The Cyclopes, Sciapodes, and Antipodes. Other monstrosities, as the change of men into beasts; also the natural change of one animal into another. - - - - - pp. 202-211.

CAP. III.

Man's unlikeness to the world.

Man's state before the fall; he had special prerogatives above the rest of the world; he was in perfect harmony with himself, flourishing without decay of strength, unchanging and incorruptible, with Paradise for his dwelling-place, and with God for his reward. After the fall his honours were taken from him; and he is compared to the beasts that perish. Nay, he is even inferior to them, for whereas animals have the natural defence of hide, bristles, hair, feathers, or scales, he is naked and helpless, and can of himself only weep. He is weighed down by the anxiety of life and the necessity of death. He, unlike other animals, is the enemy of his own species. He is exposed by a righteous punishment to continual wars from without and to continual wars from within. - pp. 212-218.

CAP. IV.

The creation of Adam.

THE FIRST AGE OF THE WORLD.—Adam fell after the mid-day of his creation. His change of state from weal to woe. In his fifteenth year he begat Cain and his sister Calmana; and in his thirtieth Abel and his sister Delbora. Birth of Seth differently reckoned in the Hebrew text and in the Septuagint. Adam is buried in Kirjath Arba, *i.e.*, the City of Four.

Brief notices of Seth, Enos, Cainan, Mahalaleel, Jared, Enoch, Methuselah, and Lamech, with the chronological variations of the Hebrew and of the Septuagint. - - pp. 218-224.

CAP. V.

The posterity of Lamech.

Lamech introduces bigamy; he is the father of Jabal, Jubal, Tubalcain, and Noema their sister. The arts of building, music, agriculture, weaving, metallurgy, and sculpture now invented or improved. Lamech accidentally shoots Cain while out hunting.

The longevity of the patriarchs not incredible. The corruption of mankind, and the birth of the giants. Adam's prophecy. The construction of the inscribed column of brick and marble, which should be proof against fire or flood. The marble column still extant in Syria. Noah and his family. The construction of the ark. The deluge. Termination of the first age of the world. Its duration variously computed.

pp. 214-236. 2/

CAP. VI.

The posterity of Noah.

THE SECOND AGE OF THE WORLD.—Noah leaves the ark. The rainbow. The symbolical significance of its colours. Before the flood was no rain or rainbow, nor use of flesh, fish, or wine. Death of Noah. His sons and their posterity. The genealogy of Shem pursued. Short notices of Arphaxad, Cainan, Salah, Heber, Phaleg, Regau (or Reu), Sarug, Nahor, and Terah, the father of Abraham, with whose birth the second age of the world terminates. Its duration differently estimated in the Hebrew and in the LXX. Observations on the discrepancy. No Greek or barbarian history before Abraham.

Ionicus, a son of Noah, reigns as far as the Indian ocean. His prophecies. Nimrod, his disciple, founds Babylon and reigns there. The tower of Babel built in the time of Nimrod, who also founds Nineveh, afterwards enlarged by Ninus, and introduces fire worship. - - - pp. 238-250.

CAP. VII.

Of Noah's children, and the kingdoms founded by their posterity.

Shem's descendants occupied the south countries from the East to Phenicia. Ham's posterity extended from Sidon by the sea to the Straits of Gibraltar. Japhet's children ruled over Mid Asia, from Mount Taurus northward, and over all Europe as far as the British ocean. From the first dispersion of nations the kingdoms of Assyria, Egypt, Scythia, and Sicyon commenced about the same time. The kingdoms of Assyria, Persia, Greece, and Rome, which succeeded one another, were the principal empires as regards their progress. The kingdoms which were coeval with Assyria must be treated of first. - - - pp. 250-258.

CAP. VIII.

On the kingdoms of Scythia, Sicyon, Egypt, Assyria, Persia, Greece, and Rome.

The kingdom of Scythia took its rise in the time of Sarug, the ancestor of Abraham. Thanais the first king. The river Tanais named after him. This kingdom subdued Asia, and conquered Darius, Cyrus, and Alexander.

The kingdom of Sicyon commenced in the time of Nahor, Abraham's great-grandfather, and lasted under thirty-two kings till the time of Eli. Dionysius, however, places its commencement a little later.

The kingdom of Egypt began likewise in the time of Nahor. Fifteen dynasties before Abraham. Then sixteen dynasties of Thebes. After them eighteen Diospolitan dynasties. From the time of Cambyses Egypt was under seven Persian kings. It had then ten kings of its own, till Artaxerxes Ochus re-conquered it for Persia, which held possession till the time of Alexander. The Lagidæ or Ptolemies, of whom Cleopatra, subdued by Augustus, was the last. Egypt thenceforward subject to Rome.

The kingdom of Assyria, the earliest of all, was founded by Belus, the son of Nimrod, and lasted till the reign of Sardanapalus, who died in the reign of Uzziah, king of Judah. Arbaces then transferred the kingdom of Assyria to the Medes. Assyria, however, had still governors of its own, though not monarchs, as Pul, Tiglath-Pileser, Shalmaneser, Sennacherib, Esarhaddon, Sargon. In the time of the elder Cyrus, who overthrew Astyages, the kingdom of the Medes was transferred to the Persians.

In the time of Hezekiah, king of Judah, arose the great kingdom of the Babylonians and Chaldeans, governed by seven kings, of whom Belshazzar or Nabar was the last. Cyrus slew him and joined his kingdom to his own.

The monarchy of Persia founded by Cyrus. The names of the kings. Alexander annexes Persia to Greece.

The Macedonian kingdom began under Cranaus (Caranus) in the time of Uzziah, king of Judah, and lasted till the reign of Perseus, slain by the Romans. There were other Greek kingdoms at Sicyon, Argos, Sparta, Epirus, all of which fell before the power of Rome.

The kings of Italy, of whom Janus was first, lasted till Tarquin the Proud, six being Latins, fourteen Albans, seven Romans after the foundation of the city. Consuls, tribunes of the people, and dictators successively governed the Roman State down to the time of Julius Cæsar. Thenceforward Emperors ruled. Augustus reduced the world to one monarchy. Philip Senior, the first Christian Emperor. Constantine the Great made Constantinople a second seat of empire, leaving to the Pope the dignity of the Apostolic See. When Charlemagne, king of France, became Emperor of the West, the title of Roman Emperor remained at Constantinople alone. - - - - - pp. 258-274.

CAP. IX.

The empire of Ninus and Semiramis.

Belus, son of Nimrod and king of Babylon, is succeeded by his son Ninus, who reigned over almost all Asia, except India. Abraham is born in his reign, about 1300 years before the building of Rome. Ninus builds Nineveh, subdues Zoroaster, king of Bactria, and burns his books on magic. After the death of his father Belus, he made an image of him; hence arose idolatry. Baal and Beel, which occur in various combinations, are forms of Bel, the general name for idol. Further remarks on the origin of idolatry and of the heathen gods and superstitions from Alexander Neckham, Isidore, Augustine, and Jerome. Upon the death of Ninus, who was killed by an

arrow in war, his wife Semiramis reigns, feigning herself to be his son. She conquers Ethiopia and India. She is at last murdered by her own son Ninian. Dress and manners of the Assyrian court. - - - pp. 274-284.

CAP. X.

The History of Abraham.

THE THIRD AGE OF THE WORLD.—Abram, the son of Terah, was born two hundred and ninety-two years after the flood. He and his father migrate from Ur of the Chaldees to Haran in Mesopotamia. After Terah's death he goes to Shechem, and thence to Pentapolis, and at length descends into Egypt. He teaches the Egyptians arithmetic and astronomy. He returns from Egypt, and settles near Hebron, or Kirjath-Arba, *i.e.*, the City of Four, because the four greatest patriarchs were buried there. He pays tithes to Melchisedech, who is said to be the same as Shem. Some connect the institution of the Jubilee with Abram. His main Hagar becomes the mother of Ishmael and the Saracens. Abram and his family receive the covenant of circumcision. His name then changed to Abraham; hence the Jews give their sons names when they are circumcised. Destruction of Sodom. History of Lot and his daughters. - - pp. 284-292.

CAP. XI.

History of Isaac and his family. Early history of Greece.

Birth of Isaac; death and burial of Sarah. Abraham marries Hagar, now called Keturah. Isaac marries Rebecca. Cres reigns in Crete; he is one of the Curetes. The appearance of Minerva at the lake Tritonis; she invented spinning and other arts. Rise of the Argive kingdom under Inachus; his son Phoroneus first gave laws to the Greeks; Phegeus, his brother, invented chapels in honour of the gods. Their sister Isis, or Io, teaches the Egyptians agriculture and letters: her sistrum. The birth of Epaphus a fable, as his mother Io was in the time of Isaac, while his father Jupiter lived in the days of Joshua. The flood in Greece in the reign of Ogyges.

History of Jacob, son of Isaac by Rebecca. He serves Laban; his artfulness. Joseph, his son, is sold into Egypt to Potiphar, an eunuch. Potiphar becomes priest of Heliopolis. Death and burial of Isaac. Pharaoh's dream. Jacob comes into Egypt. pp. 294-304.

CAP. XII.

History of the patriarchs concluded. Early history of Greece and Egypt.

Apis, third king of Argos, comes into Egypt; and is there after his death worshipped as Serapis. Apis appears annually in the form of a bull emerging from the Nile. In the reign of Argus, fourth king of Argos, corn began to be cultivated in Greece. Jacob dies, is embalmed, and afterwards buried in Hebron. Legends of Prometheus, Atlas, Triptolemus, and Ceres. Joseph dies, and he and his brethren, as they die, are buried in Hebron. Their bones afterwards translated to Shechem.

pp. 306-314.

CAP. XIII.

History of Moses.

Moses, the son of Amram, was born in the time of the Pharaoh known as Amenophis. Pharaoh's cruelty to the Israelites; their male children cast into the Nile. Moses is saved by Thermuth, the daughter of Pharaoh. Moses brought before the king when an infant; he tramples the king's crown, on which an image of Jove is carved, under foot. His narrow escape from being killed; he then scorches his own tongue with burning coals, and is accordingly supposed to have acted in the matter of the crown in childish simplicity. Moses in process of time leads the Egyptians against the invading Ethiopians, whom he blockades in Saba, the royal city. Tharbis, the king's daughter, surrenders the city to Moses, on condition of his marrying her. Tharbis opposed his return to Egypt; but he gave her a ring of forgetfulness, and so returned. While visiting his brethren in the land of Goshen, he slew an Egyptian who had smitten an Israelite. The deed being known, he fled into the land of Midian, and married Zipporah, daughter of Jethro the priest.

Legends of Antæus, Phaeton, and Deucalion. Cecrops the first king of Athens. - - - - - pp. 314-326.

CAP. XIV.

History of Moses concluded. Early history of Greece and Egypt.

Moses and Aaron stand before Pharaoh, who refuses to let Israel go. The plagues of Egypt. The Exodus. The miracles in

the wilderness. Moses receives the law and constructs the tabernacle. The spies are sent into Canaan, and return. The Israelites wander in the desert forty years. Death of Moses. Cecrops leaves Egypt and builds Athens. Corinth, anciently called Ephyra, built five years earlier. Io, afterwards called Isis, marries Telegonus in Egypt, by whom she has Epaphus. The temple at Delphi built by Erysichthon. Lacedæmon founded. Arcas, king of Argos, names Sicyonia Arcadia after himself. Egypt, formerly known as Aerea, receives its present name. History of Danaus and Egyptus. Legends relating to Bacchus, Mercury, and Hercules.

pp. 326-336.

CAP. XV.

History of Joshua; early history of Egypt, Greece, and Italy. Legends about Jupiter and Saturn.

Joshua succeeds Moses; his acts; he governs Israel twenty-six years.

Erichthonius; Busiris; Phenix and Cadmus. Rape of Europa. Her children. Agenor, king of Libya, and his family. Rationalistic explanation of the legend of Europa and her brothers. Jupiter reigns in Crete; the Cretans who show his tomb are mis-called liars by the lying Greeks, who feign him to be God of gods. History of Jupiter and Saturn considered. Joshua, before his death, makes a covenant with the people, and confirms it by pouring water on the ground. The heathen ratified covenants with the blood of a pig. The reasons for each, and the difference between them. - - pp. 338-346.

CAP. XVI.

Othniel. Early history of Greece and Phenicia.

Chushan, king of Mesopotamia, subdues Israel. Othniel, Caleb's brother, delivers the Israelites, and becomes their judge forty years. The eight years of servitude must be reckoned as part of the forty years. Birth of Apollo, (not the Delphian Apollo, who lived earlier,) in Delos; and of Bacchus in Thebes. Cadmus brings letters to Greece, and Phenix to Phenicia. The latter were written in vermilion. Numerical value of the Greek letters. Demeter and Danae lived at this time. Foundation of Corinth. - - - pp. 348-350.

CAP. XVII.

History of Ehud and Shamgar. Notices of many ancient heroes, especially Hercules.

Ehud, a left-handed man, delivers Israel from Eglon, king of Moab. He was the son of Gera, the son of Jamin, or Geminus. Shamgar slays six hundred Philistines with a ploughshare. Notices of various events in the lives of Triptolemus, Orcus, Proserpine, Perseus, Helle, Amphion, Pelops, &c. Exploits and labours of the later Hercules. - pp. 352-362.

CAP. XVIII.

Explanations of the mythical narratives of antiquity.

Myths arose principally in the time of Ehud. The fables of Esop. St. Augustine and Isidore explain away the myths of Erichthonius, Geryon, the Gorgons, and others, so as to bring out a historical sense. The different kinds of fables; those of Menander, Esop, Hesiod. The traditions relating to Mercury belong to the time of Ehud. Musical instruments then invented. Introduction of the chorus into Greece.

pp. 362-378.

CAP. XIX.

History of Deborah and her contemporaries.

Deborah and Barak judged Israel forty years. Fall of the Argive and rise of the Laurentine monarchy. Mida king of Phrygia. Foundation of Troy. - - - pp. 378-380.

CAP. XX.

History of Gideon and his contemporaries.

Gideon or Jerubbaal governed the Israelites forty years, counting in the years that they served Midian and Amalek. Tyre founded. History of Minos, Theseus, Dædalus, Perdix, and Icarus. The Cretan and other labyrinths. The plague at Athens consequent upon the death of Icarus and Erigone, and its remedy. Derivation of *Oscillum*. - pp. 380-386.

CAP. XXI.

Histories of Abimelech and Tola, and their contemporaries.

Abimelech, son of Gideon by a concubine, slays his brethren, all except one. He judges Israel three years, and is succeeded by Tola, who remains in office twenty-three years. Battle of Lapithæ and Centaurs. Medea goes to Colchis. Fannus reigns in Italy. War of Vesores, king of Egypt, with the Scythians. The Amazons. - - pp. 388-394.

CAP. XXII.

History of Jair, and contemporary events.

Jair and his thirty sons, who rule over thirty cities. After his death Israel became subject to the Philistines and Ammonites. Carthage now founded according to some. The nymph Carmentis introduces the Latin alphabet. Different stages of the Latin language. - - pp. 394-396.

CAP. XXIII.

History of Jephthah and his contemporaries.

Jephthah, the son of a harlot, judged Israel six years. Rise of the Latin kingdom under Latinus. The Erythrean Sibyl now delivers her prophecies concerning Christ. There were ten Sibyls in all. Derivation of the word. Succession of the kings of Athens, one of whom Demophon, aids the Greeks in the Trojan war. The Argonautic expedition. Jason's subsequent expedition to Troy, which he laid waste, and returned home, carrying off Hesione, daughter of Laomedon, king of Troy. - - - - pp. 398-406.

CAP. XXIV.

History of Ibzan and of the Trojan war.

Ibzan of Bethlehem was judge of Israel seven years. Priam promises to forgive the Greeks all injuries, if his sister Hesione were restored. This being refused, the Trojan war breaks out afresh. The history of that war traced to its close. - - - - pp. 406-418.

CAP. XXV.

History of Elon and Abdon, and of the return of the Greeks from the Trojan war.

Elon, of the tribe of Zebulon, judges Israel ten years. Variations of chronologers. Abdon judges Israel eight years. In the third year of his government Troy was taken, 432 years before the building of Rome. The Greeks on their way home met with many troubles. The companions of Diomedes were changed into birds, and haunted a temple of Diomedes (who had miraculously disappeared, and was held as a god) near Mount Garganus in Apulia. Varro confirms the story by the changes of Ulysses' companions into hogs, and of certain Arcadians into wolves. Augustine heard stories of Italian witches who turned men into beasts by giving them cheese. Apuleius' account of himself. A similar account related by William of Malmesbury, in the time of Peter Damian. St. Augustine's story about Præstantius. He and Giraldus incline to recognize demoniacal agency in these histories. - - - - - pp. 418-430.

CAP. XXVI.

The wanderings of Eneas after the fall of Troy.

Accompanied by Anchises and Ascanius he comes to Sicily, and while intending to sail to Italy is driven by a storm to Africa, where, according to the common account, he meets Dido, who falls in love with him. But there are chronological reasons against the common account, as Eneas seems to have lived three centuries before Carthage was built. Dido burns herself to death on a funeral pile. Eneas comes to Italy, allies himself with Evander, who reigned in the Palatine Mount, and in the end overcomes the Tuscans and Latins, and builds Lavinium, named after his wife, Lavinia, a daughter of king Latinus. Ascanius (or Iulus), son of Eneas by Creusa, succeeds Eneas, who fell in fighting against Mezentius; he leaves Lavinium and builds Alba Longa. He is succeeded by Silvius Posthumus, his half-brother.

In the time of Sampson, who judged Israel twenty years, occurred the events of the Odyssey. Pyrrhus is slain by Orestes. Homer now flourished, according to some. Age of Homer uncertain. - - - - - pp. 432-440.

CAP. XXVII.

History of Eli and his contemporaries. Early History of Britain.

Eli presided over Israel forty years, according to Josephus and Isidore, but according to the Septuagint for twenty only. Ruth's history. The sons of Hector recover Troy. Silvius Posthumus begins to reign. Brutus, the son of Posthumus, occupies Britain. Discrepancy between the Roman and British accounts about the father of Brutus. Brutus, whose mother died in childbirth, kills his father when out hunting. Expelled from Italy into Greece, he arrives at length after various wanderings in Britain, destroys the giants, and becomes first monarch of the island, which he calls after his own name. He builds Trinovantum, now called London. He begets three sons, Locrinus, Camber, and Albanactus; and after governing Britain for twenty-four years, dies. The kings of Sicyon come to an end.

Samuel governs Israel twelve years; his institution of the schools of the prophets. Locrinus, son of Brutus, reigns in Britain. His wife, Guendolena, who slew him, reigns after his death for fifteen years. - - - - - pp. 440-446.

CAP. XXVIII.

History of Saul and his contemporaries.

Saul reigns over Israel twenty years according to Josephus. Eneas Silvius, son of Posthumus, reigns over the Latins thirty-one years. Codrus, the last king of Athens, begins to reign. He provokes his own death in order to insure victory to his country. Change of government at Athens.

Maddan, son of Locrinus and Guendolena, reigns in Britain forty years, and begets Mempricius and Maulus. Death of Saul and his sons. The third age of the world now concludes.

pp. 448-450.



ADDENDA ET CORRIGENDA.

VOL. 1.

- Introd. p. xii., notes, col. 1, l. 9. In Chester Cathedral an arched monument is still to be seen in the wall of the south aisle near the choir, which corresponds perfectly with the description quoted, and it has been recently supposed by some antiquaries, as I learn, to be the tomb of Higden. The opinion, so far as I can judge, seems to be well founded.
- Page xviii., line 13. "There was . . . facts of the case." This sentence must be cancelled, and the first three lines of the note also. Roger Frensd was abbot of Chester, not in Higden's time, as my argument required, but about a century earlier.
- Page xxv., line 12, for *Jersuaelem* read *Jerusalem*.
- Page xxxii., note, col. 1, l. 18, and p. 256, note 20, for *Auroch* read *Aurochs*.
- Page 64, line 1, for *omnia* read *omnis*.
- Page 190, line 11, for *Moysis* read *Moysi* with the MSS. It had escaped me that this is the Latin form of the genitive in the Vulgate, &c.
- Page 222, line 10, sqq. Tacitly taken from Will. Malm. *Reg. Angl.*, lib. ii., p. 357 (Hardy).
- Page 224, line 3, for *speliebatur* read *sepeliebatur*.
- Page 335, line 28, for *he* read *be*.
- Pages 394-430. This metrical description of Wales is published by Mr. T. Wright among the poems of Walter Mapes, Camden Soc., 1841, to whom some old lists of his works ascribe it. Mr. Dimock, however, has shown (Pref. to Gir. Cambr., vol. vi. p. li.) that there is no reason to doubt that Higden is the author. Mr. Wright's text, which I have examined throughout, has not a single various reading of importance.

VOL. 2.

- The erroneous and defective references which have been corrected in the introduction or notes are not noticed here.
- Page 6, line 5. Solinus, add cap. 22 here and at pp. 10, 14, 22.
- Page 10, line 4. After *quartodecimo*, add cap. 6.
- Page 10, line 6. After *Giraldus* add *Top. Hib.* i. 3; where also the citation at p. 12, l. 10, occurs.
- Page 10, line 7. Orosius, add lib. i. c. 2.
- Page 10, line 12. After *primo* add cap. 1; the same chapter is referred to pp. 12 (ter.), 16, 142, 150.
- Page 14, line 15. The true reference is to Plin., lib. xvii. c. 4 (al. 6).
- Page 26, line penult. After *Itinerario* add ii. 10.
- Page 38, line 4, insert semicolon after *villas*, and cancel it after *cantredis*.
- Page 48. After *Alfridus* add lib. i. p. 8, who has *rheuma* for *steuma*.
- Page 50, line 14. After *quarto* add p. 283 (Sav.).

- Page 54, line 19. After *secundo* add p. 234 (Sav.), and p. 254 (Sav.) at p. 58, l. 10.
- Page 56, notes, col. 2, line 11, cancel C. D.
- Page 58, line 13. See *Galf. Mon.*, lib. ii. c. 10.
- Page 62, line 15. After *tertio* add p. 258 (Sav.).
- Page 64, line 6. Insert in marg. *De Edinburgh*, and at l. 14, *De Alcluid*.
- Page 66, line 15. After *Britonum* add lib. iii. c. 17.
- Page 70, line 2. The first citation from William of Malmesbury occurs lib. iii. p. 258 (Sav.); the other (l. 17) at p. 272 (Sav.).
- Page 74, line 1. After *Itinerario* add ii. 11. But little of the description of Chester is found in Giraldus; it is probably due to Higden himself.
- Page 78, line 14. See Will. Malm. *De Pont.*, lib. iv. p. 288 (Sav.).
- Page 84, line 5. After *Alfridus* add lib. vi. p. 97; and lib. vi. *passim* after *Alfridus* at p. 100, l. 2; and lib. iii. p. 32, after *Alfridus*, p. 110, l. 3.
- Page 110. After *primo*, l. 15, add p. 195 (Sav.), (in part).
- Page 130. After *tertio*, l. 17, add p. 269 (Sav.). For the other reference to William (l. 10), which I cannot find in lib. iv., compare Will. Malm. *De Pont.*, lib. i. p. 232 (Sav.); also Bed. lib. ii. c. 20.
- Page 132, line 7. After *tertio* add p. 259 (Sav.).
- Page 132, line 11. The early part occurs at Bed. lib. iv. capp. 3, 4; the latter (beginning *sed et ipse* down to *extiterat*) is mostly from c. 12; we should read, however, with Bede and Trevisa, *Ecgfrid* for *Oswy*. After this Higden begins to speak for himself; but the information is no doubt derived from William of Malmesbury (*De Pont. passim*).
- Page 134, line 5, for *post* read *primo*, see note.
- Page 144, line 12. After *Gaufridus* add lib. iv. c. 17.
- Page 146, line ult. After *Gaufridus* add lib. v. c. 3.
- Page 150, line 5. See Gir. Cambr. *De Instr. Princ.*, i. 6.
- Page 152, line 6. *Alfridus*. Compare lib. i. p. 10, and lib. ix. p. 147.
- Page 162, line 4. After *tertio* add p. 258 (Sav.).
- Page 164, line 3. Cancel *Giraldus*.
- Page 168, line 9. See Joh. Saresb. *Polycrat.*, vi. 19.
- Page 172, line 8. After *sexto* add p. 359 (Sav.).
- Page 176, line 7, for *assimulantur* read *assimilantur*.
- Page 190, line 14. See Senec. *Controv.*, lib. i. in princ. (t. iii. p. 50, Elz.).
- Page 206, l. 8. After *undecimo* add *cap. 3, § 4*.
- Page 220, line 1. After *Methodius* add *Div. Rev.*, Sig. a. v., Ed. 1504.
- Page 226, line 3. Tubal; Jubal, the reading of D., is correct.
- Page 226, lines 6 and 22. See Joseph. *Ant. Jud.*, lib. i. c. 2. But Petrus, whom Higden follows, has more than Josephus about Jabal.
- Page 230, lines 7 and 14. See Joseph., u. s., c. 3, § 3 and § 1. (The latter citation occurs in Petrus, cap. 1, whence Higden derives it.)
- Page 232, line 6. See Joseph., u. s., c. 2, § 3 (quoted from Marianus, col. 46, by Higden, almost word for word).
- Page 236, line 7. The true reference is to Joseph., u. s., lib. 1, c. 3, § 3. For the other allusions, see Isid., lib. v., c. 39; Hieron. *Op.*, t. viii. col. 71 (Migne); Marianus Scotus, col. 48; Pseudo-Meth., Sig. a. vi. b.
- Page 237, line 12. Print the words in Roman character, and substitute comma for colon after *quarto*.

- Page 240, line 19. Dele *Salah* in margin.
- Page 244, lines 21 and 22. See Isid., lib. v. c. 39; Pseudo-Meth., Sig. a. vii.
- Page 248. The true reference is to Joseph., u. s., c. 4, § 3.
- Page 252, line penult. For *Britanicum* read *Britannicum*.
- Page 274, line 17. After *primo* add c. 4.
- Page 280, line 14. After *octavo* add c. 11.
- Page 290, line ult. The statement is really derived from Isid., lib. ix. c. 2, § 57.
- Page 296, lines 2 and 4. *Tritonia* and *Pallene* are preferable readings. So Augustine and Isidore (lib. viii. c. 11, § 75).
- Page 296, line 21. For *Deeboræ* read *Delboræ*.
- Page 310, line 7. The true reference is to Isid. xix. c. 32; but Petrus, c. 86, is Higden's real authority, who has more than Isidore.
- Page 314, line 1. After *quinto* add c. 39.
- Page 330, line penult. After *tertio* add *cap. 1*.
- Page 334, line 16. After *primo* add *cap. 11*.
- Page 334, note, col. 1, l. 5. For *Vers.* read *Venet.*
- Page 336, line 12. See Joseph., u. s., lib. i. c. 15; but he does not give the name of Afer's daughter.
- Page 338, line 2. After *quinto* add *cap. 39*, but Isidore has 27, not 28.
- Page 340, line 18. After *quartodecimo* add *cap. 4* (pr. part).
- Page 350, line 5. The true reference is to Isid., lib. i. c. 3.
- Page 350, line penult. Demetra occurs in Jerome's version of Eusebius, and in Marianus Scotus; it is rare as a form of the ablative. See Pape, s. v.
- Page 372, line 16. See Macrobius *sup. Somn. Scip.*, lib. i. c. 2, and c. 1 for what is said of Plato and Cicero in the same extract.
- Page 374, line 13. Boethius. See *De Cons. Phil.*, lib. i., prop. init.
- Page 384, line 6. After *quintodecimo* add *cap. 2, § 36*.
- Page 388, line 15. After *quadragesimo tertio* add *cap. 1*; and after *secundo*, p. 402, line 5, add *cap. 7*.
- Page 396, line 4. The true reference is to Isid., lib. i. c. 4.
- Page 398, line 8. After *octavo* add c. 8.
- Page 418, line 8, sqq. Tacitly copied from Marianus Scotus, col. 105.
- Page 424. After *secundo* add § 171, p. 282 (Hardy).
- Page 432, line 4. See Mart. Polon. *Libell. Chron. præfix.*, p. 4, ed. Bas. 1559. The quotation from him at p. 434, l. 5, occurs at p. 5.
- Page 434, line 1. After *octavodecimo* add *cap. 6*.

TREVISA'S TEXT, AS EDITED, COLLATED WITH MS. HARL. 1900 (β) AND MS. COTTON. TIBER. D. VII. (γ) IN CERTAIN DOUBTFUL PASSAGES.

VOL. 1.

- Page 13, note 14] *in caas*, β ; *on caas*, γ . This reading is correct.
- Page 15, note 9] *pat* is wanting in β . and γ , and should be cancelled.

- Page 21, note 1] β . inserts *I* only after *þat*, and omits it before *take*; γ . is much burnt, but seems to have *þat y wryte in þe bygyunnyng*. This reading at any rate completes the sense.
- Page 87, note 10] Read *fethery* with α .; *veyery*, γ .
- Page 89, note 9] Read *his* with β . γ . Cx.
- Page 95, note 2] β . and γ . also omit *of þe tyme*, rightly.
- Page 95, note 3] Read *languages* with β . γ . Cx.
- Page 119, note 13] Read *to fulliþ* with α . β . γ .
- Page 155, note 1] Read *wytte is wonder* with α . β . γ .
- Page 155, note 6] Cancel *ful* with α . β . γ . Cx.
- Page 175, note 8] Read *þe emperre* with α . β .; *the empery*, γ .
- Page 187, note 9] *osels*, β .; *oseles*, γ . This reading is correct.
- Page 187, note 10] Read *þeyz* with γ .
- Page 189, note 1] Read *wel faste* with α . β . γ .
- Page 193, note 6] The words in brackets occur also in β . γ .
- Page 197, note 10] Omit *in* before *þilke* with γ .; β . however has it.
- Page 213, note 2] *a falle* (i.e. *fallen*), γ ., rightly; *a nalle* or *a ualle*, β .
- Page 227, note 2] *in*, β . γ .
- Page 251, note 1] γ . omits the sentence in brackets; β contains it.
- Page 277, note 7] omit the clause with β . γ . Cx.
- Page 303, note 3] *seyle*, β . γ .
- Page 347, note 9] Read *of wenches* with β . γ .
- Page 373, note 6] for *chirche ȝerde*, β . and γ . have *chirch hey*.
- Page 403, note 6] *segges*, β .
- Page 411, line 7] For *Best in* read with γ . *Bestial*.
- Page 419, note 15] β . and γ . agree with text.
- Page 419, note 16] β . and γ . agree with Cx.

VOL. 2.

For this volume the readings of β . are given in the notes throughout; those of γ . are mentioned here up to p. 211, after which they also are recorded in the notes.

- Page 7, note 13] after β . add, and γ .
- Page 9, line 1] Read, with γ ., *clif*.
- Page 21, note 2] γ . agrees with text.
- Page 21, note 4] *haunes*, γ .
- Page 39, line 20] *longe yn þe*, γ .; which adds *wel schort* after *cold*, below.
- Page 49, note 4] β . and γ . have *atwynne*, correctly.
- Page 83, line 4, *lotyng*] *luttyng*, γ .
- Page 83, line 14, *þere is here*] *orþ* (*erþ*, β .) *ys þar*, γ .
- Page 85, note 1] β . and γ . agree with the text.
- Page 133, note 6] With γ . cancel *from*.
- Page 135, note 4] With γ . read *Whanne Wilfrede*.
- Page 183, note 1] add, and γ .
- Page 207, note 7] γ . has *seccne*.

POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN
MONACHI CESTRENSIS.

VOL. II.

A

POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN
MONACHI CESTRENSIS.

LIBER PRIMUS.

CAP. XXXIX.

*De Britannia Majori jam Anglia dicta.*¹

POST insulas oceani libet Britanniam² describere,
cujus terræ gratia hæc presens lucubrata est historia ;
ubi dicetur:—

Incipiunt
capitula.

- i^o. De varia insulæ nuncupatione.
- ij^o. De situ ejus et dimensione.³
- iiij^o. De ejus prærogativis⁴ attollendis.
- iv^o. De mirabilibus in ea⁵ stupendis.
- v^o. De partibus ejus principalibus.
- vj^o. De insulis collateralibus.
- vij^o. De plateis ejus⁶ regalibus.
- viiij^o. De famosis fluminibus.
- ix^o. De antiquis urbibus.
- x^o. De provinciis et comitatibus.

¹ *Majori . . . dicta*] om. A.C.D. ;
quæ et Anglia. Beda libro primo,
B.

² *libet Britanniam*] Britannia
restat, B. ; A. omits *libet*.

³ *et dimensione*] om. B.

⁴ *prærogativis ejus*, B.

⁵ *ejus*, B.

⁶ *ejus*] Added from Gale ; om.
A.B.E.

TREVISA'S TRANSLATION.

De Britannia. Capitulum tricesimum nonum.

AFTER þe ilondes¹ of ocean now Bretayne schal be descreeued. By cause of Bretayne alle þe trauaile of þis storie was bygonne. Þe firste poynt þat me schal telle is of þe names of þe ilond; þanne of þe stede and place of þe lengþe and brede; þe þridde of þe worþynesse of þe lond; þe ferþe of þe² mervayles and wondres þat beþþ pere ynne; þe fifte of þe chief parties of þe lond. Þe sixte of ilondes þat beþþ bisides þat lond; þe seuenþe of þe kynges hiȝe weies; þe eiȝtþe of famous ryueres and stremes; þe nynþe of olde citees and townes; þe tenþe of prouinces and schires; þe elleuenþe of lawes and of þe names of lawes; þe twelfþe³ of kyngdoms, of boundes, and of markes by twene kyngdoms; þe þrittenþe

ANONYMOUS TRANSLATION OF THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY.

Of Briteyne, otherwise callede Englonde. Capitulum tricesimum nonum. MS. HARL. 2261.

AFTER the yles of the ocean hit pleasethe vs to describe f. 59. a. Briteyne, for cause of whom this presente story and cronicle was compiled. Where hit schalle be seide firste of the diuersite of names of that yle. In the secunde of the site of hit and dimencion. In the thrydde of the prerogatiues of hit to be extolled. In the iiij^{the} of meruayles in hit to be hade in wondre. In the v^{the} of the principalle partes in hit. In the vj^{the} of yles colateralle to hit. In the vij^{the} of the kynges hye weyes. In the viij^{the} of famos floodes. In the ix^{the} of olde cites. In the x^{the} of prouinces and of schires. In the xj^{the} of lawes and of the hard wordes of hit. In the xij^{the} of the realmes and of the merkes of theyme.

¹ *ilond*, Cx., who has various other slight alterations in this chapter. | ² *þe*] om *a.*
³ *twelfe*, *a.*

xj^o. De legibus legumque vocabulis.

xij^o. De regnis regnorumque limitibus.

xiiij^o. De episcopatibus et sedibus.

xiiij^o. A quot quando¹ et quibus inhabitata sit gentibus.

Explicunt
capitula.

xv^o. De incolarum linguis et moribus.²

De varia insulae nuncupatione.

Incipit
historia.

PRIMITUS hæc insula vocabatur³ Albion ab albis rupibus circa littora maris a longe apparentibus; tandem a Bruto eam acquirente dicta est⁴ Britannia. Deinde a Saxonibus sive Anglis eam conquirentibus vocata est Anglia; sive ab Angela regina, clarissimi⁵ ducis Saxonum filia, quæ⁶ post multa tempora eam possedit;⁷ sive, ut vult⁸ Isidorus, Etymolog., quinto decimo, Anglia dicitur ab angulo orbis; vel secundum Bedam, libro primo,⁹ beatus Gregorius videns Anglorum pueros Romæ¹⁰ venales, alludens patriæ vocabulo ait: Vere

¹ *et quando*, A.

² The numbers and divisions of the chapters are not given quite uniformly in the MSS. of the text and versions.

³ *Britannia Majori primo nomen fuit Albion*, C.D., which omit all the preceding part of the chapter.

⁴ *dicitur*, B.

⁵ *præclarissimi*, C. (not D.)

⁶ *qui*, B.

⁷ *possedit eam*, B.

⁸ *ut vult*] *secundum Ysidorum*, C.D.

⁹ *de gestis Anglorum* added in C.D.

¹⁰ *Romæ*] *om.* C.D.

of bisshopriches¹ and of bisshoppes sees; þe fourtenþe how many manere men haueþ woned and i-dwelled² in þat lond.³ Þe fifteneþe⁴ of longage,⁵ of maneres, and vsage of men of þat lond. *De varia insulæ nuncupatione.* Firste þis ilond hiȝte⁶ Albion, as it were þe white lond, of white rokkes aboute þe clyues of þe see þat were i-seie wide.⁷ Aftirward Bruyt conquered þis lond and cleped hit Bretayne after his owne name; þanne Saxons oþer Englische conquered þat⁸ lond, and cleped hit Anglia, þat is Engelond; oþer it hatte Anglia, and haþ þat name of a quene þat owed þis lond þat heet Angela, and was a noble dukes douȝter of Saxouns. Oþere as Isidre seiþ, Eth. 15, Anglia haþ þat name, as hit were an angl and a corner of þe world; oþer, as Beda seiþ, libro primo: Seint⁹ Gregorie seiþ¹⁰ Englische children to selle¹¹ at Rome, and he accorded to þe name of þe lond, and

TREVISA.

In the xiiijthe chapitre of byschopryches, and of the setes of þeim. In the xiiijthe of how mony, what peple, and when that londe was inhabite. In the xvthe of the langage of the inhabitatores of hit, and of the maneres of theyme. *Of diuersite of names of the yle of Briteyne.*¹² That yle was callede firste Albion, of white hylles apperenge a ferre abowte the brynkes of the see. And at the laste hit was callede Briteyne by Brute gettenge hit. After that hit was callede Englonde of the Saxones other Englische men conquirenge hit. Other elles hit was callede Anglia, of Angela qwene and doȝhter of the nowble duke of Saxones, whiche hade that londe in possession by mony yeres. Other elles, after Ysoder, Ethi., xv^o li^o, Anglia, whiche is callede Englonde, toke the name of hit of an angle of the worlde: other elles, after Bede in his firste booke, blessedde Gregory seenge childer of Englonde to be sette furthe to be solde at Rome seide: Now truly thei may be callede Englische men (Angells or Angellysmen),¹³ for the

MS. HARL.
2261

¹ *bisshops riches, a.*
² *haue dwelled, Cx.*
³ *ylond, Cx.*
⁴ *fifteneþ, a.*
⁵ *langage, Cx.; lonȝe age, MS. and a.*
⁶ *hit, a.; heȝte, Cx.*
⁷ *fro ferre, Cx.*
⁸ *this, Cx.*

⁹ *Seyn, a.*
¹⁰ *seiȝ, a.*
¹¹ *to sellynge, a.; (not Cx.)*
¹² This is marked cap. xl. in Harl. MS.; but the capitulation is here and elsewhere brought into agreement with the Latin text.
¹³ The words in a parenthesis are inserted in a later hand.

Angli, quia vultu nitent ut angeli. Nam terræ¹ nobilitas in vultibus² puerorum relucebat.³ *Alfridus*.⁴ Anglia Britannica⁵ alter orbis⁶ appellatur; quam olim Carolus Magnus⁷ præ omnium bonorum copia cameram suam vocavit. *Solinus*. Ora Gallici littoris⁸ finis foret orbis, nisi Britannia⁹ insula nomen pene¹⁰ alterius orbis mereretur.¹¹ *Alfridus*. Et¹² dicta est insula eo quod in salo sit posita, crebrisque undarum jactibus¹³ adversariorumque incursibus¹⁴ tundatur.

CAP. XL.

De situ ejus et dimensione.

Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo septuagesimo septimo. Hæc¹⁵ Britannia clara Græcis nostrisque monumentis, Germaniæ,¹⁶ Galliæ, Hispaniæ¹⁷ adversa inter septentrionem¹⁸ et occidentem jacet interjecto mari.¹⁹

¹ *Terræ enim*, C.D.² So A.B.C.D., Gale; *vultu*, E.³ *resultabat*, C.D.⁴ *Alfredus*, B.⁵ So A.B.; *Britannia*, D.E., Gale.⁶ *orbs*, B.⁷ *Karolus*, B., Gale.⁸ *Circa Galliæ litora*, B.⁹ *Britannica*, A.¹⁰ *quasi*, C.D.¹¹ The sentence slightly transposed in C.D.¹² *Et*] om. C.D.¹³ *ictibus*, C.D.¹⁴ *insultibus*, B.¹⁵ *Hæc*] om. C.D.¹⁶ *Germaniæ*] om. C. (not D.)¹⁷ *Hispaniæ, Galliæ*, B.¹⁸ *septentrionalem*, A.¹⁹ *mare*, B.

seide :¹ Sopeliche aungelis, for hir face² schyneþ as aungelis ; TREVISA.
 for þe nobilte of þe lond schone³ in þe children⁴ face.
Alfr. Þe Bryȝtische Anglia is⁵ i-cleped þe oper world; and
 for greet plente of al good þe Grete Charles cleped hit his
 owne chambre. *Solinus.* Þe egge⁶ of þe Frensche clif⁷ were⁸
 þe ende of þe world, nere þat þe ilond of Bretayne is nyh
 worthy to haue þe name⁹ of anoper world.¹⁰ *Alfr.* Þis ilond
 is i-cleped insula, for hit is in salo, þat is þe see, and is
 often i-bete wip dyuers cours of wateres and¹¹ stremes and
 wip¹² wawes of þe see.

De situ eius et dimensione. Capitulum quadragesimum.

Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo septuagesimo septimo.
 This Britayne is acounted an holy¹³ lond bothe in oure
 stories and also in stories of Grees, and is i-sette afor aȝe¹⁴
 Germania, Gallia, Fraunce,¹⁵ and Spayne bytwene þe north
 and þe west and þe see bytwene. Þis lond is fifty myle from

where of theyme dothe ȝiffe grete resplendence lyke to an MS. HARL.
 angelle; for the nobilite of the londe schewethe in the 2261.
 sighte of the childe. That londe of Englonde is callede
 as that other worlde, whom Grete Charles the kynge f. 59. b.
 callede his chambre for þe habundaunce of plente of alle
 goode thynges. *Solinus.* For the costes of Fraunce scholde
 be as an ende of the worlde, but that Briteyne deserueth
 allemoste the name of an other worlde. *Alfr.* That londe
 of Englonde is callede an yle, in that hit is trowblede ofte
 with waters and with þe incurses of enmyes.

Of the site and dimencion of hit. Capitulum quadragesimum.

Plinius, libro secundo, capitulo septuagesimo septimo.
 That londe of Briteyne lyethe from the costes of Ger-
 many, of Fraunce, and of Speyne, betwene the northe and
 weste, departede from theyme by the sec. That londe is

¹ Cx. inserts *They ben.*

² name face, MS.

³ schoon, a.

⁴ So also a. and Cx.

⁵ So Cx. and β.; *Anglians*, MS.

⁶ edge, Cx.

⁷ clyve, a.

⁸ sholde be, Cx.

⁹ So Cx.; names, MS.

¹⁰ *yf the ylonde of Brytayne were not, whiche is worthy to haue the name, Cx.*

¹¹ wip, a., Cx.

¹² wip] om. a. (not Cx.)

¹³ a noble, Cx., and β., which seems right.

¹⁴ sette agaynst, Cx.

¹⁵ We should probably read *or Fraunce.*

Hæc¹ abest a Gessoriacō Morinorum² gentis littore proximo trajectu milium³ quinquaginta. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo undecimo.*⁴ Et quia prope sub ipso septentrionali mundi vertice jacet, lucidas æstate noctes habet; ita ut sæpe medio noctis tempore in quæstionem veniat intuentibus, utrum crepusculum adhuc permaneant vespertinum, an jam advenerit⁵ matutinum, utpote nocturno sole non longe sub terris ad orientem per plagas boreales redeunte; unde fit ut plurimæ longitudinis habeat dies in æstate, (sicut econtra noctes⁶ in hieme,) id est horarum xvij.⁷ Et iterum in hieme noctes sunt⁸ horarum⁹ xvij. et dies sex; cum tamen in Armenia, Macedonia,¹⁰ Italia, cæterisque ejusdem lineæ¹¹ regionibus longissima dies sive nox sit solummodo xv. horarum æquinoctialium; brevissima vero dies sive nox novem duntaxat horas compleat. *Plinius.* In Meroe¹² insula, quæ caput est Æthiopum, sic fit ut longissimus dies sit duodecim¹³ horarum æquinoctialium; Alexandriae Ægypti¹⁴ xij. horarum; in Italia xv.;¹⁵ in

¹ *Hoc*, B.

² *Normannorum*, B.; *Gellaria Armoricorum*, C.; *Gessarico Armoricorum*, D.

³ *miliariorum*, C.D.

⁴ *capitulo xi* om. A.C.; B.D. omit the reference. It should be *primo*.

⁵ *adveniat*, A.; *evenerit*, B.

⁶ So C.D.; *longas*, A.E.

⁷ *sicut...xvij.* Scilicet horarum

xviii., et noctes breves, scilicet horarum sex, B.

⁸ *sint*, E.; *habet*, D.

⁹ *horarum*] om. A.

¹⁰ *cum... Macedonia*] *Achaia et*, C.D.

¹¹ *ejusdem libet*, B.

¹² *Merore*, B.

¹³ *duodecim sit*, B.

¹⁴ *Ægypti*] om. C.D.

¹⁵ *horarum* added in B. and Gale.

þe clif of þe men þat hatte Morini Gesserico, so þe chif TREVISIA.
 hatte.¹ *Beda, libro primo.* And for þis lond² lieþ vnder þe
 norþ nolle³ of þe world, þey⁴ haþ liþt and briþt myþtes in
 þe somertyme, so þat ofte tyme at mydnyþt men haueþ
 questionns and doute where⁵ it be euentyde or⁶ dawenyngē,
 þat is for þat⁷ tyme of þe ȝere þe sonne goþ⁸ nouþt fer
 vnder erþe by nyght, but passeþ by þe north side and comeþ
 sone in to þe est aȝe, and þerfore þere beep in⁹ somer dayes
 ful longe of xvij.¹⁰ houres long, and þe nyþtes of sixe.¹¹ And
 efte¹² in þe wynter beep longe nyþtes of xvij.¹³ houres and
 schort dayes of vi.¹⁴ houres. Þey in¹⁵ Armenia, Macedonia,
 Italia, and in oþer londes of þe same lyne þe lengest day and
 þe lengest nyght also is of fiftene houres; and þere¹⁶ þe
 schorteste day oþer nyþt is of nyne houres. *Plinius.* In
 Meroe, þat ilond is chief¹⁷ of Bloomen,¹⁸ þere þe lengest day is
 of twelue houres; in Alexandria in Egipt of þrittene houres;

from the peple of Gesserike and from the brynkes in that MS. HARL.
 cuntre in the nyeste place by l^d myles. *Beda, libro primo.*
 And for cause that londe lyethe in the northe partes of
 the worlde, hit hathe liþhte nyþtes in the somer, in so
 moche that a question is made oftetymes abowte the myddes
 of the nyþhte wheþer hit be day or nay for cause of suche
 liþhte; for the sonne is not ferre vnder the erthe from that
 cuntre, wherefore that cuntre hathe daies in the somer of
 a grete lengthe, and longe nyþtes in the wyntere; that
 is to say, the daies be of xvij. howres in somer, and the
 nyþtes in wyntere of xvij. howres, and the day of vj.
 howres. Sythe in Armeny, Macedony, Ytaly, and other
 regiones of the same costes, the longeste day other nyþhte
 is but oonly of xv. houres equinocciale, and þe moste
 schorte day other nyþhte dothe complete oonly but ix. howres.
Plinius. In an yle callede Meroris, whiche is as the hede
 of men of Ethioppe, where hit is that the longeste day is
 but of xij. howres equinocciale, and at Alexandria in Egipte

¹ Cx. omits the last four words.
 A space for two lines left blank
 in a. The text seems corrupt.

² *ilond, a., Cx.*

³ *hede, Cx.*

⁴ *hit, Cx.*

⁵ *whether, Cx.*

⁶ *euetide oþer, a.*

⁷ *the, Cx.*

⁸ *goop, a.*

⁹ *in þe, a.*

¹⁰ *eyztene, a.*

¹¹ Sentence varied in Cx.

¹² *after, Cx.*

¹³ *eyztene, a.*

¹⁴ *sixe, a. (omitting houres); and*
 so Cx.

¹⁵ *Also in, Cx.*

¹⁶ *þere] om. Cx.*

¹⁷ *chif, a.*

¹⁸ *black men, Cx.*

Britannia xvij. Apud insulam Tilæ senis¹ mensibus æstivalibus dies habetur² continuus, et iterum senis¹ mensibus brumalibus nox continua. *Isidorus, libro quartodecimo.* Britannia intra³ oceanum quasi extra orbem posita, adversa Galliis⁴ ad prospectum Hispaniæ sita⁵ est. *Giraldus.* Oblonga est et amplior in medio quam in extremis. *Orosius.* Britannia per longum extenditur ab austro in boream; ab euro habet Galliam,⁶ ab austro Hispaniam,⁷ ab aquilone Northuegiam,⁸ ab occasu Hiberniam; cujus proximum litus transmeantibus civitas apparet quæ dicitur Rutupi⁹ portus. *Beda, libro primo.* Quæ¹⁰ a gente Anglorum nunc corrupte vocatur Reptacestre.¹¹ *Solinus.* Britannia octingenta millia passuum in longum¹² detinet,¹³ si quis eam a Totenesio¹⁴ littore usque in Calidonicum angulum metiatur. *Alfridus.*¹⁵ Hoc est a loco qui Penwihtistert¹⁶ dicitur¹⁷ xv. leugis¹⁸ ultra Muchilstow¹⁹

¹ *savis*, Gale, (twice).

² *habetur*] om. B.

³ *inter*, A; *extra*, C. (not D.)

⁴ *Gallis*, B.

⁵ *sita*] om. C.D.

⁶ *Gallias*, C.D.

⁷ *Hispanias*, C.D.

⁸ *Northuegiam*, A.; *Norwegiam*, B.

⁹ *Ruthupi*, B.; *Rutipi*, Gale; *Rupti*, C.; *Rutuphi*, D.

¹⁰ *Qui*, B.

¹¹ *Repacestrius*, Gale.

¹² *in longum*] *longa*, C.D.

¹³ *continet*, Gale (not Solinus).

¹⁴ *Cathenesio*, B.

¹⁵ *Alfredus*, B., and so throughout.

¹⁶ *Penwithistret*, B.; *Penwithistrete*, Gale.

¹⁷ *Hoc . . . dicitur*] Hoc est a *lo-penwithstrete* vocato, qui situs est, C. D.

¹⁸ So A.E.; *leucis*, D., Gale.

¹⁹ *Michestowe*, B.C.; *Michelstawe*, A.; *Michelstowe*, D.; *Michelstowe*, Gale.

in Italia of fiftene houres ; in Bretayne of eyȝtene houres ; in þe lond þat hatte¹ Tile alle þe sixe somer monþes is day, and alle þe sixe wynter monþes is nyght. *Isidorus, libro quartodecimo.* Britayne is i-sette wiþ ynne ocean, as it were wiþ oute þe world, and is i-sette aȝenst Fraunce and Spayne. *Giraldus.* Bretayne is euen longe² and larger in þe myddes³ þan in þe endes. *Orosius.* Bretayne streccheþ in lengþe out of þe souþ [into þe north, and in þe souþ]⁴ est side he⁵ haþ Fraunce, in þe souþ Spayne, in þe norþ Norway, and in þe west Hibernia, þat is Irlond. Whan schipmen passþ þe next clif of þat lond, þei seeþ a citee þat hatte Rutpimouþ.⁶ *Beda, libro primo.* Þat cite is now i-cleped schorilliche of Engliche men Reptacestre. *Solinus.* Bretayne is eyȝte hondred myle in lengþe, and he be i-mete⁷ fro þe clyf of Tottenys to þe angle of Calidoun. *Alfr.* Þat is from þe Penwythis strete⁸ fite[ne]⁹ leges byȝonde Mochel¹⁰ Stowe in Cornwayle anon to Catenesse þat is byȝonde Scotlonde. And Bretayne is more þan two hondred

TREVISA.

of xiiij. howres, and in Ytaly of xv. howres, in Briteyne other Englonde of xviiij. howres ; and the day in somere is¹¹ continually by vj. monethes in an yle callede Tile, and nyȝhte continually by vj. other monethes. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo.* Briteyne is putte betwene the ocean, as with owte the worlde, sette as vn to the prospecte of Speyne. *Giraldus.* That londe of Englonde is longe, more large in the myddes of hit then in the extremities. *Orosius.* That londe of Briteyne is extendede by lengthe from the sowthe in to the northe, hauenge on the este to hit Fraunce, on the sowthe Speyne, on the northe Norway, on the weste Yrlonde, nye to the brynkes of whom a cite dothe appere to men sailenge in the see, whiche is callede Rutipi portus. *Beda, libro primo.* Whiche cite is callede now of the peple of Englonde Reptachestre. *Solinus.* Briteyne conteynethe in longitude lxxxⁱⁱ m^l passes, what man that wylle take the measure of hit from Toteneise vn to the angle of Calidonia. *Alfr.* That is from a place that is callede Penwithstrete, by xv. leukes behynde Mochillestowe in Cornewaile, vn to Catenesse : hauenge in latitude moo then ij. c. m^l.

MS. HARL. 2261.

f. 60. a.

¹ ylonde named, Cx.² evelonge, a. ; endlonge, Cx.³ myddel, Cx.⁴ Added from a. and Cx.⁵ and he, MS. (not a. or Cx.)⁶ Rutpiniouþ, a.⁷ moten, Cx.⁸ Penwithstert, a. ; Penwit'istert, ß. ; Penwithstrete, Cx.⁹ fiftene, a. ; xv. myle, Cx.¹⁰ Mychels, Cx.¹¹ is of vj. houres continually, MS. originally ; but the cancel is apparently by the first hand.

in Cornubia usque Catenesse,¹ quæ² est trans Scotiam. In latitudine autem³ habet plus quam ducenta milia passuum a Menevia, scilicet⁴ quæ est in extremo Walliæ, usque ad Gernemutham⁵ in Northfolchia. *Beda*.⁶ Exceptis duntaxat prolixioribus diversorum promunctoriorum⁷ tractibus,⁸ quibus efficitur ut circuitus ejus quadragesies octies septuaginta⁹ milia passuum contineat.

CAP. XLI.

*De prerogativis*¹⁰ *insulæ attollendis*.¹¹

De anima-
libus Bri-
tanniæ.

Giraldus in Topographia. Ut¹² Gallia Britanniam, sic Britannia Hiberniam vincit serenitate, sed non salubritate. *Beda, libro primo*. Quia¹³ hæc insula opima¹⁴ est frugibus et arboribus, alendisque apta pecoribus ac jumentis, vineas etiam quibusdam in locis germinans, sed et¹⁵ avium atque bestiarum diversi generis terra marique¹⁶ ferax, fluviis piscosis atque fontibus præclara copiosis, isicio¹⁷ potissime abundat et anguilla. *Wilhelmus de Pontificibus*,¹⁸ *libro tertio*. Ita ut rustici projectis piscibus sues pascant. *Beda, libro primo*. Capiuntur ibi¹⁹ sæpissime delphini²⁰ et vituli marini,

¹ *Cautenese*, A.; *usque ad*, Gale, D.

² *qui*, B.

³ *vero*, C.; om. D.

⁴ *scilicet*] om. C.D.

⁵ *Gernemutam*, B.; *Gernemudam*, D.

⁶ *libro primo* added in C.D.

⁷ *promunctoriorum*, E.; *promunctoriorum*, Gale.

⁸ *tractatibus*, Gale.

⁹ *quinque*, add. C.D.

¹⁰ *hujus* added in A.

¹¹ *attollendis*] om. B.

¹² *Sicut*, C.D.; *Ut*, Gale.

¹³ *Quia*] om. C.D., Gale.

¹⁴ *optima*, C.D.

¹⁵ *et*] om. Gale.

¹⁶ *mari*, B.

¹⁷ *ysicio*, MSS.

¹⁸ *de Pontificibus*] om. C.D.

¹⁹ *etiam*, C.; om. D.; *sæpissime* ibi, B.

²⁰ *delphines*, B.C.D.

myle brood from Meneuia pat is in þe vttermeste¹ place of² TREVISA.
Wales anon to Gernemoutham³ in Norpfolk. *Beda.* Onliche
outake þe lengest out schetyng of dyuerse forlonde, wip þe
whiche Britayne is al aboute eyzte and [fourty]⁴ sipe
seuenty þowsand paas.

*De prerogativis huius insulæ attollendis. Capitulum
quadagesimum primum.*

*Giraldus in Topographia.*⁵ As Fraunce passeþ Bretayne,
so Bretayne passeþ Irlond in faire weder and nobilte, but
nouzt in helpe. *Beda.* For þis ilond is beest and bringeþ⁶
forþ trees and fruyt and reþeren⁷ and oper bestes, and wyn
groweþ þere in som place. Þe lond hap plente of foules and
of bestes of dyuers manere kynde; þe lond is plentevous and
þe see also. Þe lond is noble, copious, and riche of nobil
welles and of nobil ryueres wip plente of fische; þere⁸ is
grete plente of small fische, of samon, and of elys.⁹ *Wil-*
helmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio. So pat cherles¹⁰ in som
place fedip sowes¹¹ with fische. *Beda, libro primo.* Þere
beeþ ofte i-take dolphyns, and see calues, and baleynes,

passes from Meneuia, whiche is calle¹² Seynte Daud, whiche MS. HARL.
place is in the extremite of Wales, vn to Gernemowthe¹³ 2261.
whiche is in Norfolke: the circuite of whom conteynethe,
after diuerse auctores, xlⁱ tymes viij^{the} and lxxⁱ mⁱ of
passes.

*Of the prerogatifes of that yle to be enhauncede. Capi-
tulum quadagesimum primum.*

LYKE as Fraunce excellethe Briteyne, so in lyke wyse
Briteyne exceedethe Yrlonde in beaute, but not in wholle-
somnesse. *Beda, libro primo.* For that londe is moste
plentuou in cornes and trees to be norischede, whiche is
apte to bestes; plentuou of bryddes bothe in the see and
londe of diuerse kyndes; habundante in waters fulle of
fische, specially of pyke and ele. *Willelmus de Pont. libro
tertio.* Where fisches be so habundante that churles fede their
swyne with fische. *Beda, libro primo.* Fysches whiche be
callede dolphynes be taken there oftetymes, and porpas,

¹ vtteste, a., Cx.

² in, Cx.

³ Gernemutham, a.; Yarmouthe,
Cx.

⁴ Added from a. and Cx.

⁵ topicis, MS., and similarly else-
where.

⁶ is best to brynge forth, Cx.

⁷ ruthern, Cx.

⁸ So a. and Cx.; þat, MS.

⁹ eles, a.

¹⁰ the peple, Cx.

¹¹ their swyne, Cx.

¹² So Harl. MS.

¹³ Yarmouth is written above the
word in a later hand.

necnon et balænae, exceptis variorum¹ conchyliorum generibus, in quibus sunt et musculæ² inclusam continentes margaritam³ omnis quidem coloris, id est rubicundi, purpurei, jacinthini, prasini, et⁴ maxime candidi.⁵ Sunt et abundantes cochleæ, quibus tinctura coccinei coloris efficitur, cujus rubor pulcherrimus nullo unquam solis ardore, nulla valet pluviarum injuria pallescere; sed quo vetustior, eo solet esse venustior.

De fontibus
et lapidibus.

Habet et fontes salinarum⁶ fontesque⁷ calidos, et ex eis fluvios balneorum calidorum⁸ omni ætati et⁹ sexui per distincta loca cuique accomodos. Aqua enim, secundum Basilium, fervidam qualitatem recipit, cum per certa quædam metalla transcurrit. Hæc etiam insula venis¹⁰ metallorum, æris, ferri, plumbi, stanni,¹¹ et argenti est¹² fœcunda. *Plinius, libro sextodecimo, capitulo sexto.* In qua etiam insula¹³ desub cortice soli inventum est genus terræ, quam marlam¹⁴ vocant, in qua tanquam desiccante se pinguedinis nucleo, spissior,¹⁵ cum spargitur, ubertas in agris reperitur. Est et ibi¹⁶ aliud genus albæ cretæ,¹⁷ quæ respersa fœcundat agros usque ad lxxx.¹⁸ annum. *Solinus.*¹⁹

¹ *variis*, C.

² *mustelæ*, B., Gale.

³ *margaritas*, B.

⁴ *et*] om. A.

⁵ The sentence is slightly altered in C.D.

⁶ *et salivarum*, Gale; *etiam fontes*, D.

⁷ *fontesque*] habet et fontes, C.D.

⁸ *calidorum*, B.

⁹ *atque*, B.

¹⁰ *habet . . . venas*, C.D.

¹¹ *stagni*, MSS. (not Gale).

¹² *est*] om. C.D.

¹³ *insula*, om. C.D.

¹⁴ *malam*, E.

¹⁵ *et spissior*, B.

¹⁶ *ibi*] om. C.D.

¹⁷ *cretæ*, C. (not D.)

¹⁸ *xv.*, B.

¹⁹ Title omitted in B.E.

grete fisches as hit were of whales kynde, and dyuers manere schelfische. Among þe¹ schelfisch beep muskles² þat hauep wip ynne hem margery perles of alle manere colour and hewe, of rody and rede, of purpur and of blew, and specialliche and moste of whyte. Þere is also plente of schellefische þat me dyep wip reed fyn;³ þe redenesse þerof is wonder fyn⁴ and stable, and steynep neuere wip colde ne with hete, wip wete ne wip drie; but euere þe eldere⁵ þe hewe is þe⁶ fairer. Þere beep also salt welles and hote welles; þer of rennep stremes of hote bathes i-deled⁷ in dyuers places, acordyng for man and womman, and for alle manere age, olde and zonge. Basilius seip þat [þe water þat]⁸ rennep and passep by veynes of certayn metal takip in his cours grete hete. Þis ilond is plentevous of veynes of metals, of bras, of iren, of leed, of tyn, of siluer also. *Plinius, libro sextodecimo, capitulo sexto.* In þis ilond vnder þe torf of þe lond is good marl i-founde; þe þrift of þe fatnesse driep himself peryn: so þat euere þe pickere þe felde is i-marled, þe better corn it wil bere. Þere is also anoþer manere white marle, þat þe lond is þe better foure score zere þat þere wip is

TREVISAN.

and other grete fisches, excepte diuerse kyndes of schelle fisches, as muscles, in whom margarites be founde of euery coloure, as redde of a purpulle coloure, and of the coloure of a iacinte, but moste specially white margarites. Also there be schelle fisches habundantely with whom a nowble redde coloure is made and diede. The beauteous reddenesse of whom may not appaire in eny tyme thro the heete of the sonne, neither thro the iniury of reyne, but euer the more hit is werede, and in age, hit is the moore feire in coloure. Also in that londe be welles of salte and hote waters, and bathes conueniente to euery kynde by distincte places, for after the grete clerke Basilius water receyvethe a feruente qualite when hit rennethe by diuerse metalles. Also that londe is plentuous in mony veynes of metalles, as of brasse, of yrne, of lede, of tynne, and of syluyr. *Plinius, libro sexto decimo, capitulo sexto.* Also there is founde in that yle vnder the erthe a kynde of erthe, whom men calle marle, whiche caste in to the felde causethe grete plentuousenes of corne. Also there is founde an other kynde of chalke, whiche dispersede in felde makethe theym plentuous vn to the lxxx. yere folowenge. *Solinus.* That yle

MS. HARL.
2261.

f. 60. b.

¹ whiche, Cx.² muskles, a.³ that men dyen ther with fyn reed, Cx.⁴ fayr, Cx.; fayn, a.⁵ older, Cx.⁶ þe] om. a. (not Cx.)⁷ to deled, a.; departed, Cx.⁸ Added from a. and Cx.

Gignit etiam¹ hæc insula lapidem gagatem,² cujus si decorem³ requiras, nigro-gemmeus⁴ est; si naturam, aqua ardet, oleo extinguitur; si potestatem, attritu⁵ calefactus applicita detinet; ⁶si beneficium, hydropicis eam potantibus confert.⁷ *Beda*.⁸ Incensus ab igne serpentes fugat; calefactus applicita detinet, æque⁹ ut succinum.¹⁰ *Isidorus, libro quintodecimo*. Ibi oves lanigeræ, ferarum et cervorum multitudo, sed pauci lupi. Ideoque oves ibi¹¹ tutius sine custodia in¹² caulis relinquuntur. *Ranulphus*. In ea quoque sunt urbes¹³ multæ speciosæ et opulentæ, flumina magna et piscosa, nemora pecualia¹⁴ spatiosa, gleba terræ mineris et salinis copiosa.¹⁵ In ea quippe¹⁶ sunt lapidicinæ marmoris varii, saxi rufi¹⁷ et albi, mollis et solidi, calcisque¹⁸ candidæ. Est etiam¹⁹ ibi²⁰ argilla alba et rubea ad componendum vasa fictilia, et tegulis tingendis²¹ velut altera Samia multum accommoda;²² denique

¹ *et, A.*² *gagantem, C. (not D.)*³ *colorem, C.D.*⁴ *nigra gemma, B.C. (not D.)*⁵ *attritu] om. B.*⁶ *si . . . æque] om. B.*⁷ *confer, C. (not D.)*⁸ *libro primo added in C.D.*⁹ *æque] om. A.*¹⁰ *succinctum, B.*¹¹ *ibi] om. C. (not D.)*¹² *custodia in] om. B.*¹³ *civitates, C.D.*¹⁴ *pecualia] feris copiosa et, C.D. ; pecualia et, A., Gale.*¹⁵ *abundans, C.D.*¹⁶ *quoque, C. ; quidem, D.*¹⁷ *rubi, C.*¹⁸ *calx et, B. ; candidi, MSS. (not Gale.)*¹⁹ *ibi quoque, C.D.*²⁰ *ibi] om. A.*²¹ *tingendis] om. C. (not D.) ; Trevisa read *tegendis*.*²² *Clause abbreviated in C.D.*

i-marled. *Solinus*.¹ In þis ilond groweþ a stoon þat hatte TREVISA.
 gagates; 3if me axeþ² of³ his fairenesse, he is blak as gemmes
 beep; [3if me axeth his kynde, hit brenneþ in water and
 quencheþ in oyle].⁴ 3if he is i-froted and i-het,⁵ he holdeþ
 what hym nei3heþ; 3if me axeþ his goodnesse, hit heleþ
 þe dropesy and hit be i-dronke. *Beda*. I-tend in þe fire hit
 feseþ away serpentis; if⁶ hit is hotter,⁷ hit holdeþ what hym
 neigheþ, as succinis, a stoon þat so hatte.⁸ *Isid.*, *libro quinto-*
decimo. Þere beep schepe þat bereþ good wolle, þere beep
 meny hertes and wylde bestes and fewe wolues; perfore þe
 schepe beep þe more sikerliche wiþ oute [kepyng] ⁹i-lefte in
 þe folde.¹⁰ In þis ilond also beep many citees and townes,
 faire and noble and riche; many grete ryueres and stremes
 wiþ grete plente of fische; many faire wodes¹¹ and grete wiþ
 wel¹² many bestes tame and wylde. Þe erpe of that lond is
 copious of metal ore and of salt welles; of quarers¹³ of marbel
 of dyuers manere stonnes, of reed, of whyte; of nesche,¹⁴ of
 hard; of chalk¹⁵ and of whyte lyme.¹⁶ Þere is also white
 cley and reed forto make of crokkes¹⁷ and stenes and oper
 vessel and brent¹⁸ tyle to hele¹⁹ wiþ hous and cherches as hit

gendrethe a ston that is callede iette. If thou inquire the MS. HARL.
 beawte off hit, hit is blacke; if thou inquire the nature, 2261.
 hit brennethe in water, and is extincte with oyle; if thou
 inquire the vertu of hit, that ston made hoote with rubbenge
 dothe attracte chaffe to hit. If thou inquire the benefite,
 hit helpethe moche men hauenge the dropecy, drynkenge
 hit. *Beda*. That ston made in powdre, and caste in to
 the fire, expellethe serpentis. *Isidorus*, *libro quinto de-*
cimo. There be schepe plentuous in wolle, and moche dere
 of diuerse kyndes, fewe wulphes, perfore schepe be lefte in
 more suerte in theire places. *R*. In that londe be many
 feire cites, grete waters and fulle of fische, and plentuous
 in wodes, where be also mynes of stonnes diuerse in colour,
 redde and white, softe and harde, and white chalke. Also
 there is white cleye and redde, where of thei make pottes

¹ Reference added from *a.* and *Cx.*

² *yf ye wil knowe*, *Cx.*

³ *of*] om. *a.*

⁴ Added and restored from *β.* and *Cx.*

⁵ *chauffed*, *Cx.*

⁶ *3if*, *a.*

⁷ *hatt*, *a.*

⁸ *Cx.* (who prints *succuns*) has considerable omissions in the previous sentence.

⁹ Added from *a.* and *Cx.*

¹⁰ So *a.* and *Cx.*; *felde*, *MS.*

¹¹ So *a.* and *Cx.*; *wordes*, *MS.*

¹² *wel*] *right*, *Cx.*

¹³ *quareres*, *a.*; *quareis*, *Cx.*

¹⁴ *soft*, *Cx.*

¹⁵ *chark*, *a.*

¹⁶ *lym*, *a.*

¹⁷ *make poties*, *crokkes*, *Cx.*

¹⁸ *brand*, *a.*

¹⁹ *couere*, *Cx.*; and so often.

lanam ejus zelat Flandria, coria et pelles¹ Normania, ferrum et plumbum Vasconia, mineras et sales Hibernia, æra ejus nivea universa sitit Europa. *Alfridus*. Ceterum Britannia omni materia affluit, quæ pretio² ambitiosa seu usu³ necessaria est ferrariis, et salinis nunquam deficit. Unde et quidam metricus in laudem⁴ ejus sic prorupit.⁵ *Henricus de Prærogativis Angliæ : Versus* :⁶

Anglia terra ferax et fertilis angulus orbis,
 Anglia plena jocis, gens libera digna⁷ joci ;
 Libera gens, cui libera mens et libera lingua,
 Sed lingua melior liberiorque⁸ manus.
⁹ Anglia, terrarum¹⁰ decus et flos finitimarum,
 Est¹¹ contenta sui fertilitate boni.
 Externas gentes consumptis rebus egentes,
 Quando fames lædit, recreat et reficit.

¹ *coria et pelles*, B.
² *quæ pretio*] quod predicto, C. (not D.)
³ *visu*, D. (clerical error.)
⁴ *et . . . laudem*] in laudes, C.D.
⁵ *scribitur*, C.D.
⁶ *de . . . Versus*] om. C.D. ; A.B.,
 Gale omit all the reference.

⁷ *plena*, B.
⁸ *liberaque*, B.
⁹ *Item Henricus*, A. B.
¹⁰ *terra*, A.
¹¹ *Et*, Gale.

were in þe other Samia, þat hatte Samos also. Flaundes¹ TREVISA.
louep þe wolle² of þis lond, and³ Normandie⁴ þe skynnes and
þe velles;⁵ Gasquyn⁶ þe iren and þe leed; Irlond þe ore and
þe salt; [al]⁷ Europa louep and desireþ þe white metal of
þis lond. *Alfridus*.⁸ Bretayne hap i-now of alle matire⁹ þat
þere nedep begge¹⁰ and selle, oper þat¹¹ is nedeful to manis
vse; ¹² þere lakkeþ neiper¹³ salt ne iren. Þerfore a versifioure
in his metre preyseþ the lond in þis manere: Engelond is
good lond, fruytful of þe wolle, but¹⁴ a corner; Engelond ful
of pley, fremen well worpy to pleye; fire men, fire tonges,
hert fire; free beep al þe leden;¹⁵ here hond is more fre, more
better¹⁶ þan here tonge. Also Henricus: ¹⁷ Engelond hiȝt of
lond,¹⁸ floure of londes al aboute; þat londe is ful payde wip
fruyte and corn¹⁹ of his owne.²⁰

Straunge²¹ men þat needep,
þat lond wel ofte releueþ.
Whan hunger greueþ,
þat lond alle suche men²² fedep.

and tylestones. The wolle off whiche londe men of Flaundes MS. HARL.
luffe gretely; and Normandy, the leder of hit and skynnes; 2261.
Vasconia yrne and lede. Whiche Briteyne is a londe habun-
dante in metalles, and in pleasure that is necessary to the
lyfe of man, in to the lawde of whom a metricion seithe:
Englonde is a plentuous londe, and an angle of the worlde.
That londe is fulle of disportes, whiche peple is worthy to
make disportes, the tonge of whom is goode, and the honde
more liberalle. *Item Henricus sic.* The londe of Briteyne
is the worschippe and floure of regiones of the costes of
the see, whiche londe is contente with the propre fertilitie of
hit selfe, refreschenge other straunge peple hauenge nede

¹ So *a.* and *Cx.*; *Flaundrey*, MS.

² *loueth wel the wulle*, *Cx.*

³ So *a.*; *in*, MS.

⁴ *Holand*, *Cx.*

⁵ *felles*, *Cx.*

⁶ *Guyan*, *Cx.*

⁷ Added from *a.* and *Cx.*

⁸ So *a.* and *Cx.*; *Gir.*, MS.

⁹ So *a.* and *Cx.*; *manere*, MS.

¹⁰ *bye*, *Cx.*; *bigge*, *β.*

¹¹ *þer*, *a.*

¹² *vys*, *a.*

¹³ *neuere*, *a. β.*

¹⁴ *but it is*, *Cx.*; and similarly else-
where.

¹⁵ *ledyn*, *a.*; *lyden*, *β.*; *alle theyr
thynges*, *Cx.*

¹⁶ *and better*, *Cx.*

¹⁷ *Henre*, *a.*; *Henr*, *β.*; *Her.*, MS.

Cx. omits the word.

¹⁸ *is beauteuous* (sic) of *lond*, *Cx.*

Perhaps of *lond* in the text should
be simply cancelled.

¹⁹ *good*, *a. β.* and *Cx.*

²⁰ From this point Trevisa seems
to have intended verse.

²¹ So *Cx.* and *β.*; *stronge*, MS.
and *a.*

²² *men siche*, *β.* The text is ca-
priciously altered in *Cx.* more or less
throughout.

Commoda terra satis mirandæ fertilitatis
 Prosperitate viget, cum bona pacis habet.
 Anglorum portus occasus¹ novit et ortus,
 Anglica² classis habet quod loca multa³ juvet;
 Et cibus et census magis hic communis habetur,
 Nam de more viri sunt ibi magnifici.

*Item Alfridus sic:*⁴

Illa quidem longe celebri splendore beata
 Glebis,⁵ lacte, favis supereminet insula cunctis.
 Insula prædives, quæ toto non eget⁶ orbe,
 Et cujus totus indiget orbis ope;
 Insula prædives, cujus miretur et optet
 Delicias Salomon, Octavianus⁷ opes.

¹ *occasum*, E.

² *Anglia*, A.D.

³ *multa loca*, B.

⁴ *Item Alfridus sic*] So A.B.; placed after *opes* in E.; reference omitted in Gale and D.

⁵ *Glebes*, C. (not D.)

⁶ *eguet*, E.

⁷ So Gale and the versions; *Octavianus*, MSS.

Dat lond is good i-now,
 Wonder moche ¹ fruyt bereþ and corn.²
 Dat lond is wel at ese,
 As long as men lyueþ in pese.³
 Est and west al lond
 Knoweþ hens riȝt wel of Engeland.⁴
 Here schippes fondes,
 And ofte helpeþ meny londes ;
 Pere mete þey[re]⁵ money ⁶
 Men haueþ more⁷ comyn alle wey.
 For here þat craftes
 Men wole gladliche ȝeue ȝiftes.⁸
 In londe, in⁹ stronde
 Wel wyde men ¹⁰ spekeþ of Englonde ;
 Lond, hony, melk, chese,
 Þis ilond schal bere the prys.¹¹
 Of alle londes riches ¹² þis lond hath nede
 to noon ;
 Alle londes moot ¹³ seche helpe nedes of þis
 allone.
 Of likynge pere won
 Wonder ¹⁴ myȝt Salamon.
 Riches þat pere is an
 ȝern ¹⁵ wolde Octauian.¹⁶

TREVISA.

to þe helpe of that londe, when hungre reignethe in theire MS. HARL.
 cuntres. That londe is of plentuousenes to be hade in mer- 2261.
 uayle, whiche londe dothe encrease gretely in tyme of pease f. 61. a.
 and of prosperite. That londe hathe also mony schippes,
 whiche do helpe mony places, for in that be men of grete
 nobilite. *Item Alfridus sic.* This yle of Englonde is plen-
 tuous, and to be enhauncede with a lawde celicalle, whiche is
 so habundante in hit selfe that hit hathe not necessite to
 eny other yle other place of the worlde. Whiche londe is
 a towre of refute to alle other regiones, the delites of whom
 Salomon desirethe, and Octauian the rychesse.

¹ *meche, a.*² The text must have suffered here. Cx. has: *That lond bereþ fruyt and corne good ynough*³ So a. and Cx.; *at ese, MS.*⁴ *Eeste and weste in eche lond ben knowne well the hauenes of Englonde,* Cx., who has some other variations. For *hens* in text (*hānes, β.*) perhaps we should write *hauens*.⁵ *þey]* and, Cx., perhaps rightly; *þar mete, þar money, β.*; *þeyre* is probably intended in MS.⁶ *þci monay, a.*⁷ So a. and Cx.: *money, MS.*⁸ *And for to lerne men gladly yeue yeftes, Cx.*⁹ *and, a. β., Cx.*¹⁰ *me, β.*¹¹ *price, a.*¹² *riche, a. β.*¹³ *muste, Cx.,* with other slight variations.¹⁴ *wondrie, a*; *wondrye, β.*¹⁵ *ȝern]* desire, Cx.¹⁶ *Octouian, β.*

CAP. XLII.

*De mirabilibus in ea stupendis.*¹

Solinus. Sunt in Britannia fontes calidi opiparo² ex cultu³ apparati⁴ ad usus mortalium, quibus fontibus præsul est numen Minervæ, in cujus æde perpetui ignes nunquam canescunt in favillas,⁵ sed, ubi ignis tabet,⁶ vertitur in globos saxeos. *Alfridus.*⁷ Cum Britannia in se plura⁸ contineat⁹ mirabilia, quatuor tamen præ cæteris habet miranda. Primum est, quod apud Peccum¹⁰ ventus egreditur de cavernis terræ tam valide ut vestes injectas ejiciat.¹¹ Secundum est, quod¹² apud Stanhenges juxta Sarum lapides miræ magnitudinis in modum portarum elevantur, ita ut portæ portis superpositæ videantur; nec tamen liquido¹³ penditur qualiter aut quare ibi sunt¹⁴ constructi.¹⁵ Tertium est apud Cherdhole, ubi concavitas est sub terra, quam cum multi sæpe¹⁶ sint¹⁷ ingressi, terræ spatia et flumina videntes, nusquam¹⁸ ad finem venire potuerunt. Quartum est,¹⁹ quod pluvia videtur de montibus elevari

Quatuor
præ cæteris
mirabilia.

¹ C. omits title. *De mirabilibus, Anglia*, D.; *stupendis*, om. B.

² *opipario*, A.B.

³ *et cultu*, C.D.

⁴ *exculti apparatu*, Solinus, c. 22.

⁵ *favillam*, C. (not D.)

⁶ *tabuit*, C.D.

⁷ *Alfridus*] om. A.B.

⁸ *plurima plura in se*, B.; *plurima in se*, D.

⁹ *continet*, A.B., Gale.

¹⁰ *Peccum (or Pectum)*, A.B.D.E.,

Gale; *Pekum*, C. This form leads us to suppose *Peckham* to be the place meant; see however the versions.

¹¹ *rejiciat*, A.B., Gale; *repellat*, C.D.

¹² *quod*, added from B.; Gale's text is mutilated.

¹³ *tamen liquido*] *liquide*, C.D.

¹⁴ *sint*, C.D.

¹⁵ *constructæ*, A.B.

¹⁶ *sæpe*] after *ingressi* in Gale.

¹⁷ *sint*] om. B.; *sunt*, D.

¹⁸ *nusquam*, A.

¹⁹ *est*] om. C.

De mirabilibus in ea stupendis. Capitulum quadragesimum TREVISA.
secundum.

Solinus. In Brytayne beep hoote welles wel arrayed and i-hiȝt¹ to þe vse of mankynde. Maistresse of pilke welles is þe grete spirit of Minerua. In hire hous fuyre dureþ² alway, þat neuere changeþ into askes; but [þere]³ þe fuyre slakeþ, it chaungeth into⁴ stony clottes. *Alfr.* In Bretayn, beep many wondres; neuerþeles foure beep most wonderful. Þe fyrste is at Pectoun; þere bloweþ so strong a wynde out of chenes⁵ of þe erþe, þat it casteþ vp aȝen cloþes þat me casteþ yn. Þe secounde is at Stonhenge by sides Salisbury; þere beep grete stones and wonder huge, and beep arered an hiȝ as hit were ȝates; [so þat þere semeþ ȝates]⁶ i-sett vpon oþer ȝates; nopeles hit is nouȝt clereliche i-knowe noþer perceyued⁷ how and wherefore þey beep so arered and so wonderlicþe i-honged. Þe þridde is at Cherdhole;⁸ þere is grete holownesse vnder erþe; of⁹ meny men haueþ i-walked þerynne and i-seie ryueres and stremes, but nowher konneþ þey fynd non ende. Þe ferþe is þat reyn is y-seie arered¹⁰ vpon þe hilles and anon¹¹ i-spronge

Of meruailles in hit to be hade in wondre. Capitulum MS. HARL.
quadragesimum secundum. 2261.

Solinus. Sythe þe yle of Briteyre conteynethe in hit mony thynges to be hade in meruayle, neuertheles iiij. thynges ar to be hade in meruayle in hit specially afore other thynges. The fyrste is at Pectun, where the wynde goethe furthe so faste that hit castethe owte clothes caste in to hit. The secounde is at Stanhenges, nye to Salisbury, where stones of a grete magnitude be exaltede in to the maner of ȝates, that thei seme as ȝates putte on ȝates, where hit can not be clerely perceyvede how and wherefore the stones were sette there. The thrydde is at Sherdehoole, where a holo place is vnder the erthe in to whom mony men haue entrede, seenge waters in hit, cowthe not come to thende of hit in eny wise. The iiij^{the} is, that reyne is seene to be eleuate from hilles, and to be diffudede anoon thro the

¹ *adressyd, Cx.*

² *endureth, Cx.*

³ *þere*] Added from Cx. and β.;
α. has þe þe; where would seem the
truer reading.

⁴ *and in to, α.*

⁵ *chynes, α. Cx.*

⁶ Added from α. β. and Cx.

⁷ *apperceyued, Cx.*

⁸ *Cherdhoke, Cx.*

⁹ *ofte, Cx.*

¹⁰ *reysed, Cx.*

¹¹ *noon, α.*

Fontes
mirabiles.

et cito per campos¹ diffundi. Est etiam in ea stagnum sexaginta insulas habitabiles continens, quod² sexaginta rupibus ambitur, in quarum³ qualibet aquila nidificat, et sexaginta⁴ flumina fluunt in illud,⁵ quorum nullum ad mare progreditur præter unum. Est ibi⁶ stagnum muro lapideo et lateritio circumdatum, in quo frequenter lavantur homines; quibus fit lavacrum unicuique, sicut voluerit, frigidum seu⁷ calidum.⁸ Sunt in ea fontes salis longe a mari, quorum aquæ per totam hebdomadam salsæ sunt usque ad horam nonam⁹ Sabbati, et tunc dulces usque ad diem Lunæ,¹⁰ a quibus decoquitur sal candidum et¹¹ subtile. Est etiam¹² in ea stagnum cuius aqua tantam habet efficaciam, ut si totus exercitus¹³ patriæ astaret juxta et faciem dirigeret versus¹⁴ undam,¹⁵ unda eos¹⁶ attraheret violenter, vestibus humore madefactis;¹⁷ similiter et equi traherentur; si autem facies hominum fuerint aversæ,¹⁸ non nocebit¹⁹ unda. Est etiam fons²⁰ in quo nec a quo fluit rivus,²¹ et tamen in²² eo capiuntur

¹ *diversa*, B.

² *quod*] om. C.D.

³ *quarum*] added from A.C.

⁴ *insulas . . . sexaginta*] om. B.

⁵ *eo*, C.D.

⁶ *ibi*] in ea, C.; et ibi, B.; om. D.

⁷ *vel*, A.

⁸ *calidum seu frigidum*. B. Sentence slightly transposed in C.D.

⁹ *nonam*] om. B.

¹⁰ *Lunæ*] om. E.

¹¹ *et*] om. A.

¹² *etiam*] om. B.; autem, A.

¹³ *populus*, A.

¹⁴ *ad*, B.

¹⁵ *et . . . undam*] om. D.

¹⁶ *illos*, A.B.C., Gale.

¹⁷ *repletis*, C.D.

¹⁸ *aversæ*, B.

¹⁹ *nocet*, C.D.

²⁰ *fons*] om. E.

²¹ *Tynus*, C.

²² *in*] om. A.

aboute in þe feeldes. Also þere is a grete ponde þat con- TREVISA.
 teyneþ þre score ylondes couenable for men to dwelle ynne :
 þat pond is i-clipped¹ aboute wip sixe roches ; vppon
 euerich roche is an egles nest.² And þre score ryueres
 renneþ into þat pond ; and noon of hem alle renneþ into
 þe see, but oon. Þere is a pond i-closed aboute wip a
 wal of tyle and of stoon. In þat pond men waschep and
 bapeth wel ofte ; and eueriche man feleth þe water hoot
 or colde, riȝt as he wolde³ hymself. Þere beep salt welles
 fer fram þee⁴ see, and beeth salte alle þe woke longe, forto
 Saturday⁵ at none ; and fresche from Saturday at none for
 to Monday. Þe water of þese welles,⁶ whan hit is i-sode,
 torneþ in to smal salte, faire and white. Also þere is a
 pond, þe water þerof haþ moche [wonder]⁷ worchyng ;
 for þeyh al an oost stood by þe pond and torned þe⁸ face
 thiderward, þe water wolde drawe hem violentliche toward
 þe pond and wete al her cloþes. So schulde hors be drawe
 in þe same wise. But⁹ ȝif þe face is a weyward¹⁰ from
 þe water, [þe water]¹¹ noyeth nouȝt. Þere is a welle þat no
 stream renneþ þerfrom,¹² noþer þerto, and ȝit foure manere

feldes and cuntre nye to theyme. Also there is a water MS. HARL.
 conteynenge lx. yles inhabitable, whiche is compassede 2261.
 abowte with lx. hilles, in eueryche of whom an egle makethe
 a neste, and lx. waters floo in to hit, of whom there goethe
 noon to the see but oon. Also there is a water compassede
 with a walle of ston of tyles, where men be waschen ofte-
 tymes, whiche is to euery man after his pleasure either
 hoot other colde. Also there be welles of salte in hit,
 ferre from the see, the waters of whom be salte by alle
 the weke vn to the howre of none in Seturday, and then the
 waters be fresche ; of whiche water white salte is made and
 subtile. Also there is a grete damme in hit, the water of
 whom makethe moiste the clothes of men hauenge there
 siȝhte directe to hit, and drawenge theym towarde hit, f. 61. b.
 thauȝhe hit were a grete hoste, the water is of suche
 efficacite ; and if the faces of men be turnede from hit, that
 water schalle not greve theyme. Also there is a welle in
 whom a ryuer is not, neither a ryuer floethe from hit, in

¹ *byclipped*, Cx.

² *egle his nest*, a. ; varied in Cx.

³ *wole*, a. ; *will*, Cx.

⁴ So MS. ; *þe*, a.

⁵ *Saturdat*, a.

⁶ *þis*, a. (not Cx.)

⁷ Added from a. and Cx. ; the
 later omits *moche*.

⁸ *theyr*, Cx.

⁹ *And*, Cx.

¹⁰ *be torned away*, Cx.

¹¹ Added from a. and Cx.

¹² *fro*, Cx.

quatuor genera piscium, et habet¹ fons tantum² xx.³ pedes in longitudine et xx. in latitudine,⁴ nec tamen est profundus, sed usque ad genua, ripas altas habens⁵ ex omni parte. In regione Wenta est fovea a qua ventus flat incessanter, ita⁶ ut nemo possit subsistere ante eam. Est etiam in ea stagnum, quod facit lignum impositum⁷ durescere in lapidem, si per annum in eo⁸ manserit, unde formantur ligna in cotes. Est in cacumine⁹ montis sepulcrum, cui quilibet accedens et se dimetiens inveniet mensuræ suæ¹⁰ quantitatem; et si peregrinus vel lassus aliquis¹¹ ibi flexerit¹² genua ad illud, nullum¹³ illico sentiet tædium.

Alia
mirabilia.

Giraldus in Topographia. Juxta monasterium Wynburnense,¹⁴ quod est¹⁵ non longe a¹⁶ Bathonia, est nemus fruticosum;¹⁷ cujus ligna, si in aquam vel in terram vicinam per annum¹⁸ ceciderint, in saxum convertentur.¹⁹ *Giraldus*²⁰ *in Itinerario.* Sub civitate Cestriæ currit flumen Dee, quod hodie disternat²¹

¹ *habet autem*, C.D.

² *centum*, C. (not D.)

³ *xx.*] om. C.

⁴ *et . . . latitudine*] om. B.

⁵ *habetque ripas altas*, B.

⁶ *ita*] om. B.

⁷ *impositum*] om. C.D.

⁸ *si ibi per annum*, &c., C.D.

⁹ *cujusdam*, ins. C.D.

¹⁰ *suæ*] om. A.

¹¹ *aliquis*] om. C.D.; before *vel* in B.

¹² *flexerit ibi*, B.

¹³ *multum*, B.

¹⁴ *Wynburiense*, B.; *Wimburnense*, A.

¹⁵ *est*] om. B.

¹⁶ *non longe a*] prope, C.D.

¹⁷ *fruticosum*, Gale.

¹⁸ *per annum*] om. B.

¹⁹ *convertuntur*, B.D.

²⁰ *Idem*, C.D.; *Itinere*, B.

²¹ *dividit*, C.D.

fische bep i-take pere ynne. Pat welle is but twenty foot long and twenty foot brood, and nouzt depe bot to þe kne, i-closed wiþ hiþe bankes in eueriche side. In þe contray aboute Wynchestre is a den; ¹ out of þat den alwey bloweþ strong wynd, so þat no man may endure ² forto stonde to fore þat den. Pere is also a pond þat torneþ tre to iren, and hit be perynne al a þere; and so treen be i-schape into whetstones. ³ Also pere is in þe cop ⁴ of an hille a burielles; euerich man þat comeþ and meteþ þat buriel, he schal fynde it euene riht ⁵ of his owne mette; ⁶ and þif a pilgryme kneleþ ⁷ þerto, anon he schal be al fresche, and of werynesse schal he fele none noye. ⁸ *Giraldus in Topographia.* Faste by þe mynistre ⁹ of Wynburney, þat is nouzt fer from Baþe, is a wode þat bereþ moche fruyt; yf þe trees of þat wode falle into a water oþer grounde þat pere is nyh, and lye pere alle aþere, þe trees torneþ into stones. *Giraldus in Itinerario.* ¹⁰ Vnder þe citee of Chestre renneþ þat ryuer Dee, þat now to deleþ ¹¹ Engelond and

TREVISA.

whom iiij. kyndes of fisches be taken; whiche welle hathe oonly xx^d foote in longitude, and xx^d foote in brodenes, whiche is not deiþe but to the knees of a man, hauenge hye brynkes to hit on euery side. Also in the cuntre callede Wenta is a dicke, from whom the wynde blawethe incessantely, in so moche that a man may not stonde afore hit. Also there is a water in that cuntre that turnethe a tre in to a ston if hit tary in þat water, where trees or woode be formede in to whettstones. Also there is a beryalle in the toppe of an hille, where euery man comynge schalle fynde his measure and quantite; and if a pilgreme, other elles a wery man, boo his knees þer to hit, he schalle not fele eny disease. *Giraldus in Topographia.* Also there is a woode fulle of frute nye to the monastery of Wynneburne, not ferre from Bathe; the wodde of hit putte in to a water nye to that place by a yere be turnede in to a ston. *Giraldus in Itinerario.* Also there rennethe a water vnder the cite of Chestre namede Dee, whiche di-

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ a den or a caue, Cx.

² Cx. here does not substitute dure.

³ westones, a.

⁴ toppe, Cx.; c and t are almost identical in MSS., and both readings are good.

⁵ riht] om. Cx., who often omits wel in similar passages.

⁶ meete, a.; lengthe and mesure, Cx.

⁷ kneoleþ, a.

⁸ Sentence varied in Cx.

⁹ mynster, Cx.

¹⁰ Reference added from a. and Cx.

¹¹ to deleþ], departeth, Cx.

Angliam a Wallia,¹ quod² singulis mensibus, ut asserunt accolæ, vada sua solet mutare;³ et utri finium⁴ Angliæ seu Cambriæ, alveo relicto, magis⁵ incubuerit, gentem illam⁶ eo anno succumbere et alteram prævalere certum habent pronosticum.⁷ Iste⁸ fluvius Dee⁹ de lacu cui nomen Pymbelmer¹⁰ originem ducit; et cum flumen¹¹ salmonibus abundet, nusquam¹² tamen in lacu salmo reperitur. ¹³*Willelmus de Regibus, libro secundo*. Considerandum est quantus¹⁴ divinæ¹⁵ pietatis fulgor ab initio susceptæ fidei populum Anglorum illustraverit,¹⁶ quod nusquam gentium in una provincia reperiuntur tot sanctorum post mortem illibata corpora, finalis incorruptionis simulacrum præferentia,¹⁷ sicut patet in beatis Etheldreda, Edmundo rege, Elphego,¹⁸ Cuthberto. Quod¹⁹ ideo fieri credo cœlitus, ut natio extra orbem pene posita ex consideratione talis

<p>¹ Transposed in C.D. ² <i>hoc</i>, C.D. ³ <i>permutare</i>, C.D. ⁴ So B.C.D.; <i>in utri finium</i>, A.; <i>ut si finium</i>, E.; <i>et ut finium</i>, Gale and D. (first hand), which is probably right. ⁵ <i>magis</i>] om. C.D. ⁶ Omitted in C. ⁷ <i>prænosticum</i>, Gale; <i>pronosticum est</i>, C. (not D.) ⁸ <i>Hic</i>, C.D. ⁹ <i>Dee</i>] om. C.D.; <i>De</i>, A.</p>	<p>¹⁰ <i>Pymbulmere</i>, B.; <i>Pimbilmere</i>, A., Gale; <i>Pimbeltmere</i>, D. ¹¹ <i>fluvius</i>, C.D. ¹² <i>nunquam</i>, C.D. ¹³ <i>Willelmus . . . animetur</i>] om. C.D. ¹⁴ <i>quantum</i>, B. ¹⁵ <i>diem</i>, Gale, absurdly. ¹⁶ <i>illustravit</i>, A. ¹⁷ <i>proferenda</i>, Gale. ¹⁸ <i>Alphego</i>, B. ¹⁹ <i>et</i>, A.</p>
---	---

Wales; þat ryuer eueriche monþe chaungeþ his foordes, as men of þe contrey telleþ, and leueþ ofte þe chanel; but where¹ the water drawe more toward Engeland oþer toward Wales, to what side [þat hit be, þat 3ere men of þat side]² schal haue the worse ende and be ouercome,³ and men of þe oþer side schal haue þe better ende and be at here aboue. Whan þe water so chaungeþ his cours, it bodeþ suche happes. Þis ryuer Dee renneth and comeþ out of a lake þat hiȝt Pymbilmere. In þe ryuer is grete plente of samoun, neuerþeles in þe lake is neuere samoun⁴ i-founde. *Willelmus de Regibus, libro secundo.* Take hede how greet liȝt and briȝtnesse of Goddiss myldenesse haþ by schyne⁵ Engliche men, seþþe⁶ þey torned first to riȝtful⁷ byleue. So þat of⁸ no men in oon⁹ prouince beþ i-founde so meny hool bodyes of men after hir deþ in liknesse of euere lastyngge lif¹⁰ þat schal be after þe day of dome, as it wel semeth in þese¹¹ holy seyntes Etheldred, Edmond the kyng, Elphege, and Cuthbert.¹² I trowe þat it is i-doo by special grace of God alle myȝti, for þe nacioun þat is i-sette, as it were, wiþ oute þe worlde, schulde take hede to duryngge of bodies wiþ oute corrupcioun and rotyngge, and be þe¹³

TREVISA.

uidethe Englonde from Wales, whiche is wonte, as hit is seide, to chaunge his furdes in euery monethe; and wheþer hit do drawe more nye to the partes of Englonde other elles of Wales, the peple do prenosticate a falle to the peple to whom hit is more nye. Also this water callede Dee hathe his begynnenge of a water callede Pimbelmere, and this floode of Dee is habundante in salmons, and vn to this tyme presente a samon was not founde in that water from whom the water of Dee commethe. *Willelmus de Regibus, libro secundo.* Hit is to be considerate how that diuine powere hathe lyȝhtede the peple of Englonde sythe that thei toke the feithe of Criste, where so meny seyntes be not founde in eny other prouince as in that; as of Seynte Edwarde, Seynte Edmunde the kyng, Elphegus, Cuthberte, and Seynte Thomas of Cawnterbery, with meny other seyntes; whiche y suppose to be causede by the inspiracion of Godde, that a nacion as putte with owte the worlde thro þe con-

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *wheþer, a., Cx.*² *Added from a. and Cx.*³ *oversett, a., Cx.*⁴ *So a. and Cx.; is a samoun, MS.*⁵ *be shewed vpon, Cx.*⁶ *So a.; sith, Cx.; sobeliche, MS.*⁷ *right, Cx.*⁸ *So a. and Cx.; if, MS.*⁹ *oo, a.*¹⁰ *lif] om. a.; euerlastyngnes, Cx.*¹¹ *þis, a.*¹² *Cutberd, a., Cx.; the latter adds, and Seynt Edward and many other.*¹³ *So a. and Cx.; beþ, MS.*

incorruptelæ fidentius ad spem resurrectionis animetur.

CAP. XLIII.¹

De partibus insulæ principalibus.

CÆPIT² Britannia³ post Bruti primi⁴ tempora tres habere⁵ partes principales, scilicet, Loegriam, Cambriam, Albaniam,⁶ quæ nunc Scotia dicitur.⁷ Loegria a Loctrino,⁸ Bruti primogenito, denominata⁹ hodie vulgato vocabulo Anglia dicitur, cujus limites primo fuerunt fretum Gallicanum ad ortum et¹⁰ austrum. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo duodecimo.*¹¹ Et ad aquilonem duo maris brachia altrinsecus in terram¹² longo spatio irrumpentia,¹³ quamvis ad se invicem non pertingant;¹⁴ quorum orientalis sinus incipit duobus ferme milibus¹⁵ a monasterio Ebbircurnig¹⁶ ad occidentem urbis¹⁷ de Pemiltoun, et habet in se urbem Guydi;¹⁸ occidentalis vero sinus habet ad dextram¹⁹ sui

Leogria
sive Anglia.

¹ Misnumbered 34 both in E. and Cx.

² *Insula*, B.

³ *Cæpit Britannia*] *Brittannia*, (-ia, D.) *insula*, C.D.; *Cæpit Britannia insula*, A., Gale.

⁴ *primi*] om. B.

⁵ *cepit habere*, C.D.

⁶ *Albaniam . . . dicitur*] et Scotiam, C.D.

⁷ *quæ . . . dicitur*] om. B.

⁸ *Logria a Logrino*, B.

⁹ *dicta*, C.D.; om. B.

¹⁰ *ad*, C.

¹¹ *capitulo duodecimo*] om. C.; *septimo*, D. The text is correct.

¹² *in terram*] om. E.

¹³ *interrumpentia*, B.

¹⁴ *quamvis pertingant*] om. C.D.

¹⁵ *miliaribus*, B.C.D.

¹⁶ *Herbercurnig*, C.; *Ewircurnig*, B.; *Ebburcurnig*, A.; *Æbercurnig* (i.e. *Abercorn*), Bede. (The termination in the MSS. may either be *-ing*, or *-nig*. See 'Trevisa.)

¹⁷ *urbis*] om. C.D.

¹⁸ *habet . . . Guydi*] fluit in illud flumen Twede, C.D.; Gyndi, B.

¹⁹ *a dextra*, B.

more bolde and stedefast for to triste¹ on þe final arisyng of deed bodies forto laste euermore after þe day of dome. TREVISA.

De partibus Britannia principalibus. Capitulum quadragesimum tertium.

After þe firste Brutes² tyme þe ilond of Bretayne bygan for to haue þ[r]e³ principal parties, þat beþ Loegria, and⁴ Cambria, þat is Wales, and Albania, þat is now⁵ Scotland. Loegria had þat name of Loerinus [þat was Brut his sone eldest, and hatte Loegria, as hit were Loerinus]⁶ his lond; but now Loegria hatte Engeland. Þe meeres and þe marke⁷ were þerof somtyme þe Frensche see boþe by est and by souþ. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo duodecimo.*⁸ And by north tweie armes of þe see þat brekeþ fer in to þe lond, eyþer aʒenst oþer. But he⁹ recheþ nouʒt to gidres; þe est arme of þilke tweyne bygynneþ aboute a tweie litel myle fram þe ministre of Ebburcuring¹⁰ in þe west side of þe citee of Penultoun; in þat arm¹¹ is¹² a toun, þat hatte Guydy. Þe west arme of þilke tweyne haþ in þe

sideracion of that corruptele scholde be more bolde in feithe to the hope of the resurreccion. MS. HARL. 2261.

Of the principalle partes of Briteyne. Capitulum quadragesimum tertium. f. 62. a.

THE yle of Briteyne began to haue iij. principalle partes in hit after the firste tymes of Brute, that is to say, Loegria, whiche is callede now Englonde, takenge the name of hit of Loerinus the firste son of Brute, and Wales, and Albania that is now Scottelande. The merkes of whom were firste the see of Fraunce at the este and at the weste. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo duodecimo.* Also in the northe partes of that cuntre be ij. floodes brekenge vp eiche from other by a grete space, thauʒhe thei towche not to gedre, the este parte of whom begynneþe allemoste by the space of ij. myles from a monastery callede Eburcuring, at the weste of a cite callede Penulton, whiche hathe in hit a cite callede Tweda. The oþer parte of the weste see begynneþe at

¹ *triste*, a., Cx.

² *Brutys*, a. (not Cx.)

³ þe] So MS., a. β., and Cx.; but the correction is certain.

⁴ and] om. a. and Cx. (Interlineated in MS.)

⁵ now is, a.

⁶ Added from a. and Cx., who has a few deviations.

⁷ *merkes*, Cx., which is better.

⁸ *vicesimo*, Cx., wrongly.

⁹ *they*, Cx.

¹⁰ *Ebburcuring*, Cx.

¹¹ So a. and Cx.; *armes*, MS.

¹² Added from a. and Cx.

urbem minutissimam¹ Alcluid, quod lingua eorum sonat petram Cluit, et ponitur juxta flumen² nominis sui Cluit.³ *Ranulphus*. Volunt tamen quidam Loegriam apud flumen Humberæ terminari, nec ulterius versus boream debere extendi.⁴

Albania
sive Scotia.

Secunda pars Britanniae Albania sive Scotia dicitur, ab Albanacto Bruti filio sic denominata;⁵ extendit se a duobus⁶ marinis brachiis praedictis usque ad mare Norguegiae⁷ versus⁸ aquilonem. Pars tamen austrina Albaniae,⁹ quae est a fluvio Twydy¹⁰ usque ad mareoticum, a Pictis quondam inhabitata, pertinuit aliquando ad regum Northimbrorum¹¹ Berniciorum;¹² a primis videlicet regum Angliae¹³ temporibus usque dum rex Scotorum Kynadius,¹⁴ Alpini filius, Pictos deleteret, et sic¹⁵ partem illam regno Scotiae annecteret.¹⁶

Wallia quae
et Cambria.

Tertia pars Britanniae dicitur Wallia, quae et Cambria, a Cambro Bruti filio sic dicta,¹⁷ quam ex parte orientali¹⁸ flumen Sabrinæ¹⁹ quondam sequestrabat a Loegria;²⁰ hodie tamen flumen Dee apud Cestriam in borea,

¹ *urbem minutissimam*] om. C.D.

² *flumen*] om. B., and space left before Cluit.

³ *ponitur . . . Cluit*] et fuit in illud flumen Sulwach, C.D.

⁴ Slightly altered in C.D.

⁵ *sic denominata*] nuncupata, C.D.

⁶ *a duobus*] proprie a, C.D.

⁷ *Norguegiae*, C.D.

⁸ *versus*] ad, C.D.

⁹ *Albania*] om. C.D.

¹⁰ *Twydi*, B.; *Tvidi*, A.; *Twede*, D.

¹¹ *Northanhinbrorum*, B.; *North-*

amhymbrorum, Gale; *Northimbro-*
rum, D.

¹² *Berniciorum*] om. B.

¹³ *Anglorum*, C.D.; *regum Anglorum*, B., Gale.

¹⁴ *Kynardus*, A.B.; *Kinadius*, D.

¹⁵ *sic*] om. C.D.

¹⁶ *sociaret*, C.D.

¹⁷ *sic dicta*] nuncupatur, C.D.

¹⁸ *hanc ex orientis parte*, C.D.

¹⁹ *Sabrini*, A.

²⁰ *ab Anglia*, C.D.

riȝt¹ side a strong citee þat hatte Alclud,² þat in hire TREVISA.
 longage hatte Cluitstoun, and stondeþ vpon a ryuere þat
 hatte Cluit also. [R.]³ Som men wolde mene þat Loegria
 endep at Homber, and streccheþ no ȝonder⁴ northward.
 Þe secounde party of Bretayne hatte Albania, þat is
 Scotlond, and hap þat name of Albanactus Brutis⁵ sone,
 and streccheþ from þe tweye forsaide armes of þe see
 norþward anon to þe see of Norway. Nopeles þe soup
 partie of Albania pere⁶ Pictes woued somtyme, and lith
 from þe water of Twyde anon to þe Scottische see; al
 þat longed somtyme to þe kyngdom of Norþhumberlond
 Bremencorum,⁷ þe north side of Norþhumberlond, from þe
 firste tyme of [Englisch kynges to þat tyme]⁸ whanne
 Kynadius, kyng of Scotlond, þat was Alpinus his sone,
 dede away þe Pictes, and so ioyned þe⁹ contray to þe
 kyngdom of Scotlond. Þe þridde party of Bretayne is
 Wallia,¹⁰ þat hat Cambria also, and hadde þat name
 Cambria of Camber, Brut his sone; for he was prince
 of Wales. In þe est side¹¹ Seuerne departed somtyme
 bytwene Engelond and Wales. [But now in þe north side
 þe ryuer Dee at Chestre, and in þe south þe ryuer þat

the ryȝhte parte of Alclud, a cite whiche is putte nye to MS. HARL.
 Cluid, a floode of that name. R. Some men wille Loegria, 2261.
 now callede Englonde, to haue an ende at the floode off
 Humbre, and not to be extended forther towarde the northe.
 The secunde principalle parte of Englonde was callede
 Albania, other Scottelande, takenge the name of hit off
 Albanactus the son of Brute, which extendethe hit from
 the seide ij. waters to the see of Norway towarde the northe.
 Neuerthelesse, the sowthe parte of Scotlande, whiche is
 from the water of Twide vn to the Scottes see, was inhabite
 somme tyme of the Pictes, whiche perteynede somme tyme
 to þe cuntre of Northumbrelonde in the firste tymes of
 kynges of Englonde, vn tylle that Kinadius, kyng of Scottes,
 son to Alpinus, destroyede the Pictes, and annecte that parte
 to the realme of Scottelande. The thrydde parte of Bri-
 teyne is callede Wales, callede Cambria of Camber the son
 of Brute, whom the water of Seuerne departede somme tyme
 from Englonde, where now the floode of Dee departethe hit
 in the northe at Chestre, and the water other floode callede

¹ right, a.

² Alclud, a.; Alcliud, Cx., who has Clintstone, and Clynt below.

³ Reference added from Cx.

⁴ ferther, Cx.

⁵ Brut his, a.; Bruytes, Cx.

⁶ where as, Cx., who varies the construction.

⁷ Brennicorum, a.; Brenycorn, Cx.

⁸ Added from a. and Cx.; a. has children for kynges.

⁹ þat, a., Cx.

¹⁰ Wales, Wallia, a., Cx.

¹¹ side of, MS. (not a. or Cx.)

et flumen Vaga apud castrum Strigulense¹ in austro Walliam ab Anglia secernit. Insuper et rex Offa, ad perpetuam regnorum Angliæ et Walliæ distinctionem habendam, fecit fossam perlongam,² quæ ab austro juxta Bristolliam sub montibus Walliæ³ jugiter se extendit in boream, fluminaque⁴ Sabrinae et Dee in eorum pene primordiis⁵ transcendit,⁶ et sic usque ad ostium fluminis Dee ultra Cestriam,⁷ juxta castrum de Flynt,⁸ inter collem⁹ Carbonum et monasterium de Basingwerk,¹⁰ in mare se protendit.¹¹ Hujus fossæ famosissimæ¹² extant adhuc vestigia, quam cum armis prætergrædi¹³ tempore Sancti Edwardi regis cunctis Cambrigenis pœnale fuit, procurante hoc comite Haraldo,¹⁴ sicut¹⁵ inferius dicitur;¹⁶ sed hodie¹⁵ hinc inde ultra citraque fossam illam¹⁷ potissime in provinciis Cestriæ, Salopiæ, Herfordiæ, Wallici cum Anglis passim sunt permixti.

¹ *Trigulense*, D.

² *prolongam*, D.

³ *Walle*, B.

⁴ *fluviosque*, C.D.

⁵ *primordiis pene*, B.

⁶ *transcendit*, A.

⁷ *Cestre*, E.

⁸ *castra deflunt*, D.

⁹ *sub colle*, C.D.

¹⁰ *et . . . Basingwerk*] om. C.D.; *Wasyngwerc*, B.; *Wasingwerc*, A.

¹¹ *extendit*, C.

¹² *famosæ*, C.D.

¹³ *transgredi*, C.D.

¹⁴ *Haroldo*, Gale.

¹⁵ *sicut . . . hodie*] om. C. (not D.); *hodie*, om. B.

¹⁶ *infra dicitur*, D.

¹⁷ *prædictam*, C.D.

hatte Vaga, at þe castel of Strygeleum departeþ Engeland and Wales.]¹ Also kyng Offa, forto haue a distinccioun for euermore bytwene þe kyngdoms of Engeland and of Wales, made a long diche² þat streccheþ forþ oute of þe souþ side by Bristowe vnder þe hilles of Wales norþward, and passeþ þe reuers Seuarne and Dee almost at³ þe hedes, and anon to þe moup of þe ryuer Dee byþonde Chestre faste by þe castle, and⁴ renneþ forþ bytwene Colhille and þe ministre of Basyngwerc⁵ in to þe see. Þis diche is ȝit in many places i-seyn. In Seint Edward his tyme Walsche men schulde not passe þat diche wip wepoun vpon a grete payne, and þat was at erle Harolde his procurynge, as hit is i-saide wip ynne.⁶ Bot now in eiper side bope of⁷ ȝond half and on⁸ þis half þe diche, and specialliche in þe schires of Chestre, of Schrouysbury, and of Herford in meny places beep Engliche men [and Walsche men]⁹ i-medled to gidres.

TREVISA.

Vaga departethe Wales from Englonde in the sowthe at the castelle Strigulense. Also kyng Offa causede a longe diche to be made vn to a perpetualle distinccion of the realmes of Englonde and of Wales, whiche extendethe hit from the sowthe nye to Bristolle, vnder the hilles of Wales, in to the northe; whiche diuidethe as the begynnenges of the waters of Seuarne and of Dee, and protendethe hit vn to the durre of the floode of Dee behynde Chestre nye to the castelle of Flynte, betwene Coolehille and the monastery of Basingwerc. As ȝitte the stappes of that famose dyche remayne, whiche diche to passe was a grete peyne to Walche men, beenge in armes in the tyme of kyng Edward, that erle Haraldus procurenge that, as hit schalle be expressede afterwarde, but now Walche men bene permixte with Engliche men ouer either diche, and specially in the prouinces of Chestre, of Schropeschyre, and of Hereforde.

MS. HARL.
2261.

f. 62. b

¹ Added from a. β. and Cx., who has *Strygelyn*.

² *diche, a.*

³ *to, Cx.*

⁴ *it, Cx.*

⁵ *Basingwerke, β., Cx.*

⁶ *as it shal be sayd here after, Cx.*

⁷ *of] a, a., Cx.*

⁸ *a, Cx.*

⁹ Added from a. β. and Cx. (*Walshmen*.)

CAP. XLIV.

De insulis Britannicæ adjacentibus.

ET¹ præter insulas Orcadas, quas Claudius Cæsar ad Britanniam pertinere fecerat, habet Britannia tres insulas sibi propinquas, quasi tribus Britannicæ partibus² principalibus correspondentes.³ Nam Loegriæ ad austrum adjacet⁴ insula Vecta; Walliæ ad boream insula Monia, quæ Angleseya dicitur;⁵ Scotiæ ad occasum insula Eubonia, quæ Mevania⁶ sive Man dicitur. Omnes pene⁷ ejusdem sunt quantitatis, de quibus hic⁸

De insula
Vecta.

per ordinem. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo tertio.* Insula Vecta, quam Vespasianus a Claudio missus subjugavit, protenditur ab ortu in⁹ occasum xxx. milibus,¹⁰ ab austro in boream xij. milibus,¹¹ et distat a meridiano Britannicæ littore sex milibus¹² in oriente sui parte, et tribus milibus¹² in occidentali. *Beda, libro quarto, capitulo quintodecimo.* Hujus insulæ mensura se-

¹ *Et*] om. C.D.

² *quasi . . . partibus*] tribus partibus suis, B.

³ Slightly transposed and altered in C.D.

⁴ *adjacet ad austrum*, B.

⁵ *dicitur*] om. E.

⁶ *Menevia*, B.—*v* and *n* are so similar in the MSS. that it is hard to say what they read. I have followed Petrie's orthography in the

text. See *Mon. Hist. Brit.*, Index. Gale has *Menania* here, but *Mevania* below.

⁷ *fere*, C.D.

⁸ *hic*] om. C.D.

⁹ *usque ad*, C.; *ad*, D.

¹⁰ *miliaribus*, B.C.D.

¹¹ *milibus*] om. C.D.; *miliaribus*, B.; *milia*, A.

¹² *miliaribus*, B.C.D. (twice.)

De insulis Britanniae adjacentibus. Capitulum quadragesimum quartum. TREVISA.

BRETAYNE hap þre ilondes þat beep nygh and longeþ þerto alle wijþ oute þe ylondes Orcades, as hit were answeringe to þe þre cheef parties of Bretayne. For þe yle of Wight¹ longeþ and lieþ to Loegria, þat is Englonde; þe ilond Mon, þat hatte Engleseie² also, longeþ to³ Wales; and þe ilond⁴ Eubonia, þat hap tweie [opere]⁵ names, and hatte Menania⁶ and Man also, longeþ⁷ to Scotlond. And alle þese þre ilondes, Mon, Wight,⁸ and Man, beþ almost i-lich moche and of þe same quantitie; of þe which þre al arewe now foloweþ our speche. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo tertio.* Claudius sent Vespasianus, and Vespasianus wan Wighte,⁸ and Wighte⁸ streccheþ oute of þe est in to þe west þritty myle long, and out of þe souþ in to þe norþ twelue myle, and is in þe est side sex⁹ myle from þe souþ cleef¹⁰ of Bretayne, and þre myle in þe west side. *Beda, libro quarto, capitulo quinto.*

Of yles adiacente and nye to Briteync.

MS. HARL.
2261.

Capitulum quadragesimum quartum.

AND the yles excepte whom Claudius Cesar causede to perteyne to Briteync, that londe hatte iij. yles nye to hit as correspondent to thre principalle partes of Briteync: for the yle of Wyzhte lyethe nye to the sowthe parte of Englonde. And at the northe parte of Wales is an yle whiche is callede Monia other Anglesey, and also the yle of Man at the weste parte of Scotlande, whiche be allemoste of oon quantite, of whom hit schalle be seide by ordre. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo tertio.* That yle of Wizhte, whom Vespasian sende¹¹ from Claudius did subiugate, is protended from the este in to the weste by xxx^{ti} myles, beenge from the sowthe in to the northe by xij. myles, and from the side of the sowthe see of Briteync by vj. myles in the este parte of hit, and by thre myles in the weste. *Beda, libro quarto capitulo quinto decimo.* The measure of that

¹ *Wizt, a.*

² *Anglesia, a., Cx.*

³ MS. has *mon* before *Wales* (not *a.* or *Cx.*)

⁴ So *a.* and *Cx.*; *Engelond, MS.*

⁵ *opere*] Added from *a.* and *Cx.*

⁶ *Menavia, Cx.*; see above.

⁷ *which longeth, Cx.*

⁸ *Wizt, a.*

⁹ *sixe, a.*

¹⁰ *clyve, a.*

¹¹ So Harl. MS.

De insula
Monia.

cundum æstimationem Anglorum est M.CC. familiarum.
² *Giraldus in Itinerario, libro secundo.*³ Insula Monia, quæ et Angleseya, brevi maris brachio quasi duobus miliaribus separatur a Northwallia⁴ et continet ccclxiiij. villas pro⁵ tribus cantredis; computatur⁶ quasi xxx. milia habens in longum⁷ sed xij. in latum;⁸ et dicitur cantredus, composito nomine tam⁹ Britannica quam Hibernica lingua, tanta terræ portio, quanta centum villas continet.¹⁰ In hujus insulæ laudem proverbialiter¹¹ solet dici Cambrice sic:¹² *Mon Mam Kymry*, quod Latine sonat *Monia mater Cambricæ*; nam,¹³ aliis terris victu deficientibus, hæc gleba præpollet adeo ut¹⁴ hæc in annona,¹⁵ ¹⁶ montes¹⁷ Snawdoniæ¹⁸ in pastura totius Cambriæ populo et armentis videatur¹⁹ sufficere; unde et illud Virgilio aptari²⁰ sibi possit:

Et quantum²¹ longis carpunt armenta diebus,
 Exigua tantum gelidus ros²² nocte reponit.²³

¹ *miliarium*, B.

² C.D. add:—"Item libro primo, "capitulo quintodecimo. Itemque "sita est econtra [contra, D.] medium Australium Saxonum et "Gwessorum [Gewissorum, D.] "interposito pelago latitudine trium "miliariorum, quod vocatur Soluente, in quo bini æstus oceani "quotidie compugnantes sibi occurrunt ultro ostium fluminis Hamelea, quod per terras Jutarum, "quæ ad regiones Gowisiorum " [Gewissorum, D.] pertinent, præfatum pelagus intrat." See Bed. lib. iv. c. 16.

³ *in Itinerario, libro secundo*] om. E.

⁴ *Saxonice Angleseye dicta*, ins. C. D.

⁵ *per*, E.

⁶ *reputatur*, C.D.; *computantur*, B.

⁷ *longitudine*, C. (not D.)

⁸ *xij. in latum*, D.; *latitudine*, C.

⁹ *tam*] om. C. (not D.)

¹⁰ *continere solet*, C.D.

¹¹ *probabiliter*, E.

¹² *sic*] om. C.D.

¹³ *quia*, C.D.

¹⁴ *adeo ut*] in tantum quod, C.D.

¹⁵ *annonai*, B.

¹⁶ *et*, ins. C. (not D.)

¹⁷ *monte*, Gale.

¹⁸ *Snawdonia*, E., Gale.

¹⁹ *videntur*, C.; *videtur*, D. Probably we should read *videantur*.

²⁰ *apterai*, B.; *aptare*, E.

²¹ *quamvis*, B.

²² *legibus ros*, B.; *res*, E.; *vos*, Gale. See *Georg.* ii. 202.

²³ *unde . . . reponit*] om. C.D.

De met¹ of þis ilond, as Engliche men geseþ, is a þow- sand housholdes and two hondred. *Giraldus in Itinerario*. Mon, þat hatte Angleseia also, is departed from þe² Norþ Wales by a schort arme of þe see, as it were tweie myle broode. In Mon beþ þre hondred townes þre score and þre, and beþ acounted for þre candredes, þat beþ þre hundredes. Þe ilond is, as it were, þritty myle longe and twelue myle brood.³ Candredus⁴ is so moche land as conteyneþ an hondred townes; þat name Cantredus is i-made oon of tweie longages, of Brittische and of Irische. In preisynge of this ilond Walsche men beþ i-woned to seie a prouerbe and an olde sawe, *Mon mam Kembry*, þat is to menyng in Engliche *Mon moder of Wales*. For whan opere londes lakkeþ mete, þat lond is so good þat hit semeþ þat it wolde fynde corn i-now for alle þe men of Wales. And so it semeþ þat þe hilles of Snowdonia⁵ wolde fynde pasture i-now for al Wales to þe bestes þerof.⁶ Þerfore Virgile is vers may be accordynge þereto :

As moche as gnawes
Bestes [longe]⁷ inneþ dawes,
So moche eft bringeþ
Dew cold⁸ in a nyȝt.

yle after the estimacion of peple of Englonde is of m'cc. MS. HARL. townes⁹ other howsholdes. *Giraldus in Itinerario*. The 2261. yle of Monia, whiche otherwise callede Anglesey, is departede from Northe Wales by ij. myles, as by a lytelle arme of the see, whiche conteynethe ccc. lx. and iij. townes, and hit is acomptede as for thre cantredes, hauenge as xxx¹¹ myles in longitude and xij. myles in latitude; and a cantrede is callede as welle in the langage of Englonde, as in the langage of Irlonde, a porcion of erthe other grownde conteynenge an c. townes. In to the lawde of whom hit is wonte to be seide prouerbially in Walesche, *Monia mam*¹⁰ *Kymry*, whiche sowndethe in Engliche, *Anglesey is the moder of Wales*; for other londes wontenge vitelles that cuntre is habundante, in so moche that Angleseye in corne and Snawdon hilles in pasture scholde suffice as by estimacion alle the peple of Wales and alle the bestes of that

¹ measure, Cx.

² þe] om. a. and Cx., probably rightly.

³ brood] om. Cx. (typogr. error?)

⁴ Cantredus, .. Cx.

(but Candredes above.)

⁵ Snawdonia, a.

⁶ for alle the bestes of Wales, a. The whole sentence is omitted in Cx.

⁷ Added from a. B. and Cx.

⁸ old dewe, Cx.

⁹ places, MS. (first hand).

¹⁰ man, Harl. MS.

De insula
Man.

In marino brachio, quod hanc insulam a Northwallia¹ secernit,² est vorago naves attrahens³ et absorbens instar Scyllæ seu⁴ Charybdis, nisi⁵ pleno mari subtiliter transnavigetur.⁶ *Ranulphus*. De mirabilibus hujus insulæ vide supra capitulo *Wallia*.⁷ *Giraldus in Itinerario*. Tertia insula, quæ⁸ Eubonia sive Mevania⁹ dicitur,¹⁰ inter Hibernicam¹¹ Ultoniam et Scoticas Galwodias,¹² quasi in umbilico maris, media jacet.¹³ *Beda, libro secundo, capitulo nono*. Hæc duas continet partes, quasi¹⁴ insulas; quarum prior ad austrum et situ amplior et ubertate felicior nongentarum sexaginta familiarum est juxta¹⁵ Anglorum æstimationem; secunda trecentarum et ultra spatium tenet.¹⁶ *Giraldus in Topographia*. De qua quondam insula¹⁷ cui regioni, Hiberniæ scilicet an¹⁸ Angliæ, applicari deberet exorta contentione,¹⁹ quia²⁰ venenosos vermes advectos admisit, eam Britannicæ applicandam

¹ *Northwallia*, Gale.

² Slightly abbreviated in C.D.

³ *trahens*, D.

⁴ *et*, C.D.

⁵ *nisi . . . transnavigetur*] om. C.

⁶ *navigaretur*, A.

⁷ Slightly abbreviated in C.D.

⁸ *quæ*] om. C.D.

⁹ *Manavia*, B.

¹⁰ *sive Man*, ins. B.

¹¹ *Hiberniam*, E.

¹² *Galwedias*, D.

¹³ *adjacet*, C.D.

¹⁴ *partes quasi*] om. C.D.

¹⁵ *est juxta*] secundum, C.D.

¹⁶ *continet*, C. (not D.)

¹⁷ *insula*] om. C.D.

¹⁸ *vel*, C.

¹⁹ *tentione*, A.

²⁰ *qui*, Gale.

In pat arme of þe see, pat departeth bytwene þis ilond Mon and Norþ Wales,¹ is a swelowe² pat draweþ to schippes³ pat scilleþ,⁴ and sweloweþ hem yn, as doop Seylla and Charybdis,⁵ pat beep tweie perilous places in þe see of myddel erþe; þefore me may nouȝt seile by þis swolwe⁶ but slily at þe ful see. R̄. Of þe meruailles and wondres of þis ilond Mon,⁷ loke in þe chapitres⁸ of Wales. *Giraldus in Itinerario*. Þe þridde ilond pat hatte boþe Eubonia and Menania, pat is Man, stondeþ in þe myddes⁹ bytwene þe Irische Hulster and þe Scottische Galewey,¹⁰ as it were in þe nauel of þe see. *Beda, libro secundo, capitulo nono*. Þis ilond Man conteyneþ as hit were tweie ilondes; þe firste is souþward, þe more conray and better corn lond, and conteyneþ nyne hondred housholdes and þre score. Þe secounde conteyneþ þe space of þre hondred and moo, as Engliche men telleþ.¹¹ *Giraldus in Topographia*. Som tyme was stryf wheþer þis ilond Man¹² schulde ligge¹³ to Britayne oþer to Irlond, [and]¹⁴ for¹⁵ venemous wormes¹⁶ pat were i-brouȝt þider leued þere hit was i-demed¹⁷ pat the ilond Man schulde longe to Bretayne. [R̄.]¹⁸ And in pat ilond is

TREVISA.

cuntre to theire pasture. Also there is a swalo in that arme of the see whiche dothe departe Northe Wales from that yle, drawenge schippes to hit, with owte that schippemen passe hit subtly at the fulle see. R̄. The reder of this processe may fynde of other mervayles of that cuntre in the chapitre of Wales. *Giraldus, in Itinerario*. That other yle whiche is callede Euvonia, other elles the yle of Man, is seide to be as in the mydde see betwene Vlster in Yrlonde, and the Scottes of Galaweie. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo nono*. Of whiche yle a contencion was made wheþer hit scholde perteyne to Englonde, other elles to Yrlonde, and men brouȝhte wormes and vermyn to hit, and for cause that londe suffrede the wormes to lyve, thei seide that grownde to longe to Englonde and not to Yrlonde.

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ that departeth this londe and North Wales, Cx.

² swolweȝ, a.; swolow, Cx.

³ draweth shippes to it, Cx.

⁴ Cx. inserts by.

⁵ Cilla and Caribdis, MS., a., and Cx.

⁶ swolouȝ, a.

⁷ So a. and Cx.; Mun, MS.

⁸ chapitre, a. Sentence varied in Cx.

⁹ myddel, a., Cx.

¹⁰ Galway, a.; Galleweie, Cx.

¹¹ gessiþ, a.; gesse, Cx.

¹² Mam, MS. (clerical error.)

¹³ longe, Cx.

¹⁴ Added from a. and Cx.

¹⁵ for as moche as, Cx.

¹⁶ So a. and Cx.; wordes, MS.

¹⁷ iugged, Cx.

¹⁸ Reference added from Cx.

censuerunt. *Ranulphus*. In illa insula vigent¹ sortilegia,² superstitiones, atque præstigia; nam mulieres ibidem³ navigaturis ventum vendunt, quasi sub tribus fili nodis inclusum; ita ut, sicut plus de vento habere voluerint, plures nodos evolvant.⁴ Ibi frequenter ab indigenis videntur etiam⁵ de die homines prius mortui, decapitati sive integri, juxta modum suæ mortis; ut autem alienigenæ et adventitii hoc videre possint, ponunt pedes⁶ super pedes incolarum, et sic⁷ videre⁸ poterunt quod incolæ vident. *Beda, libro secundo*. Hæc insula ab initio fuit a Scotorum gente inhabitata. Thanatos⁹ insula juxta Cantiam, a morte¹⁰ serpentum sic dicta, quos dum ipsa nesciat, ejus tamen terra aliunde apportata angues interimit; cujus gleba plurimum ferax¹¹ uberem creditur benedictionem contraxisse¹² ab adventu¹³ Augustini, prothodictoris Anglorum, ibidem primum¹⁴ applicantis.¹⁵

De insula
Thanatos,
sive
Thanet.

CAP. XLV.

De plateis regalibus.

Gaufridus.¹⁶ Statuit Molmutius¹⁷ rex Britonum vicissimus tertius et primus eorum legifer,¹⁸ ut aratra columnum,¹⁹ templa deorum, viæque ad civitates ducentes,²⁰

¹ *in en vigent*, D.

² *et*, ins. C.D.

³ *ibi*, C.D.

⁴ *ita . . . evolvant*] om. C.D.

⁵ *etiam*] om. A., Gale.

⁶ *pedem*, C.; *pedes suos*, B.

⁷ *tunc*, C.D.

⁸ *videre . . . incolæ*] om. C.D.

⁹ *Thanates*, B.; *Thenetos*, D.

¹⁰ *more*, E.

¹¹ *ferax*, B.; *ferax et*, A.

¹² *attractisse*, A.

¹³ *beati*, ins. B.

¹⁴ So A.C.D.; *primo*, B.; *populum* (*ppm*), E.

¹⁵ So B.; *applicante*, A.E., Gale. Sentence slightly abbreviated in C. D.

¹⁶ *Gaufridus*] om. C.D.

¹⁷ *Molincius*, B.

¹⁸ *inter cætera splendoris sui monumenta*, added in C.D., which have other slight variations.

¹⁹ So MSS. and Gale; and so also below.

²⁰ *civitatesque et viæ ducentes ad eas*, C.D.

sortilege and wiccheecraft i-vised. For wommen þere sellip schipmen wynde, as it were i-closed vnder þre knottes of prede, so þat þe more wynd he wol¹ haue, he wil vnknette þe mo knottes.² Þere ofte by day men of þe lond seep men þat beep dede to forhonde, byheded oper hole, and what³ deep þei deide. Aliens setteþ here foot vpon feet of men of þe lond [for to see such sightes as the men of that lond don].⁴ *Beda, libro secundo.* Scottes woned first in þis ilond. Thanatos,⁵ þat is Tenet, and is an ilond bysides Kent, and hap þat name Tanatos of dep of serpentis, for þere beep none, and þe erþe þereof sleep serpentis i-bore⁶ in to oper londes. Þere is nobil corn lond and fruytful;⁷ me troweþ þat⁸ þat ilond was i-halowed and i-blessed of Seynt Austyn, þe firste doctour of Engliche men; for þere he aryued first.

TREVISA.

De plateis regalibus. Capitulum quadragesimum quintum.

Gaufridus. Molinicius, kyng of Britouns,⁹ was þe þridde and twenty of hem, and þe firste þat ʒaf hem lawe. He ordeyned þat¹⁰ plowʒmen solowes, goddes temples,¹¹ and

β. In whiche yle wyccheecrafte ys exercisede moche, for women þer be wonte to selle wynde to the schippemen commenge to that cuntre, as includede vnder thre knottes of threde, so that thei wylle vnloose the knottes lyke as thei wylle haue the wynde to blawe. *Beda, libro secundo.* That yle was inhabite firste of the Scottes. Also there is an yle nye to Kente callede Thanatos, namede so of the dethe of serpentis, the erthe of whiche yle brouʒhte in to other cuntres sleethe serpentis; whiche yle is plentuous; and mony men say that yle to haue bene blessede by Seynte Austyn, the firste doctor of Englonde londenge there firste.

MS. HARL.
2261.

Of the kynges hie weyes.

Capitulum quadragesimum quintum.

Gaufridus. Molimicius, the xxiiijth kyng of Briteyne, and the firste maker of lawe of theyme, ordeinede that the ploes of tillers, the temples of goddes, and the weies ledenge to cites

f. 63. b.

¹ wil, a.; wold, Cx.

² the mo knottes he must vndo, Cx.

³ wat, a.

⁴ Added from Cx., who omits lond by typogr. error; β. has lond, but makes various blunders.

⁵ So a. and Cx.; Thanathos, MS.

⁶ i-bodere, a.

⁷ fruyʒtful, a.

⁸ hit is supposed that, Cx.; and similarly often.

⁹ Molimicius, a.; and so below; Moliuncius, Cx., and Molyuncius below.

¹⁰ þat þat, MS. (not a. or Cx.)

¹¹ MS. adds: and hiʒe temples (not a. or Cx.)

immunitate confugii gauderent, ita ut nullus reus ad aliquod istorum trium confugiens pro tuitione ab aliquo invaderetur.¹ Verum quia procedente tempore de viis, cum non essent certis limitibus distinctæ, orta esset² dissensio, Belinus rex,³ filius Molmutii⁴ prædicti, ad subducendum omne⁵ ambiguum, quatuor regales vias omni privilegio munitas per insulam strui⁶ fecit.

Fossa.

Quarum viarum prima et maxima Fossa dicitur, ab austro in boream extensa, quæ incipit ab angulo Cornubiæ apud Totenenesse,⁷ et terminatur in fine Scotiæ apud Catenesse. *Ranulphus*. Verius tamen secundum alios incipit in Cornubia, tendensque⁸ per Devoniam, Somersete, juxta Tettesbury,⁹ supra Coteswold,¹⁰ juxta Coventry,¹¹ usque Leircestre¹² procedit; indeque per vasta plana versus Neuwerk¹³ diutius progrediens apud Lincolniam terminatur.¹⁴ Secunda via principalis dicitur

Watling-
strete.

¹ Slightly abbreviated and transposed in C.D.

² *est*, D.

³ *rex*] om. C.D.

⁴ *Melimicii*, B.

⁵ *cē* [*esse*], B.; *omnem*, E.

⁶ *sterni*, A.C.D., Gale.

⁷ *Cotenesse* B. C.D. add:—"tendensque per Devoniam, Somersete, juxta Teokesbury, supra Coteswolde, juxta Coventriam, usque Leycestriam, per Lincol-

niam usque Berwicum, tandem, &c.

⁸ *que*] om. B.

⁹ *Teukesbury*, B.; *Teokisbiri*, A.; *Tetteburium*, Gale.

¹⁰ *Cotiswolde*, A.

¹¹ *Coventriam*, Gale.

¹² *Leycestre*, B.; *Leicestriam*, Gale.

¹³ *Vulturnum*, A.B.; *Newark*, Gale.

¹⁴ *Ranulphus . . . terminatur*] om. C.D.

hiȝe weies, þat ledeþ to citees and townes, schulde haue TREVISIA.
 þe fredom of socour; so þat eueriche man þat fley¹ to eny
 of þe þre for socour for² trespas þat he hadde i-doo schulde
 be safe³ for pursuyt of alle⁴ his enemyes. But afterward,
 for þe weies were not so sette wip certeyn markes, þe weies
 were vncerteyn and strif was bygonne.⁵ Perfore Belinus þe
 kyng, þat was þe forsaide Moluncius his sone, for to putte
 away al doute and stryf, made foure hiȝe kyng⁶ weies
 i-priueleged [wip al priuelege]⁷ and fredom, and þe weies
 streccheþ poruȝ out⁸ þe ilond. Þe firste and þe grettest
 of þe foure weies hatte Fosse, and streccheþ out of þe
 south in to þe norþe, and bygynneþ from þe corner of
 Cornewayle at Totteneyes⁹ and endeþ in þe ende of Scot-
 lond at Catenesse. R̄. Neuerþeles more verreyliche, as
 oþer men telleþ, Fosse bygynneþ in Cornewayle,¹⁰ and passeþ
 forþ by Deuenschire and¹¹ by Somersete, and forþ bysides
 Tettebury vpon Codeswolde¹² bysides Couentre anon to
 Leycetre, and so forþ by wylde pleyne toward Newerk,
 and endeþ at Lyncolne. The secounde chief kynges hiȝe
 wey hatte Watlynge strete, and streccheþ þwart¹³ ouer

scholde ioye the immunitie of confute, so that noo man giltty MS. HARL.
2261.
 fleenge to eny of these thre scholde not be borowede of eny
 man for his defence. And within a litelle space folowenge
 there was mouede a grete dissencion of the weies, in that
 there was noo certitude in theyme. Wherefore Belinus
 kyng, and son to Molimicius, causede iij. hie weies to be
 made thro Englonde, defendede and storede with grete priu-
 lege to remove alle dubitacion. The firste of whom, and
 the moste, begynneth in an angle in Cornewaile at Totte-
 nesse, and is extendede in to the norþe, and terminate
 in the ende of Scottelonde at Katenesse. R̄. Neuerthelesse
 that weye begynneth more truly, after somme men, in Corne-
 wayle, goenge by Deueschire and Somerseete, nye Tewkes-
 bery on Cotteswolde, and from that coste to Couentre, and
 soe vn to Leirecestre, and so furthe thro a grete pleyne, is
 terminate at Lyncolne. The secounde principalle weye is
 callede Watlingestreete, goenge ouerthwarde the firste weye,

¹ wente, Cx.

² or for, Cx.

³ saaf, a.

⁴ al, a.

⁵ had, Cx. (who has some omis-
sions.)

⁶ kynges, Cx. (not a.)

⁷ Added from a. and Cx. (who
has priuelegys.)

⁸ thurgh, Cx.

⁹ Totenes, a.

¹⁰ at Totteneyes . . . in Corne-
wayle] om. Cx.

¹¹ and] om. a. and Cx.

¹² Coteswold, a.

¹³ þwat, a.; thwert, Cx.

viz,¹ ab euro² austro in zephyrum septentrionalem. Incipit enim³ a Dovoriam⁴, transiens per medium Cantia⁵ ultra Thamisiam⁶ juxta Londoniam⁷ ad occidentem Westmonasterii,⁸ indeque procedit juxta⁹ Sanctum Albanum ad occidentem per Dunstapulam,¹⁰ per¹¹ Stretfordiam, per¹¹ Toucestre,¹² Wedunam¹³ ad austrum Lilleburne,¹⁴ per Atheristoun¹⁵ usque ad montem Gilberti,¹⁶ qui¹⁷ lccc Wreken dicitur; deinde transcendit Sabrinam juxta Wrokcestre,¹⁹ tendit ad Strettoun,²⁰ et inde per medium Wallia²¹ usque ad Cardigan in mari Hibernico terminatur.²¹ Tertia via dicitur Ermingestrete,²² tendens a zephyro in eurum;²³ et incipit a Menevia²⁴ in Westwallia, procedens usque²⁵ ad portum Hamonis,²⁶ quæ modo dicitur Southamptoun.²⁷ Quarta via dicitur Rikenildstrete²⁹ tendens ab Africo³⁰ in boream vulturnalem, et incipit a Menevia prædicta, tenditque per³¹ Wygorniam, per Wycum,³² per Birmyncha m,³ Lichfield, Derby, Chesterfeld,³⁴ Eboracum, usque ad ostium Tynæ³⁵ fluminis quod Tynmutha³⁶ dicitur.³⁷

Ermyngestrete.

Rykenildstrete.

¹ per . . . viz.] om. C.D.

² ab, ins. A.

³ enim] om. C.D.

⁴ sive Dorobernia, ins. C.D., omitting transiens.

⁵ Cansia, A.

⁶ Tamesium, Gale; ultra Thamisiam] om. C.D.

⁷ Londonium, Gale.

⁸ Westimonasterii, E.

⁹ Westmonasterii . . . juxta] per, C.D.

¹⁰ Donestaple, B.

¹¹ per] om. B.D.; et, A.

¹² Toucestriam, Gale.

¹³ Wedman, Gale; Wedoun, D.

¹⁴ Lilleburum, Gale.

¹⁵ per Atheristoun] om. C.D.; Atherston, B.; Atherscotiam, Gale.

¹⁶ Monsilberti, B.

¹⁷ quæ, A.

¹⁸ mons, B.

¹⁹ Wrokcestriam, Gale.

²⁰ Strettoniam, Gale.

²¹ Sentence slightly altered and abbreviated in C.D.

²² Ermingestrete, C. (not D.), Erningistrete, Gale.

²³ austrum, C.D.

²⁴ Mavonia, Gale, and so below.

²⁵ usque] om. B.

²⁶ Amonis, A.

²⁷ South Hamptonia, Gale.

²⁸ Sentence abbreviated in C.D.

²⁹ Rikenyldestrete, B.; Hikenildestrete, C. (not D.)

³⁰ Affico, B.

³¹ Herford, ins. C.D.

³² Wicum, B.D., Gale; Wicum et Birmingham, A.

³³ Wyrnyngham, B.; Birmyngham, D., Gale.

³⁴ Cestirfeld, A.

³⁵ Tyni, B.

³⁶ Tinemeta, B.; Tynmouthia, A.; Tynemutha, D., Gale.

³⁷ Slightly altered in C.D. A few very trivial variations of orthography in the MSS. are omitted.

Fosse out of þe souþ est in to þe norþ west, and bygynneþ at Douere, and passeþ by þe middel of Kent ouer Themse bysides Londoun by West Westmynstre, and so forþ by Seint Albon in þe west side by Donstaple,¹ by Stretforde,² by Toucetre, by Wedoun, by Souþ Lilleburne, by Atherestoun,³ anon to Gilbertys hill, þat now hatte Wrekene, and forþ by Seuarne, and passeþ by sides Wrocestre, and þanne forþ to Strattoun, and forth by þe myddel of Wales anon to Cartigan,⁴ and endeþ at þe Irische⁵ see. Þe þridde way hatte Erimingestrete,⁶ and streccheþ out of þe west northwest in to þe est souþest, and byginneþ in Meneuia þat is in Seint Deuys⁷ lond in West Wales, and streccheþ forþ anon to Souþ Hamptoun. Þe ferþe hatte Rykeneldes strete, and streccheþ out of þe south west in to þe norþ est, and bygynneþ in Meneuia in West Wales, and streccheþ forþ⁸ by Worcestre, by Wycombe, by Birmingham,⁹ by Lichefeld, by Derby, by Chesterfild, by York, and so forþ anon to Tynemouþe.

TREVISA.

that is to say, from the sowthe este in to the northeweste; MS. HARL. 2261. begynnege at Dover, and goenge thro the myddes of Kente vn to Temmyse, nye to London at the weste of Westmynster; goenge from thens to Seynte Albanes at the weste, by Dunstaple, thro Stratforde, Toucestre, Wedunam, at the sowthe of Lilleburne, thro Atheriston, to the hille of Gilberte, that is callede now Wrekene; and from that hit kyttethe ouer Seuerne nye to Worcestre, and so Stratton, and from thens thro the myddes of Wales, and is endede at Cardigan in the see of Yrlonde. The thridde principalle way is callede Emyngestrete, whiche begynnethe at Seynte Dauides in Westewales, goenge to Sowthe Hampton. The iiijth principalle wey is callede Rikenilde¹⁰ Strete, goenge from Seynte Dauides þro Worcestre, thro Birmicham, Lichefelde, Derby, Chesterfelde, Yorke, and to the floode of Tyne that is callede Tynnemowthe.

¹ *Donstable, a.*² *Stredfore, a.*³ *Atherystoun, a.*⁴ *Cardigan, a.; Cardyhan, Cx.*⁵ *Erisch, a.*⁶ *Erymyngestrete, a.; Erimyngestrete, Cx.*⁷ *Dauyes, a.; David, Cx.*⁸ So *a.*; *for*, MS.; Cx. has some omissions, and a few slight variations of orthography.⁹ *Birmingham, a.*¹⁰ *Bikenilde, Harl. MS.*

CAP XLVI.

*De famosis fluminibus.*¹

Alfridus. Tria per Britanniam fluunt famosa flumina,² per quæ ex universis pene nationibus transmarina per totam insulam navigio feruntur commercia; videlicet³ Thamisia, Sabrina, et Humbra,⁴ quorum alveis per ampla ostia oceani marinum fleuma influens⁵ et refluens tres insulæ principales provincias, quasi tria regna, disternat; id est, Loegriam, Cambriam, et⁶ Northimbriam.⁷ *Ranulphus.* Thamisia videtur componi a nominibus duorum fluminum, quæ⁸ Thama et Isa.⁹ Thama currens juxta Dorcestam¹⁰ cadit in Isam; inde totus fluvius a suo exortu¹¹ usque ad mare orientale¹² dicitur Thamisia. ¹³Nempe¹⁴ juxta urbem Tettebury, quæ tribus milibus ad boream [Malmesburie ponitur, nascitur Thamisia ex fonticulo versus orientem decurrente]¹⁵ ac plateam Fossæ transcidente, provinciasque Gloverniæ et Wyltoniæ disternante, qui secum alios fonticulos profluendo trahens apud Cirecestriam grandescit. Inde quoque versus Hamptonam tendens, per Oxoniam, per Walyngfordiam, per Radyngum, perque

¹ A., in place of the heading, has only "Alfredus."

² *Fluunt per Britanniam multa et ingentia flumina*, C.D.

³ *sed præ cæteris tria famosa præcellunt fluentia, videlicet*, C.D.

⁴ *Humbria*, B.

⁵ *fleuma influens*] fluens, B.; flumina, A.D.; flumen, Gale, which is probably right.

⁶ *et*] om. C.D.

⁷ *Humbriam*, B.

⁸ *sunt*, A.C., Gale.

⁹ *Ysa*, A.B.D., Gale; so throughout.

¹⁰ *Dorcestriam*, A.B., Gale; *Dorcestre*, D.

¹¹ *ortu*, B.

¹² *orientale*] om. C.D.

¹³ From *Nempe . . . Merciorum* is abbreviated in C.D. as follows:—

"*Willelmus libro secundo Pontificum.* Thamisia citra Londoniam octoginta miliaribus nascens

"juxta Teokesbury fonticulo fusus fluit per Oxoniam perque Londoniam; per quadraginta miliaria

"nomen suum retinet, fuitque quondam terminus Cantiorum Est-

"Saxonum quoque et Merciorum."

¹⁴ *Nempe . . . Londoniam*] *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo.*

Thamisia juxta Teukesbury [Tookisburi, A.] fonticulo fusus fluit per Oxoniam perque Londoniam, A.B.

¹⁵ Added from Gale. See also various readings.

De famosis fluminibus.

TREVISA.

Capitulum quadragesimum sextum.

Alfridus. Thre famous ryueres rennep þoruþ Britayne ; by þe whiche þre ryueres marchaundis of byþonde see comeþ in schippes into Bretayne wel nyh oute of alle manere naciouns and londes. Þe¹ þre ryueres beþ Themse, Seuarne, and Humber. Þe see ebbeþ and floweþ at þe mouþes of þese² þre ryueres, and departeþ [þe]³ þre prouinces of þe ilondes, as hit were þre kyngdoms, for to wynne ;⁴ þe þre parties beþ Loegria, Cambria, and Norþumbria, þat beþ Wales, Engeland,⁵ and Northumberlond. R̄.⁶ [Þis]⁷ name Temse⁸ semeþ i-made oo name of tweye names of ryueres,⁹ þat beþ Tame and Ise. For þe ryuer Tame rennep bysides Dorchestre, and falleþ in Ise ; þefore al þe ryuer from þe first heede anon to þe est see hatte Temse. Temse bygynneþ bysides Tettebury, þat is þre myle by norþ Malmesbury ; þere Temse springeþ of a welle and rennep estward, and passeþ þe Fosse, and departeþ Glowcetreschire and Wiltshire, and draweþ wiþ hym meny oþer welles stremes,¹⁰ and wexeþ grete at Grecestre, and passeþ forþ þanne toward Bamptoun,¹¹ and so forþ by Oxenforde, by Walyngforde, by

*Of the famose floodes in hit.*MS. HARL.
2261.*Capitulum quadragesimum sextum.*

Alfridus. Thre famose floodes floo thro Briteyne, to whom and thro whom marchandise commethe allemoste from alle naciones and regiones by schippe, whiche be Thamys, Seuarne, and Humber, whiche waters departe thre principalle prouinces as thre realmes, that is to say, Englonde, Wales, and Northumbrelonde. R̄. Thamisia, whiche is callede Temmys, semethe to be compownde of ij. waters, whiche be callede Thamia and Isa. That streme callede Tame rennenge by Dorchestre fallethe in to Ise, þefore alle that water rennenge soe togedre is called Tammyse.

¹ *These*, Cx.² *the*, Cx.³ Added from *a.* and Cx.⁴ *a sondre*, Cx., who probably read *atwynne*; the text seems corrupt.⁵ *myddel Englonde, Wales*, Cx.⁶ *a.* omits R̄.⁷ Added from *a.*; *these*, Cx.⁸ *Themse*, *a.*⁹ *two riuers*, Cx.¹⁰ *and stremes*, Cx.¹¹ *Hampton*, Cx.

Londoniam. *Willelmus*¹ *de Pontificibus, libro secundo.*² Apud Sandicum portum labitur in mare orientale, nomenque suum retinet ultra Londoniam per xl. miliaria, fuitque quondam terminus Cantiorum³ et Estsaxonum,⁴ Westsaxonum,⁵ et Merciorum. *Ranulphus.* Sabrina fluvius Britanniae⁶ dicitur Habren,⁷ ab Abren, filia Estrildis, quam Guendolena regina submersit in ea, sed per corruptionem Latinæ linguæ⁸ dicitur modo Sabrina. Oritur quoque in medio Walliæ, transitque⁹ primo versus orientem usque¹⁰ Salopiam; inde vergit ad austrum usque ad Brugges,¹¹ Wygorniam, Gloucestriam,¹² et apud Bristoliam labitur in mare occidentale, fuitque terminus aliquando¹³ Cambriæ et Loegriæ. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro quarto.*¹⁴ Sabrina est alveus gurgite rapax, arte¹⁵ piscosus, in quo¹⁶ furor¹⁷ voraginis seu potius vertiginis ab imo verrens¹⁸ arenas conglobat in cumulum, ripasque¹⁹

¹ A. adds generally *Malmesburiensis* in this and similar references.

² Extract transposed and altered in A.B.D.

³ *Canteorum*, A.

⁴ *etiam Saxonum*, B.

⁵ *Westsaxonum*] om. B.

⁶ *Britannice*, A., which is better.

⁷ *Abren*, A.

⁸ *linguæ*] om. C.D. (reading *Latine*.)

⁹ *transit quoque*, C.D.

¹⁰ *ad*, ins. A.

¹¹ *Brigges*, D.

¹² So written at length in A.; *Gloucestro*², E. It is often difficult to say whether the Latin or English form is intended, when the word is contracted. The Latin form has been preferred in the Latin text, when sanctioned by MS. authority. *Glavernum*, C.; *Gloverniam*, D.

¹³ *aliquando*] added from A.B., Gale.

¹⁴ *libro quarto*] om. B.

¹⁵ *fluvius*, B.

¹⁶ *arte . . . quo*] in eo, B.

¹⁷ *in quo furor*] in furor, C.D.

¹⁸ *vergens*, C. (not D.)

¹⁹ *que*] om. C.D.

Redyngge, and by Londoun. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo*.¹ At þe hauen of Sandwichiche it falleþ into þe est see, and holdeþ his name fourty myle byþond Londoun, and departed somtyme² bytwene Kent and Essex, Westsex and Mercia ; þat is as hit were a greet deel of [myddel]³ Englonde. Seuarn is a ryuer of Bretayne, and hatte Habren [in Britoun, and hap þat name Habren of Habren],⁴ þat was Estrildes douȝter. Guedolen þe quene drenched þis Habren þerynne ; þefore þese⁵ Bretouns cleped þe ryuer Habren after þe womman þat was adraynt [þerynne],⁶ but by corrupte Latyn tonge hit hatte Sabryna, Seuarne on Englische. Seuarne byginneþ in þe myddel of Wales, and passeþ first toward þe est anon to Schroesbury, and þan torneþ souþward anon to Brigge-norþ, Wirceþre, and Gloucetre, and falleþ in to þe west see besides Brystowe, and departed somtyme⁷ bytwene Engeland and Wales. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro quarto*. Seuarne is swift of streme, fische craft is þere ynne, woodnesse of swolwyngge and of whirlyngge water casteþ vp and gadereþ to hepe grete hepes of grauel. Seuarne is ofte vppe⁸ and

TREVISA.

Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo. The water of Thamyse takege the originale of hit nye to Tewkesbury of a lytelle welle, floethe by Oxforde, London, vn to the haven of Sandewiche, goenge þer in to the este see, reteynenge the name of hit paste London by xlth myles, whiche was somme tyme as a cause terminative of men of Kente, of Este Saxones, West Saxones, and of men of the Marches. Seuerne, a floode of Briteyne, is callede Habren, of Habren douȝter of Estrilde, whom a qwene callede Guendolena drowned in hit, but now hit is callede Sabrina, by the corrupcion of the langage of Latyn. That water of Seuerne begynneth in the myddes of Wales, and goethe firste towarde the este vn to Schrewisbury, after that hit turnethe in to the sowthe to Brugges, Worcestre, and to Glocestre, fallenge in to the see at Bristowe, whiche was somme tyme a terme of Englonde and of Wales. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro quarto*. Seuerne is a perellous streme fulle of fische, in whom is such a movenge that hit turnethe vp the grauelle from the bothom of the water, and makethe theyme in a grete hepe

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ Reference added from Cx., who has *c.* (i.e. *capitulo*) for *libro*.

² in *som place*, Cx.

³ Added from *a.* and Cx.

⁴ Added from *a.* and Cx., who has *Britons*.

⁵ *the*, Cx.

⁶ Added from *a.* and Cx.

⁷ *departeth in somme place*, Cx.

⁸ *ofte aryseth*, Cx.

suas frequenter transcendit. *Ranulphus*. *Humbra*¹ quoque ab *Humbro*, rege Hunorum, in ea² submerso nomen sortita est,³ primo ab australi parte *Eboracensium*⁴ arcualiter⁵ decurrens,⁶ inde provinciam *Lindisiensem*, quæ olim ad *Mercios* spectabat, a reliqua plaga *Northimbrana* disternat; hanc autem⁷ *Humbram* multum adaugent⁸ flumen⁹ *Trent* et *Ouse*¹⁰ in eam cadens.

CAP. XLVII.

De antiquis urbibus.

Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo. Regio *Britanniæ* quondam erat civitatibus nobilissimis viginti octo¹¹ insignita,¹² præter castella innumera,¹³ quæ et ipsa muris, turribus, portis, et serris erant instructa firmissimis. *Alfridus*.¹⁴ Civitatum nomina hæc erant: *Caerlud*, id est, *Londonia*;¹⁵ *Caerbranc*,¹⁶ id est, *Eboracum*; *Caerkent*, id est, *Cantuaria*; *Caergorangun*, id est, *Wygornia*; *Caerlirion*,¹⁷ id est, *Laircestria*;¹⁸ *Caer-*

¹ *Humbria*, B.D.² *eo*, B.³ *arcualiter sortita est nomen*, B.⁴ *Eboracencium*] *Eboraci*, B.; *urbis Eboraci*, C.D.⁵ *arcualiter*] om. B.⁶ *decurrit*, C.D.; with other slight alterations.⁷ *ante*, A.D.⁸ *auget*, C.D.; *adauget*, B.⁹ *fluvius*, C.D.¹⁰ *et Ouse*] om. A.B.C.D.¹¹ *viginti octo before nobilissimis*, B.¹² Slightly abbreviated in C.D.¹³ *innumera*, B.¹⁴ *Alfridus*] om. C.D.¹⁵ *Londonium*, Gale; *Londoun*, D.¹⁶ *Caerebrac*, D.¹⁷ *Caerlion*, C.; *Caerleirion*, B.¹⁸ *Leyrecestria*, B.; *Leircestria*, A.; *Leicestria*, D., Gale.

passer þe brynkes.¹ R. Humber hap þe name of Humber, TREVISIA.
 kyng of Hunes, for he was adreynt² þerynne, and rennep first
 a crook out of þe south side of York, and þanne departe þe
 prouince of Lyndeseye³ þat longede somtyme to þe Merces
 from þe oþer contray Norþumberlond. Trent and Owse⁴
 rennep⁵ in to Humber, and makeþ the ryuer ful greet. *Tre-*
uisa. Þe Merces were men as hit were of myddel Engellond,
 as it is i-seide wip ynne.⁶

De antiquis vrbibus. Capitulum quadragesimum septimum.

Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo. The kyngdom of Bre-
 tayne [was]⁷ somtyme i-hight⁸ wip eiȝte and twenty noble
 citees, wip oute welle⁹ many castelles þat were wip walles, wip
 toures, wip ȝates, wip barres, stalworþliche i-buld.¹⁰ *Alfr.*¹¹
 Þese were þe names of þe citees :—Caerlud,¹² þat is, Londoun ;
 Caerbrank, þat is, ȝork ; Caerkent, þat is, Caunterbury ;
 Caergorangon, þat is, Wircestre ; Caerlirion þat is, Leyecestre ;

oftetymes goenge ouer the brynkes of hit. Also that water MS. HARL.
 callede Humbre toke the name of Humber kyng of Hunes 2261.
 drownde in hit. Whiche rennethe¹³ firste in the maner of
 a bawe from the sowthe parte of Yorke to the prouince
 Lindescence, whiche longede somme tyme to the Marches,
 dothe diuide Northumbrelonde from that other plage ; whom
 the floodes of Trente and of Ouse fallenge in to hit¹⁴ cause
 to be encreasede gretely thro them.

*Of the olde Cites in hit. Capitulum quadragesimum
 septimum.*

Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo. The region of Briteyno
 was made nowble somme tyme with xxiiij¹⁵ nowble cites, ex-
 cepte castelles innumerable, whiche were made with sure walles,
 towres, ȝates, and lokkes. *Alfridus.* These were the names
 of the cites :—Caerlud, London ; Caerbranc, Yorke ; Caerkente,
 Caunterbery ; Caergorangon, Worcestre ; Caerlirion, Leircestre ;

¹ *brymmes, a. ; ouerfloweth the
 bankes, Cx.*

² *drowned, Cx., and so often.*

³ *Lyndeceie, a.*

⁴ *Ouse, a*

⁵ *and rennep, MS. (not Cx.)*

⁶ *as it shal be sayd here after, Cx.*

⁷ *Added from a. and Cx.*

⁸ *made fair, Cx.*

⁹ *right, Cx.*

¹⁰ *strongly buylded, Cx.*

¹¹ *Reference added from Cx.*

¹² *þat is Caerlud, MS. (not a. or
 Cx.)*

¹³ *Probably rennenge is the true
 reading.*

¹⁴ *cause hit MS. (first hand.)*

clau, id est, Gloucestria; ¹ Caercolden, ² id est, Colcestria; Caerircei, ³ id est, Chichestria, quæ olim apud Saxones vocabatur Cissancestria; ⁴ Caerceri, ⁵ id est, Cirencestria; Caerguent, ⁶ id est, Wyntonia; Caergrant, ⁷ id est, Cantebrugge; ⁸ Caerleil, ⁹ id est, Lugubalia; ¹⁰ Caerperis, id est, Porcestria; ¹¹ Caerdorm, ¹² id est, Dorcestria; Caerludcoit, ¹³ id est, Lincolnia, ¹⁴ sive Lindocolinum; ¹⁵ Caermerthyn, ¹⁶ id est, urbs Merlini; Caersegment, id est, Silcestria, ¹⁷ quæ super Thamisis non longe a Radingo ¹⁸ ponitur; Caerthleon, ¹⁹ sive Caerlegion, ²⁰ id est, Urbs Legionum, quæ post Legecestria dicebatur, sed modo Cestria dicitur; ²¹ Caerbadun, ²² id est, Bathonia, quæ aliquando urbs Achamanni ²³ vocabatur; ²⁴ Caerpaladour, ²⁵ id est, Septonia, ²⁶ quæ hodie vocatur ²⁷ Shaftesbury. ²⁸ *Ranulphus*. Sunt et alia urbium nomina in chronicis reperta ad intelligendum obscuriora, de quibus omnibus hic per ordinem aliqua sunt dicenda. ²⁹

De Londonia.

Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo. Londonia ³⁰ est civitas super Thamisis flumen ³¹ posita, optima civium divitiis, ³² negotiatorum commerciis; unde fit ut quando ubique ³³ in Anglia sit victualium caristia, ³⁴ ibi minus ³⁵

¹ *Gloucestria*, A.B.

² *Caergolden*, Gale.

³ *Caerircey*, B.; *Caericey*, A.; *Caereri*, Gale.

⁴ *Cesarschester*, B.; *Cissancestria*, Gale.

⁵ *Caereri*, Gale; *Caererii*, D.

⁶ *Caerwen*, C.; *Caergwent*, D.

⁷ *Caertirant*, C.

⁸ *Cantebrigge*, A.; *Cantebrigia*, D.

⁹ *Caerleyli*, B.

¹⁰ *Lugubralici*, B.

¹¹ *Portchestre*, B.; *Porcestre*, D.

¹² *Caerdori* (sic), D.

¹³ *Caerludcoy*, B.

¹⁴ *Lidcolnum*, B.

¹⁵ *sive L.*] om. B.; *Lindocolinum*, Gale.

¹⁶ *Caermerlyn*, B.

¹⁷ *Selecestria*, Gale; *Silcestre*, A., and so perhaps in the other MSS. (*Silcestr*^o). Higden's MSS. more commonly have the Latin form in words of this termination.

¹⁸ *Redynge*, B.; *Redingo*, A.

¹⁹ *Caerleon*, C.; *Caerleoun* D.; *Caerlyon*, B.

²⁰ *Caerthlegion*, A.

²¹ *quæ . . . dicitur*] om. C.D.

²² *Caerbadoun*, C.D.

²³ *Achamam*, B.

²⁴ *quæ . . . vocabatur*] om. C.D.

²⁵ *Caerpaladour*, Gale.

²⁶ *Septuna*, B.

²⁷ *vocatur* after *Shaftesbury*, B.

²⁸ *Shaftisburia*, Gale; *Schaftisburi*, A.

²⁹ This passage is as follows in C.D.:—"De istarum urbium majoribus et quibusdam aliis ad cognoscendum obscurioribus hic per ordinem est dicendum."

³⁰ *London*, Gale.

³¹ *fluvium*, C.D.

³² *divitiarumque*, C.D.

³³ *ubique*] added from A.B.C.D., Gale.

³⁴ *carestia*, B.

³⁵ *unus*, B.

Caerclou,¹ pat is, Gloucestre ; Caercolden, pat is, Colchestre ; Caerrey, pat is, Chichestre (Saxons cleped hit somtyme Cissancestre) ; Caercery, pat is, Circetre ; Caerguent, pat is, Wynchestre ; Caergrant, pat is, Cantebrigge ; Caerlile,² pat is, Lugubalia and Carlile ; Caerperis, pat is, Porcetre ; Caerdrom, pat is, Dorchestre ; Caerludcoit, pat is, Lyncolne³ and Lyncolyn ;⁴ Caermerpyn, pat is, Merlyns citee ; Caersegent, pat is, Silecetre,⁵ and is vppon Tempse nouzt fer from Redynge ; Caerthleon, pat hiȝte Caerlegioun also, and hiȝt first Legecetre,⁶ and now hatte Chestre ; Caerbadoun,⁷ pat is, Bape, and hiȝt somtyme Achamannus his citee ; Caerpaladour, pat is, Septoun, pat now hatte Schaftisbury.⁸ R̄. Opere citees names beep i-founde in cronicles ;⁹ for vnderstondynge of stories of al now arewe somewhat me schal telle.¹⁰ *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo*. Londoun is a real and a riche citee vppon Temse¹¹ of burgeys,¹² of richesse,¹³ of marchaundis, and of chaffare, and of marchaundise ; perfore it is pat somtyme whanne derpe of vitailles is in al Enge-

TREVISA.

Caerclaw, Gloucestre ; Caercolden, Colchestre ; Caerrece, Chichestre, whiche was callede somme tyme by the Saxones Cissancestre ; Caerceri, Cirencestre, called now Ciciter, shortely ; Caerwente, Wynchestre ; Caergraunte, Cambrige ; Ligubalia, Caerliel ; Caerperis, Portechestre ; Caerdrom, Dorchestre ; Caerludcoil, Lyncolne ; Caermerthyn, the cite of Merlyne ; Caersegen, Silchestre, whiche [is] on Thamys nye to Radyngge ; Caerthleon, other Caerlegion, that is the cite of legiones, whiche was callede Legecetre, now callede Chestre ; Caerbadon, Bathe, whiche was callede somme tyme the city of Achamannus ; Caerpaladin, whiche, callede somme tyme Septon, is callede now Shaftesbury. R̄. Also there be other names of cites founde in cronicles obscure to the intellecte, of whom we schalle say somme thyng by ordre. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro secundo*. London is a nowble cite sette on Thamys, hauenge in it nowble marchauntes, wherefore when derthe off vitayles is in Englonde, there thei be moste dere;

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ *Caerclon, Cx.*
² *Caerleyl, Cx. ; Caerlile, MS.*
³ *Lyncolne and Lincoln, MS.*
⁴ *Lyndecelyn, Cx., which is better.*
⁵ *Sisecetre, Cx.*
⁶ *Ligecetre, Cx.*

⁷ *Caerbathon, Cx.*
⁸ *Chaftisbury, a.*
⁹ *cronykes, a., Cx.*
¹⁰ *of whom it shal folowe, C.*
¹¹ *Temyse, a.*
¹² *burgeyses, Cx.*
¹³ *rychesses, Cx.*

vendatur,¹ aut forsā² vendentium compendio, aut ementium dispendio. *Gaufridus*.³ Hanc urbem Brutus primus rex Britonum construxit,⁴ primam Britanniae urbem in memoriam Trojæ amissæ, vocans eam Trinovantum,⁵ id est, Trojam Novam.⁶ Tandem rex Lud vocavit eam a⁷ nomine suo⁸ Caerlud. *Ranulphus*.⁹ Quam ob causam indignati sunt Britones, sicut refert Gildas. Demum¹⁰ Angli vocaverunt eam Lundene.¹¹ Postmodum Normanni¹² vocaverunt eam Loundres, quæ Latine dicitur¹³ Londonia.¹⁴

De civitate
Cantuariæ.

Cantuariam caput Cantiae construxit rex Rudhudibras,¹⁵ filius regis Leill,¹⁶ octavus,¹⁷ quam vocavit Caerkent,¹⁸ quæ postmodum ab Anglis dicta est¹⁹ Dorobernia, quæ alia est a Dorovernia sive Dovorina supra litus maris Gallicani situata, et distante ab ista duodecim miliaribus Anglicanis; tandem Dorobernia dicta est Cantuaria.²⁰

De Wyn-
tonia.²¹

Wyntoniam urbem²² constituit²³ rex Rudhudibras²⁴ prædictus,²⁵ quam vocavit Caerguent,²⁶ quæ postmodum ab Anglis²⁷ dicta est²⁸ Wenta sive Wynecestria,²⁹ a

¹ *venditur*, C.D.

² *forsitan*, B.

³ *Gaufridus*] om. C.D.

⁴ *construxit*] added from A.B.C. D., Gale.

⁵ *Trenonatum*, B.; *Troinovantum*, Gale.

⁶ Slightly abbreviated in C.D.

⁷ *a*] om. A.C.D.

⁸ *Lud*, ins. C.D.

⁹ *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.

¹⁰ *Tandem*, C.D.

¹¹ *Londonie*, C.D.; *Lundine*, A.

¹² *et Francigenæ*, ins. C.D.

¹³ *sonat*, B.

¹⁴ *quæ. . . Londonia*] om. C.D.

¹⁵ *Rudhudibrak*, B.; *Ruthudibras*, D., Gale.

¹⁶ *Lull*, B.

¹⁷ *regis Leill octavi*] Leil, Britonum rex octavus, C.D., which is better.

¹⁸ *Kaerkent*, A.

¹⁹ *est*] om. B.

²⁰ *quæ alia—Cantuaria*]. Thus in C.D.: — "Quidam tamen adhuc contendunt Doroberniam esse proprium nomen urbis Doroverniæ seu Dovorinæ quæ super Gallicanum fretum situata est; ac commodum transfretandi portum præbet, et distat a Cantuaria duodecim miliaribus."—C.D.

²¹ In C.D. the order of the sections is changed.

²² *civitatem*, B.

²³ *construxit*, A.B.C.D., Gale.

²⁴ *Rudhudibrac*, B.

²⁵ *prædictus*] om. B.

²⁶ *Caerkent*, Gale; *Caerwent*, D.

²⁷ *ab Anglis*] om. B.; Anglicis, A.

²⁸ *est*] om. B.

²⁹ *Wencestria*, B.

lond¹ aboute, þere is þe lasse i-solde; vppon caas for avaun-
tage of silleres, oþer for disauantage of beggers. *Gaufri-* TREVISA.
duſ. Bruyt,² þe firſte kyng of Bretouns, bulde and arerede³
þiſ citee Londoun, þe firſte citee of Bretayne, in mynde of
þe citee of Troye, þat waſ loſt;⁴ and cleped hit Troynewip⁵
and Trinouantum, þat iſ, Newe Troye. Afterward kyng Lud
cleped hit Caerlud after hiſ owne name; þefore Bretouns
hadde greet indignacioun, aſ Gildas telleþ. Afterward
Engliſche men cleped þe citee Londoun, and ʒit after
þat Normans cleped hit Loundreſ, and hatte in Latyn
Londonia. Rudhudibras, kyng Leyl hiſ ſone, waſ þe eiʒtþe
[kyng]⁶ of Bretouns; he bulde Caunterbury þe chief citee
of Kent, and cleped hit Caerkent. Afterward Engliſche men
cleped hit Dorobernia, þat iſ oþer⁷ þan þilke Douer þat iſ
vppon þe clif of þe Frenſche ſee, þat⁸ iſ fro þiſ Douer xij.⁹
Engliſche myle.¹⁰ Afterward þiſ Dorobernia waſ and iſ
i-cleped Cauntirbury. Þe ſame kyng Rudhudibras bulde
Wyncheſtre and cleped hit [Caerguet, and afterward Engliſch
men cleped hit]¹¹ Went and Wyncheſtre after þe name of

and the cauſe iſ perauenture other thro the compendiuſeneſ MS. HARL.
of ſellerſ, other elleſ thro the diſpendy of byerſ. *Gaufriduſ.* 2261.
Brute, the firſte kyng of Briteyne, made that cite of
London aſ the firſte and principalle cite of Briteyne in to
the memoye of Troye y-loſte, callenge hit Trinouantum,
that iſ to ſaye Newe Troye. After that kyng Lud
callede hit after hiſ name, Kaerlud, wherefore the Britoneſ
hadde indignacion, aſ Gildas reherſethe, and at the laſte
Engliſche men callede hit London. Kyng Ruthudibras,
the ſon of kyng Leille, edificede Cawnterbury, the princi-
palle cite in Kente, whom he callede Caerkente, whiche waſ
callede afterwarde of Engliſche men Dorobernia; for there
iſ an other towne in that cuntre that iſ callede Douernia, f. 65. a.
other elleſ Douoria, whiche iſ Dover, ſette on the brynke
of the ſee of Fraunce; whiche be a ſundre by xij. myleſ
of Engliſche accomptenge, and Dorobernia waſ callede at
the laſte Cawnterbury. Kyng Ruthudibras aforeſeide
made the cite of Wyncheſtre, whom he callede Caerwente,
whiche waſ callede afterwarde Wenta by Engliſche men,

¹ After *Englond* in Cx. thuſ :—
*comynly at London it iſ beſt cheep
by cauſe of the byerſ and ſellerſ
that ben at London.*

² *Bruyt iſ*, MS. (not a. or Cx.)

³ *edefyed*, Cx.

⁴ *deſtroyed*, Cx.

⁵ *Troyneweth*, Cx.

⁶ Added from Cx.

⁷ *ooper*, a.

⁸ *and*, a.

⁹ *twelue*, a. (in letterſ).

¹⁰ Sentence varied in Cx.

¹¹ Added from a and Cx., who
haſ *Caerguent*.

quodam Wyne Anglo ibidem pontificante,¹ cui tota Westsaxonica plaga subjecta fuerat.² Idem quoque³ rex fecit urbem Paladour, id est, Septoniam, ubi dicunt Britones aquilam quondam prophetasse.⁴

De Batho-
nia.

Bathonium urbem sive Badonem construxit rex Britonum nonus, Bladud, nigromanticus, filius Leill;⁵ quam ex nomine suo vocavit⁶ Caerbadun,⁷ quæ⁸ post⁹ ab Anglis vocata est Achamannia, id est, urbs Achamanni, et tandem dicta¹⁰ Bathonia. *Willelmus de Pontificibus*,¹¹ libro secundo. In hac urbe calidarum balnearum¹² latex¹³ emergens auctorem Julium Cæsarem habere¹⁴ creditur. *Ranulphus*.¹⁵ Sed Gaufridus¹⁶ Monemutensis in suo Britannico libro asserit regem Bladud¹⁷ hujus rei fuisse auctorem.¹⁸ Forsan Willelmus,¹⁹ qui Britannicum librum²⁰ non viderat, ista ex aliorum relatu aut ex propria²¹ conjectura, sicut et quædam alia, minus scripsit exquisite. Proinde videtur magis verisimile quod licet rex Bladud hanc urbem construxerit,²² non propter hoc²³ ipse aut Julius²⁴ hæc calida balnea construxerit; immo quod aqua originalis transiens per venas sulphureas, quibus natu-

¹ *pontifice*, B.

² Abbreviated in C.D.

³ *quoque*] om. B.

⁴ The paragraph ends thus in C.D.:—"quæ nunc Septonia sive Schafesbury nuncupatur, in provincia Dorsetensi in collis vertice situata, ubi tradunt Britones aquilam quondam vaticinia edidisse."

⁵ *Beil*, B.

⁶ *vocavit*] om. B.

⁷ *Caerbadoun*, B.C.

⁸ *hæc*, C.D.

⁹ *postmodum*, A.D.

¹⁰ *est*, added in A.B.D., Gale.

¹¹ *de Pontificibus*] om. C.D.

¹² *calidorum balnearum*, Gale.

¹³ *lacus*, C.

¹⁴ *habuisse*, C.D.

¹⁵ *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.

¹⁶ *Galfridus*, B.

¹⁷ *nigromanticum*, ins. C.D.

¹⁸ *artificem*, C.

¹⁹ *Malmesburiensis*, ins. C.D.

²⁰ The remainder of this section is abbreviated in C.D., thus: "nunc quam inspexerat, sed ex aliorum relatu seu ex propria conjectura nonnulla crediderat; in hac re, sicut plerisque aliis, deceptus fuerat." (D. omits *crediderat*.)

²¹ *propria*] So A.B., Gale; *prima*, E.

²² *construxit*, B.

²³ *hoc*] om. A.

²⁴ *Cæsar*, ins. B.

oo Wyne¹ an Engliche man,² pat was bisshop pere. Al TREVISA.
 West Saxon was soget to hym: pe same kyng bulde
 Paladour, pat is, Septoun, pat now hatte Chestesbury.³
 Britouns telleþ pat an egle⁴ prophecied pere somtyme.
 Bladud, Leil his sone, a nygromanser, was pe nynþe kyng of
 Bretouns; he bulde Bape, and cleped hit Caerbadoun. En-
 glische men cleped hit afterward Achamannys⁵ citee, but at
 pe laste he is i-cleped Bathonia, pat is, Bape. *Willelmus de*
Pontificibus, libro secundo. In pis citee welleþ vp and
 springeþ hote bapes, and me wenep pat Iulius Cesar made
 pere suche bathes. R. But Gaufre Monemutensis, in his
 Britische⁶ booke, seiþ pat Bladud made pilke bathes. Vpon
 caas⁷ William, pat⁸ hadde nouzt i-seie pat Brittische booke,
 wroot so by tellynge of opere men, oper⁹ by his owne
 gessynge, as he wroot oper pinges somdel vnwiseliche.¹⁰
 Perfore hit semeþ more sopoliche pat Bladud made¹¹ nouzt
 pe hote bathes, noþer Iulius Cesar dede suche a dede, pey
 Bladud bulde and made pe citee; but hit accordeþ better to
 kyndeliche resoun, pat pe water rennep vnder¹² erpe by

or Wynchestre, after an Engliche man callede Wyne MS. HARL.
 beenge bischoppe there, to whom alle the weste plage of 2261.
 Saxones was subiecte. Also the same kyng made that
 cite callede Paladur, and nowe Shaftesbury, where men of
 Briteyne say an egle to have propheciede somme tyme.
 Bladud, a nigromancier, and the ix^{the} kyng of Briteyne,
 son of kyng Leille, made the cite of Bathe, whom he
 callede after his propre name Caerbadun, and afterwarde
 of Engliche men Achamannia, and at laste Bathonia,
 other elles in Engliche Bathe. *Willelmus de Pontificibus,*
libro secundo. In that cite be bathes, of whom Iulius
 Cesar was seide to be auctor. R. But Gaufridus Mone-
 metensis seithe in his booke of Briteyne that kyng Bladud
 was the firste auctor of theyme; and peraventure William,
 that see not the booke of Briteyne, seide so by the
 rehersenge of other men, other elles of his propre con-
 iecture, lyke as he did wryte mony other thinges. Never-
 thelesse, thauþe kyng Bladud made that cite of Bathe,
 the bathes scholde seme to be cause¹³ that the water ren-

¹ one Wyne, Cx.

² MS. adds: *propheciede pere somtyme.* See below.

³ Shaftesbury, Cx.

⁴ So a. and Cx.; *Engliche man,* MS.

⁵ Athamannes, Cx. (wrongly, but misled by the identity of c and t in MSS.)

⁶ Britons, Cx.; and so below.

⁷ by cause that, Cx.

⁸ pat] om. Cx., who does not understand the sense of the sentence.

⁹ or, a.

¹⁰ not best aduysedly, Cx.

¹¹ made hit, MS. (not a. or Cx.)

¹² in the, Cx.

¹³ causede, Harl. MS.

raliter calefacta¹ ebulliat, in urbe illa fervidas scaturigines per loca varia,² ubi scabredines³ et putredines sæpe purgantur.

De Gloucestria.

Gloucestriam, sive Gloverniam, seu Claudiocestriam⁴ construxit Claudius Cæsar in nuptiis filiae suæ, quam copulavit regi Britonum Arvirago. Hæc urbs dicta⁵ est primo a Britonibus Caerelau a Claudio, sed⁶ post⁷ dicta est Gloucestria,⁸ a Glora, duce regionis illius, et ponitur⁹ supra Sabrinum mare¹⁰ in confinio Loegriæ et Cambriæ.¹¹

De Salopia.

Salopia urbs est in confinio¹² Cambriæ et Angliæ, super Sabrinam in vertice collis posita, quæ Anglice vocatur Shrobbesbury¹³ a dumis et fruticibus in illo colle aliquando¹⁴ crescentibus sic dicta, Britannice vero vocabatur Penguern, quod sonat caput abietis; et fuit aliquando caput Powisiæ¹⁵ terræ, quæ se extendit per transversum mediæ Walliæ usque ad mare Hibernicum.¹⁶

De Not-hyngham.

Nothyngham¹⁷ ponitur super flumen Trent,¹⁸ olim¹⁹

¹ So A.B.; *calcescam* (for *calescens* ?), E.

² *effundat*, or some such word, is required to complete the sense.

³ *scabedines*, B.

⁴ *seu Claudiocestriam*] om. C.D.

⁵ *vocata*, C.D.

⁶ *scilicet*, C.

⁷ *postea*, A.; *postmodum*, D.

⁸ *Glaucestr*⁹, A.; *Gloucestre*, D.

⁹ *poniturque*, C.D.

¹⁰ *mare*] om. B.

¹¹ Slightly transposed in C.D.

¹² *inter confinia*, C.D.

¹³ *Schrobbisburi*, A.; *Schrovesbury*, C.; *Shrevesbury*, B.; *Schrobbesburia*, Gale; *Schrobbusbury*, D.

¹⁴ *aliquando* before *in*, B.

¹⁵ *Powise*, A.

¹⁶ Abbreviated in C.D.

¹⁷ *Notingham*, A., Gale.

¹⁸ *Trente*, B.

¹⁹ *olim*] om. B.; *sed olim*, C.D.

veynes of brymstone,¹ and so is i-hatte² kyndeliche in pat cours, and springep vp in dyuers places of pe citec. And so pere beep hote bathes, pat waschep of teteres,³ oper sores and scabbes. *Treuisa.* Dey me myzt by craft make hote bathes for to dure long i-now, pis accordep wel to resoun and to filosofie pat tretep of hote welles and bapes, pat beep in dyuerse londes, peiz pe water of pis bathe be more troubylly and heuyere of smelle and of sauour pan opere hote bathes pat I haue i-seie at Akene⁴ in Almayne, and at Egges in Sauoy. [Pe bapes in Egges]⁵ beep as feire and as clere as eny cold welle streem. I haue assaied, and i-bathed perynne.⁶ R. Claudius Cesar married his douzter to Aruiragus, kyng of Britouns. Pis Claudius Cesar bulde Gloucetre in pe weddyng of his douzter; Britouns cleped pis citee first after Claudius his name, but afterward it was i-cleped Glowcetre, after oon Glora, pat was duke of pat contray, and stondep vpon Seuarn in pe marche of Engeland and of Wales. Schroysbury is a citee vpon Seuarn in pe marche of Engeland and of Wales, i-sette vpon pe coppe⁷ of an hille, and hatte Schroisbury of schrobbes and fruyt pat grewe somtyme on pat hille. Britouns cleped hit somtyme Pengwern, pat is, pe heed of a faire tree. Schroysbury was somtyme pe hede of Powyse,⁸ pat strecchep forp thwart ouer pe myddel of Wales anon to pe⁹ Irische see. Notyngham stondep vpon Trent,

TREVISA.

nenge there thro the veynes of sulphur is made hote naturally by that whiche causethe those bathes to be hote, where scabbes and corrupcion be healede oftetymes. Claudius Cesar made that cite callede Gloucestre, other Claudiocestre, in the tyme of weddeng of his dozhter, whom he mariede to Aruiragus kyng of Britones. That cite was callede firste of Britones Caerclau, by Claudius afterwarde callede Gloucestre, of Glora duke of that region, whiche is sette ouer the water of Seuerne in costes of Englonde and of Wales. Shrewsbury is a cite sette in the toppe of an hille on Seuerne, in the costes of Englonde and of Wales, callede somme tyme Schrobbsbury, of busches and trees with frute groenge in that hille somme tyme, whiche is callede also Pengwern, whiche sounde the as the hedde of a firre tre, whiche was also somme tyme the principalle place of Powiselonde, extendenge hit ouerthwarde the myddes of Wales vn to the see of Yrlonde. Notyngham

MS. HART.

2261.

¹ Cx. adds, and sulphure.² made hote, Cx.³ tetres, a., Cx.⁴ Okene, a.; Akon, Cx.⁵ Added from a.; whiche been, Cx.⁶ Sentence varied in Cx.⁷ toppe, Cx.⁸ Powisy, a.⁹ pe] om. a.

vocabatur Snotingham, quod sonat mansio spelun-
carum; quas Dani, ut ferunt, ibidem perendinantes
excavarunt desub saxo.¹

De Lin-
colnia.

Lincolnia caput est provinciæ Lyndisiæ;² primo
vocabatur Caerludcoit, deinde Lindecolinum.³ A quo
primo constructa fuerit incertum habetur, nisi forsan⁴
rex Lud eam fundaverit; quod etiam nominis inter-
pretatio videtur sonare, nam Britannice Caer sonat *civi-*
tatem, Coit⁵ *silvam*; inde⁶ videtur dici Caerludcoit
quasi urbs nemorosa⁷ Lud.⁸

De Leyr-
cestria.

Leicestriam construxit rex Britonum decimus, Leir,
filius Bladud, quasi in meditullio Loegriæ, super amnem
Soram et super Fossam viam regalem.⁹

CAP. XLVIII.

De
Eboraco.

Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio. Eboracum¹⁰
urbs est ampla ex utraque parte amnis Ouse constructa,
Romanæ elegantiae præferens indicium,¹¹ quousque rex
Angliæ Conquæstor Willelmus illam cum adjacente

¹ *quas . . . saxo*] om. C.D.

² *Lindisey*, A.; *Lindeseye*, B.;
Lindeseie, D.

³ *Lindcolun*, B.; *Lindecolnium*,
Gale.

⁴ *forsan*] forte, B.

⁵ *Coith*, B.

⁶ *inde*] om. A.

⁷ *Lud*] om. A.

⁸ *vel urbs nemoris Lud*, ins. C.
Sentence otherwise slightly abbre-
viated in C.D.

⁹ Slightly transposed and abbre-
viated in C.D.

¹⁰ *Eboracus*, B.D., Gale.

¹¹ *judicium*, Gale.

and somtyme heet Snotyngham, þat is, þe woning of dennes, TREVISA.
 for þe Danes dwelled þere somtyme, and were i-logged,¹ as
 me telleþ, and i-digged² dennes and caues vnder hard rokkes
 and stones.³ R. Lyncolne is chief of þe prouince⁴ of
 Lyndeseie, and heet somtyme Caerludcoit, and afterward
 Lyndecolyn. Hit is vncerteyn who bulde first þis citee, but
 3if it were kyng Lud. And so hit semeþ by menyng of þe
 name; for caer is Brittisshe, and is to menyng *a citee*; coit
 is *a wode*. And so hit semeþ þat Caerludcoit is to menyng
 Lud his wode toun.⁵ Kyng Leyre was Bladud his sone, and
 bulde Leycestre, as it were in myddel Engeland, vppon þe
 ryuer [Sor]⁶ and vppon Fos þe kynges hi3e weie.⁷

Capitulum quadragesimum octavum.

Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio. York is a grete
 citee in eiper side of þe water of Ouse, þat semed as faire as
 Rome, forto þat⁸ the kyng of Engeland William Conquerour
 hadde wiþ brennyng of⁹ fuyre defouled it and þe contrey

is sette on the water of Trente, callede somme tyme MS. HARL.
2261.
 Snotyngham, that sowndethe the mansion of dennes,
 whom the Danes made there of ston as hit is seide.
 Lincolne is the chiefe place of the province of Lyndesey,
 callede firste Caerludcoite, after that Lincolne; the edifi-
 cacion of whiche cite is not to be hade in certitude
 withowte that kyng Ludde made hit, as the interpretacion
 of the name semethe to sownde, for caer, after the langage
 of Britones, sowndethe *a cite*, and coyte, *a woode*, where-
 fore Caerludcoit is seide as the cite fulle of wood of Ludd.
 Leir, the xth kyng of Britones, son to kyng Bladud,
 made the cite of Leircestre as in the mydelle place of
 Englonde on the water of Sore, and on the hieweye and
 diche of the kyng.

Capitulum quadragesimum octavum.

Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio. The cite of Yorke
 is large, and edifiede on either side of Owse, as after the cite of
 Rome, vn tulle that William Conquerour deformede hit thro

¹ *i-longed*, a.; clause omitted in
 Cx.

² *i-digged*] digged, a.

³ Cx. adds, *and dwellyd there*.

⁴ So a. and Cx.; *prophecie*, MS.

⁵ So a. and Cx.; *Lud is wolde his
 toun*, MS.

⁶ Added from Cx., who however
 has *Sos* (typ. error?).

⁷ *hi3 way*, a.

⁸ *vnto the tyme that*, Cx.

⁹ *and*, a., Cx.

regione incendio deformaret; ita ut, si modo¹ eam viderit peregrinus, ingemiscat; si vetus incola, non agnoscat. *Gaufridus*. Hanc urbem construxit Ebrancus rex Britonum quintus, vocans eam ex² nomine suo Caerbrank.³ Fecit quoque idem rex alias duas urbes insignes,⁴ unam in Albania, quæ dicitur Edenburgh;⁵ aliam versus Albaniam⁶ in finibus Loegriæ, quæ dicitur Alcluid.⁷ *Ranulphus*. Est autem Edenburghum,⁸ urbs⁹ in Pictorum terra inter flumen Twydi¹⁰ et mare Scoticum posita,¹¹ quæ quondam vocabatur¹² castrum puellarum. Postea¹³ tamen dicta est Edenburgh¹⁴ ab Edan, rege Pictorum, qui ibidem¹⁵ regnavit tempore Egfridi regis Northimbrorum.^{16 17}

Alcluit,¹⁸ urbs quondam insignis, nunc cunctis Angligenis¹⁹ pene est incognita;²⁰ nam²¹ sub tempore Britonum, Pictorum, et Anglorum usque adventum Dacorum urbs erat celebris.²² Tandem circa annum gratiæ DCCCLXX. vastantibus Danis²³ partes North-

¹ *nunc*, C. (not D.)

² *ex*] om. C.

³ *Caerbranc*, A.B.; *Caerbrac*, D.

⁴ *urbes insignes*] civitates, C.D.

⁵ So E. apparently, which has *Edenburgh*; *Edenbrugh*, B.; *Edenburgh*, A.; *Edenburgh*, D.

⁶ *versus Albaniam*] in borealibus, C.D.

⁷ *Alcluyt*, B.; *Alcluit*, A.

⁸ *Ranulphus* . . . *Edenburghum*]

om. B.

⁹ *in Albania ad orientalem plagam*, C.D.

¹⁰ *Twede*, C.D.; *Twydi*, A.

¹¹ *situata*, C.D.

¹² *dicebatur*, B.

¹³ *Postmodum*, C.

¹⁴ *Edenborwh*, A.

¹⁵ *ibi*, B.

¹⁶ *Northankimbrorum*, B.

¹⁷ C.D., which otherwise slightly vary the section, add: *sicut patet in Historia Bedæ*.

¹⁸ *Alcluit*, B.; *Alcluid*, D, Gale.

¹⁹ *exceptis paucis historicis*, ins. C.D.

²⁰ *ignota*, A.B., Gale.

²¹ *erat enim*, C.D.

²² *celebris et famosa*, C.D.

²³ So MSS. and Gale; though *Dacorum* precedes.

aboute ; so þat a pilgrym wolde now wepe, and he seigh¹ it, TREVISA.
 ȝif he knewe hit ar he wente out.² *Gaufridus*. Ebrankus,
 þe fifte kyng of Britouns, bulde York,³ and cleped hit after
 his owne name Caerbrank.⁴ He bulde also tweie opere noble
 citees, [one]⁵ in Scotlond þat hatte Edynborgh ;⁶ and
 anoþer toward Scotlond, in þe endes of Engelond, þat hatte
 Alclud.⁷ R. Edyngboruȝ is a citee in þe lond of Pictes by-
 twene þe ryuere of Twyde and þe Scottische see, and heet
 somtyme þe Castelle of Maydens, and was i-cleped aftir-
 ward Edyngborgh,⁸ of Edan, kyng of Pictes, þat regned
 pere ynne Egfrides tyme, kyng of Norþhumberlond. Alcluid
 was somtyme a noble citee, and is now wel nyh vnknowe to
 alle Engliche men. [For under þe Britouns and Pictes and
 Engliche men]⁹ it was a noble citee anon to þe comynge of
 þe Danes ; but afterward aboute þe ȝere of oure Lord eiȝte
 hondred þre score and ten it was destroyed, whan þe Danes
 destroyed þe cuntrees¹⁰ of Norþhumberlond. But in what

brennenge ; and if a man scholde see hit now, considrenge what MS. HARL.
 that cite was a fore tyme, hit scholde move hym to be soory. 2261.
Gaufridus. Ebrancus, the vthe kyng of Briteyne, made that
 cite of Yorke, whom he namede Caerbranc. Also that same
 kyng made ij. other nowble cites ; oone was in Scottelonde,
 whiche is callede Edengborouȝh, that other cite was in the
 costes of Englonde, towarde Scottelonde, whiche was callede
 Alcluid. R. Edengborouȝh is a cite in the londe of
 Pictes, betweene the water of Twide and the Scottes see,
 whiche was callede somme tyme the Castelle of Maidenens,
 after that it was callede Edyngborough, of Edan kyng of
 Pictes, whiche reignede there in the tyme of Egfride
 kyng of Northumbrelonde. Alcluid was somme tyme a
 nowble cite, now beenge vnknowen allemoste of alle
 Engliche men, whiche was a nowble cite in the tyme of
 Britones, of Pictes, vn to the commenge of Danes in to this
 londe of Englonde ; and at the laste, abowte the yere of f. 66. a.
 grace ixc. lxxth yere, the Danes, destroyenge the costes of
 Northumbrelonde, destroyed that cite of Alcluid. Of

¹ *sawe*, Cx., and so usually.
² *ar he wente out*] to fore, Cx.
³ *ȝork*, a.
⁴ *Caerebrank*, a.
⁵ Added from Cx.

⁶ *Edenburgh*, a. ; and so below.
⁷ *Alcluid*, a. ; *Alcliud*, Cx.
⁸ *Edynborough*, a.
⁹ Added from a. and Cx.
¹⁰ *contrayes*, a.

imbranas destructa est et¹ illa.² Quo autem in loco Britanniae illa fuerat constructa,³ varii sunt auctores. Nam Beda, libro primo, capitulo duodecimo, dicit illam fuisse constructam ad occidentalem sinum illius marini brachii, quod olim separabat Pictos a Britannis; ubi vallum Severi, sive murus ille famosus, ad occidentem terminatur. Et sic videtur, secundum ipsum,⁴ quod non multum distet⁵ a Lugubalia,⁶ id est, Caerliel;⁷ quia et ipsa ad finem illius muri ponitur. Volunt alii historici quod urbs Alcluit⁸ sit illa, quae modo vocatur Aldeburgh,⁹ quod sonat villam veterem, quae ponitur juxta flumen Ouse, non longe a Burgebrigge,¹⁰ quae distat ab Eboraco xv. miliaribus ad occidentem; et hoc videtur probari¹¹ ex dictis Gaufridi de gestis Britonum, qui scribit¹² Elidurum regem Britonum, dum apud Alcluit¹³ causa venatici solatii perendinaret, reperisse fratrem suum Archgallonem in vicino nemore Calaterio¹⁴ aberrantem. Constat autem quod nemus Calaterium,¹⁵ quod Anglice Caltrees¹⁶ dicitur, attingit

¹ *urbs*, ins. C.

² C.D. add: *ut murorum reliquia via patescant*. After this C.D. read as follows:— "*Beda, libro primo, capitulo quadragesimo primo*. Sonat autem Alcluid Britannice idem quam *petra cluid*; poniturque urbs illa juxta flumen nominis illius quod dicitur Clud ad occidentalem sinum illius marini brachii quod olim separabat Pictos a Britannis. Videtur hodie quod fluvius ille dictus olim Cluid modo vocetur Sulwach, qui fluit in illud marinum brachium praedictum, quod ab occidente distinguit hodie Scotos ab Anglis. Habuitque urbs Alcluid non longe a se nemus Calatherium [Caletherum, D.], sicut patet in vita Britannici regis Eliduri. Quod quidem nemus vocatur hodie Ingelwode, quod sonant *silva Anglorum*; nemus quidem prolixum incipiens ad occidentem ab urbe Lugubaliae, quae [quod, D.] est Caerleill, se extendit in immensum versus

orientem, habens ab austro murum illum famosum Romani operis quod Thurlewall dicitur, ab aquilone vero marinum brachium praedictum; et sic videtur quod urbs illa Alclud posita fuerat in borealibus finibus Anglorum non longe ab urbe Lugubaliae. Inde decepti sunt multi; putantes Alcluid, cum non apparet, esse hodie urbem Lugubaliae."

³ *loco in Britannia sita fuerit*, B.

⁴ *secundum ipse (sic) videtur*, B.

⁵ *distat*, A.

⁶ *Lugubralia*, B.

⁷ *Carliel*, A.; *Kaerleil*, B.

⁸ *Alcluit*, B.

⁹ *Aldburgh*, B.

¹⁰ *Burghbrig*, B.; *Burghbrigge*, A., Gale.

¹¹ *p^ore*, A.

¹² *scripsit*, A.

¹³ *urbem Alcluid*, Gale.

¹⁴ *Collaterio*, A. (which has *oberantem*), B.

¹⁵ *quod . . . Calaterium*] *Collaterium nemus*, B.

¹⁶ So A.B., Gale; *Saltrees*, E.

place of Britayne þat citee Alcluid was i-bulde, auctors TREVISIA.
 telleþ dyuersliche. Bede, libro primo, capitulo duodecimo, —
 seiþ þat it was i-buld by west þat arme of þe see þat de-
 parted¹ bytwene Pictes and Britouns somtyme. Þere
 Seuerus his famous [walle]² endeþ westward: and so it
 semeþ by hym, þat [hit]³ is nouzt fer from Caerlel, for þat
 cite is i-sette at þe ende of þe⁴ wal. Opere writers of
 stories writeþ þat þe citee Alcluid is þat citee þat now hatte
 A[1]deburghe,⁵ þat is to menyngge, an olde toun, and stondeþ
 vpon þe ryuer Ouse, nouzt fer from Borgh-brigge, þat is
 fiftene myle westwarde out of York. And hit semeþ þat he
 preueþ þat by Gaufridus, in⁶ his book of dedes of Britouns.
 He writeþ þat Elidurus, kyng of Britouns, was i-logged at
 þe citee Alcluid, bycause of solas of⁷ huntynge, and fonde
 his broþer Archgalon⁸ maskynge in a wode nyh pere beside,
 þat hatte Calatery, but þat wode Calaterye, þat hatte Caltres
 an⁹ Engliche,¹⁰ rechep alrest to York, and strecchep toward

whiche cite be diuerse opiniones, after diuerse auctores, in MS. HARL.
 what parte of Briteyne that cite was edifiede. For Bede 2261.
 seiþe, libro primo, capitulo xij^o, that cite to be edifiede at —
 the weste parte of an arme of the see, whiche departede
 somme tyme the Pictes from Britones, where the famose
 walle was terminate at the weste; and so hit semethe after
 Bede that hit was not ferre from Caerlel, for hit is putte
 also at the ende of that walle. Also other writers of
 stories reherse and wille that the cite of Alcluid be that
 towne whiche is callede now Aldelburghe, whiche sownede
 an olde towne, whiche is sette nye to the floode of Ouse,
 not ferre from Burbrugge, whiche is from Yorke by xv.
 myles at the weste of hit. And this position semethe to
 be probable of the dictes of Gaufride in his boke of the
 gestes of Britones, whiche affermethe þat¹¹ Elidurus, kynge
 of Britones, taryenge at Alcluid for solace to hunte,
 founde his broder Archgallo errante in a woode callede
 Calaterium, whiche woode is callede in Engliche Caltrees,

¹ *departeth*, Cx.

² Added from Cx., who has *wel'e*.

³ Added from *a.* and Cx.

⁴ *that*, Cx.

⁵ *Aldburgh*, Cx.

⁶ So *a.* and Cx.; *and*, MS.

⁷ *solace and*, Cx.

⁸ *Agalon*, Cx.

⁹ *in*, Cx.

¹⁰ *Engelshe*, *a.*

¹¹ This word is interlineated in red.

pene Eboracum, et inde versus zephyrum extenditur juxta Aldeburgh¹ in longum spatio viginti miliarium. Cujus nemoris plurima pars hodie succisis arbusculis ad culturam redigitur.² Hic dijudicet prudens lector quid de Alcluit³ sit tenendum.

De urbe
Caerliel.

Caerliell⁴ urbs est in finibus Anglorum borealium versus zephyrum septentrionalem, quæ alio nomine Lugubalia⁵ dicitur, quam⁶ condidit septimus rex Britonum Leill. *Ranulphus*.⁷ Habetque hæc urbs⁸ in se aliquam partem illius muri famosi, qui trans-

¹ So A., Gale ; and probably also B.E., which may however intend a Latin form, using contractions.

² After *redigitur*, Gale adds :
‘ Volunt alii ut Alcluid sit urbs
‘ illa, quæ modo vocatur Burgan,
‘ in borealibus finibus Westmer-
‘ lond juxta Comberlond, super
‘ flumen Edene sita, cujus adhuc
‘ miranda apparent vestigia.’ See
the versions.

³ *Acluid*, B.

⁴ So E. apparently (*Caerlie*††) or perhaps *Caerliellia*; *Caerliel*, A; *Caerleil*, D.

⁵ *Luguba*, A.; *Lugubralia*, B.

⁶ *hanc*, C.D.

⁷ *Ranulphus*] Added from A.B.C.D., Gale.

⁸ *urbs hæc*, A.B., Gale.

þe north by Aldeburgh,¹ in lengþe þe space of twenty myle. TREVISA.
 Þe moste dele of þat wode is nowe i-þrowe adoun, and þe
 lond i-teled.² Opere wol mene þat Alcluid was þat citee þat
 now hatte Burgham,³ in þe norþ contray of Westmerland,
 faste by Comberlond, and stondeþ vpon þe ryuer Edene.
 Þe citee is þere ʒitt wonderliche i-sene. Here a wys re-
 dere demep, as hym semep, where Alcluid was i-buld.⁴
*Trevisa.*⁵ Þis semep nouʒt wel hard to assoille, ʒif me takeþ
 hede þat many townes bereþ oon name, as Carthago⁶ in
 Affrica and Carthago⁶ in Spayne; Newport in Wales and
 Newport in þe parsehe⁷ of Berkeley; Wottoun vndir Hegge⁸
 and Wottoun-basset; Wilke-warre and Wilke-spayne and
 Wilke⁹ in þe parische of Berkeley. And tweie schire townes
 eiper hatte Hamptoun; Souþhamptoun and Norþhamptoun.
 So it semep by þe stories, þat oon Alcluid was in Yorkschire,
 anoper in Westmerlond, and oon faste by in þe riʒt side of
 þe west arme of þe see, þat departep Engeland and Scotlond;
 but þat Alcluid was a wel¹⁰ stronge citee, as Beda seip; and
 þat citee stondeþ faste by a ryuer þat hatte Cluid;¹¹ and þere
 is non suche ryuer in ʒorkschiere, noper in Westmorelond, as
 men of þe contray telleþ me. Som men telleþ þat þe ryuere
 Cluid hatte now Sulwache; [Sulwach]¹² is but fyue myle fro
 Caerlile. R̄. Caerleel is a citee in þe contre of Norþ Enge-
 lond toward þe norþ west, and hap anoper name and hatte
 Lugubal. Leyle, þe seuenþe kyng of Britouns, bulde Caerleel.
 [In þis citee is somewhat of þat famous wal þat passeþ

nye to Yorke, and is extendede also nye to Aldel- MS. HARL.
 burgh, in longitude by the space of xx^{ti} myles, of whiche 2261.
 woode a grete parte is kytte downe to brenne, and
 for other thynges necessary. Other men wille that Al-
 cluid be that citee whiche is callede now Burgham, in
 the northe partes of Westemerlonde, nye to Cumbir-
 londe, sette on the floode of Eden, of whom mervellous
 stappes appere ʒitte. Wherefore y counselle that a
 prudente lector iuge what weye is to be holden of that
 citee off Alcluid. Caerliel is a citee in the northe partes of
 Englonde, towarde the northeweste, whiche was callede
 otherwise Ligubalia, whom Leil the vijth kyng of Britones
 did make. R̄. That citee hadde the parte of that famos walle

¹ After *Aldeburgh*, MS. and a. (not Cx.) add, by a clerical error of repetition, *þat is to menyngye*.

² *y-tylled*, Cx.

³ *Burcham*, Cx.

⁴ Cx. thus re-writes the sentence: *Dame ye now where it is bylded*.

⁵ Reference added from Cx.

⁶ *Cartago*, MSS. and Cx.; and so below.

⁷ *parisshe*, Cx.

⁸ *EGge*, Cx.

⁹ *Wikwarre*, *Wykpayn*, and *Wik*, a. and Cx.

¹⁰ *right*, Cx.; and so often.

¹¹ *Cluid*, Cx.

¹² Added from a. and Cx.

cindit Northimbriam.¹ *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio.* In qua² urbe manet adhuc ex lapideis fornicibus triclinium concameratum, quod nulla unquam tempestatum contumelia aut ignium flamma valuit labefactare. In vicina quoque plaga³ apud Cumbirlond⁴ legitur adhuc in fronte triclinii sic inscriptum,⁵ *Marii victoriae.* Quod quid sit hæsito, nisi forsitan pars Cumbriorum olim his locis insederit,⁶ cum fuissent a Mario consule Italia pulsi.⁷ *Ranulphus.*⁸ Sed probabilius videtur, quod ibi fiatmentio de Mario rege Britonum filio Arviragi, qui illis in locis Rodericum⁹ regem Pictorum devicerat, sicut testatur Gaufridus in suo Britannico libro, quem Willelmus Malmesburiensis nusquam viderat.¹⁰

De Hagustaldensi ecclesia.

Hagustaldensis¹¹ ecclesia est locus¹² lxxx. miliaribus¹³ ab Eboraco ad zephyrum borealem¹⁴ disparatus, ut vult Willelmus¹⁵ libro tertio de Pontificibus. Locus ille ab olim ad episcopum Eboracensem pertinuit, ubi quondam fuerunt¹⁶ artificiosa ædificia, Romano more coeleata,¹⁷ qualia citra Alpes vix uspiam visebantur.¹⁸ Et vocatur hodie locus ille Hestoldesham.¹⁹ *Beda,*

¹ *Northumbriam, A.; Angliam, C.D.*

² *hac, C.D.*

³ *labefactare... plaga, om. B.*

⁴ *Cumbirlond, A.*

⁵ *sic inscriptum] om. C.D.*

⁶ *insederit, A.C.; insedisset, B.*

⁷ *expulsi, B.*

⁸ *Ranulphus] om. C.D.*

⁹ *Rodericum, B.; Vodricum, Gale.*

¹⁰ *sicut... viderat] om. C.*

¹¹ *Willelmus, libro tertio Pontificum, prefixed in C.D., which omit ut... Pontificibus.*

¹² *Hagultaldensis (Hagrotaldensis, B.) etiam locus est, A.B.*

¹³ *miliariorum, C.*

¹⁴ *borealem] om. D.*

¹⁵ *Malmesburiensis, ins. A.*

¹⁶ *fuerant, B.*

¹⁷ *occeolata, C. (not D.)*

¹⁸ *Slightly contracted in C.D.*

¹⁹ *sive Hexilsham, ins. B.; sive Heghlisham, D., Gale; Estoldesham (only), A.*

Northumberlond. *Willelmus de Pontificibus.*] ¹ In þis citee is a pre chambred hous i-made of font ² stoones, þat myȝt neuere ³ be destroyed wip tempest of wedir noþer wip brennyng of fuyre. Also in þe contray faste by in Westmerlond, in þe frount of a pre chambred place, is i-write in þis manere, *Marii victoria.* What þis writinge is to mene, som dele I doute; but it ⁴ were so þat som of þe Combres leie ⁵ pere somtyme, whan þe consul Marius hadde i-putte hem out of Itali. R. ⁶ But it semep more probable, ⁷ þat þat is i-write in mynde of Marius, kyng of Britouns, þat was Aruiragus his sone. Þis Marius ouercome in þat place Rodryk, kyng of Pictes, ⁸ so seiþ Gaufridus in his Britische booke. William Malmesbury seiþ neuere þat book. At Hagustaldes chirche is a place foure score myle out of York norþwestward; þe place is, as it were, destroyed; so seiþ Willelmus, libro tertio de Pontificibus; þat place longede somtyme to þe bisshopriche of York. Þere were somtyme buldes ⁹ wip vice ¹⁰ arches and fontes ¹¹ in þe manere of Rome. Suche buldyng was nowhere [i-seie] ¹² on þis half Alpes, but pere vnnepe. Now þat place hatte Hestoldesham and Heglisham

TREVISA.

whiche diuidethe Northumbrelonde. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio.* In whiche cite a threfolde chambre remayneth the ȝitte, that can not be defiled with fire, other elles with eny other tempeste, in whom a wrytunge is conteynede of the victory of Marius. R. Whiche semethe to be probably that theke mencion is made there of Marius kyng of Britones, son to Aruiragus, whiche overcome Roderike the kyng of Pictes in those costes, as Gaufride rehersethe in his boke of Briteyne, whom William Malmesbury hathe not seen. The chirche of Haugustaldens is a place beenge from Yorke by lxxx. myles, at the northe weste of hit, whiche place longede somme tyme to the bisshope of Yorke, where ryalle edifienges were some tyme, after the edifienge of Rome, whiche edifienges haue not be seen of eny man a this side Alpes, but in that place, whiche is callede nowe Estoldesham. *Beda, libro*

MS. HARL.
2261.

f. 66. b.

¹ Added from a. and Cx.² *vawte*, Cx.³ *neuere myzte*, a., Cx.⁴ *but yf it*, Cx.⁵ *leyze*, a.⁶ Reference added from a.⁷ *better*, Cx.⁸ So a. and Cx.; *Britouns*, MS.⁹ *houses*, Cx.¹⁰ *vys*, a.¹¹ *routes*, Cx., who has large omissions here.¹² Added from a.

*libro tertio, capitulo primo.*¹ Et est locus ille juxta murum longum² Romani operis ad boream.³ *Ranulphus.*⁴ Est autem⁵ differentia inter provinciam Lindisfarorum⁶ et ecclesiam Lyndyfarnensem.⁷ Nam provincia Lindisfarorum⁸ est idem quod Lindeseya,⁹ quæ jacet¹⁰ ad orientem Lincolnæ, cujus ipsa caput est;¹¹ de qua dicit Beda, libro quarto, capitulo [undecimo, quod Sexvulphus erat ibidem primus episcopus; sed ecclesia Lindifarnensis secundum Bedam, libro quarto, capitulo vicesimo tertio],¹² idem est quod illa insula quæ dicitur Halielond,¹³ in¹⁴ fluvio Twydi,¹⁵ prope Berewycum.¹⁶ Et sic colligitur ex dictis Bedæ, quod in illo famoso marino brachio,¹⁷ in quod fluit amnis Tvidi,¹⁸ quod hodie ab oriente separat Anglos a Scotis, sunt tres insulæ; scilicet, Mailros, quod modo¹⁹ dicitur Meuros,²⁰ inde superius versus occidentem²¹ est Lindifarnensis ecclesia, id est, Halielond.²² ²³ Inde²⁴ ascendendo ponitur insula Farnæ, quæ est Farnyelond.²⁵ Inde ascendendo per duo²⁶ miliaria ponitur²⁷ urbs regia super ripam Tvidi,²⁸ quondam dicta²⁹ Bebbanburgh, ³⁰ id est, urbs Bebbæ; ³¹ hodie dicitur Bamburgh,³² castrum habens fortissimum.

¹ C.D. omits reference to Bede.

² *longum*] om. C.D.

³ *borealem*, E.

⁴ *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.

⁵ *etiam*, C.D.

⁶ *Lindisfororum*, A.

⁷ *Lindifarnensem*, A.B.; *Lindisfarnensem*, Gale, D.

⁸ *Lindesfororum*, A.; *Lindisfarorum*, E.

⁹ *Lindiseia*, A., Gale.

¹⁰ *est*, C.D.

¹¹ *cujus . . . est*] om. C.D.; *est caput*, B.

¹² Added from A.B., but thus in C.D.:—"undecimo ibidem fuerat primus episcopus Sexwulfus. Ecclesia autem Lindisfarnensis secundum Bedam, libro quarto, capitulo vicesimo tertio." The references are to lib. iv. c. 12 and c. 27.

¹³ *Halielande*, D.

¹⁴ *in . . . Berewycum*] om. C.D.

¹⁵ *Twidi*, A.

¹⁶ *Berwicum*, Gale.

¹⁷ *brachio marino*, A.B.

¹⁸ *Twede*, C.D.; *Twidi*, A.; *Twidy*; B.

¹⁹ *hodie*, C.

²⁰ This passage is slightly transposed and abbreviated in C.D.; *Meawres*, B.

²¹ *superius . . . occidentem*] ascendendo per miliarium, C.D.

²² *quæ Halielond dicitur*, C.D.

²³ *Inde . . . Farnyelond*] om. B.C. D. (inserted in margin of A.)

²⁴ *vero*, B.

²⁵ *Farnyelond*, A.

²⁶ *novem*, C.D.

²⁷ *proponitur*, B.

²⁸ *fluminis quæ*, ins. C.D.

²⁹ *dicebatur*, C.D.

³⁰ *id . . . Bamburgh*] quæ hodie vocatur Bamburgh, C.D.

³¹ *quæ*, ins. B.

³² *Baumburgh*, B.

also. Beda, libro tertio, capitulo primo, seiþ þat þat place [is]¹ TREVISA.
 faste by þe long wal of þe work of Rome in þe norþ half. B.²
 Þere is difference bytwene þe prouince of Lyndefar and [and
 þe chirche of Lyndefarne; for þe prouynce of Lyndiffar and]³
 Lyndeseie is al oon, and lyeþ by est Lyncolne; and Lyn-
 coln is þe heed þerof. Of þe whiche seiþ Beda, libro quarto,
 capitulo undecimo, þat Sexvulphus was first bisshop þere. Bote
 Beda seiþ, libro quarto, capitulo vicesimo tertio, þat Lynde-
 farn⁴ chirche is an ilond, þat hatte Halyelond, in þe ryuer
 Twede,⁵ nyh Berwyk. And so hit is i-gadered of Beda his
 sawes, [þat Twyde rennep into the famous arm of]⁶ þe see þat⁷
 departeþ Englische men and Scottes in þe est half. And in þe⁸
 arme beþ þre ilondes, þat beþ Mailros, þat now hatte Mewros;⁹
 þanne aboue toward þe west is Lyndefarnen chirche þat hatte
 Halielond;¹⁰ þanne vpward aboue þat is þe ilond Farne, and
 hatte also Farnyelond; þanne vpward tweie myle aboue þat
 is a real citee vpon þe brynke of Twyde, þat somtyme
 hiȝt Bebanborgh, þat is, Bebbe is¹¹ cite, and now hatte

tertio, capitulo primo. And that place is nye to the fa- MS. HARL.
 mose walle at the northe parte. Also there is difference 2261.
 betwene the prouince of Lindesey and the chirche Lindis-
 farnens. For the prouince of Lyndesey liethe at the este
 of Lincolne, whiche is chiefe cite to that prouince, of
 whom Beda spekethe, libro iiij^{to}, capitulo xi^o, where Sex-
 vulphus was firste bischoppe. But the chirche Lindifar-
 nence, after Bede, libro iiij^{to} capitulo [x]xiiij^o, is an yle
 whiche is callede the Holylonde, in the water of Twide,
 nye to Berewike: wherefore hit may be collecte of the
 seyenge of Bede, that there be iij. yles in that famose
 arme of the see in whom the water of Twide floethe,
 whiche departethe now of the este parte Englische men
 from Scottes. The firste yle, somme tyme callede Maylros,
 is callede now Meuros. Then from that towarde the weste
 is the chirche of Lindisfarnence in Halielonde. Also there
 is an yle whiche is callede Farnelonde. Also there a cite
 longenge somme tyme to the kyng, sette on the brynke
 off Twide, within the space of ij. myles, callede somme tyme
 Bembanburgh, that is to say the cite of Bebbe, callede
 now Banburghe, hauenge a stronge castelle in hit.

¹ The verb is absent from MSS. and Cx.

² Reference added from Cx.

³ Added from a. and Cx

⁴ *Lyndiffarn, a.*

⁵ *Twyde, a.; Thwede, Cx.* (who has *next*).

⁶ Added from a. and Cx.

⁷ *that now, Cx.*

⁸ *þat, a., Cx.*

⁹ *Meuros, a., Cx.*

¹⁰ *Haly ylonde, Cx.*

¹¹ *Bobbes, Cx.*

De urbe
Legionum.

Giraldus in Itinerario. Urbs¹ Legionum duplex est, quæ Britannice vocatur Caerlegion vel Caerleon; ² una est in Demetia,³ id est, Southwallia, quæ dicitur Caeruse,⁴ ubi Usca flumen cadit in Sabrinum mare juxta Glamorgantiam, a Belino rege Britonum quondam constructa; metropolis fuit Demetiæ.⁵ Postmodum tempore Claudii Cæsaris dicta est Urbs Legionum,⁶ quando ad instantiam Genuissæ⁷ reginæ, Vespasiano et Arvirago concordatis, missæ sunt aliquæ legiones Romanæ in Hiberniam. Urbs hæc⁸ authentica,⁹ ac per Romanos muris coctilibus circumdata, ubi multa adhuc pristinæ nobilitatis apparent vestigia; palatia scilicet immensa, turris gigantea, thermæ insignes, templorum reliquiæ, et¹⁰ loca theatralia egregiis muris partim extantibus pene clausa; et tam intra quam extra murorum ambitum ædificia subterranea, aquarum ductus,¹¹ hypogæique¹² meatus; stuphas quoque videas ibidem miro artificio consertas, lateralibus¹³ quibusdam angustiis spiraculi vice¹⁴ occulte¹⁵ calorem exhalantibus. In qua urbe tres olim egregiæ fuerant

¹ C.D. begins this section as follows:—"Caerleon, seu Caerlegion, seu Caeruse, ubi Usca flumen cadit in Sabrinum mare juxta Glamorgantiam, constituta est a Belino rege Britonum, quæ multo tempore Caeruse appellata, metropolis fuit Demetiæ in South Wallia" (D., however, reading: "Caerlion, seu Caerthleon, seu Caerlegion, seu Caeruse," &c.)

² *Caerlion*, B.

³ *Domosia*, B.

⁴ *Caerusk*, B.; *Caerult*, Gale.

⁵ *Domotia*, B.

⁶ Transposed in C.D.

⁷ *Gemissa*, Gale.

⁸ *hæc*] antiqua et, ins. C.D.

⁹ *autentica* or *auctentica*, MSS.

¹⁰ *et*] om. C.D.

¹¹ *aquæductus*, B.

¹² *ipogæique*, A.B.; *hippogæique*, E.

¹³ *lateribus*, A.

¹⁴ So Gale; *viis*, MSS.

¹⁵ So A.B.C.D.; *occulto*, E.

Bamborgh,¹ and hath a wel strong castel.² *Giraldus in* TREVISA.
Itinere. Tweye citees pere beep, eiper hatte Caerlegioun
 and Caerleoun also ; oon is Demecia in Soup Wales, þat hatte
 Caerusk also ; pere þe ryuer Vsque³ falleþ in to Seuarn see,⁴
 faste by Glammorgon. Bellinus, kyng of Britouns, somtyme
 bulde þat citee ; and somtyme was þe chief cite of Demecia⁵
 in Soup Wales.⁶ Afterward in Claudius Cesar his tyme hit
 was i-cleped þe Citee of Legiouns. Whan at þe prayer of
 Genuis þe queene, Vespasianus⁷ and Aruiragus were accorded,
 and legiouns of Rome were i-sende in to Irlond, þo was
 Caerleon a noble citee and of grete auctorite, and by þe
 Romayns realliche i-walled aboute wip walles of brent⁸ tile.
 Grete nobilite⁹ þat was pere in olde tyme is pere ȝit in
 meny places i-sene, as þe grete palys,¹⁰ geant¹¹ his tour, noble
 bathes, releef of þe temples, places of theatres, þat were
 places hiȝe and real to stonde and sytte ynne and byholde
 aboute. Þe places were realliche i-closed wip real walles þat
 ȝit somdel stondeþ wel nyh cloos. And wip ynne þe walles
 and wipoute is greet buldyngge vnder erpe, water condites and
 weies vnder erpe and stues also þou schalt see wonderliche
 i-made wip streite side weies of breþyngge, þat wonderliche
 castep vp hete. In pis cite were somtyme þre noble chirches ;

Giraldus, in Itinerario. There be ij. cites of legiones, MS. HARL.
 oon was callede Caerlegion or Caerlyon, oon is in 2261.
 Sowthe Wales, whiche is callede Caerhuth, whiche beenge
 at the water callede Usca, is so namede, fallenge into the
 water of Seuerne nye to Glomorgan, edifiede somme
 tyme of Belinus, kynge of Englonde, whiche was the
 chiefe cite off Sowthe Wales. After that hit was
 callede the Cite off Legiones, when legiones of the
 Romanes were sende to Yrlonde at the instance of a
 qwene, callede Genuissa,¹² a concorde made betwene Ves-
 pacian and Aruiragus. That was a nowble cite, and
 wallede welle, where nowble stappes appere ȝitte, grete
 palice, a gigantes towre, and mony edifienges vnder the
 erthe as welle withoute the walles as within. In whiche
 cite were thre ryalle chirches, oon was of Iulius the f. 67. a.

¹ *Bamborw*, a.
² The previous sentence has several slight variations in Cx.
³ *Usk*, a.
⁴ *see*] om. Cx.
⁵ *Demecia*, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
⁶ MS. (not a. or Cx.) adds: þat hatte *Caerusk*.
⁷ *Vaspasianus*, MSS. an6 Cx. (who has *Genyus*.)
⁸ *brand*, a.
⁹ *nobley*, Cx.
¹⁰ *palayses*, Cx.
¹¹ *gyant*, a.
¹² *Gemissa*, Harl. MS.

ecclesiæ, una Julii Martyris, virginum choro venustata; alia¹ beati Aaron,² præclaro canonicorum ordine nobilitata; tertia vero metropolitana sede³ totius Cambriæ fuit insignita, de⁴ qua postmodum usque Meneviam sedes illa est translata. Hoc in loco Amphibalus⁵ doctor⁶ Albani extitit⁷ oriundus. Hic magni Arthuri, si fas sit credere, magnam⁸ curiam legati adiere⁹ Romani. *Ranulphus*.¹⁰ Est et alia Urbs Legionum ejusdem nominis, ubi et præsens¹¹ chronica fuit¹² elaborata, sicut per capitales hujus primi libri apices clarius¹³ patet.¹⁴ Urbs quidem in

¹ *alia*] et altera, C.D.

² *Aaro*, B.

³ *sede*] om. C. (not D.)

⁴ *a*, B.D.

⁵ *Ambhivalus*, E.

⁶ *beati*, B.

⁷ *fuert*, B.

⁸ Slightly transposed in C.D., which have *famosam*.

⁹ *adgere*, B.†

¹⁰ *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.

¹¹ *hic*, B.

¹² *fit*, B.

¹³ *clarius*] om. B.

¹⁴ *ubi . . . patet*] om. C. D. omits only *sicut . . . patet*.

oon was of Seynt Iulius þe martir, i-hiȝt wiȝ a grete¹ com-
 panye of virgyns; þat oþer was of Seint Aaron, þat was of
 þe ordre of blak chanouns; þat chirche was wiȝ hym²
 nobelie i-hiȝt;³ þe pridde chirche was þe chief moderchirche
 of al Wales, and þe chief sete;⁴ but aftirward þe chief see
 was i-torned out of þat citee in to Meneuia, þat is, Seint
 Dauyes lond in West Wales. In þis Caerleon [was]⁵ Amphi-
 balus i-bore, þat tauȝt Seint Albon. Þere þe messangers of
 Rome come to þe grete Arthurus curt,⁶ ȝif it is leeful for to
 trowe. *Trevisa.* ȝif Gerald⁷ was in doute where⁸ it were
 leful for to trowe þis⁹ oþer noo, it was nouȝt ful greet reedy-
 nesse to write hit in his bookes; as som men wolde wene.
 For it is a wonder sweuene i-mette for to write a long storie,
 to haue euermore in mynde, and euere haue doute ȝif it be
 amys byleue. ȝif alle his bookes were suche, what lore
 were þeryne, and nameliche while hit makeȝ non euidens
 for neiȝer¹⁰ side, noȝer telleȝ what hym¹¹ meueȝ so¹² for to
 seie?¹³ R.¹⁴ Þere is an oþer Citee of Legiouns; þere þis
 cronicle was by¹⁵-trauailed, as it is cleerliche i-knowe by þe
 firste lettres of þe chapitres of þis first book.¹⁶ *Trevisa.*
 Þis¹⁷ is to vnderstondyng in þe Latyn writyng and nouȝt in
 þis Englische writyng; for it was nouȝt þe same þat made
 it in Latyn, and torned it into Englisshe in þe same place
 þat it was i-made first in Latyn. Þe heed lettres of þe
 chapitres of þis firste book i-write arewe as the chapitres
 stondeȝ he speleȝ þis Latyn resoun: Presentem cronicam
 compilauit frater Ranulphus Cestrensis monachus. Þis Latyn
 resoun is to menyng an Englische: Broȝer Ranulf,¹⁸ monk of
 Chestre, compiled and made þis present cronicle.¹⁹ R. þe

TREVISA.

Martir, made feire with a company of virgynes. An other
 was of blessedde Aaron, made nowble with the clere ordre
 of canons. The thridde chirche was made nowble with
 the seete of the metropolitan of alle Wales, whiche was
 translate afterwarde to Meneuia, whiche is callede nowe
 Seynte Daud. R. Also there is an other Cite of Legiones,

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ and ther in a grete, Cx.² hem, Cx.³ adourned, Cx.⁴ see, Cx.⁵ Added from Cx.⁶ court, a., Cx.⁷ Giraldus, Cx.⁸ wheȝer, a.⁹ þis] hit, a., Cx.¹⁰ neiȝer] noȝer, a.¹¹ So a. and Cx.; by, MS.¹² so] sob, MS. (not Cx.)¹³ The extract from Trevisa is a good deal varied in Cx., where it makes but little sense.¹⁴ Reference added from Cx.¹⁵ be, a.¹⁶ Sentence varied in Cx.¹⁷ That, Cx.¹⁸ Ranulph, a.; Ranulphus, Cx.¹⁹ cronycle, a., Cx. The extract from Trevisa is much varied in Cx.

confinio¹ Angliæ ad prospectum² Cambriæ, inter duo marina brachia,³ Dee et Mercee,⁴ situata; quæ tempore⁵ Britonum caput fuit et metropolis Venedotiæ, id est, ⁶Norwalliæ; ⁷cujus ⁸fundator ignoratur. Nam intuenti fundamenta lapidum⁹ enormium videtur potius Romano seu giganteo labore, quam Britannico sudore fundata extitisse. Hæc aliquando vocata est¹⁰ Britannice Caerthleon,¹¹ Latine Legecestria; nunc autem¹² dicta¹³ est Cestria, sive¹⁴ Urbs Legionum; eo quod ibidem hiemarent legiones militares, quas Julius Cæsar ad subjugandam Hiberniam,¹⁵ et postmodum¹⁶ Claudius Cæsar ad subigendas¹⁷ Orcades insulas inde transmiserat. Urbs itaque ista, quicquid de ea Willelmus Malmesbury¹⁸ ad aliorum relatum somniaverit, omni genere¹⁹ victualium²⁰ abundat, farris, carnis,²¹ piscis, potissime salmonis optimi²² copiosa;²³ mercimonia varia recipit et refundit. Quippe quæ²⁴ in suis confiniis salinas habet mineras et metalla. In hac²⁵ urbe per Northimbros²⁶ et Danos vicissim conquassata,²⁷ sed tandem per Elfredam²⁸ Merciorum dominam egregie²⁹ reparatæ et adaucta,³⁰ sunt viæ subterraneæ, lapideo opere

¹ *confinibus*, A.

² *in prospectu*, C.

³ *brachia*] om. E.; *brachia sive duo flumina*, C.; *inter duo flumina*, D.

⁴ *Mersee*, B.D.

⁵ *partim*, B.

⁶ *Northwalliæ*, A.B.

⁷ *sicut alia urbs legionum quondam fuit Demetiæ. Urbs alia jacet desolata, ista substat reformata; illius conditor fuit Belinus*, ins. C.D.

⁸ *istius*, C.D.

⁹ *in muris*, ins. C.D.

¹⁰ *est*] om. B.D.

¹¹ *Caerleon*, C.; *Caerlion*, B.; *Kaerleon*, D.

¹² *vero*, C.D.

¹³ *dicta*] om. C. (not D.); *dicta est*, om. B.

¹⁴ *etiam*, C.D.

¹⁵ *miserat*, ins. C.D.

¹⁶ *etiam*, C.D.

¹⁷ *subjugandam*, A.

¹⁸ *de Malm[esbury]*, B.

¹⁹ *omnium generum*, C (not D.)

²⁰ *copia*, ins. C. (not D.)

²¹ *carnium*, C.D.

²² *optimi*] om. B.

²³ *copia*, B.

²⁴ *et*, C. (not D.)

²⁵ *quoque*, ins. C.D.

²⁶ *Northumbros*, A.; *Northanhimbros*, B.

²⁷ *quassata*, C.D.

²⁸ *Elfledam*, C.; *Elfledam*, A.B. D.; *Elphedam*, Gale.

²⁹ *nobiliter*, C.D.

³⁰ *aucta*, C. (not D.)

citee of legiouñs, þat is, Chestre, stondeþ in þe marche of Engelond toward Wales, bytwene tweie armes of þe see þat hadde Dee and Merse. Þis citee in tyme of Britouñs was heed and chief citee of al Venedocia, þat is, Norþ¹ Wales. Þe foundour of þis citee is vnknowe, for who þat seeþ þe fundamentis of þe grete stones wolde raper wene þat it were Romayns work, oper work of geauntes, þan work² i-made by settinge of Bretouñs. Þis citee somtyme in Brittische speche heet Caerleon,³ Legecestria in⁴ Latyn, and hadde now Cestria in Latyn, and Chestren in Englisse, and þe Citee of Legiouñs [also. For þere lay a wynter þe legiouñs]⁵ of knyȝtes þat Iulius Cesar sente for to wynne Irlond; and afterward Clawdius Cesar sente legiouñs out of þat citee ffor to wynne þe ilondes þat hadde Orcades. What euere William Malmesbury by tellynge of opere men mette of þis citee, þis citee hap plente of lyflode, of corn, of flesche, and of fische, and specialliche of pris salmoun.⁶ Þat⁷ citee fongep grete marchaundise, and sendep out also. Also nygh þis citee beep salt welles, metal, and oor. Norþhumbres destroyed þis citee somtyme; but afterward Elfreda, lady of Mercia, bulde it aȝe and made it wel⁸ more. In þis citee beep weies vnder

TREVISA.

called Chestre, where this cronicle presente was laborede, in the coste of Wales betwene ij. armes of the sec whiche be callede Dye and Meresie, whiche was the chiefe cite of Northe Wales in the tyme of Britones, the firste founder of whom is not knowen. For hit scholde seme to a man beholdenge the fundacion of hit that werke to be rather of the labor of gigantes, other Romanes, then of Britones. That cite was callede somme tyme in the langage of Britones, Caerelyon, in Latyn Legecestria, and hit is callede now Chestre, other the Cite of Legionis, in that the legiones of knyȝhtes tariede þer in wynter, whom Iulius Cesar sende to Yrlonde to subdue hit to hym. This cite habundethe in euery kynde of vitelles, thauȝhe William Malmesbury dreamede in other wise, as in corne, flesche, fische, and specially in salmones, whiche cite receyvethe and sendethe from it diuerse marchandise, whiche hathe nye to hit waters of salte and metalles. That cite, somme tyme destroyede by men of Northumbrelonde, but reedificate by Elfreda, lady of the marches, hathe vnder the erthe voltes to be meruailede thro the

MS. HARL-
2261.¹ in north, Cx.² were, Cx. (typ. error.)³ Caerchleon, a.⁴ a, Cx.⁵ Added from a. and Cx.⁶ prise samoun, a.; pris of samon, Cx.⁷ This, Cx.⁸ moche, Cx.

mirabiliter testudinatae, triclinia concamerata, insculpti lapides pergrandes antiquorum nomina praeferentes. Numismata quoque,¹ Julii Cæsaris aliorumque illustrium inscriptione insignita, aliquando² sunt effossa. Hæc³ est urbs quam rex⁴ Northimbrorum Ethelfridus⁵ contrivit, occidens juxta eam duo pene milia monachorum Bangorensis monasterii.⁶ Hæc est inquam urbs ad quam venit aliquando rex Edgarus cum septem subregulis;⁷ in cujus urbis laudem metricus quidam sic prorupit:—

Versus de
Cestria.

Cestria de castro nomen quasi Castria sumpsit,

Incertum cujus hanc manus ediderit.⁸

Hæc Legecestria tunc est dicta, vel⁹ Urbs Legionum,

Anglis et Cambris nunc manet urbs celebris.

In muris pendent lapides¹⁰ velut Herculis actus,

Agger et augetur tutior¹¹ ut maneat.

¹ *Numismata quoque*] So A. Gale;
Hic et numismata, C.D.; *numisma*, E

² *quandoque*, C.D.

³ *Ista*, C.D.

⁴ *Northanhimbrorum Egfridus*, B.

⁵ Transposed in C.D.

⁶ *de monasterio Bangorensi*, C.D.

⁷ Abbreviated in C.D.

⁸ *ediderint*, C.

⁹ *vel*] om. A.

¹⁰ *lapide*, B.

¹¹ *tutior*] So A.B.C.D.; *tutius*, E.

erpe, wip vawtes of stoonwerk¹ wonderliche i-wrou³t, pre
chambres workes, greet stoones i-graued wip olde men² names
pere ynne. Pere is also Iulius Cesar his money wonderliche
in stones³ i-graued,⁴ and opere noble mennes also wip þe
wrytynge aboute. Þis is þe citee þat⁵ Ethelfride, kyng of
Norphumber,⁶ destroyed; and slogh pere faste by nygh two
þowsand monkes of þe mynistre of Bangor. Þis is þe citee
þat kyng Edgar com to som tyme wip seuene kynges þat were
sugēt to hym. A metrerere brekep out in þis manere in preis-
ynge of þis citee :—

Cestre, Casteltoun as he⁷ were,
Name takeþ of a castel :⁸
Hit is vnknowe
What man bulde⁹ þis citee nowe ;
Tho Legecestrias þes¹⁰
Heet¹¹ now toun of legiones.
Now Walsche and Englische
Holdep þis toun of greet¹² prys.
Stones on þe walle
Semep work Hercules alle ;
Þere long wip myght
To dure þat hep is i-hi³t.

werke of ston, and other grete stones conteynenge the
names and pryntes of Iulius Cesar, and of other nowble
men. That is the cite whom kyng Elfride contriuede,
sleenge in hit allemoste ij^m. monkes of the famos monas-
tery of Bangor. That is the cite also to whom kyng
Edgare come somme tyme with other vij. litelle kynges ; in
to the lawde of whom a metricion seythe in this wise.
That cite of Cestre toke the name of hit of a castelle
callede Cestria, as Castria, the firste founder of whom is
not hade in certitude ; callede somme tyme Legecestria,
other elles the cite of legiones ; whiche is now a nowble
cite, bothe to Englische men and to Walsche men ; in
the walles of whiche cite stones honge lyke to the actes
of Hercules ; where dowble voltes be vnder the erthe ; and

TREVISA.

MS. HARL.
2261.

f. 67. b.

¹ with vowtes and stonewerke, Cx.,
who has *chambred* below.

² So also a. ; *mennes*, Cx.

³ in stones] These words ought
to be cancelled, but Trevisa perhaps
misunderstood the Latin. Cx.
changes *money* into *name*.

⁴ MS. and a. (not Cx.) add by
clerical error from above : *wip olde
men names*.

⁵ So a. and Cx. ; *of*, MS.

⁶ *Northumberland*, Cx.

⁷ a, a. ; *it*, Cx.

⁸ We should probably add : *that
is there* ; *metri gratia*.

⁹ *bude*, a.

¹⁰ *Legecestria chers*, Cx. (*quid* ?)

¹¹ *Hett*, a.

¹² *a greet*, a.

Saxula Saxonica superextant addita magnis,

Concava testudo bina latet sub humo.

Mineras¹ profert salinas proxima tellus,

Quas spargit multis gentibus occiduis.

Carnibus et farre, sic piscibus affluit urbs hæc ;

Merces et classes advehit² unda mare.³

Henrici quarti, Godescalli⁴ Cæsaris olim,

Regis et Harald⁵ pulvis habetur ibi.

Mars et Mercurius, Bacchus,⁶ Venus, atque Laverna,

Proteus et Pluto regna tenent inibi.

¹ *Minetas*, D.

² *affluit*, E.

³ Perhaps for *mare*, which the MSS. and Gale have, we should read *maris*. This indeed seems to

be the reading of D., which has been corrected from *mar.* to *març*.

⁴ *Godescilli*, B.

⁵ *Araldi*, A.

⁶ *et*, B.

Saxon smal¹ stones
 Set vpon greet beep attones.²
 There vnder grounde
 Lotynge double vault³ is i-founde.
 Dat helpeth wip sondes
 Meny men of westene⁴ londes.
 Fisch, flesche, and corn low
 Dis cite toun hap i-now.
 Schippes and chaffare
 See water bringep i-now pare.
 Godescalle pere is,
 Dat was emperour or⁵ pis,
 And pe ferpe Henry kyng,
 Pere is here rihtene⁶ dwellynge.
 Of kyng Haralde
 Poudre pere zit is halde,⁷
 Bacchus⁸ and Mercurius, Mars and Venus,
 also Lauerna,⁹
 Proteus¹⁰ and Pluto regnep pere [in]¹¹ pe towne.

TREVISA.

Trevisa. God woot what pis is to mene, but poetes¹² in here¹³ manere of speche feyneth as pey euerich kynde crafte and leuyng hadde a dyuersite¹⁴ god, euerich from oper; and so they feyne¹⁵ a god of bataille and of fiztyng, and clepep hym Mars; also pey feynep a god of couetise of richesse and marchaundise, and clepep¹⁶ hym Mercurius; and so Bacchus pei clepep god of wyn; Venus, god of fairnesse and of loue; Lauerna, god of pefte and of robberie; Proteus,¹⁰ god of fulshede and of gyle; and Pluto, god of helle. And so hit semeþ pat pis vers wolde mene pat pese feyned¹⁷ goddes regnep and beep i-serued in Chestre; Mars wip fizting and cokkyng; Mercurius wip couetise of richesse and of marchandyse; Bacchus wip grete drinkyng; Venus wip loue nouzt ful wys;¹⁸ Lauerna wip pefte and robberye; Proteus¹⁰

also kyng Henry the iiiijth, Godescallus somme tyme Cesar, and kyng Haralde were beryede. There Mars, Mercurius, Venus, Proteus,⁹ and Pluto have gouernaile.

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ *smale*, Cx.
² *at ones*, a.
³ *vawt*, a.; *vout*, Cx.
⁴ *westren*, Cx.
⁵ *ar*, a.; *er*, Cx.
⁶ *erthe is there righten*, Cx.
⁷ *i-halde*, a., Cx.
⁸ *Bacus*, MS.; *Bachus*, a., Cx.
⁹ Possibly we should read *Lauerne*; but even so, the metre limps.

¹⁰ *Protheus*, MSS. and Cx.
¹¹ Added from Cx.
¹² So a.; *portes*, MS.
¹³ So a.; *his*, MS.
¹⁴ *diuerse*, Cx.; probably rightly.
¹⁵ *feyned*, Cx.
¹⁶ *called* Cx.
¹⁷ *forsayd*, Cx.
¹⁸ *nouzt ful wys*] lewdly, Cx.

Ejus gens sequitur multum mores¹ Babylonis,
 Quæ dum plus poterit, plus solet esse ferox.

CAP. XLIX.

*De provinciis et comitatibus.*²

*Alfridus.*³ Notandum quod⁴ Anglia continet triginta
 duas⁵ shiras, id est, provincias, quæ hodie dicuntur comi-
 Comitatus. tatus, exceptis Cornubia et insulis. Nomina comitatum
 sunt ista: Kent, Southsex, Southereie,⁶ Hamptshire, Bar-
 rokshire,⁷ quæ sic denominatur a quadam nuda quercu
 in foresta de Wyndesora,⁸ ad quam solebant provinciales
 convenire in tractatibus habendis.⁹ Item¹⁰ Wyltshire,¹¹
 quæ quondam dicebatur provincia Severiana,¹² Somerset, e,
 Dorset, Doevenshire, sive¹³ Doonia.¹⁴ Hæ novem pro-
 vinciæ australes prædictæ, quatenus flumen Thamisiæ eas
 secernit a reliqua Anglia, judicabantur olim illa lege quæ
 vocatur¹⁵ Westsaxenelaga.¹⁶ Sed¹⁷ Estsex,¹⁸ Midelsex,¹⁹

¹ *mores multum*, B.² *Angliæ*, ins. A.³ *Alfridus*] Transposed in C. (not D.), Gale; om. B.⁴ *Notandum quod*] om. C.⁵ *duas*] om. B.⁶ So E. and Gale; *Sotherey*, C.B.; *Sowthirie*, A.; *Southery*, D.⁷ *Barkschire*, A.B.; *Barocschire*, D.⁸ *Wyndisora*, A.⁹ *in tractatibus habendis*] Added in the margin of C. in another ink; absent from D.¹⁰ *Item*] In, E.; om. C.D.¹¹ *Wilteschira*, A.¹² *Somerana*, B.¹³ *sive*] Added from A.B.D. and Gale; *seu Devonia*, C.; *sive Devonia*, B.; *sive Dovania*, Gale.¹⁴ *Deevoneschire* (*Devenischire*, D.), *sive Dovania*, A.D.¹⁵ *quæ vocatur*] om. B.¹⁶ *West Saxnelaga*, B.; *West-saxenelaga*, D.¹⁷ *Sed*] om. C.D.¹⁸ *est Sex*, B.; *et*, ins. A.¹⁹ *Middelsexe*, D.

wip falshede and gyle. þan is Pluto not vnserued, god of TREVISIA.
helle. R.

þere Babilon lore,
More myȝt haþ, truþe¹ þe more.

*De schiris Angliæ, siue prouinciis. Capitulum quadra-
gesimum nonum.*

TAKE hede þat² Engelond conteyneþ two and pritti schires and prouinces, þat now beþ i-cleped erldoms, outake Cornewayle and ilondes³ *Alfridus*. These beþ þe names of þe erldoms and schires: Kent, Souþsex, Souþeray, Hampschire, Barkschire, þat haþ þat name of a baar ook þat is in þe forest of Wyndesore; for at þat bare ook men of þat schire were i-wont come to gidres and make here tretys, and þere take hir counsail, and rede.⁴ Also Wiltshire, þat hiȝte⁵ somtyme þe prouince of Semeran, Somersete, Dorsete, Deuenschire, þat hatte Deuonia in Latyn. Þese nyne south schires, as⁶ Temse departeþ hem from þe oper dele of Engelond, were⁷ somtyme i-gouerned and i-ruled by þat lawe þat hatte Westsaxoun⁸ lawe.⁹ Estsex, Myddelsex,

The peple of whom folowe moche men of Babilon in MS. HARL.
condicion of maneres, whiche is moste cruelle where 2261.
that hit may do moste.

*Of the schires other prouinces of Englonde. Capitulum
quadragesimum nonum.*

HIT is to be attended that Englonde conteynethe xxxxiij^{ti} schires other provinces, Cornewaile excepte and other yles. *Alfridus*. These be the names of the schires, Kente, Southesex, Sutherey, Hampteschire, Barrokeschire, takenge that name of hit of a bare oke in the foreste of Wyndeshore, where men of that province were wonte to mete for a tretys to be made betwene partes; also Wildeschire, that was callede somme tyme the province of Seuerne, Somersete, Dorsete, Deuenschire. These ix. sowthe prouinces aforeseide, thauȝhe Thamys departethe theyme, thei were iuggede somme tyme by the lawe of the Weste Saxones, whiche is callede Westesaxenelaga. But Estesex,

¹ *trouthe*, Cx. The text seems corrupt; possibly *crouþe* (i.e. *croweth*) may be the true reading.

² So a.; þan, MS.

³ *the ilondes*, Cx.

⁴ *reed*, a.; *aduys*, Cx. (who has other slight variations.)

⁵ *heet*, Cx.

⁶ So a.; *nyne schires be souþ*, as, MS.

⁷ *which were*, Cx., who omits as above.

⁸ *Westsaxene*, a.

⁹ *by the West Saxon lawe*, Cx.

Southfolk, Northfolk, Herfortshire,¹ Huntyndonshire, Northamptounshire,² Cantebruggeshire,³ Bedfordshire, Bukkinghamshire,⁴ Leicestreshire,⁵ Derbyshire, Nothinghamshire, Lincolnshire, Z orkshire,⁶ Duremshire,⁷ Northumberlond, Caerlielshire cum Cumberlond,⁸ Appellyshire cum Westmerlond, Lancastreshire, quæ continet quinque modicas shiras; istæ quindecim provincie prædictæ orientales et boreales judicabantur olim lege illa, quæ vocabatur Denelaga. Sed Oxenfortshire,⁹ Warewykshire,¹⁰ Gloucestreshire, Wyrcestreshire, Herefordshire, Salopshire, Staffordshire, Chestershire,¹¹ istæ octo shiræ mediterranæ et occidentales judicabantur olim lege Marcia, quæ Anglice Merchenelaga¹² vocabatur. Est ergo sciendum quod provincia Eboraci solummodo¹³ se extendit hodie ab arcu Humbræ¹⁴ fluminis usque ad flumen Teyse.¹⁵ Et tamen sunt in ea viginti duo hundredi, id est, wapentakes.¹⁶ Hundredus autem¹⁷ Latine, sive cantredus Wallice et Hibernice, continet centum villas. Wapentak¹⁸ Anglice idem¹⁹ est quod²⁰ *arma capere*, eo quod in primo adventu novi domini sole-

¹ *Herfortshire*] om. B.; *Hertfordshire*, D.

² *Norhamptounshire*, D. In this MS. the order of the counties is different.

³ *Cantbrigschire*, B.

⁴ *Bukynghamschire*, B.; *Bokinhamshire*, D.

⁵ *Leycestreschire*, B.; *Laicestreschire*, D.

⁶ *Zhorkschire*, A.B.; *Eboracschire*, D.

⁷ *Duremshire*] The rest of this chapter varies much in C.D. The paragraphs and sentences are so much transposed and altered, that it is almost impossible to collate it.

⁸ *Northumberlond... Cumberlond*] om. B.

⁹ *Oxenfordschire*, A.B.

¹⁰ *Warwikschire*, B.

¹¹ *Cestreschire*, B.

¹² *Marchenelaga*, A.B.

¹³ *solomodo*, E.

¹⁴ *Humbria*, B.

¹⁵ *Tese*, B.

¹⁶ *wapintakes*, A.

¹⁷ *enim*, B.

¹⁸ *vero*, C.D.

¹⁹ *id*, B.

²⁰ *quod*] om. B.

Southfolk, Norpfolk, Hertfordschire, Huntyngdounschire, ^{TREVISA.} Norphamptounschire, Cantebryggeschire,¹ [Bedefordschire]² Bokynghamschire, Leycestreschire, Derbyschire, Notynghamschire, Lyncolneschire, **Z**orkschire, Duramschire, Norhumberlond, Carlelschire wip Comberlond, Appelbyschire wip Westmerlond, Lancastreschire, pat conteyneþ fyue litel schires; þese fiftene norþ and est schires were somtyme i-gouerned and i-ruled by pat lawe, pat hatte Denelawe. But Oxenfordeschire, Warwykschire, Glowcetreschire, Worcestreschire, Herfordschire,³ Schropschire, Staffordschire, Chestreschire, þese eiȝte myddel and west schires were somtyme i-gouerned and i-ruled by pat lawe pat hatte Mercia in Latyn, and Mercheyne lawe in Englisshe. It is to wetynge⁴ pat **Z**orkschire now streccheþ onlich from þe bowe of the ryuer of Humber anon to þe ryuer of⁵ Teyse; and ȝit in **Z**orkschire beep two and twenty hondredes. Hundred and candred is al oon; candred is oo word i-made of Walsche and of Irische, and is to meynge, a contray pat conteyneþ an hondred townes, and is also in Englische 1-cleped wepentake; for somtyme in þe comynge of a newe lorde tenautes were i-wont to ȝilde

Middelsex, Sowthefolke, Northefolke, Hertefordeschire, Huntyngdonschire, Northehamptonschire, Cambriggeschire, ^{MS. HARL.} Bedfordeschire, Bukkynghamschire, Leicestreschire, Derbyschire, ^{2261.} Notynghamschire, Lincolneschire, Yorkeschire, Diremsehire, Northumbrelande, Caerlielschire, Cumbirlande, Appalbischire, with Westmerlande, Lancastreschire, whiche containethe in hit v. other schires. These xv. schires afore seide of the este and of the northe were iuggede somme tyme by a lawe whiche was callede Danelaga. But Oxforde- schire, Warwickschire, Gloucestreschire, Wircestreschire, Herdefordeschire, Shropschire, Stafordeschire, and Chestreschire,—these viij. mydelleschires and weste were iuggede somme tyme by the lawe of marches, whiche was callede in Englische Merchenelaga. Also hit is to be attendede that the prouince of Yorke extendethe hit oonly now from the arche of the floode of Humbre vn to the floode of Teyse; neuerthelesse there be in hit xxij^d hundredes, whiche be callede wapentakes, for a hundrede in Latyn, ^{f. 68. a.} other elles a tancrede in Walesche other Yrische, conteyneþe a c. townes. A wapentake in Englische is seide to take wepens; for tenautes were wonte to yelde

¹ *Cambryggeshyre, Cx.* | ⁴ *wete, Cx., and so often.*
² *Added from a. and Cx.* | ⁵ *of] om. a.; clause varied in*
³ *Herefordschire, a; Herdford-* *Cx.*
shire, Cx.

bant tenentes reddere arma sua pro homagio. Duresmshire¹ se extendit a fluvio² These³ usque ad flumen Tyne. Northumberlond proprie sumendo, se extendit a flumine Tyne⁴ usque ad flumen Twyde,⁵ quod est principium Scotiæ. Si igitur plaga Northimbrana, quæ fuit olim ab Humbera usque ad Twedam, hodie pro⁶ unica provincia seu comitatu,⁷ sicut antiquitus computetur, tunc sunt in Anglia solummodo viginti duo shiræ. Si autem plaga Northimbrana dividatur in sex provincias prædictas, quæ sunt Everkshire,⁸ Duresmshire,⁹ Northumberlond, Caerlielshire, Appelbyshire,¹⁰ Lancastreshire,¹¹ tunc sunt in Anglia præter Cornubiam et insulas triginta sex shiræ,¹² provinciæ, sive comitatus. Quas omnes fecit Willelmus¹³ Conquæstor

¹ *Duresmeschire*, B.

² *flumine*, A.

³ *Tese*, B. ; *Thes*, A.

⁴ *Tyri*, B.

⁵ *Twede*, B. ; *Twyde*, A.

⁶ *pro*] om. B.

⁷ *comitatus*, B.

⁸ *Everwikshire* altered to *Wer-*

wickschire, A. ; *Everwikshire*, B., Gale.

⁹ *Duresmeschire*, B.

¹⁰ *Appelbischire*, A.B.

¹¹ *Loncastreschire*, B.

¹² *shires*, E., and so above (once)

¹³ *rex*, B.

vp hire wepene instede of homage. Duramschire strecchep TREVISA.
 from þe ryuer Teyse¹ anon to þe ryuere Tyne. And for to
 speke propurliche of Norphumberlond, Norphumberlond
 strecchep from þe ryuere of Tyne anon to þe ryuere of Twede,
 þat is þe² bygynnyng of Scotlond. Ðan 3if the contrey of
 Norphumberlond, þat was somtyme from Humber anon to
 Twede, be now accounted for oon schire and oon erldom, as
 it was somtyme, þan beþ in Engelond but two and pritty
 schires, but 3if þe contray of Norphumberlond be³ departed
 in þe sixe forsaiðe⁴ schires, þat beþ Euerwykschire, Du-
 ramschire, Norphumberlond, Carlelschire, Appelbyschire,
 Lancastreschire, þanne beþ in Engelond sixe and pritty
 schires wipoute Cornewayle and also wipoute þe ilondes.
 Kyng William þe Conquerour made alle þis prouince and
 schires be descryved⁵ and i-mete. Ðan were i-founde sixe
 and pritty schires⁶ and an half,⁷ and townes⁸ two and fifty
 powsand and foure score; parische chirches fyue and fourty
 powsand and tweyne; kny3tes fees sixty powsand and
 fiftene. Þerof⁹ men of religioun haþ ei3te and twenty
 powsand and fiftene kny3tes fees.¹⁰ But now wodes [þeþ]¹¹
 i-hewe adoun and newe telynge¹² lond i-made moche more
 þan was þoo, and meny townes i-bulde, and so þere beþ now
 in Engelond meny moo hides¹³ and townes þan were in þat

theire wepens for an homage in the firste commenge of MS. HARL.
 newe lordes. Duremschire extendethe hit from the floode 2261.
 of Teyse to the floode of Tyne. Northumbrelonde pro-
 prely extendethe hit from the floode of Tyne to the floode
 of Twide, whiche is the begynnenge of Scotlonde. And
 if the plage of Northumbrelonde, which was somme tyme
 from Humber vn to Twide, be accomptede as for oon pro-
 uince other schire, as hit was wonte, then there be in En-
 glonde oonly xxxij^{ti} schires. And if that plage of North-
 umbrelonde be diuidede into vj. provinces, whiche be
 Euerwikschire, Duremschire, Northumbrelonde, Carliel-
 schire, Appelbeschire, Lancastreschire, then there be in
 Englonde xxxvj^{ti} schires, except yles perteynenge to that
 londe, and also Cornewaile. Whiche alle William Conque-

¹ *Theyse, a.*

² *in the, Cx.*

³ *is, a. (not Cx.)*

⁴ *forsaiðe]* om. Cx., probably
 rightly.

⁵ *So a. and Cx. (who has these
 prouynces); destroyed, MS.*

⁶ *Text of the following clauses
 as in a; more than thirty words*

*are repeated without sense in MS.
 in various places.*

⁷ *and half a schire, a. and Cx.*

⁸ *and schire townes, MS.*

⁹ *Wherof, Cx.*

¹⁰ *Some words repeated in MS.*

¹¹ *Added from a. and Cx.*

¹² *tyllenge, a.*

¹³ *vyllages, Cx., who varies the
 sentence considerably.*

describi, et per hydās¹ seu carucatas dimetiri, et inventi sunt comitatus triginta sex et dimidium; villæ vero quinquaginta duo milia et octoginta,² ecclesiæ parochiales quadraginta quinque milia duo, feoda militum 60,015, de quibus religiosi habent 28,015³ feoda;⁴ sed, hodie, nemoribus succisis novalibusque procisis,⁵ multo plures sunt hidæ et villæ quam tunc erant.

CAP. L.

*De legibus legumque vocabulis.*⁶

SANCIVIT⁷ primum⁸ leges in Britannia Dunwallo Molmutius, cujus leges Molmutinæ⁹ dicebantur, usque

¹ *hidās*, A.

² 62080, D.

³ So A.B., Gale, and the versions; 19,015, E.

⁴ *de . . . feoda*] om. C.D.

⁵ *novalibusque procisis*] *pascuisque ædificatis*, C.; *pascuisque præcisis*, B.D.

⁶ *De legum conditoribus*, C.; *De legibus et earum interpretationibus*, D. This chapter, for which Higden gives no authorities, is almost en-

tirely taken from the *Chronicon* of John Brompton (pp. 956, 957, in Twysden's *Hist. Angl. Script.* x. Lond. 1652), whose readings are sometimes quoted. As usual the readings of C.D. agree better with the original.

⁷ *Sancit*, A.; *Edidit*, C.D., after *Britannia*.

⁸ *primo*, A.B.

⁹ *Molmutianæ*, C. (not D.); *Molmutinæ*, B.

tyme. *Trevisa*.¹ Hit is wondre why Alfred summeth the schires of Engelond somdel as a man þat mette; for Alfrede telleþ þe som of schires in þis manere: Þere beþ in Engelond sixe and pritty schires wipoute Conewayle and wipoute þe ylondes. Why seiþ he nouzt in þis manere: Þere beþ in Engelond sixe schires wip Cornwayle, and pritty oþer schires wipoute þe ilondes? Eyper manere summyng is as vnredy as oþer. For to make a redy somme it schulde be i-write in þis manere: In Engelond beþ seuen and pritty schires, and so is Cornwayle acounted wip þe oþere schires; and þat is skilful. For Cornwayle is a schere of Engelond; for, as he seiþ, Cornwaile is in þis Bretayne hym self, as it is aleide² in þe fourþe chapitre of þis firste book. Ðan hit is in oon of þe chief parties of þis Bretayne, þat beþ Engelond, Wales, and Scotlond. But Cornwayle is nouzt in Wales, for þere is a grete see bytwene; noþer in Scotlonde, for þere beþ many hondred myle bytwene. Ðan Cornwayle is in Engelond, and is departed in hundredes, and is i-ruled by þe lawe of Engelond, and holdeþ schire and schire dayes, as oþere schires dooþ. **Þ**if Alfrede seiþ nay in þat, he wot nouzt what he maffleþ.

De legibus legumque vocabulis. Capitulum quinquagesimum.

DUNWALLO, þat hete Moluntius³ also, made þe⁴ firste lawes in Bretayne, the whiche lawes were i-cleped Moluntius his lawes,

roure, kyng of Englonde, causede to be describete, and the hides and carucates of londes to be measurede; in which londe xxxvij^{ti} schires were founde and dimid., liij^{ti} m. and lxxx. townes, and xli^{ti} and v. m. peresche chirches and tweyne, lx. m. fees of knyghtes and xv., of whom religious men have xxvij^{ti} m. and xv. fees; but now, woodes kytte downe and made arable londe, there be mony moo townes and hides of londe then were in that tyme.

Of lawes and the wordes of lawes. Capitulum quinquagesimum.

Dunwallo Molimicius ordeynede firste lawes in Briteyne, the lawes of whom were callede Molimitine, obseruede and

¹ The remainder of the chapter appears thus in Cx., who omits Trevisa's name:—"And whereas a fore is wretton that Cornuayll is not sette amonge the shires of Englonde, it may stonde amonge them wel ynough. For it is neyther in Wales ne in Scotland, but is

"in Englonde, and ioyneth to Deuensshire. And so may ther ben acompted in Englonde xxxvij. shires and a half with the other shires."

² aleyd, a.

³ Moliuncius, Cx., and so below.

⁴ þe] om. a., Cx.

ad tempora Willelmi Conquæstoris satis celebres. Inter quæ¹ statuit, ut civitates et templa deorum, viæque ad illa ducentes, ac² aratra colonum³ immunitate confugii gauderent. Deinde Marcia regina Britonum, uxor Gwitelini⁴ regis, a qua provincia Merciorum putatur denominata, legem edidit discretione et justitia⁵ plenam, quæ lex Marcia vocabatur.⁶ Has duas leges Gildas historicus transtulit de Britannico in Latinum, et rex Aluredus postmodum de Latino⁷ in Saxonicum, quæ Merchenelaga⁸ dicebatur.⁹ Ipse quoque Aluredus legem Anglice conscriptam superadjecit, quæ Westsexenelaga¹⁰ vocabatur.¹¹ Tandem Danis in hac¹² terra dominantibus, tertia lex emanavit, quæ Dane-laga¹³ dicebatur. Ex his tribus legibus Sanctus Edwardus tertius unam legem communem edidit, quæ leges Edwardi usque hodie vocantur.¹⁴ De quibus nonnulla vocabula adhuc frequentata cum eorum a

¹ *quas*, C. (not D.)

² *et*, C.D.

³ *colnum*] So all the MSS. and Gale; also Brompton. So also above, p. 42, but the reading has probably sprung from a compendious mode of writing.

⁴ So D. distinctly (omitting *regis*); *Guentilini*, C.; *Gintelini*, Gale.

⁵ *legem*, B.

⁶ *vocatur*, C.D.; *dicebatur*, B.

⁷ *de Latino*] om. C.D.

⁸ *Merchenelaga*, B.C.D.

⁹ *vocabatur*, B.

¹⁰ *Westsaxonelaga*, A.

¹¹ *Ipse . . . vocabatur*] om. B.; *vocatur*, C. (not D.)

¹² *hac*] om. C.D.

¹³ *Denelaga*, A.

¹⁴ *usque hodie* before *leges* in B.

and were solempne¹ anon to William Conquerour his tyme. TREVISIA.
 Moluntius ordeynede among his lawes, þat citees, temples,
 and weies þat ledeþ þerto, and plowh men solowes schulde
 haue priuelege and fredom forto saue alle men þat wolde
 flee þerto for socour and refute.² Ðan aftirward Marcia,
 queene of Bretouns, þat was Guytelynus þe kynges wyf, of
 hire þe prouince hadde þe name Mercia, as som men troweþ.
 Sche³ made a lawe ful of riȝt and⁴ of wit and resoun, and
 was i-cleped Merchene lawe. Gildas, þat wroot stories of
 Bretouns, turnede þese tweie lawes out of Bretoun speche
 in to Latyn, and afterward kyng Alredes⁵ turned alle in fere⁶
 out of Latyn in to Saxon speche, and⁷ was i-cleped alle
 in fere Merchene lawe. Also the same kyng Alredus wroot
 in Engliche, and putte to anoþer lawe, þat heet West Sexene
 lawe. Þanne afterward Danes were lordes in þis lond, and
 so com⁹ forþ the þridde lawe þat heet Dane lawe. Of þese
 pre lawes Seynt Edward þe þridde¹⁰ made oon comyn lawe, þat
 ȝit hatte¹¹ Seint Edwardes lawe. I¹² holde hit be worthy¹³.

kepede welle vn to the tyme of William Conquerour. MS. HARL.
 Amonge whom he made a statute that cites, temples of 2261.
 goddes, weies ledenge to theyme, and the ploes of tillers of
 londe, scholde ioy imunite of confute. After that Marcia,
 qwene of Britones, wife to kyng Gvitylne, of whom the
 prouince of the marches be trawede to have taken their
 name, made a law full of ryȝhtenousenes and of descrecion,
 whiche was callede the lawe of the Marches. Gildas, the
 writer of storyes, did translate those ij. lawes from the
 langage of Britones in to Latyne. And kyng Alurede f. 68. b.
 did translate hit from Latyn in to the speche of Saxones,
 whiche lawe was callede Merchenelaga. Also kyng
 Alurede caste to that lawe writen in Engliche whiche
 was callede Weste Saxon lawe. Then after that, the
 Danes reignenge in that londe, the thridde lawe began,
 whiche was callede Danelaga. Kyng Edwarde the thridde
 made oon commune lawe of those three lawes, whiche be
 callede vn to this tyme presente the lawes of Seynte Ed-

¹ were solomply (sic) obserued
 vnto, Cx.

² refuge, Cx.

³ He, a.

⁴ and] om. a. and Cx.

⁵ Alredus, a. and Cx.

⁶ in fere] om. Cx., and also
 below.

⁷ and]. Here and above the sense
 requires þat.

⁸ Alredus, a. and Cx.

⁹ cam, Cx.

¹⁰ the confessour, Cx.

¹¹ So a.; hadde, MS.

¹² I] Iche, a.

¹³ it wel don, Cx.

explicationibus¹ hic² inserere dignum duxi: Mundbriche³ id est, læsio majestatis; Gallice, blemur de honur.⁴ Burgbriche,⁵ id est, læsio libertatis aut septi; Gallice, blemure de court ou de clos. Grithbruche,⁶ id est, fractio pacis. Miskennigh,⁷ id est, variatio loquelæ in curia. Sheauwyngh,⁸ propositio mercimonii; Gallice, despleyure⁹ de marchaundise. Hamsoken¹⁰ vel Hamfare,¹¹ id est, insultus factus in domo. Forstalling,¹² id est, coactio vel obsistentia facta in¹³ strata regia. Frithsoken,¹⁴ id est, tutatio¹⁵ in jurisdictione; Gallice, seurte¹⁶ en defence. Infangthef¹⁷ pelfinde inward,¹⁸ id est, infra suum¹⁹ capere reum; Gallice, dedeinz²⁰ le soen²¹ attachement de laroun.²² Saka,²³ id est, jurisdictio; Gallice, courte justice, forfet ou achesoun.²⁴ Soka, id est, secta curiæ. Ex inde²⁵ dicitur Sokne;²⁶ sed sokne aliquando dicitur interpellatio majoris audientiae. Wergelthef, id est, solte²⁷ de laroun eschape.²⁸ Theam,²⁹ id est, laudare auctorem; Gallice, reoucher³⁰ garaunt. Et quandoque dicitur sequela nativorum. Fihtwite,³¹ id est, ferir³² per melle.³³ Wardwyte, id est, sursise³⁴ de garde. Blodwyte,³⁵ id est, amerciamentum pro effusione san-

¹ *expositionibus*, B., Gale.

² *hic*] om. C.

³ All these words are written in large characters and underlined with red in B.

⁴ *blesmure de honure*, A.B.

⁵ *Burbriche*, D., Brompton.

⁶ *Grythbriche*, A., Gale, Br.

⁷ So E. apparently; *Mixkennyng*, B.; *Miskennig*, A., Gale, Br.; *Miskherming*, D.

⁸ *Sheaweng*, B.; *Scheawing*, Gale; *Seauwyng*, A.; *Schewing*, D.; *Scheawwyng*, Br.

⁹ *depleyuer de marchandis*, A.; *displegure*, Gale.; *despleier*, D.; *despliaunce*, Br.

¹⁰ *Hamsokne*, A., Gale; *Hamsokin*, D.

¹¹ *Hemfare*, A.

¹² *Forstawing*, Gale; *Foristalle*, D.; *Forstall*, Br.

¹³ *in*] om. B.

¹⁴ *Frithsokne*, A., Gale.

¹⁵ *facta*, B.

¹⁶ *surte en defens*, A.; *suet on defense*, B.

¹⁷ *Infangthef*, A.

¹⁸ *pelffindinward*, B.; *pelffande in warde*, D.; *thelfind*, Br. The true reading is probably *Infangenþeof self finde in warde*. See *Introduction*.

¹⁹ *attachiamentum* should be added from Brompton.

²⁰ So A.B.D., Gale; *deinz*, E.

²¹ *soun*, B.; *seon*, Gale.

²² *laron*, A., Gale; *larron*, D.

²³ *Sake*, B.

²⁴ *acheson*, A.; *achesun*, Gale; *jurisdictum de court ou achesun*, D.

²⁵ *Et deinde*, A.; *Et inde*, Gale.

²⁶ *Soken*, A. Sentence altered in D.

²⁷ *solte*] om. B.

²⁸ *escape*, B.

²⁹ *Them*, B.

³⁰ So B.C.D.; *reuoeh garant*, A.; *revocher garant*, Gale.; *reueche*, E.

³¹ *Frithwite*, B.; *Fightwit*, D.; *Fyghtweyt*, A., Gale.; *Flitwithe*, Br., which is probably right.

³² *ferer*, A.

³³ *molle*, C. (not D.); *medlie*, Br.

³⁴ *fursis*, B.

³⁵ *Blodwite*, B.; *Blodwit*, Gale.

to write here and expowne meny termes of pese lawes. TREVISA.
 Mundbreche,¹ hertynge of honour and of worschepe;² a³
 Frensche, blesmure⁴ de honoure. Burghbreche;⁵ a Frensche,
 blesmure de court, ou de cloys. Grythbruche, [brekyng] ⁶ of
 pees. Miskenyng, chaunginge of speche in court. Schewyng,
 settinge forþ of marchaundise; a Frensche, despleure⁷ de
 marchaundise. Hamsokene oper Hamfare, a rese i-made in
 hous. Forstallyng, wrong oper let i-doo in þe kynges hiþe
 weie. Fryth sokene; in Frensche, suerte⁸ in diffens.
 Infantif⁹ pelynde inward; a Frensche, dedeyns le soen
 atachment de laroun.¹⁰ Sake; [a Frensche, court justice
 forfet ou achesoun. Soka],¹¹ sute of court, and þerof comeþ
 Sokene,¹² but Sokene operwhile is forto aske lawe in þe
 gretter court. Wergiltif,¹³ solte de laroun¹⁴ eschape. Theam,
 Frensche, reuoche garant; and somtyme Theam is i-cleped
 þe sewte of bonde men. Fightyng wyte, amersement for
 fightyng, ferir melle. Wardwhite, forfise de garde. Blodwyte,
 mersement for schedyng of blood. Cultwyte,¹⁵ amendes for

warde, mony wordes of whiche lawe nede an exposicion, MS. HARL.
 as Mundbriche, hurte of maieste, in Frenche, Blesmur de 2261.
 honour; Burbriche, a hurte of liberte, in Frenche, Blesmur
 de court, ou de clos; Grithbriche, a brekenge of peace;
 Muskenning, diuersite other chaungenge of speche in courte;
 Scheauwyng, sette furthe of marchandise, in Frenche,
 displevir de marchandise; Hamsokne or Hamfare, þat is,
 a fray made in an howse; Forstallyng, constreynenge made
 in the kynges strete. Frith sokne, suerte in a iurisdiccion,
 in Frenche, surte en defence. Infanthef pelynde inwarde,
 that is to say, to take a guilty man within his lordeschippe,
 in Frenche, dedeins le soen atachement de laron. Saca, a
 iurisdiccion, in Frenche, court iustice. Soka, a sute of the
 courte, where of Sokne is seyde. But Sokne is seide other-
 while an interpellacion of a moore grete audience. Werk-
 elthef, that is to say, solte de laron eschamp. Thean, that
 is, to lawde the auctor, in Frenche, reuoche graunte; whiche
 is callede otherwhile a sequele of natife men. Blodewitte,
 a merciamente for effusion of bloode. Hittewite, amendes

¹ *Myndebruche*, Cx.

² *of worschipe and of honour*, a.

³ *in*, Cx., everywhere.

⁴ *bleschur*, Cx., and so below.

⁵ *Burchbruch*, Cx.

⁶ *brekyng*] Added from a. and Cx.

⁷ *displeix*, Cx.

⁸ *surte*, a.

⁹ *Infangthef*, a.; which is the more usual form. Cx. has some omissions here, and further on.

¹⁰ *laroun eschape*, MS. (not a.)

¹¹ Added from a.

¹² *Sokne*, a.

¹³ *Wergelthef*, a.

¹⁴ *laroun*, a.

¹⁵ *Gultwite*, Cx.

guinis. Flitwite,¹ id est, emenda proveniens pro² contentione. Leyrwyte,³ id est⁴ emenda⁵ pro corruptione nativæ.⁶ Gultwyte,⁷ id est, emenda pro transgressione Scot, id est, symbolum ad opus ballivorum domini.⁸ Hidage vel⁹ Taillage,¹⁰ id est, tallagium¹¹ de hidis terrarum. Danegelt,¹² id est, tallagium datum Danis, id est iij. denarios¹³ de qualibet bovata terræ. Wapentak et hundrede¹⁴ idem sunt, quia¹⁵ procinctus centum villarum solebat reddere arma in adventu domini. Lestage, id est, consuetudo exacta in nundinis et mercatis. Stalage, id est, exactio pro statione in plateis tempore nundinarum.¹⁶

CAP. LI.

De regnis regnorumque limitibus.

*Alfridus.*¹⁷ Inconcussa stetit apud Britones insulæ monarchia, a primo scilicet Bruto usque ad Julium Cæsarem;¹⁸ a quo¹⁹ Julio usque ad Severum hæc insula Romanis fuit²⁰ vectigalis et subacta. Reges tamen habuit ex seipsa a Severo quoque²¹ usque ad ultimum municipem Gratianum; deficiente Britonum successione, Romani in ea regnaverunt.²² Romanis tandem²³ propter itineris

¹ *Filtwite*, Br., which is probably right; *Fightwit*, D., which has *Fightwit* however under the other head.

² *ex*, D.

³ *Lethirwite*, B.; *Letherwithe*, Br.

⁴ *id est*] Added from B., Gale.

⁵ *proveniens*, ins. A.

⁶ *nativo*, C.

⁷ *Giltwite*, D.; *Giltwithe*, Br.

⁸ *regis*, B.

⁹ *vel Taillage*] om. B.

¹⁰ *talage*, D.

¹¹ *taillagium*, Gale, *talliagium*, D.; and so below.

¹² *Danegeld*, A.

¹³ *ijj. denarios* after *terræ* in B.

¹⁴ *hundred*, A.; *hundredus*, C.D., Gale.

¹⁵ *quasi*, C.D.

¹⁶ The latter part of this chapter varies verbally, but is the same in substance in C.D.; a few very trivial variations of orthography in the MSS. are not noticed.

¹⁷ B. omits reference.

¹⁸ Transposed and altered in C.D.

¹⁹ *quidem*, add. C.D.

²⁰ *fuit Romanis*, B.

²¹ *quoque*] om. C.D.

²² Gale adds: *viz., a tempore Julii Cæsaris per cccclxx. annos ferme.*

²³ *tamen*, C. (not D.)

trespas. Scot, a gaderynge in work of baylifes. Flittwyte, amendes i-doo for chydyng. Leyrewite,¹ amendes for liggyng by a bond womman. Hydage, taylage of hydes of lond. Danegeld,² taylage i-zeue to þe Danes, þat was þre pans of eueriche³ bouata terræ, þat is, of eueriche oxeland. A wepentake and an hondred is al oon, for þe contray of an hondred townes were i-woned to ʒilde vppe wepene⁴ in þe comyng of þe lord. Lastage,⁵ custom i-chalanged in chepynges and in feyres. Stalage, custom for stondyng in stretes in feyre tyme.

TREVISA.

De regnis regnorumque limitibus. Capitulum quinquagesimum primum.

The kyngdom of Bretayne stood wipoute departyng hool and alle oon kyngdom to þe Britouns fram þe firste Bruyt anon to Iulius Cesar his tyme; [and fro Iulius Cesar his tyme]⁶ to Seuerus his tyme þis lond was vnder tribute to þe Romayns. Neuerpeles kynges þey hadde of þe same ilond. From Seuerus anon to þe laste⁷ prince Gratian, successoures of Bretouns faillede, and Romaynes reignede in Bretayne. [Afterward þe Romanys lefte of þe regnyng in Britayne],⁸

commenge for stryvenge. Leirwite, that is to say, amendes commenge for the corrupcion of a woman natife. Gultewite, an amendes for a transgression. Scot, that is the paymente of a certeyn money to the vtilite of the lorde. Hidage other talage, that is to say, tallage of the hides of the londe. Danegelde, a tallage ʒiffen to the Danes of iij^d. Wapentake and hundrede be the same as the precincte of an c. townes, whiche were wonte to yelde there weppens in the firste commenge of theire lorde. Lestage, that is a thyng required in feires. Stallage, an exaccion for stondenge in the hie weies in tyme of feires.

MS. HARL.
2261.

Of realmes and of the merkes of theyme. Capitulum f. 69. a. quinquagesimum primum.

The monarchy of the yle of Briteyne stode inconcussede from the firste Brute to Iulius Cesar; whiche yle paiede a tribute to the Romanes from the tyme of Iulius vn to the tyme of Seuerus; the succession of Britones faylunge Romanes reignede in hit. At the laste, the Romanes

¹ So a.; *Leyrwe*, MS.

² So a.; *Danagild*, MS.; *Danegheld*, Cx.

³ *euericha*, MS.

⁴ *towneswepene*, MS.

⁵ *Lestage*, a., Cx.

⁶ Added from Cx.

⁷ So a. and Cx.; *same*, MS.

⁸ Added from a. and Cx.

longitudinem seu propter inevitabiles aliunde occupationes¹ regnare desistentibus, Scoti² et Picti Britanniam, omni armato milite per abductionem Maximi tyranni³ vacuatam,⁴ diutius affixerunt; quousque Saxones a Britonibus invitati contra Pictos regem Hibernicum Gurmundum cum Pictis suis et⁵ ipsos Britones cum Caretico rege suo de Loegria expulsos usque ad⁶ Cambriam profugassent.⁷ Sicque Saxones⁹ victores effecti, prout quæque provincia potentior erat, reges proprios sibi¹⁰ constituentes, terram Angliæ¹¹ in septem regna¹² dividerunt; quæ tamen postmodum successive in unam monarchiam sub principe Adelstano¹³ coierunt.¹⁴ Dani tamen a diebus Adelwolffi,¹⁵ patris Aluredi, usque ad tempora Sancti¹⁶ Edwardi tertii per centum septuaginta circiter annos, terram hanc jugiter infestaverunt, sed¹⁷ per triginta annos in ea continue regnaverunt. Post Danos¹⁸ vero Sanctus Edwardus tertius viginti tribus¹⁹ annis et paulo plus,²⁰ et post eum Haroldus²¹ novem mensibus regnum tenuit. Post quos Normanni in ea usque hodie præ sederunt. Quod²² quamdiu tenebunt in posterum, novit ille qui nihil ignorat. *Ranulphus.*²³ De septem vero regnis prædictis eorumque limitibus quando incepe-

¹ *tandem*, add. C. (not D.)

² Here and elsewhere the MSS. vary between *Scoti* and *Scotti*.

³ *abductionem . . . tyranni*] Maximum tyrannum, C.D.

⁴ *evacuatam*, A.B.

⁵ *regem . . . et*] auxilio eorundem Pictorum regisque Gurmundi Hibernici, C.D.

⁶ *in*, B., Gale.

⁷ *Loegria . . . profugassent*] Northimbria et in mediterranea Anglia expulsos usque in Walliam detrusissent, C.D.

⁸ *Sique*, B.; *Sic*, Gale.

⁹ *Angli*, C.D.

¹⁰ *sibi*] om. B.C.D.

¹¹ *Angliam*, A.

¹² *successive*, ins. C.D.

¹³ *Athelstano*, B.

¹⁴ *postmodum . . . coierunt*] paulatim defecerunt donec rex Saxonum Adelstanus, cæteris particulis in unum contractis, unica gauderet monarchia, C.D.

¹⁵ *Athelwolffi*, Gale; *Ethelwolffi*, D.

¹⁶ *regis*, Gale.

¹⁷ *et*, add. C. (not D.)

¹⁸ *Post Danos*] postmodum, C.D.

¹⁹ 30, C.D.

²⁰ *et paulo plus*] om. C.D.

²¹ *Haraldus*, B.D.

²² *Quam*, C. (not D.)

²³ C.D. omit reference.

for it was fer from [Rome],¹ oþer for greet besynesse þat þey hadde in oþer side. Þanne Scottes and Pictes by mysledynge of Maximus þe tyraunt pursued Bretayne, and werred þerynne wiþ greet strengþe of men of armes longe tyme, for to þe Saxones come at þe prayenge of [þe]¹ Britouns aʒenst þe Pictes, and putte out Gurmund the Irische kyng wiþ his Pictes, and þe Britouns also wiþ here kyng, þat heet Carecticus,² and drof hem out of Engelond in to Wales. And so þe Saxons were victors, and eueriche prouince, as he was strengere, made hem kynges; and so þey deled Engelond in seuene kyngdoms.³ Neuerþeles afterward þese seuene kyngdoms eueriche after oþer come alle in to oon kyngdom al hool vnder þe prince Adelstone. Neuerþeles þe Danes pursewed þis lond from Athelwolf his tyme, þat was Alrudes⁴ fader, to the þridde Seint Edwardes⁵ tyme, aboute an hundred ʒere þre score and ten; but he reigned þerynne continualliche þritty ʒere. After þe Danes þe þridde Seynt Edward regned þere ynne þre and twenty ʒere and a litelwhat⁶ more. And after hym Harald helde þe kyngdom nyne monþes. And after hem Normans haueþ i-regned þerynne anon to þis tyme; but how longe they scholde holde he woot [þat]⁷ no þing vuknoweþ. **R.** Of þe forsaide kyngdoms seuene, of here merkes, meres, and

TREVISA.

levenge to reigne in hit, what for the longitude of trauaile and what for other ocupaciones ineuitable, Scottes and Pictes wastede that londe of Briteyne with a grete hoste, tulle that the Saxones beenge victores chasede the Pictes and Scottes in to Wales. And then euery prouince after theirre powere made to theyme kynges, diuidenge the grownde of Englonde in to vij. realmes, whiche come alle afterwarde by succession in to oon monarchye in the tyme of kynge Athelstan. The Danes trowblede that londe gretely from the tyme of Athelwulphus, fader to kynge Alurede, vn to the tymes of Seynte Edwarde the thrydde, by a c. lx. and x. yerēs, reignenge by xxx^{ti} yeres continually in hit. Seynte Edwarde the thrydde regnede after the Danes xxij^{ti} yere and more, and Haralde after hym by ix. monethes. After whom Normannes regnede in hit vn to oure tymes, God knowethe how longe that schalle continue. **R.** Of whiche vij. realmes aforeseide, and of the merkes of theyme,

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ Added from *a.* and *Cx.*² *Carecticus*, *Cx.*³ Sentence varied in *Cx.*⁴ *Alurudes*, *a.*⁵ *Edward his*, *a.*⁶ *what*] om. *Cx.*⁷ Added from *a.*; construction varied in *Cx.*, who has a few trivial alterations in some of the following sentences.

rint,¹ quantumve² duraverint³ aliqua breviter hic perstringam. *Alfridus*.⁴ Primum regnum fuit Cantuariorum, ab australi oceano usque ad flumen⁵ Thamisiæ protensum. In quo primus Hengistus⁶ sub anno Domini secundum Dionysium CCCCLV⁷ regnare cœpit, et duravit regnum illud per annos⁸ ccclxviii.⁹ sub regulis quindecim; donec, Baldredo¹⁰ expulso, Egbertus¹¹ rex Westsaxonum illud regnum suo annexerit imperio.¹² Secundum regnum fuit Southsaxoniam, habens ab oriente Cantiam,¹³ ab austro mare et¹⁴ Vectam insulam, ab occidente Hampteshire,¹⁵ ab aquilone Southreyam;¹⁶ in quo primus Elle, cum tribus filiis suis, tricesimo¹⁷ ab adventu Anglorum anno cœpit regnare. Quod quidem regnum cito post in aliorum jura¹⁸ transivit. Tertium regnum fuit Estsaxoniam, habens ab oriente mare,¹⁹ ab occidente pagum Londoniam, ab austro Thamisiam, ab aquilone Southfolk;²⁰ cujus loci²¹ reges a primo Sabberto²² usque ad tempora Dacorum per decem reges²³ fere sub²⁴ aliis regibus parebant; frequentius tamen et diutius regibus Merciorum²⁵ subjacebant; donec rex Westsaxonum Egbertus regnum illud suo annexerit imperio. Quartum

¹ *incepterunt*, B.D., Gale.

² *quantumque*, C.D.

³ *duraverunt*, B.D., Gale.

⁴ *Alfridus*] om. C.D.; *Alfredus*, B.

⁵ *finem*, B.

⁶ *primum Engistus*, B.

⁷ *lv.*, B. (error of scribe.)

⁸ *per annos*] om. E.

⁹ *ccclviii.*, Gale.

¹⁰ *Bladredo*, C. (not D.)

¹¹ *Eggeburtus*, B.

¹² *regno*, C.D.

¹³ *Ousiam*, B.

¹⁴ *ad*, D.

¹⁵ *Hamptunshire*, D.

¹⁶ *Southiam*, B.; *Southeram*, Gale.

¹⁷ *xxx.* after *Anglorum*, B.

¹⁸ So A.B.C.D.; *cito post* after *jura*, B.; *regna*, E.

¹⁹ *Gallicum mare*, Gale.

²⁰ *Sowtfolk*, B.

²¹ *loci*] om. C.D.

²² *Saberto*, A.B.C.D., Gale.

²³ *regulos*, C.D.

²⁴ *semper*, C.D.

²⁵ *Marceorum*, A.

bondes, whan þey bygonne and how longe þey durede here I schal somewhat schortliche telle. *Alfridus.* Þe firste kyngdom was þe kyngdom of Kent, þat strecchep from þe est ocean anon to þe ryuer of Temse. Þere reigned þe firste Hengistus, and bygan to reigne by Denys acountes þe 3ere of oure Lord foure hondred and fife and fifty. Þat kyngdom durede þre hondred 3ere þre score and ei3te vnder fiftene kynges, for to þat Baldred was i-putte out. And¹ Eggebert, kyng of Westsaxons, ioyned þat kyngdom to his owne. Þe secounde kyngdom was of Soupsaxon, þat hadde in þe est side Kent, in þe soup þe see and þe yle of Wi3t, in þe west Hampschire, and in þe norþ Souþeray. Þere Ella regnede first wiþ his þre sones, and bygan to reigne þe 3ere after þe comynge of Angles euen þritty; but þat kyngdom wipynne a schort tyme passede into opere kyngdoms. Þe þridde kyngdom was of Estsaxon, and hadde in þe est side þe see, and in þe west þe contray of Londoun, in þe soup Temse, in þe north Sopfolk. Þe kynges of this contray Estsaxon from þe firste Sabertes tyme anon to þe tyme of Danes, ten kynges, were somdel sugette to opere kynges; nopeles oft-este and lengeste þey were vnder þe kynges of Mercia forto þat tyme whan Egebert kyng, kyng of Wessaxoun, ioyned

TREVISA.

when thei began, and how longe thei haue indurede, y schalle towche in parte. *Alfridus.* The firste realme was of men of Cawnturbery, protendede from the sowthe ocean vn to the floode of Thamys, in whom Hengiste roignede firste in the yere of oure Lorde God, after Dionysius, cccc. lv. yere, and that realme durede by ccc. lxxiij. yere vnder xv. lytelle kynges, vntil, Baldredus² expulsede, Egbertus kyng of Westesaxones added that realme to his impire. The secunde realme was of Sowthesex, hauenge on the este to hit Kente, of the sowthe the see and the yle of Wi3hte, at the weste Hampteschire, at the northe Southercy, in whom Elle with his thre childer began to reigne firste in the xxxⁱⁱ yere from the commenge of Englische men, whiche realme wente soone after in to other realmes. The thrydde realme was of Estesex, hauenge on the este to hit the see of Fraunce, on the weste the cite of London, on the sowthe Thamys, on the northe to hit, Southefolke. The kynges of whiche place from the firste Seberte vn to the tyme of Danes, by x. kynges, were obediente to other kynges, moste specially to the kynges of þe Marches, vn til that Egberte, kyng of Westesaxones, subduede hit to his impyre.

MS. HARL.
2261.

The f. 69 b.

¹ And] So a. and Cx. ; of, MS. | ² Haldredus, Harl. MS.

regnum fuit Estanglorum, comprehendens¹ Northfolk et Southfolk, habens² ad orientem et aquilonem mare,³ ad circium⁴ Cantebruggeshire,⁵ ad occidentem Fossam Sancti Edmundi et Hertefordshire,⁶ ad austrum Essex.⁷ Et duravit⁸ hoc regnum sub duodecim regulis donec, occiso rege Edmundo, Dani utrumque regnum Estangliæ⁹ et Estsaxonum sibi usurparent.¹⁰ Quibus postmodum¹¹ Danis¹² aut fugatis¹³ aut subactis, rex Edwardus senior ambo illa regna suo annexuit¹⁴ imperio. Quintum regnum fuit Westsaxonum, omnium regnorum durabilius, habens ab oriente Southsaxoniam, ab aquilone Thamisiæ,¹⁵ ab austro et occidente¹⁶ oceanum. In quo cœpit regnare Cerdicus¹⁷ cum filio suo¹⁸ Kynrico,¹⁹ anno Domini secundum Dionysium DXIX^o, ab adventu²⁰ Anglorum lxxj^o.; in quod²¹ regnum cætera²² regna transierunt.²³ Sextum regnum fuit Merciorum cæteris regnis²⁴ magis spatiosum, cujus limites fuerunt ad occasum flumen²⁵ Dee, juxta Cestriam,²⁶ et flumen Sabrinæ juxta Salopiam usque²⁷ Bristolliam; ad ortum vero²⁸ mare orientale;²⁹ ad

¹ *continens*, C.D.; *apprehendens*, B.

² *habensque*, C.D.

³ *mare*] oceanum, C.D.

⁴ *circuitum*, Gale.

⁵ *Cantbrigschire*, B.

⁶ *Herthfordschire*, B.

⁷ *Estsex*, B.; *Estsaxoniam*, C.D.

⁸ *cucurritque*, C.; *curritque*, D.

⁹ *Est Anglorum*, Gale, C.D.; *Est Angl̄*, A.B.

¹⁰ *usurparunt*, C.D.

¹¹ *tamen*, C.D.

¹² *Danis postmodum*, B.

¹³ *aut fugatis*] *affugatis*, B.

¹⁴ *subjunxit*, C.; *adjunxit*, D.; *annexit*, B.

¹⁵ *flumen Thamisiæ*, C.D.

¹⁶ *mare oceanum*, C.D. After *oceanum* Gale adds, *viz., usque ad ultimum finem Cornubiæ.*

¹⁷ *Cordicus*, Gale.

¹⁸ *quo . . . suo*] om. B.

¹⁹ *Henrico*, C. (not D.)

²⁰ *vero*, add. C.D.

²¹ *quod quidem*, D.

²² *certa*, B.

²³ *paulative* (sic) *coierunt*, C.D. (with other slight variations.)

²⁴ *regnis*] om. C.D.

²⁵ *flumen*] om. C.D.

²⁶ *Legecestriam*, C.D.

²⁷ *usque ad*, A.

²⁸ *vero*] om. C.D.

²⁹ *occidentale*, C. (not D.).

þat kyngdom to his owne. Þe fourþe kyngdom was of TREVISA.
 Est Angles, and conteynede Norpfolk and Soupfolk, and
 hap¹ in þe est side² and in þe norþ þe see, in þe norþ-
 west Cantbriggeschire,³ in þe west Seynt Edmond his diche,
 and Hertfordschire, and in þe souþ Essex. Þis kyngdom
 durede vnder twelue kynges,⁴ forto that tyme whan kyng
 Edmond was i-slawe, and þe Danes wrongfulliche took boþe
 the kyngdoms of Est Angles and of Est Saxon. After-
 ward þe Danes were i-putte and i-dryue away, oper i-made
 sogett. And þe elder kyng Edward ioynede boþe þese kyng-
 doms to his owne. Þe fifte kyngdom was of Westsaxon,
 and durede lengeste of alle þese kyngdoms, and hadde in þe
 est⁵ side Soupsaxon, in þe norþ Temse, in þe souþ and west
 þe see of ocean. In þat kyngdom reigned Cerdik wip his
 sone Kenrik, and bygan to regne þe 3ere of oure Lord fife
 hondred and nyntene, and after þe comynge of Angles þre
 score 3ere and enleuene,⁶ so seip Denys. Þe opere kyngdoms
 passede into þis kyngdom. Þe sixte kyngdom was of
 Mercia, and was grettest of al. Þe merkes and þe meres
 perof were in þe west side þe ryuer Dee faste by Chestre,
 and Seuarne faste by Schroisbury⁷ and anon to Brestowe ; in

The iijth realme was of Este Englische men, comprehend- MS. HARL.
 enge Northefolke and Southefolke, hauenge at the este to 2261.
 hit and on the northe the see, at the weste the dyche of
 Seynte Edmunde and Hertefordschire, at the sowthe
 Estesex ; and this realme durede vnder xij. kynges, vn tyl
 Seynte Edmunde sleyne, the Danes vsurpede the realme
 of Estengloude, and also of Estesex ; whom kyng Ed-
 warde the senior put to his realme, the Danes other put
 to fli3hte other subacte. The vth realme was of Weste-
 saxones, moste durable of alle realmes, hauenge on the este
 to hit Sowthesex, on the northe Thamys, on the sowthe
 and weste the ocean. In whom Cerdicus began to reigne
 with Kymricus his son, after Dionysius, the yere of oure
 Lorde God v^c. xix. yere, from the commenge of Englische
 men lxxj. yere. In to whom oper realmes wente. The
 sexte realme was of the Marches, more large then other
 realmes. The merkes of whom were, at the weste, the
 floode of Dee nye to Chestre, and the floode of Seuerne
 nye to Shrewesbury vn to Bristowe, at the este the

¹ *had, a.*

² *So a. ; in west side, MS. (w
 being erased.)*

³ *Cambrygeshire, Cx.*

⁴ *So Cx. ; kyngdoms, MS.*

⁵ *So Cx. ; west, MS. (first hand).*

⁶ *eleaene, a.*

⁷ *Schrouesbury, a.*

austrum flumen Thamisiæ usque Londoniam; ab aquilone¹ flumen Humbræ, descendendo occidentaliter² usque ad flumen Merse,³ quousque juxta⁴ cornu Wyralliæ⁵ descendat in mare occidentale. In hoc pago regnavit⁶ primo Penda, filius Wybbæ,⁷ anno Domini secundum Dionysium DCXXVI^o, ab adventu Anglorum clxxv^o,⁸ stetitque hoc regnum sub regibus xvij. per annos circiter cclxij. usque ad ultimum Colwulfum;⁹ cui Dani, expulso Burdredo rege, regnum illud¹⁰ tradiderant custodiendum. Verum¹¹ rex Westsaxonum Edwardus senior, expulsis Danis, regnum Merciorum suo annexuit imperio. Erat tamen hoc regnum in sui primordio in tres partes divisum; scilicet in Occidentales Mercios, in¹² Mediterraneos, et in¹³ Orientales Mercios. Septimum regnum fuit Northimbrorum;¹⁴ cujus limites fuerunt ab ortu et occasu oceanus; ab austro flumen Humbræ,¹⁵ descendendo versus occidentem,¹⁶ per fines comitatum Nothingham¹⁷ et Derbeie¹⁸ usque ad flumen de¹⁹ Mersee; ab²⁰

¹ *ad aquilonem vero*, C.D.

² *descendendo occidentaliter*] om. C.D.

³ *Mersee*, B., Gale.

⁴ *quousque ad*, B.; *juxta*, om. C.D.

⁵ *Wiralliæ*, A.B.D.; *Wirhalliæ*, Gale.

⁶ *regnavit*] *regnare cepit*, C.D.

⁷ *Wible*, A.B.D.

⁸ 185, B.

⁹ *Colwulfum*, A.; *Colwulfum*, D.; *Colwulfum*, Gale.

¹⁰ *illud*] om. C.D.; *illum*, A.

¹¹ *Iterum*, C.

¹² *in*] om. B.C.

¹³ *in*] om. C.D.

¹⁴ *Northamhimbriorum*, B.

¹⁵ *Humbræ*, B.

¹⁶ *versus occidentem*] om. A.

¹⁷ *Notyngham*, B.

¹⁸ *Derbeie*, B.; *Derbi*, A.; *Derbie*,

D.

¹⁹ *de*] om. C.D.

²⁰ *ad*, D.

þe est þe est see, in þe souþ Temse anon to Londoun; in þe norþ þe ryuer of¹ Humber. And so westward and downward anon to þe ryuer Mersee anon to þe² corner³ of Wyreale; ⁴ þere Humber falleþ in to þe west see. Penda, Wibbes sone, regned first in þis kyngdom þe 3ere of oure Lorde sexe hondred and sixe and twenty, so seiþ Denys, and from þe comynge of Angles an hondred 3ere þre score and fiftene. Þis kyngdom durede vnder ei3tene kynges aboute a two hondred 3ere, þre score and fiftene,⁵ anon to þe laste Colwulf; [to þe whiche Colwulf]⁶ þe Danes bytook þat kyngdom to kepe, whan Burdred þe kyng was i-putte out. But⁷ þe elder Edward þe kyng putte out Danes and ioynede þe kyngdom⁸ of Mercia to his owne kyngdom; nopeles at þe bygynnyng þis⁹ kyngdom of Mercia was i-deled apre, in West Mercia, in Myddel Mercia, and Est Mercia. Þe seuene kyngdom was Norþhamhymbrorum, þat is, þe kyngdom of Norþhumberlond. Þe meres and þe¹⁰ merkes þerof¹¹ were by west and by est þe see of ocean, by souþ þe ryuer of Humber, and so downward toward þe west by þe endes of þe schires of Notyngham and of Derby

TREVISA.

este¹² see, at the sowthe the floode of Thamys vn to London, on the northe the water of Humbre, goenge after the weste vn to the water of Mercie vn to the ende of Wirhalle, where hit descendethe in to the Weste see. Penda, the son of Wibbe, reignede firste in those costes, after Dionysius, in the yere off oure Lorde vj^c. xvj., and from the commenge of Engliche men a c. yere lxxv., whiche realme contynuede vnder xvij. kynges abowte ij^c. yere lx. and ij., vn to the laste Colwulphus; whiche expulsede, the Danes made Burdredus kyng of hit. That realme was diuidede in to thre partes in the firste begynnyng, that is to say, in to the Weste Marches, in to the Myddelle Marches, and in to the Este Marches. The vijthe realme was of Northumbrelonde, the merkes of whom were, on the este and on the weste, the ocean; on the sowthe, the water of Humbre; descendenge towarde the weste by the costes of the schires of Notyngham and of Derby vn to the water

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ of] om. a. and Cx.² þe] om. a.³ So Cx.; ryuer, MS.⁴ Wirhal, Cx.⁵ about two clriij., Cx.⁶ Added from a. and Cx.⁷ So a. and Cx.; by, MS.⁸ MS. (not a. or Cx.) adds to kepe.⁹ þis] MS. (not a. or Cx.)¹⁰ þe] om. a.¹¹ So a. and Cx.; of þe, MS.¹² weste, Harl. MS.

aquilone autem¹ mare Scoticum, quod Scotice dicitur Forth, Britannice Werid,² Anglice Scottisshsee.³ Hoc autem regnum Northimbrorum⁴ primitus⁵ divisum fuit in duas provincias; in Deiram⁶ ad austrum, et in⁷ Berniciam ad aquilonem; quæ duo regna flumen⁸ Tyne⁹ tunc temporis diviserat.¹⁰ Nam regnum Deiorum a fluvio¹¹ Humbriæ usque ad flumen Tyne¹² extendebatur; regnum vero Berniciorum a flumine Tyne usque ad mare Scoticum prædictum¹³ porrigebatur, etiam quando Picti ibidem morabantur, sicut patet¹⁴ per Bedam, libro tertio, capitulo secundo,¹⁵ ubi dicit quod¹⁶ Ninian¹⁷ vir sanctus convertit australes.¹⁸ In Bernicia cœpit primus¹⁹ regnare Ida, anno gratiæ,²⁰ secundum Dionysium, DXLVII^o. In Deira vero²¹ rex Elle, anno gratiæ²² DXLIX^o. Quæ²³ duo regna sub duobus regibus, ut præmittitur, interdum divisa quandoque sub uno rege redintegrata cucurrerunt²⁴ sub Anglis regibus²⁵ quasi²⁶ viginti per annos cccxxj. Demum,²⁷ Osbricto²⁸ et Elle²⁹ nono anno regni sui per

¹ *vero*, C.D.; the latter has *ad aquilonem*.

² *Werith*, C.D.

³ *Scotischsee*, A.B.; *Scottisse*, D.; *sicut Scotice*, C.

⁴ *Northanhimbrorum*, B.; om. D

⁵ *Northimbrorum primitus*] primo, C. (not D., but omits *North*.)

⁶ *in Deiram*] *Deiram scilicet*, C.D.

⁷ *in*] om. C.D.

⁸ *flumen*] om. C. (not D.)

⁹ *Tine*, A.

¹⁰ *dividebat*, C.D.

¹¹ *flumine*, B.

¹² *Tine*, A.

¹³ *prædictum*] ubi nunc est villa Sancti Johannis, C.D.

¹⁴ *etiam...patet*] C.D. thus: Quod autem austrina pars Albanæ, quæ est infra Twedam et mare Scoticum prædictum, continens Galwediam

et Lodoveiam, tunc pertinuit ad regnum Berniciorum et Pictis ibidem commorantibus patet, &c.

¹⁵ *primo*, C.D. The true reference is to lib. iii. c. 4.

¹⁶ *ubi dicit quod*] primo; sic scribentem, C.D.

¹⁷ *Ninianus*, A.

¹⁸ *Pictos*, &c., ins. C.D.; *australes*, &c., A., Gale.

¹⁹ *primo*, A.; *primum*, Gale.

²⁰ *gratiæ*] om. B.

²¹ *vero*] om. C.D.

²² *gratiæ*] om. B.

²³ *Hæc*, C.D.

²⁴ *concurrerent*, B.

²⁵ *regibus Anglis*, B.

²⁶ *circiter*, C.D.

²⁷ *Dehinc*, C.D.

²⁸ *Esbricto*, B.

²⁹ So A.D., Gale; *Ello*, E.

anon to þe ryuere of Merce,¹ and by norþe þe Scottische see, þat hatte Forþe in Scotishe, Wered² in Brittishe, þe Scottische see in Engelische. Þis kyngdom of Norphumberlond was first i-deled in tweie prouinces; þat oon was þe souþside, and hete Deira; and þat oþer was þe norþside, and hete Brenicia, as it were tweyne kyngdoms. And þe ryuer Tyne departed þese tweyne kyngdoms þat tyme. For þe kyngdom of Deyra tillede³ and streiþte from þe ryuer of Humber anon to þe ryuere of Tyne. Þe kyngdom of Brenicia tillede from Tyne⁴ to þe Scottische see. And whan Pictes wonede þerynne, as Beda seiþ, libro tertio, capitulo secundo, þat Ninian, þat holy man, conuertede men of þe souþside. Ida þe kyng reigned [þere first and began to reigne]⁵ þe [z]ere⁶ of oure Lord fyue hondred and seuen and fourty, so seiþ Dyones.⁷ In Deyra reignede kyng⁸ Elle, þe zere of oure Lord fyue hondred and nyne and fourty. Þese tweie kyngdoms were oþer while, as hit is i-seide, y-deled bytwene tweye kynges, and somtym al hool vnder oo kyng, and durede as it were vnder twenty Englische kynges pre hondred ze[re]⁹ and oon and twenty. At þe laste Osbrutus and Elle were i-slawe in þe nynþe zere of here

TREVISA.

of Mersee; of the northe, the Scottes see, callede by the langage of theyme Forth, in Briteyne langage Werid, in Englische Scothisse. That realme of Northehumbrelonde was diuidede at the firste tyme in to ij. prouinces, in to Deira at the sowthe, and in to Bernicia at the northe; whiche ij. realmes the water of Tyne diuidede in that tyme. For that realme callede Deira was extendede from the floode of Humber vn to the water of Tyne. That other parte callede Bernicia was extendede from the water of Tyne to the Scottes see when the Pictes dwellede there, as hit is schewed by Bede, libro tertio, capitulo secundo, where he seithe that Ninian the holy man conuertede the sowtherne Pictes. Hida began to reigne firste in Bernicia, after Dionysius, the yere of grace v^c xlviijth; and kynge Elle began to reigne in Deira, after Dionysius, in the yere of grace v^c xlix.; whiche realmes continuede otherwhile vnder oon kynge, otherwhile vnder tweyne, as vnder xxth kynges as by ccc. yere xxjth. At the laste, Osbrutus and Elle sleyne

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *Mersee, a., Cx.*² *Weryd, a.; Werid, Cx.*³ *and tillede, MS. Sentence varied in Cx.*⁴ *So a. and Cx.; Tyme, MS.*⁵ *Added from a. and Cx.*⁶ *zere, a.*⁷ *Dionys, a.*⁸ *þe kyng, a., Cx.*⁹ *zere, a.*

Danos occisis, Northumbria¹ vacavit sine rege octo annis. Extunc² Dani regnaverunt in ea triginta sex³ annis, usque ad monarchiam regis Adelstani,⁴ qui sub anno Domini DCCCXXVII^o, subactis Danis, Wallanis⁵ et Scotis⁶ regibus, solus et primus⁷ monarchiam Angliæ tenuit. Quod autem fluvius⁸ de Mersee fuerat⁹ aliquotiens¹⁰ terminus et limes Merciorum et Northimbrorum¹¹ patet dupliciter;¹² primo per significationem¹³ vocabuli, nam¹⁴ Mersee¹⁵ Anglice sonat terminans mare, quia¹⁶ disternabat unum regnum ab alio.¹⁷ Item in chronicis Henrici¹⁸ et Alfridi habetur, quod rex Edwardus senior firmavit castrum apud Mamcestre in terra¹⁹ Northimbrorum;²⁰ sed constat quod urbs Mamcestre²¹ vix distat tribus miliaribus a fluvio²² de Mersee.²³

¹ terra, C.D.

² Et tunc, Gale.

³ septem, B.

⁴ Athelstani, B.; Ethelstani, D.

⁵ Wallis, Gale.

⁶ Danis . . . Scotis] Scotorum et Wallanorum, C.D.

⁷ omnium, add. C.D. (with slight variations.)

⁸ a fluvio, B.

⁹ fuit, Gale.

¹⁰ fuerat aliquotiens] fuit, C.D.

¹¹ Northanhumborum, B.

¹² dupliciter] om. D.

¹³ interpretationem, C.D.

¹⁴ nam] om. C.D.

¹⁵ Mersee, B.

¹⁶ quod, E.

¹⁷ quia . . . alio] Latine, C.D.

¹⁸ Henrici de Huntyngdon, C.D.; Henre et Alfre, A.

¹⁹ in terra] om. B.

²⁰ Northanhumborum, B.

²¹ Mamcestria, B., Gale; Mamcestre, D.

²² flumine, A.B.

²³ The latter part of the sentence slightly altered in C.D., which add *cujus castri vestigia adhuc exstant.*

kyngdom; þe Danes slowh hem; and Norphumberlonde was voyde wipoute kyng eiȝte ȝere. Þanne afterward þe Danes reigned in Norphumberlond sixe and þritty ȝere anoon to þe oonyng¹ of þe kyngdome of Athelstone; he made sugett þe² kynges Danys and Scottische and Walsche, and regned first al on in Engelond, and helde þe kyngdom of Engelond hool and al oon kyngdom. Þat was þe ȝere of oure Lorde eyȝte hondred and seuene and twenty. Þat ryuer of Mercie³ was somtyme þe marke and mere bytwene þe kyngdom of Mercia and þe kyngdom of Norphumberlond. Þat may be i-schewed in tweie maneres; first by þe propurte of þis word Mersee, þat is as moche to mene, as a se⁴ þat is a bound and a mere; for he departeþ oon kyngdom from anoper. Also it is i-write in cronikes of Henry and of Alfrede, þat kyng Edward þe Eldere fastened a castel at Mamcestre⁵ in Norphumberlond; but þat citee Mamcestre is from þe ryuer of Mersee scarsliche pre myle.

TREVISA.

by Danes in the ixth year of their reigne, Northumbrelonde was vacante of a kyng viijth yeres. And from that tyme the Danes reignede in hit xxxvith yeres, vn to the monarchy off kyng Athelstan, whiche obteynede the monarchy of all Englonde in the yere of oure Lorde viijth xxvij., subduenge the kynges of Danes, of Wales, and of Scottes. That the water of Mersee was somme tyme the terme other the merke of the marches of Northumbrelonde, hit may be schewede by ij. maneres; firste by the signification of the name, for Mersee in Englische sowndethe as a see terminatiue, for hit disterminate oon realme from an other. Also hit is hade in the cronicles of Henricus and Alfride, that kyng Edwarde the senior sette the castelle at Mamcestre in the londe of Northumbrelonde, whiche cite is from the water of Mersee but by ij. myles.

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *to onyng*, a.² So a. and Cx.; *to þe*, MS.³ *Merse*, a.⁴ *ase*, a.; *a see*, Cx.; *asse*, MS.⁵ *Mauncestre*, Cx.

CAP. LII.

De episcopatibus et sedibus.

Alfridus.¹ Sedes archiepiscoporum in Britannia² tres fuerunt tempore Lucii, regis Britonum Christiani primi; videlicet apud Londoniam; apud³ Eboracum; apud Caerusc, Urbem Legionum in Glamorgantia;⁴ quibus tunc subjecti fuerant⁵ xxvii. episcopi, flamines tunc vocati; videlicet Londoniensi metropolitano Cornubia et tota Loegria usque ad flumen Humberæ; Eboracensi vero tota terra Northimbrana ab arcu Humberæ fluminis cum tota⁶ Albania; Urbi Legionum subjacuit tota Cambria, septem tunc episcopis, nunc vero⁷ quatuor suffraganeis insignita, quam flumen Sabrinæ tunc⁸ secernebat a Loegria. *Willelmus de Pontificibus*,⁹ libro primo. Sed temporibus¹⁰ Saxonum,¹¹ quamvis¹² beatus Gregorius privilegium archiepiscopale Londoniæ¹³ concesserit,¹⁴ Augustinus tamen ab eo missus,¹⁵ sedulitate hospitis sui regis

<p>¹ <i>Alfridus</i>] om. B. ² <i>in Britannica</i> after <i>fuerunt</i> in B. ³ <i>apud</i>] om. B. ⁴ Sentence altered and transposed in C.D. ⁵ <i>erant</i>, C.D. ⁶ <i>reliqua parte Albania</i>, C.D. (with other slighter variations.) ⁷ <i>autem</i>, C.; an erasure in D.</p>	<p>⁸ <i>tunc</i>] om. C.D. ⁹ <i>de Pontificibus</i>] om. C.D. ¹⁰ <i>tempore</i>, C.D. ¹¹ <i>temporibus Saxonum</i>] om. B. ¹² <i>licet</i>, C.D. ¹³ <i>Londonio</i>, Gale. ¹⁴ <i>concesserat</i>, C.D. ¹⁵ <i>ab eo missus</i>] om. C.D.</p>
--	--

De episcopatibus et sedibus. Capitulum quinquagesimum TREVISA.
secundum.

Alfridus. Lucius was þe first Cristene kyng of Britons.¹ In his tyme were þre archebisshoppes sees in Bretayne; oon was at Londoun; anoper at York; and þe þridde at Caerusk,² þe Cite of Legiouns in Glomorgan.³ Þat citee hadde now Caerleon. To þese þre archebisshoppes sees were suget eyzte and twenti bisshoppis, and were i-cleped flamynes. To þe archebisshoppes see of Londoun was sugett Cornwaile and al myddel Engeland anon to Humber; to York al Norþhumberlond from þe bowe of Humber wip all Scotlond; to Caerleon all Wales. Þere were in Wales seuene bisshoppes, and now beep but foure. Þo Seuarne departe⁴ Engeland and Wales. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro primo.*⁵ But in Saxones tyme, þey Seint Gregorie hadde i-graunted Londoun þe priuilege of þe archebisshoppes see, neuerþeles Seynt Austyn þat was i-sent in to Engeland by Seint Gregorie tordned þe archebisshoppes see out of Londoun vnto⁶ Caunterbury, after Seint Gregories day

*Of the byschoperyches and seetes. Capitulum quinquagesimum secundum.*MS. HARL.
2261.

Alfridus. There were thre seetes of archebyschoppes in Englonde in the tyme of Lucius, kyng of Briteyne, firste kyng y-baptizede, that is to say, at London, at Yorke, and at Caerhurr,⁷ the Cite of Legiones in Glomorgan; to whom xxviiij^u bischoppes were subiecte, callede flamines. And to the metropolitan of London alle the cuntre of Cornewaile and alle Englonde was subiecte vn to the floode of Humbre. Alle Northumbrelonde, from the water of Humbre, with alle Scottelande, was subiecte to tharchebisshop of Yorke; and alle Wales was subiecte to the byschoppe of the Cite of Legiones, where that tyme were vij. bischoppes, and now Wales is made nowble with iiij. suffraganes, whom the floode of Seuarne dividede that tyme from Englonde. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro primo.* But thawþe blessedde Gregory grawntede thro his priuilege the seete of tharchebisshoppe to be at London; neuertheles Seynte Austyn, sende from hym in to Englonde, after the dethe of Blessede Gregory caused tharchebisshoppe seete to be removede from London to Canterbery, thro helpe of

¹ the first kyng cristend of the Brytons, Cx.; who has a few other trivial alterations below.

² Caerusk, a.

³ Glamorgan, a., Cx.

⁴ departed, Cx.

⁵ Added from a.

⁶ into, a.

⁷ Doubtless an error for Caerhusc.

Ethelberti, civiumque Cantuariensium caritate captus, metropolitanam¹ sedem² post mortem Gregorii ad Cantuariam transtulit, ubi usque hodie permansit; nisi quod medio tempore Offa rex Merciorum, Cantuaritis³ infensus,⁴ honorem primatus ab eis tulit, et Lichefeldensem episcopum Aldulphum, annuente Adriano papa muneribus fortassis inclinato, archiepiscopali pallio pro tempore suo insignivit.⁵ Quod tamen⁶ sub Kenulpho rege restitutum est.⁷ Eboracensis honor⁸ ab initio usque hodie ibidem duravit, quamvis Albania processu temporis ab ejus subjectione se subtraxerit.⁹ *Giraldus, in*¹⁰ *Itinerario, libro secundo.*¹¹ Ab Urbe autem Legionum usque ad Meneviam, quæ est ad occidentem Demetiæ supra Hibernicum¹² mare sita, translata est sedes metropolitana, tempore¹³ Sancti David sub¹⁴ Arthuro rege; a cujus tempore usque ad Sampsonem archiepiscopum, sederunt xxiiij. archiepiscopi. Tandem ingruente per Cambriam flava peste, quam ictericiam vocant, Sampson episcopus¹⁵

¹ *metropolitanatum*, B.

² *sedem*] om. B.; *tamen*, A.

³ *Cantuar̃*, B.

⁴ *infestus*, C.D.; *offensus*, B.

⁵ So A.B.D.; *insignit*, E.; *decoravit*, Gale.

⁶ *tandem*, C.D.

⁷ *Cantuarie*, add. C.D.

⁸ *vero honor*, D.

⁹ *subtraxit*, Gale.

¹⁰ *in*] Added from B. and Gale. The reference is to lib. ii. c. 1. Trevisa's reference is incorrect.

¹¹ C.D. omit reference, and *autem*.

¹² *Hibernie*, C.D.

¹³ *sub tempore*, A.

¹⁴ *ab*, D.

¹⁵ *archiepiscopus*, C. (not D.)

at þe prayer of kyng Athelberd and þe¹ citezeins and burgeys² of Caunterbury. Þere þe archebisshoppes see hap endured³ forto⁴ now. Saue þat in þe mene tyme Offa, kyng of Mercia, was wroop wip men of Caunterbury, and byname hem þat worschippe, and worschipped Aldulf, bisshop of Lichefeld, wip þe archebisshoppes pal by assent of Adrian þe pope vpon caas by ʒiftes i-sent. Neuerþeles vnder Kenulph þe kyng it was restored to Caunterbury aʒen. Þe worschippe of þe see of ʒork hap i-dured þere alwey and dureth ʒit; þey Scotlond be wipdrawe from his subiection⁵ by passynge of tyme. *Giraldus in Itin., libro primo.* Þe archebisshoppis see was i-torned out of Caerleoun in to Meneuia, þat is in þe west side of Demecia, vpon þe Irische see, in Seint Dauyes⁶ tyme vnder kyng Arthur.⁷ From⁸ Seint Dauyes⁶ tyme to Sampson þe archebisshoppes tyme were in Meneuia archebisshoppis þre and twenty. Afterward fel a pestilence in to al Wales of þe ʒelowe yuel⁹ þat is i-cleped þe iaundys, and þan Sampson þe archebisshop took wip hym þe palle, and wente

TREVISA.

kyng Etheberte and of the citesynnes of Caunterbury, where hit remanethe to this tyme presente. But that a certeyn season folowenge, kyng Offa, contrarius to men of Caunterbury, removede the honor of the primate from theym, thro the priuilege graunted by Adrian the pope, vn to the chirche of Lichefelde, as for his tyme; whiche honor was restorede ageyne in the tyme of kyng Kenulphus. The honor of the chirche off Yorke hathe contynuede there from the begynnenge of hit vn to this tyme presente; thauʒhe Scottelonde withdrawede hit from the subieccion of hit in processe of tyme. *Giraldus in Itinerario, libro secundo.* The seete of the metropolitan was translate from the Cite of Legionis vn to Meneuia, at the weste of Sowthe Wales, sette on the see of Yrlonde, in the tyme of Seynte Dauid, vnder kynge Arthure; from the tyme of whom vn to the tyme of Sampson the bischop xiiijth archebisshoppes were þer. At the laste an infirmitie reignenge in Wales, whiche was callede the iawndres, Sampson the bischoppe, takege with hym the palle, wente

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ þe] om. a., Cx.² burgesyes, Cx.³ i-dured, a.; dured, Cx.⁴ vnto, Cx.⁵ So Cx; suggestioun, MS.⁶ Dauids, Cx. (twice).⁷ MS. (not Cx.) adds by a clerical error (see below), *Meneuia now hatte*, and no more.⁸ So a. and Cx.; form, MS.⁹ evel, a.

sumpto secum¹ pallio Armoricam Britanniam adiit, ac sedi² Dolensi præsedit; a quo tempore³ usque ad dies⁴ Henrici primi Angliæ⁵ regis sederunt apud Meneviam, quæ Sancti David dicitur, xxi. episcopi vel propter ignaviam vel propter⁶ paupertatem pallio carentes; semper tamen usque tunc episcopi Walliæ a Menevensi fuerunt consecrati, et ipse similiter ab aliis Walliæ episcopis tanquam a suffraganeis fuerat consecratus, nulla penitus⁷ alteri ecclesiæ facta professione vel subjectione. Cæteri vero succedentes episcopi, regio urgente mandato, Cantuariæ consecrationem accipiunt;⁸ in cujus investituræ et subjectionis signum Bonifacius archiepiscopus⁹ Cantuariensis, tempore Henrici secundi¹⁰ crucis legatione fungens, in singulis ecclesiis cathedralibus Cambriæ primus omnium Cantuariensium archiepiscoporum¹¹ missam solemniter celebravit. *Ranulphus*.¹² Sed¹³ hodie in tota Anglia solummodo duo sunt primates Cantuariensis et Eboracensis; Cantuariensi¹⁴ tredecim in Anglia et quatuor in Wallia episcopi sunt subjecti; Eboracensis vero duos duntaxat habet¹⁵ suffraganeos,

¹ *secum*] om. C.D.

² *sede*, C.D.

³ *tempore*] om. A.

⁴ *tempora*, C.D.

⁵ *Anglorum*, C.D.

⁶ *ignaviam vel propter*] om. C.D.

⁷ *nulla penitus*] om. C. (not D.)

⁸ *suscipiunt*, C.D.; *recipiunt*, A.B., Gale.

⁹ *archiepiscopus*] om. C.D.

¹⁰ *sanctæ*, add. A.

¹¹ *episcoporum*, C.D.

¹² *Ranulphus*] om. B.D.

¹³ *Sed*] Ita igitur, C.D.

¹⁴ *Cantuariensi*] om. C. (not D.)

¹⁵ *habet hodie*, C.D.; E. omits *habet*.

in to Bretayne Armorica,¹ þe oper Bretayne, and was bisshop of Dolensis. From þat tyme to þe firste kyng Henries tyme kyng of Engelond were at Meneuia, þat hatte Seint Daues, oon and twenty bisshoppes alle wip oute palle, wheþer it were for vnkunynge oper for pouert. Neuerþeles² alwey forto þat tyme þe bisshoppes of Wales were i-sacred of þe bisshop of Meneuia of Seint Daues; and þe bisshop of Meneuia was i-sacred of þe bisshoppes of Wales³ as of his owne suffragans,⁴ and made non professioun noþer subiection⁵ to non oper chirche. Oper bisshoppes þat come afterward were i-sacred at Caunterbury by compellynge of þe kynges heste. In tokenynge⁶ of þat sacrynge and subiection Bonefas, archebisshop of Caunterbury, þat was legat of þe croys, song in euery cathedral cherche of Wales, solempneliche a masse. He was þe firste archebisshop of Caunterbury þat so dede in Wales, and þat was i-do in þe secounde kyng Henries tyme. R. But now beþ but tweie primates in al Engelond, of Caunterbury, and of Z ork. To þat⁷ primat of Caunterbury beþ sugette þrittene bisshoppes in Engelond, and foure in Wales. Þe primat of Z ork hap but tweie suffragans in

TREVISA.

to Briteyne Armorike, from whiche tyme vn to the daies of kyng Henry the first, kyng of Englonde of that name, xxjth bischoppes kepede residence at Meneuia, wontenge a palle, other for slawethe, other for pouerte. Neuertheles vn to that tyme the byschope of Wales were wonte to be consecrate of the bisshop of Meneuia, whiche is callede Seynte David, and that bisshop of other suffraganes of Wales, noo profession other subieccion made to eny other chirche. But other bischoppes succedenge receyvede consecracion of the bisshop of Canterbury, thro the commaundemente of the kyng. In the inuestiture of whom, in a signe of subieccion, Bonefacius, archebisshop of Canterbury, in the tyme of kyng Henrye secunde, firste of alle byschoppes of Caunterbery songe masse solenly in euery cathedrale chirche of Wales. R. But now in this tyme there be only ij. primates in Englonde, whiche be of Caunterbery and of Yorke. Caunterbery hathe xij. bischopes in Englonde subiecte to hit, and iiij. bischoppes in Wales. And Yorke hathe but ij. suffraganes subiecte to

MS. HARL.

2261.

f. 71. a.

¹ *Armonica*, MS.; *Armonyca*, Cx.² *Notheles*, a.; *Netheles*, Cx.³ *Wales were*, MS. (not Cx.)⁴ *suffrigans*, Cx.; *suffrages*, MS.⁵ So Cx.; *suggestioun*, MS., and so below (not Cx.)⁶ *tokyn*, a., Cx.⁷ *þe*, a., Cx.

scilicet Caerduliensem¹ et Dunelmensem. De quorum omnium successivis sedium² institutionibus hic per ordinem aliqua sunt tangenda; ubi est advertendum³ quod in primitiva Anglorum ecclesia præsules in locis humilibus, tanquam⁴ contemplationi et devotioni⁵ aptis,⁶ sedes suas statuerunt. Sed tempore Willelmi Conquæstoris⁷ ex canonum decreto edictum est, ut episcopi⁸ de villulis ad urbes transirent.⁹ Unde factum est ut Dorcestrensis sedes¹⁰ ad Lincolniam migraret, Lichfeldensis¹¹ ad Cestriam, Thedfordensis¹² ad Northwycum,¹³ Shireburnensis¹⁴ ad Sarum,¹⁵ Wellensis ad Bathonium,¹⁶ Cornubiensis ad Excestriam,¹⁷ Selesiensis¹⁸ ad Cicestriam.

De episcopis australibus.

Roffensis itaque præsul, qui parochiam non habet, sed capellanus est archiepiscopi Cantuariensis, ab initio suæ institutionis per Cantuariensem Augustinum¹⁹ factæ usque ad dies nostros nusquam sedem mutavit; Cicestrensis vero, qui solis Southsaxonibus et²⁰ Vectæ

¹ *Cardiliensem*, Gale.

² Slightly altered in C.D.

³ *ubi . . . advertendum*] Advertendum est tamen ad notitiam dicendorum, C.D.

⁴ *utpote*, C.D.

⁵ *et devotioni*] om. C.D.; transposed in B.

⁶ *aptis*] congruis, C.D.

⁷ *Willelmi Conquæstoris*] regis Willelmi primi, C.D.

⁸ *episcopi*] sedes episcoporum, C.D.

⁹ *migrarent*, C.D.

¹⁰ *sedes*] om. C.D., having *Dorcestre*.

¹¹ *Lichfelde*, D.

¹² *Thetford*, A.; *Thedforde*, D.

¹³ *Norwicum*, B., Gale.; *Norwicum*, *Remesburiensis et*, C.D.

¹⁴ *Shirburne*, A.; *Remesburiensis et Schireburn*, C.D.

¹⁵ *Salesburiam*, C.D.

¹⁶ *Cridiensis et*, add. C.D.

¹⁷ So A.B.D., Gale.; *Excestram*, E.

¹⁸ *Celesiensis*, B.; *Silesiensis*, D.

¹⁹ *Aug. Cant.*, B.

²⁰ *et*] om. B.

Engelond, þat beþ þe bisshoppis of Caerlile and of Duram. TREVISA.
 Of alle þe[se]¹ sees and of chaungynge of here places now
 arewe schal somewhat² be schewed: here take hede, þat in
 þe bygynnyng of holy chirche in Engelond bisshoppes
 ordeyned hire sees in lowe places and symple, þat were
 couenable for contemplacioun, for bedes,³ and deuocioun,
 but in William Conquerours tyme by dome of lawe canoun
 it was i-ordeyned þat bisshoppes schulde come out of smal
 townes in to grete citees. Perfore it was þat þe see of Dor-
 chestre was i-chaunged to Lyncolne, Lichefeld to Chestre,
 Thedford to Norþwhiche, Schirborne to Salisbury, Welles
 to Bathe, Cornwayle to Excetre, and Selesey to Chychestre.
De episcopis australibus. Þe bisshopp [of Rouchestre]⁴
 haþ non persche⁵ chirche, but he is þe archebisshoppes
 chapeleyn of Canterbury. Sepþe þat⁶ þe⁷ see was first
 i-ordeyned by Seint Austyn, archebisshop of Canterbury,
 3it hiderto hit changeþ neuere his place.⁸ Chichestre
 haþ vnder hym onliche Souþsex and the Ile of Wight, and

it oonly, whiche be suffraganes of Carduliense and of Durem, MS. HARL.
 of the successiue institucions of whom somme thynges ar 2261.
 to be seide here by ordre. Where fore hit is to be aduer-
 tede that bischoppes, in the primitiue chirche of Englonde,
 were wonte to haue their seetes in meke places, apte to
 contemplacion and deuocion, but hit was commaundede by
 a decrete of canon, in the tyme of William Conquerour,
 that the seetes of bischoppes scholde be translate from
 townes to citees. Where hit was hade that the sete of Dor-
 chestre was chaungede to Lyncoln, and of Lichefelde to
 Chestre, of Tedforde to Norwiche, of Shirburne to Excestre,
 of Seliense to Chichestre. *Of the bischoppes of the Sowthe.*⁹
 The bischoppe of Rochestre, whiche hathe noo peresche,
 but [is] chapelayn of tharchebisshop of Caunterbury, from
 the begynnege of the institucion made by Seynte Austyn
 bishop of Canterbury, chaungede not the seete of hit vn to
 oure daies. The bischop of Chichestre, whiche hathe gou- f. 71. b.
 naile oonly of the Sowthe Saxones and the yle of Wi3hte,

¹ þese, a.; thyse, Cx.

² somewhat schal, a.

³ prayers, Cx., who varies the sentence.

⁴ Added from a. and Cx.

⁵ parysche, a. and Cx., who omits chirche.

⁶ þat] om. Cx.

⁷ þe] om. a.

⁸ Sentence varied in Cx.

⁹ This is wrongly numbered Cap. 52 in Harl. MS.; the division of the chapter having been already made conformably to the Latin text.

insulæ præsidet, primo apud Selysei,¹ quod sonat² insula vituli marini, tempore Theodori archiepiscopi sedem habuit, et a primo Wylfrido³ usque ad ultimum Stigandum trecentis triginta tribus annis sub viginti episcopis ibidem duravit. Tandem Stigandus, edicto regis Willelmi⁴ Conquæstoris, sedem⁵ Seleise⁶ transtulit ad Cicestriam.⁷

CAP. LIII.

De episcopis occidentalibus.

*Willelmus.*⁸ Memorandum est quod tota⁹ Westsaxonica provincia unicum ab initio usque adventum¹⁰ Theodori habuit episcopum.¹¹ Primus autem Birinus, largiente rege Westsaxonum Kyngislo¹² sedem statuit apud Dorcestriam,¹³ villam¹⁴ humilem, ad austrum Oxoniæ juxta Walingford,¹⁵ inter collapsus¹⁶ duorum fluminum Thamisiæ et Thamæ¹⁷ sitam. Byrino autem defuncto, Kenwalcus¹⁸ rex¹⁹ statuit sedem²⁰ apud Wyntoniam; sicut et pater suus²¹ aliquando²² proposuerat, ubi Agilbertus²³ natione Gallus²⁴ præsedet primus toti provinciæ Westsaxoniciæ.²⁵ Ex quo tempore urbs et sedes Dor-

¹ *Silesey*, B.; *Seilse*, A.; *Celeseie*, D.

² *interpretatur*, C.D.

³ *Wilfrido*, B., Gale.

⁴ *Willelmi regis*, B.

⁵ Added from A.C.D., Gale.

⁶ *Seleyse*, B.

⁷ So D., Gale; *Cicestram*, A.E.

⁸ *Willelmus*] om. C.D.

⁹ *Memorandum tota*] Tota autem, C.D.

¹⁰ *ad adventum*, B., Gale.

¹¹ *antistitem*, C.D.

¹² *Kingiffo*, A.B.; *Kingislo*, Gale; *Kingulfo*, D.

¹³ So Gale; *Dorcestam*, A.E.; *Dorcestre*², D.

¹⁴ *villam quidem*, D.

¹⁵ *juxta Walingford*] om. C.D.; *Walingforth*, A.

¹⁶ *statuit . . . collapsus*] *lapsus*, B.

¹⁷ *Ysæ*, Gale.

¹⁸ *Kenwalkus*, B.; *Kenewalcus*, D.

¹⁹ *rex*] om. B.; *Westsaxonum*, ins. D.

²⁰ *sedem statuit*, B.

²¹ *pater suus Kingulfus*, D.

²² *aliquando fecisse*, B., Gale.

²³ *Gilbertus*, Gale.

²⁴ *Gallicus*, B.

²⁵ Sentence altered and slightly abbreviated in C.D.

hadde his see first in Seleseie in Theodor þe archebisshoppes tyme. And þe see¹ durede þere þre hondred 3ere and þre and þritty vnder tweynty bisshoppes from þe firste Wilfrede to þe laste Stigande; [but at þe laste Stygand]² at þe heste of kyng William Conquerour chaunged þe se from Seleseie to Chichestre.

TREVISA.

De episcopis occidentalibus. Capitulum quinquagesimum tertium.

Willelmus. Haue mynde þat alle þe prouince of Westsaxon hadde alwey oon bisshop from þe bygynnyng anoon to Theodores comynge.³ By graunt of Kingislus,⁴ kyng of West Saxon, þe firste Birinus ordeyned a see at Dorchestre, þat is a symple toun by souþ Oxenforde by sides Walyngforde, bytwene þe fallynge to gidres of Temse and of Tame. Whan Birinus was deed, Kenwalkus þe kyng ordeyned a see at Wynchestre, as his fader hadde i-poʒt.⁵ Þere Gilbert,⁶ a Frensche man, was first bisshop of al þe prouince of Westsaxon. From þat tyme þe⁷ citee and þe see of Dorchestre

kepede somme tyme residence at Seleseie, in the tyme of Theodorus tharchebisshop, where hit contynuede vnder xx^{ti} bischoppes from the firste, Wilfridus, vn to the laste, Stigandus, by ccc.xxxijth yere. At the laste Stigandus, thro the commaundement of William Conqueroure, did translate that seete of Seleseie to Chichestre.

MS. HARL
2261.

Of the bischoppes of the weste. Capitulum quinquagesimum tertium.

HIT is to be hade in memory that alle the prouince of Weste Saxones had oon bisshop from þe begynnege vn to the tyme of Theodorus. Birinus, the firste bisshop in that prouince, sette the seete at Dorchestre, a meke place, thro the graunte of Kyngelfus, kyng of Weste Saxones; whiche seete was at the sowthe of Oxforde, nye to Walyngforde, betwene the metenge of ij. floodes, Tham and Yce. That byschop Byryne dedde, Kewacus kyng ordeynede that seete to be at Wynchestre, lyke as his fader proposede that seete to be at Wynchestre, lyke as his fader proposede to have doen somme tyme, where Agilbertus, borne in Fraunce, hadde gouernaile firste on alle the province of Weste Saxones. From whiche tyme the cite and seete of Dor-

¹ *cee, a.*² Added from *a.* (not in *Cx.*); but *þat* has been changed to *at*.³ *time, Cx.*⁴ *kyng Islo, MS., Cx.*⁵ *purposed, Cx.*⁶ *Agilbert, Cx.*⁷ *þat þe, MS.; not a. or Cx.*

cestriensis pertinuit ad provinciam Merciorum, eo quod urbs illa¹ sita sit infra Thamisiam, qui fluvius disterminat Mercios a Westsaxonibus.² Post Agilbertum de Wyntonia expulsum præsedit Wyne, natione Anglus; a quo putant quidam urbem Wyntoniæ denominatam fore Wynecestria,³ quasi⁴ Cestria, id est, urbs⁵ Wynæ.⁶ Ipso tandem expulso, successit Leutherius⁷ nepos Agilberti prædicti; post quem Hedda⁸ aliquandiu sedem⁹ tenuit. Quo defuncto, Theodorus archiepiscopus duos præsules ad provinciam Westsaxonum ordinavit;¹⁰ Danielelem¹¹ apud Wentam,¹² cui¹³ subjecti fuerant duo pagi Southrey¹⁴ et Southampshire;¹⁵ Aldelmu quoque ad sedem Shireburne ordinavit, cui tunc subjacerunt sex pagi,¹⁷ Barrocensis, Wyltonensis, Somersetensis, Dorsetensis, Dovoniensis et Cornubiensis. Deinde, tempore Edwardi senioris ad has duas¹⁸ additæ

¹ *hæc*, C.D.

² *quæ ex parte austrina Merciam disterminat a West Saxonibus*, C.D.

³ *Wincheschestre*, D.

⁴ *quia*, E.

⁵ So MSS. distinctly, and Gale. The construction requires accusatives.

⁶ Abbreviated in C.D.

⁷ *Eleutherius*, C. (not D.)

⁸ *Edda*, C.; *Eata*, D.; *aliquandiu Hedda*, B.; *Hedda*, om. E.

⁹ *locum*, C.D.

¹⁰ *ordinavit*] eo quod ampla esset deputavit, C.D.

¹¹ *videlicet*, add. C.D.

¹² *Wyntoniam*, C.D.

¹³ *cui tunc*, C.D.

¹⁴ *Sowthereie et Southanteschire*, A.

¹⁵ *Hampton*, C.; *Hamptonia*, D.

¹⁶ *Chern*, B.

¹⁷ *scilicet*, ins. C.D.

¹⁸ *sedes*, add. C.D.; *sedes* after *tres*, A., Gale.

perteyned and longede to þe prouince of Mercia; for þat citee stondeþ wip ynne Temse; and Temse departeþ bytwene Mercia and Westsaxoun. After þat Agelberd¹ was i-putte out of Wynchestre, þat þo heet Wyntoun. Wyn² of Engliche nacioun was bisshop þere;³ som⁴ men weneþ þat þat⁵ citee hap þe name of þis Wyn, and hatte Wynechestre, as it were Wyne is citee. At þe laste he was putte⁶ out and after hym come Leutherius, þe forseide Agilbertus neuwe. After Leutherius Hedda a while was bisshop þere. Whan he was dede, Theodorus þe archebisshop ordeyned tweye bisshoppes to þe prouince of Westsaxon; Danyel at Wynchestre, to hym were sugettes⁷ tweie contrees Souþerey and Souþhampschire; Aldelyn⁸ at Schireborne, to hym were sugettes sixe contrayes, Barrokschire,⁹ Wiltschire, Somersete, Dorchestreschire, Deuenschire, and Cornewayle. *Trevisa*.¹⁰ Afterward me¹¹ semeþ by þis lawe¹² þat Westsaxon conteyned Souþeray, Souþhampschire, Barrokschire, Wiltschire, Somersede, Dorsete, Deuenschire, and Cornwayle.¹³ *Wilhelmus*. Afterward in elder Edwardes tyme to þe[se]¹⁴ tweye

TREVISA.

chestre pertenede to the prouince of the Marches, in so moche that cite was sette within Thamys, whiche floode departede the Marches from the Weste Saxones. And after Agilberte expulsede from Wynchestre, Wyne, a Englysche man, was byschop þer, of whom somme men trawe that cite to have taken name, for Wynechestre sowndethe as the cite of Wyne. Whiche expulsede at the laste, Leutherius, newwe to the forseide Agilberte, succedede þer, after whom Hedeade succedede. Whiche dedde, Theodorus archebisshop ordeynede to that prouince of Weste Saxones ij. byschoppes, ordeynenge Daniel, byschop at Wynchestre, to whom ij. cuntrees were subiecte, Sowtherey and Sowthamptoneschire. And Aldelme at the seete of Schirbourn, to whom vj. cuntrees were subiecte, Barrokschire, Wiltonschire, Somerset, Dorsete, Deuenschire, and Cornewaile. Vn to whiche ij. seetes other iij. seetes were addede in the tyme [of] Edwarde the senior, kynge of Englonde,

MS. HARL.
2261.

f. 72. a.

¹ *Agilbert, Cx.*² *Wyne, a.*³ Sentence varied in Cx.⁴ *whan som, MS. (first hand.)*⁵ *þe, a., Cx.*⁶ *i-put, a.*⁷ *sugett, a.*⁸ *Adelin, Cx.*⁹ *Barkshire, Cx.*¹⁰ Reference added from Cx.¹¹ *it, a.*¹² *sawe, a.; it seemeth by this that, &c., Cx.*¹³ Names slightly varied in Cx.¹⁴ *þese, a., Cx.*

sunt aliæ tres edicto Formosi papæ; videlicet Wellensis, cui subjacuit Someresete; Cridiensis, cui subjacuit Dovonia;¹ et Cornubiensis, apud Sanctum Petroclum² seu Sanctum Germanum, cui subjacuit Cornubia. Nec multo post sexta sedes posita³ apud Ramysbury,⁴ cui subjacuit pagus Wiltonensis. Postremo edicto Willelmi regis Conquæstoris,⁵ omnes hæ sedes, excepta Wyntonia,⁶ de viculis⁷ ad urbes sunt translatae; nam Shireburne et Ramesbury⁸ transierunt ad Saresbury,⁹ cui usque hodie subjacent pagus¹⁰ Barrocensis,¹¹ Wyltonensis et Dorsetensis¹² provinciæ;¹³ Wellensis quoque sedes transit ad Bathoniam, cui usque hodie¹⁴ pagus subjacet¹⁵ de¹⁶ Somersete;¹⁷ Cridiensis, et¹⁸ Cornubiensis migraverunt¹⁹ ad Excestriam;²⁰ cui²¹ subjacent²² Dovonia et Cornubia.

CAP. LIV.

*De orientalibus episcopis.*³

*Willelmus.*²⁴ Observatum est quod²⁵ Estsaxones²⁶ ab initio usque modo semper²⁷ paruerunt²⁸ Londoniensi præsuli;²⁹ sed provinciæ Estanglorum, quæ continet

¹ So A.E.; *Devonia*, D. Gale; and so below.

² So A.B.E., Gale; *Petroclum*, D., which is probably right.

³ *est*] So A.B.C.D., Gale; om. E.

⁴ *Rammisbury*, A.

⁵ *Conquæstoris*] om. C.D.

⁶ *Wintonia*, D.

⁷ *villulis*, C. (not D.); *villis*, Gale.

⁸ *Rammisburi*, A.

⁹ *Salz*, B.; *Salesburi*, D.; *Sarum*, Gale.

¹⁰ *pagi*, B., Gale.

¹¹ *et*, add. A.B.

¹² *subjacent...Dorsetensis*] subjacet Barrocensis et Wiltonensis provincia, C.D.

¹³ *et Dorsetensis provinciæ*] om. A.B. (E. has *Dosetensis*, but *Dorsetensis* above.

¹⁴ *hodie*] added from C.D., Gale.

¹⁵ *subjacent*, A.B.

¹⁶ *de*] om. A.B.

¹⁷ *pagus...Somersete*] *hodie subjacent duo pagi Somersete et Dorsete*, A.C.D.

¹⁸ *et*] om. B.

¹⁹ *transierunt*, C.D.

²⁰ So D. Gale; *Excesttram*, A.E.

²¹ *usque hodie*, add. C.D.

²² *subjacet*, B.D.

²³ *episcopis orientalibus*, B.

²⁴ *Willelmus*] om. C.D.

²⁵ *Observatum...quod*] om. C.D.

²⁶ *West Saxones*, B.

²⁷ *semper*] om. A.

²⁸ *pervenerunt*, B.

²⁹ *episcopo*, C.D.

sees þre¹ opere sees were i-ordeyned by heste² of Formosus þe pope. Þe³ cees were i-ordeyned at Welles for Somersete, at Crittoun⁴ for Deuenschire, and at Seint German for Cornewayle. Noȝt ful longe afterward þe sixte see was i-sette at Ramysbury for Wiltshire. At þe laste by heste⁵ of kyng William Conquerour alle þese sees saue Wynchestre were⁶ i-torned and i-chaunged out of smal townes in to grete citees. For Schirborne and Ramysbury were i-torned to Salisbury. Now to þat see is sugett Barokschire, Wiltshire, and Dorsett. Þe see of Welles was i-torned to Bape. Þerto is now sugett al Somersete. Þe sees of Critton⁷ and of Cornewayle were i-chaunged to Excetre. Þerto is sugett Deuenschire and Cornwayle.

TREVISA.

De orientalibus episcopis. Capitulum quinquagesimum quartum.

*Willelmus.*⁸ Hit is i-knowe þat þe Estsaxons alwey from þe bygynnyng for to now were sogettis⁹ to þe bisshop of Londoun. But þe prouince of Est Angles, þat conteynep

thro the precepte of Formosus the pope, that is to say, at Welles, to whom Somersete was subiecte; of Cridense, to whom Deuenschire was subiecte; and of Cornubiense, at Seynte Patroclus other Germanus, to whom alle Cornewaile was subiecte. And within a shorte space folowenge the vithe seete was at Ramisbury, to whom Willeschire was subiecte. At the laste alle these seetes were remouede from townes to cites, thro commaundement of William Conqueroure, the seete of Wynchestre excepte. For the seetes of Shirborne and of Ramisbury were chaungede to Salisbury, to whom Barokshire, Willeschire, and the prouinces of Dorsette be subiecte. And the seete of Welles was chaungede vn to Bathe, to whom Somerset is subiecte. The seetes of Cridence and of Cornubiense were remouede to Excetre, to whom Deuenschire and Cornewaile be subiecte.

MS. HARL.
2261.

Capitulum quinquagesimum quartum.

HIT is to be attended that the Este Saxones were obediende from the begynnenge vn to this tyme presente to the bishop of London. But a byschop, Felix by name,

¹ oper þre opere, MS.; thre other, Cx.

² commaundment, Cx.

³ þre, Cx.

⁴ Cretoun, a.; Kryton, Cx.

⁵ So a.; behest, MS.

⁶ was, MS. (not a. or Cx.)

⁷ Cryttoun, a.; Kyrton, Cx.

⁸ Reference added from Cx.

⁹ subget, Cx.

Northfolk et Southfolc,¹ præfuit primo ² apud urbem Domik ³ unicus episcopus Felix quidam Burgundus septendecim annis. Post quem Thomas quinque annis. Post quem Bonifacius septendecim ⁴ annis. Deinde Bisi per Theodorum institutus,⁵ quousque prospera ⁶ valetudo permetteret, provinciam solus rexit. Post quem duo episcopi, per centum quadraginta tres annos, usque ad tempora Egberti, regis Westsaxonum,⁷ provinciam illam rexerunt; unus apud Domuc,⁸ alter apud ⁹ Elmham.¹⁰ Post dies ¹¹ tamen Ludcani regis Merciorum mansit tantum una sedes apud Elmham,¹² usque ad quintum annum Willelmi Conquæstoris; quando Herfastus vicesimus tertius orientalium episcopus sedem suam Helmhamensem ¹³ transtulit ad Thedfordiam.¹⁴ At successor ejus Herebertus Losinga,¹⁵ licentia regis Willelmi ¹⁶ Rufi, sedem Thedfordensem transtulit ad ¹⁷ Norwicum; sedem autem Heliensem,¹⁸ quæ huic de prope ¹⁹ est, rex Henricus primus nono regni sui anno instituit, subjecta ad hoc ²⁰ provincia Canteburges,²¹ quæ prius fuerat pars episcopatus Lincolnensis; in cuius rei compensationem dedit Henricus rex ²² episcopo Lincolnensi regiam urbem suam ²³ de Spaldyng.²⁴

¹ *Northfolchiam et Southfolch ia m*
D.

² *primus*, C. (not D.)

³ *Donmic*, A.C.; *Donwic*, B.;
Donwik, D.; *Dommic*, Gale.

⁴ *quindecim*, C. (not D.)

⁵ *instructus*, C.D.

⁶ *valitudo prospera*, B.

⁷ *Estsaxonum*, Gale.

⁸ *Dommuc*, A.C., Gale; *Donwic*,
B.; *Donwik*, D.

⁹ *apud*, added from D., Gale.

¹⁰ *Elingham*, B.D.

¹¹ *Postea*, B.

¹² *Elingham*, B.D.

¹³ *Elmamhensem*, A.B., Gale;
Elinghammensem, D.

¹⁴ *Tedford*, Gale.

¹⁵ *Losinga*] om. C.D.

¹⁶ *Willelmi regis*, B.

¹⁷ *ad*] om. B.

¹⁸ *Eliensem*, A.B.

¹⁹ *hinc de prope*] Lincolnensi, B.;
huic prope, A.

²⁰ *hæc*, D.

²¹ *Canteburgiæ*, D.

²² *rex*] om. C. (not D.)

²³ *suam*] om. C.D.

²⁴ *Spaldwik*, B.D.

Norþfolk and Souþfolk, hadde oon bisshop at Denwiche.¹ TREVISA.
 Þe bisshop heet Felix, and was of Burgoyne ; and was bisshop
 seuentene ðere. After hym Thomas was bisshop fyue ðere.
 After hym Bonafas² seuentene³ ðere. Þanne Besy after-
 ward was i-ordeyned by Theodorus, and rulede þe prouince,
 while he myzte endure by hym selue allone. After hym
 anon to Egebertus tyme, kyng of Westsaxons, an hondred
 and þre and fourty [ðere],⁴ tweie bisshoppes rulede þat prou-
 ince, oon at Donwyk and anoper at Elyngham.⁵ Noþeles
 after Ludecans tyme, kyng of Mercia, lefte and was onliche⁶
 oon see at Elyngham anon to þe fifte ðere of William
 Conquerour, whan Herfastus þe þridde and twenty bisshop of
 Esterne⁷ chaungede þe⁸ see from [Elyngham to]⁹ Thetford,
 [and his successor Herebetus Losinga chaungede þe see
 from Thetford]¹⁰ into Norþwhiche, by leue of kyng William
 þe Rede. [Þe]¹⁰ see of Ely, þat is nygh þerto, þe firste kyng
 Henry ordeyned þe nynþe ðere of his reignyng, and made
 suget þerto Cantebriggeschire, þat was raper¹¹ a party of þe
 bisshopriche of Lyncolne. And for quytyng þerof he ʒaf
 to þe bisshop of Lyncolne a real citee þat hatte¹² Spaldynge.

borne in Burguyn, was firste bisshop ad Dommic, a cite MS. HARL.
2261.
 of the prouince of Este Engliche men by xvij. yere ; after
 whom Thomas was v. yere, after hym Bonifacius xvij. yere ;
 after whom Besy, institute by Theodorus, gouernede that
 prouince allon while he was in heale. After whom ij. by-
 schopes reignede c.xliij yere, gouernenge the prouince vn to
 the tymes of Egberte, kyng of Weste Saxones, oon of
 theym at Dommic, that other at Elyngham, vn to the vth
 yere of William Conquerour, whan Herfastus, the xxijth
 bisshop of the este, did translate the seete of Hely to Ted-
 forde. And Herebertus Losinga, his successor, remouede
 that seete from Tedforde to Norwiche, thro licence of Wil-
 liam Rufus. Kyng Henry the firste ordeynede that seete
 of Hely the ixth yere of his reigne, subduede to hit the
 prouince of Cantebrigge, whiche pertenede a fore that tyme
 to the byschopryche of Lincolne ; in a recompensacion þer
 of he ʒafe to the bisshop of Lincolne the towne of Spal-
 denge.

¹ *Donwyk, a., Cx.*

² *Boniface, Cx.*

³ *So a. ; xvij., MS.*

⁴ Added from the Latin text ;
absent also in Cx.

⁵ The last clause as in Cx. ; MS.
and *a.* have repetitions by clerical
error from above.

⁶ Probably we should read : *was
left onliche.* Cx. agrees with text.

⁷ *þe Estrene, a., Cx.*

⁸ *his, a.*

⁹ Added from *a.* (not in Cx.)

¹⁰ *þe*] added from *a.* and Cx.

¹¹ *to fore, Cx.*

¹² *a good toun callyd.* Cx.

CAP. LV.

*De episcopis Merciorum.*¹

*Willelmus.*² Notandum est hic³ solerter, quod⁴ sicut Merciorum imperium pro tempore fuerat semper amplissimum, ita et in plures episcopatus divisum; præsertim animositate regis Offæ, qui quadraginta annis imperans Mercii, transtulit ad Lichefeldiam honorem Cantuariæ⁵ metropolitanum, annuente ad hoc⁶ papa Adriano.⁷ Igitur provinciæ Merciorum et Lindisfarorum primis annis Christianitatis, tempore regis Wolfarii,⁸ unicus fuit episcopus apud Lichefeldiam; Duyna⁹ primus, Celath secundus, ambo Scoti.¹⁰ Post quos tertius Trunhere,¹¹ quartus Jarumannus,¹² quintus Cedda. Sed tempore¹³ Etheldredi¹⁴ fratris Wolferi,¹⁵ Cedda mortuo, substituit Theodorus archiepiscopus¹⁶ Wynfridum diaconum¹⁷ Ceddæ; quem tamen postmodum ratione cujusdam inobedienciæ deposuit, substituens¹⁸ Sexwolfum¹⁹ abbatem de Medehamstede,²⁰ quod nunc de Burgo dicitur.²¹ Sed post quartum²² Sexwolfi annum ordinavit Theodorus provinciæ Merciorum

¹ *seu Mediterraneorum*, add. C.D.² *Willelmus*] om. C.D.³ *hic*] quod, A.⁴ *Notandum...quod*] om. C.D.⁵ *Cantuariæ*] om. C.D.⁶ *ad hoc*] om. C.D.⁷ C.D. add—"eo quod Cantuaritis infestus fuerat quos et vastaverat." The whole passage is slightly transposed in these MSS.⁸ *Wlferi*, B.; *Wlfarii*, A.D.⁹ *Duina*, A.B.D., Gale.¹⁰ *ambo Scoti*] Arabo Scottus, C. (not D.); ambo Scottici, A.¹¹ *Trunhere*, A.D., Gale.¹² *Jarimannus*, B.¹³ *regis*, add. C.D.¹⁴ *Etheldredi*, B.D., Gale.¹⁵ *Wlferi*, B.D., Gale; *Wulferi*, A.¹⁶ *archipræsul*, C.D.¹⁷ *diaconum*] qui quondam diaconus fuerat, C.D.¹⁸ *substituens*] eoque deposito substituit Theodorus, C.D.¹⁹ *Sexwlfi*, D. (which has also *Modehamstede*), and so below.²⁰ *Modehamstede*, D.²¹ *quod est de burgo*, C.D.²² *Post quartum vero*, C.D.

De episcopis Merciorum. Capitulum quinquagesimum quintum. TREVISA.

Willelmus. Here take hede þat as þe kyngdom of Mercia was alwey grettest for þe tyme, so it was i-deled in mo bisshopriches, and¹ specialliche by grete herte of kyng Offa, þat² was fourty þere kyng of Mercia. He chaunged þe archebisshoppes see from Caunterbury to Lychfelde³ by assent of Adrian þe pope. Ðan þe prouince of Mercia and of Lindiffare⁴ in þe firste bygynnynge of here Cristendom in kyng Wulfrans tyme hadde oon bisshop atte Lichefelde. Þe firste bisshoppe þat was þere heet Dwyna; þe secounde heet Celath; and were boþe Scottes. After hem þe pridde Trumphere; þe ferþe heet Iarminannus;⁵ þe fiftte Chedde. But in Ethelfredes⁶ tyme, þat was Wolfer his broþer, whanne Chedde was dede, Theodorus þe archebisshop ordeyned [Wynfrede, Cheddes dekene. Neuerþeles he put hym doun⁷ after þat, for he was vnbuxum in som poynt, and⁸ ordeynede þere Sexwulf abbot of Medhamstede, þat hatte Burgh. But after Sexwulf his ferþe þere Theodorus þe archebisshop ordeyned]⁹ fyue bisshoppes in þe prouince of

Of the bischoppes of the Marches. Willelmus. MS. HARL.

HIT is to be attendede, that like as the impire of the Marches was moste large, so hit was diuided in to moste f. 72. b. bischoppes. And specially in the tyme of kyng Offa,¹¹ whiche reignenge in the Marches by xl. yere, transferrede the honor from Caunterbery to the chirche of Lyncolne, Adrian the pope grawntenge that priuilege. Where there was oon bisshop oonly, at Lichefelde, to the prouince of Marches and of Lyndesfarne,¹⁰ in the firste yeres of Cristianite, in the tyme of kyng Wulfarius; Duina was firste, Celat the secounde, bothe Scottes, Trunhere the thrydde, Iarumannus the iiij^{the}, Cedda the v^{the}. But Theodorus archebisshop, after the deathe of Seynte Chadde, ordeynede Wynfrede, dekyn of Seynte Chadde, in the tyme of Ethelrede, brother of Wulferus, whiche was deposede for cause of a certeyne inobediency, makenge Sexwulphus byschop þer, abbot of Medhamstede, whiche is callede now Petrusborough. But after the iiij^{the} yere of Sexwulphus, Theodorus, tharchebisshop, ordeinede v. byschoppes to

¹ and of, MS. (not a. or Cx.)² whiche, Cx.³ Lichefeld, a.⁴ Lydefar, Cx.⁵ So MS. corruptly; *Germuannus*, Cx.*Edelfredes*, Cx.⁷ apud Hymdoun, a.; apud Hymdon, Cx.⁸ So a; he, Cx.⁹ Added from a. and Cx.¹⁰ *Lindeseye*. MS. (first hand.)¹¹ of Offa, Harl. MS., by a clerical error, it is to be hoped.

quinque episcopos; scilicet¹ Bosel ad Wygorniam,² Cudwynum ad Lichefeldiam, Sexwolfum³ prædictum ad Legecestriam,⁴ quæ nunc Cestria⁵ dicitur; Ethelwynum ad Lindeseyam apud urbem Sedeneyam;⁶ Eatam⁷ quoque monachum de monasterio Hildæ apud Whiteby⁸ sumptum,⁹ ordinavit ad Dorcestriam¹⁰ juxta Oxoniam, quæ et¹¹ Dorkinga tunc dicebatur.¹² Et sic sedes¹³ Dorcestrensis, quæ tempore Sancti Birini¹⁴ spectabat ad Westsaxonicos, a tempore Theodori archiepiscopi spectabat ad Mercios.¹⁵ Ipse quoque Sexwolfus episcopus,¹⁶ Cantia per regem Merciorum Etheldredum¹⁷ vastata, Puctam Roffensem episcopum de Cantia venientem ordinavit primum Herfordiæ episcopum.¹⁸ Sexwolfo tandem defuncto, successit Hedda apud Lichefeld,¹⁹ et²⁰ Wylfridus de Northimbria diu profugatus successit apud Legecestriam,²¹ quæ modo Cestria dicitur. Post duos tamen annos, defuncto rege Northumbrorum²² Alfrido, Wylfridus²³ ad propriam sedem Hagustaldensem rediit; et sic Hedda ambas parochias, scilicet Legecestriam et Lichefeld, tenuit.²⁴ Post quem²⁵ Albinus²⁶ et Wor.²⁷ Post quem tres successerunt; scilicet,²⁸ Totta apud Legecestriam; Wytta²⁹

¹ *scilicet*] om. C.D.

² *Wigorniam*, B.

³ *Sexwolfum*, B.D.

⁴ So E., at length; *Legecestre*, A.; *Logecestre*, B.

⁵ So D., at length; *Cestre*, A.; *Cestr*^o, E.; but *Cestria* at length just below.

⁶ *Sideniam*, B.; *Sideneiam*, A.D., Gale.

⁷ *Ethlam*, A.B.C.D.

⁸ *Witebi*, A.

⁹ *pucl. . . sumptum*] om. C.D.

¹⁰ So A., Gale; *Dorcestram*, E.

¹¹ *tunc Dorkinga*, B.; *etiam et*, A.

¹² *tunc dicebatur*] dicitur, C.D.

¹³ *sedes*] om. B.

¹⁴ *Sancti Birini*] om. C.D.

¹⁵ *spectabat ad Mercios*] pertinuit ad provinciam Merciorum, C.D.

¹⁶ *episcopus*] om. C.D.

¹⁷ *Ethledredum*, D.

¹⁸ *ordinavit . . . episcopum*] Herefordensem episcopum fecit, B.

¹⁹ So E. and A. (*Lichefelde*), though

they have the Latin form elsewhere; this inconstancy often renders the contractions ambiguous; *Lich*^o. D.

²⁰ " et apud Legecestriam Wilfridus, de Northimbria recenter expulsus; sed vi hostilitatis ingruente ejectus, Wilfridus ad priorem sedem suam Hagustaldensem, Alfrido rege jam defuncto, reversus est." C. (and D. nearly.)

²¹ *Logecestriam*, B.

²² So A., at length; *Northimbr*, E. (which is ambiguous); *Northanhumbriorum*, B.; *Northumbria*, Gale.

²³ *Wlfridus*, B.

²⁴ *rexit*, C.D.

²⁵ *Et post eum*, C.D.

²⁶ *Alwinus*, C.D.

²⁷ *et Wor*] qui et Wor, Gale; qui et Wor vocabatur, C.D.

²⁸ *Post . . . scilicet*] Eoque defuncto, tres facti sunt episcopi, C.D.

²⁹ *Witta*, C.D.

Mercia. And so he ordeyned Bosel at Wircetre, Cudwyn at Lichefelde, þe forseide Sexwulf at Chestre, Ethelwyn¹ at Lyndeseie at þe citee Sidenia. And he took Eata, monk of þe abbay of Hilde at Whitby, and made hym bisshop of Dorchestre þat longed to Mercia² bysides Oxenforde. Þo þis Dorchestre heet Dorkynge, and so þe see of Dorchestre þat [longed to West Saxon in Seynt Byrnes tyme],³ longed to Mercia from Þeodorus⁴ þe archebisshoppes tyme. Also when Ethelberd,⁵ kyng of Mercia, hadde destroyed Kent, þe⁶ bisshop Sexwulf took Pictas, bisshop of Rouchestre, þat come out of Kent, and made hym first bisshop of Herforde.⁷ At þe laste, whan Sexwulf was dede, Hedda was bisshop of Lichefelde after hym; and Wilfrede flemede oute of Northumberlonde was bisshop at⁸ Chestre. Noþeles after two 3ere Alfred kyng of Norþhumberlond deide, and Wilfrede tornede aȝen⁹ to his owne see of Haugustalden. And so Hedda hylde¹⁰ boþe bisshopriches of Lichefelde and of Chestre. After him¹¹ come Albyne, þat heet Wor also. And

TREVISA.

the prouince of the Marches, that is to say, Bosel at Wircetre, Cudwyne at Lichefelde, Sexwulphus at Chestre, Ethelwyne at Lindesey, at a cite callede Sedeneia. Takege also Eata, monke of the monastery of Seynte Hilda at Whitby, made hym byschop at Dorchestre, nye to Oxforde, whiche was callede that tyme Dorkynga. And so the seete of Dorchestre, whiche pertenede to the Weste-Saxones in the tyme of Seynte Biryne, longede to the Marches from the tyme of Theodorus tharchebisshop. Sexwulphus dedde, Hedda succeded at Lychefelde; and Wilfride, chasede from Northumbrelonde, succedede at Legecestre, now namede Chestre; neuerthelesse Alfride, the kyng of Northumbrelonde, dedde within the space of ij. yere foloenge, Wilfride returnede to his propre seete Haugustaldense; and so Hedda was bischop bothe of Lichefelde and of Chestre. After whom Albinus other Wor. After whom thre succeded, that

MS. HARL. 2261.

¹ *Edeuwyn*, Cx.² [þat longed to Mercia] om. *a.* and Cx.³ Added from Cx.⁴ *Theodorus*, *a.*⁵ *Ethelred*, *a.*, Cx.⁶ *this*, *β.*, Cx.⁷ *Rouchestre Herforde*, MS. The former word is *very slightly* expuncted in *a.*, which would lead usto suspect, as do many other things, that the standard MS. may have been copied from *a.*, or that both are copies of the same MS. The text of *β.* and Cx. is correct.⁸ *of*, *β.*, Cx.⁹ *aȝe*, *a.*¹⁰ *hulde*, *a.*¹¹ *hem*, MS. (not *a.*, *β.* or Cx.)

apud Lichefeld; Eata¹ adhuc in Dorcestria² remanente, cujus sedem eo defuncto præsules Lindisienses³ per trecentos quinquaginta quatuor annos tenuerunt; donec Remigius, licentia regis Willelmi primi, sedem transferret ad Lincolniam.⁴ Sed⁵ tempore regis Edgari Leofwynus præsul⁶ conjunxit ambas parochias Cestrensiarum et Lindisfarorum,⁷ quoad ipse viveret.

CAP. LVI.

*De episcopis Northimbranis.*⁸

Willelmus, libro quarto de Pontificibus, capitulo undecimo.⁹ Apud Eboracum unica sedes primo fuit pro tota¹⁰ provincia Northimbrana,¹¹ quam Paulinus primus a Dorobernensi¹² Justo ordinatus septem annis tenuit. Deinde, occiso rege Northimbranorum¹³ Edwyno, turbatisque rebus,¹⁴ recessit Paulinus navigio ad partes Cantiaë unde primo venerat,¹⁵ sumpto secum pallio. Willelmus, libro tertio.¹⁶ Sicque cessavit præ-

¹ Eatta, B.² apud Dorcestriam, B.; in Dorcestre, D.³ Lindeyenses, B.⁴ C.D. add:—"quæ tunc caput erat Lindeseie."⁵ Tamen, C.D.⁶ Legecestriae, add. C.D.⁷ The passage is slightly altered in C.D.⁸ Northanhumbranis, B.; Northumbrensibus, D.⁹ libro . . . undecimo] om. B., Gale.¹⁰ per totam, Gale.¹¹ Genti Northimbranae unica sedes primitus fuit apud Eboracum, C.D.¹² episcopo, add. C.D.¹³ Northimbranorum] om. C.D. Northanhumbrorum, B.; Northumbriae, Gale; North, A.F.¹⁴ publicis, add. C. (not D.)¹⁵ unde primo venerat] om. C.D.¹⁶ C.D. omit reference.

after hym come the¹ bisshoppis Torta at Chestre, Witta at Lichefelde, and Eata was ζ it at Dorchestre. After his deth bisshoppes of Lyndeseye helde his² see pre hondred ζ ere and foure and fifty, for to Remigius chaungede pe see to Lyncolne by leue of pe firste kyng William: but in kyng Edgar his tyme bisshop³ Leofwynus ioynede bope bisshopriches [to gideres]⁴ of Chestre and of⁵ Lyndeseie,⁶ while his lif durede.

TREVISA.

De episcopis Northumbranis. Capitulum quinquagesimum sextum.

Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro quarto, capitulo secundo.
At York was oon see for alle pe prouince of Northumberlond. Paulinus hulde first pat see, and was i-ordeyned of pe bisshop⁷ of Caunterbury, and hylde pat see of ζ ork seuene ζ ere. Afterward whan kyng Edwyn was i-slawe, and pinges were destourbed, Paulynus wente pennes by water wey in to Kent, whennes he com first, and toke wip hym pe⁸ palle. *Willelmus, libro tertio.* And so pe bisshopriche of ζ ork⁹ cesede

is to say, Torta at Chestre, Witta at Lichefelde, Eata re- maynenge at Dorchestre; the seete of whom bischoppes of Lindeseye occupiede by ccc.liij^{ti} yere, vn tyll that Remigius transferrede that seete to Lincolne, in the tyme of kyng William the firste. But Leofwinus byschop, conioinede bothe the chirches of Chestre and Lindesey to gedre in the tyme of kyng Edgare, while he lyvede.

MS. HARL. 2261. f. 73. a.

Of the Bischopes of Northumberlonde. Capitulum quinquagesimum sextum.

Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro quarto, capitulo secundo.
Oon seete was firste at Yorke, for alle the prouince off Northumbrelonde, whom Paulinus occupiede firste by the space of vij. yere. After that Edwinus, kyng of Northumbrelonde, sleyne, Paulinus toke schippe and saylede to Kente, from whens he come, takenge the palle with hym. *Willelmus, libro tertio.* And so the bischopperiche of

¹ pre, a.² the, Cx.³ bishop of, MS. (not a. or Cx.)⁴ Added from a. and Cx.⁵ of] om. a.⁶ Lyndefare, a.⁷ So MSS. and Cx.⁸ So a. and Cx.; pat, MS.⁹ So a. and Cx.; York the bisshopriche, MS.

sulatus Eboracensis xxx. annis, usus vero pallii cessavit¹ ibidem cxxv. annis, donec Egbertus episcopus et frater regis terræ² auctoritate papali pallium recuperaret.³ *Ranulphus*.⁴ Regnante interim Sancto Oswaldo præfuit Aidanus Scoticus⁵ apud Bernicios;⁶ post quem Finanus; post quem Colmannus. *Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio*.⁷ Quo tandem ad Scotiam indignanter⁸ recedente, eo quod⁹ illegitima Paschæ observatione per Wylfridum fuerat redargutus,⁴ tricesimo¹⁰ post recessum Paulini anno Wilfridus ad sedem Eboracensem institutus est.¹¹ *Beda, libro quarto*.¹² Sed¹³ ipso circa suam consecrationem¹⁴ apud Gallias diutius demorante,¹⁵ ad instigationem quartadecimanorum¹⁶ Cedda de monasterio suo Lestingensi sumptus, annuente rege Oswy, subintrusus est. Quo tandem post triennium per Theodorum archipræsulem amoto, et¹⁷ ad provinciam Merciorum assignato, Wilfridus per Theodorum restitutus est; sed et ipse¹⁸ tandem propter quasdam similtates inter ipsum et regem Oswy¹⁹ exortas, post decimum officii sui annum, cooperante et corrupto Theodoro, a sede sua expulsus est; ordina-

¹ *vacavit*, C.D., slightly transposed.

² *terræ*] om. C.D.

³ *recuperavit*, C.D.

⁴ *Ranulphus . . . redargutus*] om. C.D.

⁵ *Scottis*, B.; *Scotus*, Gale.

⁶ *Berwicios*, B.

⁷ B. omits reference.

⁸ *indignante*, A.

⁹ *quod de*, Gale.

¹⁰ *igitur*, add. C.D.

¹¹ Slightly transposed in C.D.

¹² C.D. omit reference.

¹³ This passage, as far as *Tunbertum apud Hagustaldensem*, is contracted in C.D. to "Sed ipso post "decimum officii sui annum expulso, Theodorus Dorobernensis "episcopus ex regis Oswy coniventia ordinavit Bosam apud "Eboracum."

¹⁴ *consecrationem suam*, B.

¹⁵ *immorante*, B.

¹⁶ *quandam dessimanorum*, B.

¹⁷ *et*] om. B.

¹⁸ *ipso*, B.

¹⁹ *discordias*, ins. B.

pritty ȝere, and þe vse of þe palle secede¹ þere an hondred and fyue and fifty² ȝere, for to þat Egbert the bisshop, þat was þe kynges broþer of þe lond, recouered it by auctorite of þe pope. R̄. So among,³ whan Seint Oswolde regnede, Aidanus,⁴ a Scot, was bisshop in Brenicia, þat is þe norþside of Norþhumberlond; after hym Fynanus;⁵ after hym Salmannus. *Willelmus, ubi supra.* At þe laste he wente to Scotlonde wip grete indingnacioun, for Wilfrede vndertook hym for he hylde vnlawfulliche Esterday; pritty ȝere after þat Paulinus was agoo⁶ from Wilfrede was i-made bisshop of York. *Beda, libro quarto.* But [while]⁷ he dwellede longe in Fraunce aboute his sacrynge, at exitynge of quartadecimanorum, þat were þey þat helde Esterday þe xiiij^e⁸ day of þe mone, Chedde was i-take out of his abbay of Lestyng, and wrongfullliche i-put to⁹ þe see of York by assent of kyng Oswy. But þre ȝere afterward Theodorus the archebisshop dede hym away, and assignede hym to þe prouince of Mercia, and restored Wilfrede to þe see of York. But afterwarde Wilfrede, bycause of wrethe þat was arered¹⁰ bytwene hym and kyng Egfred, was i-putte oute of his see by help of Theodorus¹¹ þe archebisshop þat was corupt wip som manere mede;

TREVISA.

Yorke seasede xxx^{ti} yere, and the vse of the palle seasede there by a c. xxv^{ti} yere vn tyl þat bischoppe Egberte, brother to the kyng of that londe, recurede the palle thro auctorite of the pope. R̄. After that, Seynte Oswalde reignenge, Aidanus, a Scotte, hade gouernaile in Bernicia, after whom Finanus,¹² and after hym Colmannus. *Willelmus ubi supra.* Whiche goenge in to Scotlonde, as for indignacion, in that he was reprovede by Wilfride of vnlawefulle kepenge of Estur, Wilfride was restorede to the seete of Yorke after the departenge of Paulinus, in the xxx^{ti} yere. *Beda, libro quarto.* But Wilfride taryenge in Fraunce abowte his consecracion, Seynte Chadde was taken and made bischoppe þer, thro helpe of kyng Oswy; whiche, remouede with in the space of thre yere by Theodorus tharchebisshop, was made bischop of the Marches, and Wilfride was restorede to hit ageyne. Whiche Wilfride was expulside with in the space of x. yere foloenge, Theodorus tharchebisshoppe cooperante and corrupte, for cause of conten-

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *cesede, a.*² *cxv. yere, Cx.*³ *So among] om. Cx.*⁴ *So Cx.; Adrianus, MS.; Aidanus, a.*⁵ *Finianus, Cx.*⁶ *goon, Cx.; ago, β.* The text is a little corrupt, probably ȝork shouldbe added after *from*, or *from* cancelled.⁷ *Added from a.*⁸ *So Cx.; fourþe, MS. and a.*⁹ *in to, Cx.*¹⁰ *arered] om., Cx.*¹¹ *So a. and Cx.; Odorus, MS.*¹² *Sinanus, Harl. MS.*

vitque tunc Theodorus ad regis instantiam Bosam apud Eboracum, Tunbertum¹ apud Hagustaldensem ecclesiam, Eatam² ad³ Lindisfarnensem ecclesiam,⁴ quæ est Halyelond,⁵ in flumine⁶ Twydi;⁷ quam sedem⁸ Aidanus post⁹ fundaverat, Eadhedum¹⁰ vero de Lyndesy¹¹ reversum præfecit¹² Ripensi¹³ ecclesiæ, ubi¹⁴ Wyldfridus quondam abbas fuerat. Trunwynum¹⁵ autem¹⁶ destinavit ad terram Pictorum in finibus Anglorum juxta Scotiam, in loco qui Candida Casa,¹⁷ seu Whiterne,¹⁸ dicitur; ubi¹⁹ Sanctus Ninianus Brito²⁰ primus fundator et doctor extiterat. Sed hæ²¹ omnes sedes, excepta Eboracensi, paulatim defecerunt. Nam sedes Candidæ Casæ, quæ tunc ad Anglos spectabat, aliquot annis sub decem episcopis durabat;²² donec depopulatione Pictorum²³ a ditione Anglorum omnino deficeret. Hagustaldensis vero et Lyndisfarnensis²⁴ sedes, quæ vicissim unica erat sub novem episcopis, nonaginta ferme annis usque adventum Dacorum duravit. Quo in tempore sub Hyngwar²⁵ et Hubba Ardulphus episcopus diu cum corpore Cuthberti²⁶ vagabatur, usque ad dies Aluredi regis Westsaxonum,

Sedes Candidæ Casæ, Hagustaldensis, et Lisfarnensis demum extinctæ.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>¹ <i>Thunbertum</i>, B.
 ² <i>Eatan</i>, B.
 ³ <i>apud</i>, Gale.
 ⁴ <i>ecclesiam</i>] om. C.D.
 ⁵ <i>Haly Eland</i>, A.
 ⁶ <i>fluvio</i>, C.D.
 ⁷ <i>Twydæ</i>, B.; <i>Tvidi</i>, A.; <i>Twede</i>, D.
 ⁸ <i>Sanctus</i>, ins. C.D.; adding <i>Scotus</i>.
 ⁹ <i>primo</i>, C.D., Gale; <i>primus</i>, B.
 ¹⁰ <i>Eathedum</i>, B.
 ¹¹ <i>Lindesey</i>, B.; <i>ad Lindeseiam</i>, D.
 ¹² <i>Theodorus</i>, ins. C.D.
 ¹³ <i>Riponensi</i>, B.</p> | <p>¹⁴ <i>ubi</i>] in qua, C.D.
 ¹⁵ <i>Trumwinum</i>, A.
 ¹⁶ <i>vero</i>, C.D.
 ¹⁷ <i>Canditasa</i>, B.
 ¹⁸ <i>Hwytherne</i>, C.; <i>Witerne</i>, A.; <i>Witherne</i>, D.
 ¹⁹ <i>ubi</i>] om. C.D.
 ²⁰ <i>Brito</i>] om. B.; <i>natione Brito</i>, D.
 ²¹ <i>hæ</i>] om. C.D.
 ²² <i>duravit</i>, B.C.D.
 ²³ <i>depulsatis Pictis</i>, C.D.
 ²⁴ <i>Lindefarnensis</i>, B.
 ²⁵ <i>Hungar</i>, B.; <i>Hingar</i>, A., Gale (who omits <i>sub</i>.)
 ²⁶ <i>diu</i> after <i>Cuthberti</i> in A.</p> |
|---|--|

pat was i-doo after pat Wilfrede hadde i-be bisshop of York .^{TREVISIA.}
 ten 3ere ; pan at þe instaunce of þe kyng Theodorus made
 Bosam bisshop of York and Cuthbert¹ at Hagustalde chirche,
 and Eata at Lyndefar chirche pat hatte Haly Eland² in þe
 ryuer of Twede. Aydanus foundede first pat see, and Theo-
 dorus made Eadhedus³ bisshop of Rypoun pat was i-come
 a3en out of Lyndeseie ; Wilfrede⁴ hadde be abbot of Ripoun.
 Theodorus sende Trunwynus to þe lond of Pictes in þe
 endes of Engelond faste by Scotlond in a place pat hatte
 Candida Casa and Whyterne⁵ also. Þere Seint Ninian, a
 Bretoun, was first foundour and doctour ; but alle þese sees
 outake York faillede litell and litel ; for þe see of Candida
 Casa, and pat is Galeway, pat longede þoo to Engelond,
 durede meny 3eres vnder ten bisshoppes for to pat he was
 oute of power [by destroyenge of þe Pictes. Þe sees of Ha-
 gustald and of Lyndefare was bytymes al oon under nyne
 bisshoppis]⁶ aboute a foure score 3ere and ten, and durede
 anon to þe comynge of þe Danes. In þat tym vnder Hungar
 and Hubba, Ardulf þe bisshop 3ede longe aboute wip Seynt
 Cuthberd his body anon to kyng Alured his tyme, kyng of
 West Saxon, whan⁷ þe see of Lyndefare was i-sette at Kun-

cion movede betwene hym and kyng Egfride ; and then MS. HARL.
 Theodorus ordeinede, at the instance of the kyng, Bosa ^{2261.}
 at Yorke, Tunbertus⁸ at the chirche Haugustaldense, Eata
 at the chirche Lindisfarn, whiche is in the Holielonde, in the
 floode of Twide ; whiche sete Aidanus the bisshop foundede
 firste, sendenge Trumwyne to the londe of Pictes, in the
 costes of Englonde nye to Scotlonde, in to a place whiche is
 callede Witerne, where Seynte Ninian otherwise callede of
 commune peple Seynt Ronyon, was firste founder and doc-
 tor ; but alle these seetes, Yorke excepte, faylede by succes-
 sion. For the seete of Witerne, whiche longede þat tyme f. 73 b.
 to Englische men [indurede] by certeyne yeres, vnder x.
 bischoppes, vn tille that [by] the depopulacion of the Pictes
 [hit] failede vtterly from the lordeschippe of Englische men ;
 and the seetes of Haugustaldens and Lindisfarne, whiche
 beenge otherwhile oon indurede allemoste xc. yere, vnder ix.
 bischoppes, vnder the commenge of Danes. But in the tyme
 of Hinguar and Hubba, Ardulphus the bisshop was vagante
 longe with þe body of Seynte Cuthberte, vn to the tyme
 of Aluredus, kyng of Weste Saxones, when the seete of

¹ *Cumbert*, Cx.

² *Holy Ylond*, Cx.

³ So a. and Cx.; *Etheldredus*, MS.

⁴ Probably we should read *where Wilfrede*.

⁵ So a., Cx.; *Whitne*, MS.

⁶ Added from a. and Cx.

⁷ *and*, Cx.

⁸ So Harl. MS.

quando sedes Lindisfarnensis¹ apud Kunegestriam,² sive Cuningesburgham³ ponebatur;⁴ qui locus⁵ hodie dicitur⁶ Ubbeford⁷ super Twedam. Tandem septimo-decimo anno regis Egelredi,⁸ filii Edgari, sedes illa usque Dunelmiam⁹ translata¹⁰ est, et¹¹ corpus Cudberti¹² ibidem reconditum¹³ per Edmundum episcopum.¹⁴ Ex tunc omnino deficit¹⁵ sedes Hagustaldensis et Lindisfarnensis.¹³ Henricus¹⁷ autem primus nono regni sui anno instituit novam sedem apud¹⁸ Caerliel.¹⁹

CAP. LVII.

*De numero sedium episcopatum.*²⁰

²¹ CANTUARIENSIS metropolis habet sub se tredecim episcopos in Anglia, et quatuor in Wallia, videlicet,²² Roffensem soli Cantiaë praesidentem; item Londoniensem, qui praest Estsaxonibus,²³ Midelsex, et medietati²⁴ Hertfortshire; ²⁵ item Cicestrensem soli Southsaxiaë ²⁶ et Vectae insulae praesidentem; Wyntoniensem, qui praest Hampteshire et Southreye; Salesburiensem,²⁷ qui praest Dorsetensibus,²⁸ Barrocschire, et Wylteshire; ²⁹

¹ *Lindefarnensis*, B.² *Koningcestriam*, B.; *Kunegesccestre*, D.³ *Cunningesburgh*, A.; *Coyngesburgh*, B.; *Cunnigisburgh*, Gale.⁴ *Kumbreborg* (*Cumbreburgh*, D.) *locabatur*, C.D.⁵ *qui locus*] locus ille, C.D.⁶ *dicitur hodie*, B.⁷ *Ubbesforð*, B.; *Ubleford*, A.; *Hubbeford*, D.⁸ *Egberedi*, B.⁹ *Dunolmiam*, B.; *Dunelium*, Gale.¹⁰ *translatum*, B.¹¹ *et*] om. B.¹² *Cuthberti*, B., Gale.¹³ Gale adds *est*.¹⁴ Slightly transposed in C.D.¹⁵ *defecit omnino*, B., Gale.¹⁶ *Lindefarnensis*, B.¹⁷ *Post hoc autem Henricus primus*, C.D., with other slight variations below.¹⁸ *apud*] om. C.D.; *Karliolum*, B.¹⁹ C.D. add: — “*quæ quondam* “*Lugubalia dicebatur.*”²⁰ *episcopatum*] om. C.D.²¹ *Sic igitur in praesenti*, ins. C.D.²² *et . . . videlicet*] om. C.D.²³ *Estsaxoniam*, Gale; *Estsexiam*, D.²⁴ *medietatem habet Hertfordschiræ*, A.²⁵ *Hertfordschiræ*, B.; *Herfordshiræ*, Gale.²⁶ *Sussex*, B.; *Southsaxonibus*, D.²⁷ *Sarisburiensem*, B.; *Saresburiensem*, Gale.²⁸ *et*, ins. A.²⁹ *Wyntonschire*, B.; *Dorcestre*, *Barrocsibus*, et *Wiltoniensibus*, D.

negester,¹ þat hatte Kunnyngesburgh also; þat place hatte now Vbbeford vpon Twede. At þe laste þe seuene þere of kyng Egbert, kyng Edgarus sone, þat [see]² was i-chaunged to Durem, and Seint Cuthbertus body was i-doo þere³ by þe doynge of Edmond the bisshop; and from þat tyme forward þe see þat hatte Haugustald and Lyndefare fayled alle oute.⁴ Þe firste kyng Henry þe nyne þere of his regnyng⁵ made þe newe see at Carlille.⁶ TREVISA.

Capitulum quinquagesimum septimum.

THE archebisshop of Canterbury hap vnder hym þritene bischoppes in Engeland, and foure in Wales. Þat beþ Rouchestre, he hap vnder hym Kent allone;⁷ London, he hap vnder hym Essex and Middelsex and half Hertfordschire; Chichestre, he hap vnder hym Souþsex and þe Ile of Wiȝt; Wynchestre, he hap vnder hym Hampschire and Sowþereie; Salysbury hap vnder hym Barrokschire,⁸ Wilteschire, and Dorsete; Excetre hap vnder hym

Lindisfarne was sette at Cungestre or Kunnengesburghe, whiche place is callede now Hubeforde on Twede. And at the laste that sete was removede to Durem, in the xvj. yere of Egelrede kyng, son of kyng Edgare; and the body of Seynte Cuthberte the bischop was buriede there by Edmunde the bischop. From whiche tyme the seetes of the chirches of Haugustaldense failede vtterly; and kyng Henry the firste, in the ixth yere of his reigne, ordeynede a newe seete, Caerlielle. MS. HARL. 2261.

Capitulum quinquagesimum septimum.

THE metropolitan of Caunterbury hathe vnder hym xiiij. bischoppes in Englund, and iiij. in Wales, that is to say:— the bischop of Rochestre, whiche hathe gouernayle oonly in Kente. Also of London whiche hathe rewle in Estesex, Midelsex, and of the halfe of Hertefordeschire. Also the bischop of Chichestre whiche is presidente oonly of Southesex and of the yle of Wyȝhte. The bischop of Wynchestre, whiche is presidente in Hampteschire and Surry. And of Salisbury þat is presidente of Dorset, Barrokschire,

¹ *Kunegestre*, a. and Cx.

² Added from Cx.

³ *brought thyder*, Cx.

⁴ *alle oute*] vtterly, Cx.

⁵ *regne*, Cx.

⁶ So a.; *Caerleyl*, Cx.; *Cornwayle*, MS.

⁷ *aloon*, a. Sentence varied in Cx.

⁸ *Barkshire*, Cx.; who has other slight variations of orthography and expression.

Excestrensem, qui præest Devoniam¹ et Cornubiæ; Bathoniensem, qui præest Somersetensibus; Wygorniensem, qui præest Glovernensibus, Wygornensibus, et dimidiis² Warwycensibus; Herfordensem, qui præest Herefordensibus et parti³ Salopshire;⁴ Cestrensem, sive Conventrensem et Lichfeldensem,⁵ qui præest Cestriæ,⁶ Staffordiæ, Derby, dimidiæ Warewiciæ,⁷ parti Salopiæ,⁸ parti⁹ Lancastreshire,¹⁰ videlicet a flumine de Mersee¹¹ usque¹² flumen de Rippel;¹³ Lincolniensem, qui præest provinciis, quæ sunt inter Thamisiam et Humbram, videlicet, Lincolniam, Leicestriam, Northamptoniam, Huntyntoniam, Bedfordiam, Bokyngham,¹⁴ Oxoniam, et dimidiæ¹⁵ Hertfortshire;¹⁶ Heliensem,¹⁷ qui præest Cantebruggeshire, præter Merlond;¹⁸ Norwicensem, qui præest Merlond,¹⁹ Norforchiæ,²⁰ et Southforchiæ.²¹ Item Cantuarensis habet in Wallia quatuor suffraganeos, scilicet Landavensem, Menevensem,²² Bangoriensem,²³ et Sancti Asaph. Eboracum²⁴ autem metropolis hodie tantum duos habet sub se²⁵ episcopos, Dunelmensem scilicet²⁶ et Carduliensem. *Ranulphus*.²⁷ Cum igitur duo in Anglia solummodo²⁸

¹ *Dovonia*, Gale.

² *dimidie*, Gale. (The MSS. have contractions here and below.)

³ *parti*] om. C.D.

⁴ *de Salopeschire*, B.

⁵ *Coventre et Lichfeld*, A.D.

⁶ *Cestriæ*] om. B.

⁷ *et*, ins. A.; *dimidium Warwicensem*, Gale.

⁸ *parti Salopiæ*] om. B.

⁹ *parti*] et *dimidiæ*, C.D.; *partim*, Gale (twice).

¹⁰ *Lancastre*, A.

¹¹ *Meerse*, B.; D. omits this and the four preceding words.

¹² *ad*, ins. A.D.

¹³ *Ryppell*, B.; *Rupill*, A.; *Rippul*, Gale; *Ribbil*, D.

¹⁴ *Bukyngham*, *Bedford*, B.

¹⁵ *habet*, ins. A.

¹⁶ *altera dimidia pertinet Londoniensi*, ins. C.D.

¹⁷ *Eliensem*, B.

¹⁸ *Merslond*, B.; *Mershlond*, C. (not D.)

¹⁹ *Merslond*, B.

²⁰ *Norfolchiæ*, Gale.

²¹ *Sowtfolchiæ*, A. (and Gale, nearly.) There are a few very trivial orthographical and other variations in this part of the chapter in C.D., which have not been noticed.

²² *Minevensem*, Gale.

²³ *Bangor.*, *Menev.*, B.

²⁴ *Eboracensis*, B.; *Eboraci*, Gale.

²⁵ *sub se habet*, B.

²⁶ *scilicet*] added from B., Gale.

²⁷ *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.

²⁸ *tantummodo*, C.D.; *solomodo*, E.

Deuenschire and Cornwayle ; Bape hap vndre hym Somersete- TREVISA.
 [schire]¹ allone ; Wircestre hathe vnder hym Glowcetre-
 [schire],² Wircestreschire, and half Warwykschire ; Herforde
 hap vnder hym Herfordschire and som of Schropschire.
 Chestre is bissshop of Couentre [and]³ of Lichfield, and hap
 vnder hym Chestreschire, Staffordschire, Derbyschire, half
 Warwikschire, som of Schropschire, and som of Lancastre-
 schire from þe ryuer of Merce⁴ anon to þe ryuer of Rypel.⁵
 Lyncolne hap vnder hym þe prouince pat beep bytwene Temse
 and Humber, pat beep þe schires of Lyncolne,⁶ of Leycetre,
 of Northamptoun, of Huntyngdoun, of Bedeford, of Bukyng-
 ham,⁷ of Oxenforde, and half Hertfordschire. Hely hap
 vnder hym Cantebriggeschire outake Merslond.⁸ Norþ-
 whiche hap vnder hym Merslond, Norþfolk, and Souþfolk.⁹
 Also þe archebissshop of Caunterbury hap foure suffragans
 in Wales, pat beep Landaf, Seint Dauyes, Bangor, and Seint
 Assaph. Þe archebissshop of York hap now but tweie bis-
 shoppes vnder hym, pat beep Durem and Carlille. R.¹⁰ And

and Wilteschire. Of Excestre, that is presidente of Deuon- MS. HARL.
 schire and of Cornewalle. And of Bathe, pat is presidente 2261.
 in Somerseteschire. Of Wirchestre, whiche is presidente)
 in Gloucestreschire and Wirchestre, and in the halfe of
 Warwikeschire. And of Herdeforde, whiche is presidente
 in that schire, and in parte of Shropschire. The bishop of
 Chestre of Couentre and of Lichefelde, whiche is presidente
 in Staffordeschire, in Derby, and in the halfe of Warwike-
 schire, and in parte of Shropeschire, and in parte of f. 74. a.
 Lancastreschire that is from the water of Mersee vn to the
 floode of Rippelle. And of Lyncolne, whiche is presidente of
 the prouinces whiche be betwene Thamys and Humbre, as
 Lincolne, Leircestre, Northampton, Huntyngdon, Beddeforde,
 Bukkyngham, Oxon, and halfe of Hertefordeschire. And of
 Hely, that is presidente in Cantebriggeschire, Merlonde
 excepte. Of Norwiche, that is presidente in Merlonde,
 Northefolke, and Sowthefolke. Also the metropolitan of
 Caunterbery hathe iiij. suffraganes in Wales ; that is to say,
 of Landauense, of Bangor, of Meneuia, and Assaph. The
 archebischop of Yorke hathe ij. bishoppes vnder hym
 only, of Durem and Caerliel. Then sithe þer be ij.

¹ Added from Cx. (not in a.)

² Added from a. and Cx.

³ Added from a. and Cx.

⁴ Mersee, Cx.

⁵ Rypyl, a.

⁶ of Engelonde, Lyncolne, MS.

⁷ Buggyngham, a.; Bokyngham, Cx.

⁸ Merlond, a. and Cx. ; and so
below.

⁹ Norfolk and Suffolk, Cx.

¹⁰ Reference added from Cx. ; who
omits the latter part of the sentence.

De duobus Angliæ primatibus sunt primates, Cantuariensis, qui dicitur¹ primas Angliæ, et² Eboracensis, qui primas Angliæ dicitur;³ quid unus alteri debeat, et⁴ in quibus eis⁵ subjacere teneatur,⁶ in subsequentibus circa annum Domini⁷ millesimum septuagesimum secundum plenius continetur, ubi coram rege⁸ Willelmo primo et Angliæ⁹ præsulibus, ex mandato Papæ inter præfatos primates causa ventilata,¹⁰ decretum est ut Eboracensis in his quæ ad cultum catholicum pertinent Cantuariensi subjaceat;¹¹ ita, videlicet, ut ubicumque¹² in Anglia Cantuariensis concilium cogere¹³ voluerit, Eboracensis cum suis suffraganeis adesse teneatur, et ejus¹⁴ canonicis decretis obedire.¹⁵ Obeunte autem Cantuariensi, Eboracensis Doroberniam veniet, electum cum cæteris episcopis in primatem proprium consecrabit. Quod si Eboracensis obierit, successor ejus ad Cantuariensem accedet, et ordinationem ab eo accipiet,¹⁶ faciendo juramentum cum professione de

¹ *qui dicitur*] quidem, C. (not D.)

² *et*] om. C. (not D.)

³ *dicitur primas Angliæ*, B.D.

⁴ *et*] om. B.

⁵ *ei*, B.; om. Gale.

⁶ *eis . . . teneatur*] ve subjaceat, C.D.

⁷ *gratiæ*, C.D.

⁸ *Angliæ*, ins. B.

⁹ *Angliæ*] om. C.D.

¹⁰ *sic*, ins. B.

¹¹ Slightly transposed in C.D.

¹² *locorum*, ins. C.D.

¹³ *vocare*, B.

¹⁴ *ejus*] om. A.B., Gale.

¹⁵ *suffraganeis . . . obedire*] sibi subjectis episcopis aderit, canonicis ejus præceptis obediens erit, C.D.

¹⁶ *recipiet*, Gale.

so beep but tweie primates in Engelond, Canturbury, þat is i-cleped primate of al Engelond, and Ȝork primate of Engelond. What oon of hem schal doo to þat oper, and in what poynt he schal be obedient and vnder hym, it is fully conteyned wip ynne aboute þe Ȝere of our Lord a þowsand þre skore and twelue. Þere to fore þe firste kyng William and þe bisshoppes of Engelond, by maundement of þe pope þe cause was i-handled and i-treted bytwene þe forsaide primates and ordeyned, and i-demed þat þe primat of Ȝork schal be [sugett to þe]¹ primat of Canterbury in þinges þat longep to þe worschippe of God and to þe bileue of holy chirche, so þat in what place euere it² be in Engelond þat þe primat of Caunterbury³ wil hote and constreyne and gadre⁴ a counsail of clergie, þe primat of York is i-holde wip his suffragans forto be þere, and forto be obedient to þe ordenaunce þat þere is lawefulliche i-ordeyned. Whan þe primat of Caunterbury is deed, þe primat of Ȝork schal come to Caunturbury, and wip opere bisshoppes he schal sacre hym þat is i-chose, and so wip opere bisshoppes he schal sacre his owne primat. Ȝif þe primat of Ȝork is deed his successour schal come to þe primat⁵ of Caunterbury, and he schal take his ordynaunce of hym, and do his oop wip professioun of lawe-

TREVISA.

primates in Englonde, oon of Caunterbury, that is callede the primate of alle Englonde, that other of Yorke, whiche is callede the primate of Englonde, in what thynges oon of theym awe to be subiecte to that other, hit schalle be expressede in this processe folowenge, abowte the yere of oure Lorde God a m. lx. and xij. yere, more plenerly. Wherefore a cause was ventilate and movede thro the commaundemente of the pope, afore William firste kinge of Englonde, and diuerse other bischoppes of that londe; where hit was decrete that tharchebischop of Yorke scholde be subiecte to þe primate of Caunterbury in those thynges whiche perteyne to the honor of God; in so moche that tharchebischop of Yorke with his suffraganes scholde be at the counselle where hit pleasede the primate of Caunterbury to assigne hit, and to obey the decretes of canon. And the archebischop of Caunterbury dedde, the archebischop of Yorke schalle come to Caunterbury, and consecrate the man electe in to the primate. And if the archebischop of Yorke dee, his successor shalle comme to Caunterbury to receyve his ordinacion, makege an othe

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ Added from a. and Cx.² euer hit, a. and Cx.; it euere, MS.³ Engelond, MS. (not a. or Cx.)⁴ constrayne to gadre, Cx.⁵ bisshop, Cx.

obedientia canonica. Inferius autem, circa annum Domini millesimum centesimum nonagesimum quintum, sub tempore regis Ricardi, ponuntur rationes pro parte et¹ jure utriusque primatis facientes. Necnon et² a tempore Conquæstus usque ad tempora ultimi Henrici regis,³ sub diebus Thurstini,⁴ Thomæ, et⁵ aliorum⁶ Eboracensium pontificum,⁷ quid alter primas alteri fecerit, quomodo quoque⁸ alter alterius manum subterfugerit,⁹ plenius edocetur; præsentem vero¹⁰ locum, cum prologi magis quam pleni tractatus¹¹ vicem gerat, præfatis rationibus¹² onerare nimis foret tædiosum.

CAP. LVIII.

A quot¹³ et quibus hæc terra sit inhabitata gentibus.¹⁴

Britones. HÆC insula in primis Britones incolas habuit, qui¹⁵ anno Hely sacerdotis xvij^o, tempore regis Latinorum Silvii Posthumi, post Trojam eversam anno xliij^o,¹⁶ ante urbem Romam conditam quadringentesimo xxxij^o, (*Beda, libro primo*,¹⁷) de tractu Armorico advecti¹⁸ australes insulæ partes diu tenuerunt. Contigit postmodum

¹ parte et] om. B.

² Necnon et] Sparsim quoque per cronicam istam, C.D.

³ tempora . . . regis] novissimum Henricum regem, C.D.

⁴ Thurstani, B.

⁵ quorundam, ins. C.D.

⁶ aliorum] om. A.

⁷ episcoporum, C.D.

⁸ quomodo quoque] quomodoque, C.D.; quoque, om. A.B.

⁹ subterfugit, B.

¹⁰ tamen, C. (not D.)

¹¹ magis . . . tractatus] om. C.D.

¹² amplius, ins. C.D., Gale.

¹³ quot, quando, Gale.

¹⁴ Quando et quibus hæc terra sit inhabitata gentibus, A.; Quibus hæc terra inhabitata sit gentibus, B.; De incolis Angliæ, C.; De incolis prioribus, D.

¹⁵ quo, B.

¹⁶ anno xliij^o.] ccccliii., Gale.

¹⁷ C.D. omit reference.

¹⁸ advenientes, B.

ful obediens. Wiþ ynne, aboute þe ʒere of oure Lord elleune TREVISA.
 hundred foure score and fiftene, vnder þe tyme of kyng
 Richard, beþ resouns i-sette þat makeþ for þe party and for
 þe riʒt of eyþer primate.¹ Also what oone primat dede
 to þat oper in tyme of Thurstinus, of Thomas, and of opere
 bisshoppes of ʒork from þe Conquest anon to þe laste kyng
 Henry his² tyme. Also þere it is i-tauʒt how eiþer of hem
 astarte³ from oper. Þis place is but a forspekyng, and nouʒt
 a ful tretis þerof. Þerfore hit were noyefulle⁴ to charge þis
 place wiþ alle þilke resouns þat þere beþ i-made.

A quot, quando, et quibus inhabitata sit gentibus.

Capitulum quinquagesimum octavum.

BRETOUNS wonede first in þis ilond þe ʒere of Hely þe
 preost eiʒtetene; of Siluius Posthumus, kyng of Latyns,
 eleuene; after þe takynge of Troye, þre and fourty ʒere; to
 fore þe byldynge of Rome, foure hundred and two and þretty.⁵
Beda, libro primo. Þei come hider and took hir cours from
 Armorik, þat now is þe oper Bretayne; þey helde long tyme

with profession off obedience canonicalle. But in this pro- MS. HARL.
 cesse foloenge, abowte the yere of God m^l c. xcvi,⁶ vnder 2261.
 the tyme of kyng Richarde the firste, reasones were
 allegate for either parte of bothe primates: and also from
 the tyme of the Conqueste vn to the tymes of the laste
 Henry kyng, in the daies of Thurstyn, Thomas, and of f. 74 b.
 other bischoppes of Yorke, what that oon primate did to
 that other, and how oon of theyme fledde the powere of
 that other, for to reherse the reasones of theyme and
 allegacion, hit were onerable to vs in this tyme.

*Of what Peple, how mony, and when, this Yle of Briteyne
 was inhabite.—Capitulum quinquagesimum octavum.*

THIS yle callede Englonde now hade Britones the firste
 inhabitatores of hit, in þe xvijth yere of Hely preste, in the
 tyme of Siluius Posthumus kyng of Latines, þe xliijth yere
 after the destruccion of Troye, by cccc. yere and xxxijth
 afore the cite of Rome was edifiede. *Beda, libro primo.*
 Whiche commenge from Armorike occupiede a longe
 season the sowthe partes of the yle of Briteyne. Hyt

¹ Sentence varied in Cx.

² *Henries, a.*

³ *starte, Cx.*

⁴ *noyeful, a., Cx.*

⁵ Sentence varied in Cx

⁶ m^l. c. 95, Harl. MS. The Roman
 and Arabic numerals are used pro-
 miscuously elsewhere.

Picti. tempore Vespasiani ducis Romani,¹ gentem Pictorum de² Scythia³ longis navibus oceanum ingressam, circum-agentem flatu ventorum,⁴ oras boreales Hiberniæ intrasse, atque inventa ibi Scotorum gente sedes sibi⁵ petivisse, nec impetrare potuisse.^{6,7} Nam cum Hibernia, ut Scoti asserebant, ambas gentas capere non posset, Scoti remiserunt Pictos ad septentrionales partes⁸ Britanniae, opem contra Britones adversantes,⁹ si insurgerent, promittentes. Uxoresque illis¹⁰ de filiabus suis ea conditione tradiderunt, ut ubi res veniret¹¹ in dubium, magis de foeminea¹² prosapia quam de masculina regem sibi eligerent. *Gaufridus*.¹³ Tempore autem¹⁴ Vespasiani Cæsaris, regnante apud Britannos Mario filio Arviragi, Rodricus quidam rex Pictorum de Scythia veniens cœpit Albaniam devastare; quem Marius interficiens dedit devicto populo, qui cum Rodrico venerat, borealem partem Albaniae, quæ Cathenesia¹⁵ dicitur, ad inhabitandum. Illi vero uxoribus carentes, cum de natione Britonum uxores¹⁶ habere non possent,¹⁷

¹ *ducis Romani*] om. C.D.

² *de*] om. C.

³ *Scicia* or *Schicia*, MSS. and Gale, and so below.

⁴ *mentuorum*, C.

⁵ *ibi*, C.D.

⁶ *nec . . . potuisse*] om. C.D.

⁷ *atque . . . potuisse*] om. B.

⁸ *partes*] om. B.

⁹ *Britones adversantes*] adversarios, C.D.

¹⁰ *eis*, C.D.; om. B.

¹¹ *veniebat*, D.

¹² *fœminina*, B.

¹³ *Galfridus*, B.

¹⁴ *autem*] om. C.D.

¹⁵ *Catanesia*, Gale.

¹⁶ *uxores*] om. C.

¹⁷ *possunt*, B.

pe souþ contrayes of þe ilond. Hit byfelle afterwarde in TREVISA.
 Vespassi[a]nus tyme, duke of Rome, þatt þe Pictes out of
 Scythia¹ schipped into ocean, and were i-dryue aboute wip
 þe wynde, and entrede in to þe norþ costes of Irlond, and
 founde þere Scottes, and prayed for to haue a place to wonye
 inne, and myȝte none gete. For Irlond, as Scottes seide,
 myȝt nouȝt susteyne boþe peple. Scottes sente þe Pictes to
 the norþ side of Bretayne, and behiȝte² hem³ help aȝenst
 þe Bretouns þat were enemyes, yf þey wolde arise, and took
 hem to wyfes of here douȝtres vpon suche a condicioun;
 ȝif doute fel who schulde haue ryȝt for to be kyng, he⁴
 schulde raper chese hem a kyng of þe moder side þan of þe
 fader side, of þe wommen kyn raper [þan]⁵ of þe men kyn.
Gaufridus. In Vaspacian þe emperour his tyme, whan
 Marius Aruiragus his sone was kyng of Bretouns, on⁶ Rodrik
 kyng of Pictes come out of Scythia¹ and gan to destroye
 Scotlonde. Ðan Marius þe kyng slowe þis Rodorik kyng of
 Pictes, and ȝaf þe norþ party of⁷ Scotlond, þat hatte Cathenesia,
 to þe men þat were i-come wip Roderik and were ouercome
 wip⁸ hem, for to wone ynne. But pese men hadde non wifes,
 ne none myȝte haue of þe naciouns of Bretouns; þerfore þey

happede afterwarde in the tyme of Vespasian duke of MS. HARL.
 Rome, the peple of Pictes to haue comen from Scythia,¹ 2261.
 and to haue intrede the ocean, the wynde helpenge theyme,
 and so to haue intrede the northe costes of Yrlonde; whiche
 fyndenge þer Scottes desirede a place in that londe whom
 thei myȝhte inhabite, but thei kouthe not obteyne that
 desire. For the Scottes seide Yrlonde wolde not suffice
 bothe peple. Wherefore thei sende the Pictes to the northe
 partes of Briteyne, promysenge helpe to theyme, if that the
 Britones made eny insurreccion ageyne theym; ȝiffenge to
 theyme their doȝhters to be mariede, in that condicion,
 that if there were any dowte thei scholde elect in to
 their kyng oon of the female kynde rather then of the
 male kynde and bloode. *Gaufridus.* In the tyme of
 Vespasian emperoure, Marius son of Aruiragus reignenge
 at Britones, Rodricus a kyng of Pictes, commenge from
 Scythia,¹ began to waste Albania, whom Marius did slee,
 ȝiffenge to the peple deuicte whiche come with Rodricus the
 northe parte of Albania to inhabite, whiche is called
 Cateneyse. Whiche wontenge wifes, and the Britones not

¹ *Scicia* or *Scitia*, MSS., as usual;
 and so below.

² So Cx.; and *hiȝt*, a.; and *he*
hiȝte, MS.

³ So Cx.; *hymself*, MS.

⁴ *they*, Cx.

⁵ Added from a. and Cx.

⁶ *one*, Cx.

⁷ So Cx.; *to*, MS.

⁸ *by*, Cx.

transfretantes Hiberniam Hiberniensium filias sibi copularunt;¹ eo tamen pacto, ut sanguis maternus in successionebus præferretur.² *Giraldus, distinctione prima, capitulo septimo decimo.*³ Servius tamen⁴ super Virgilium dicit Pictos esse Agathyrso, sedesque quondam circa paludes Scythicas habuisse. Et dicuntur Picti quasi stigmatizati seu⁵ cauteriati, propter abundantiam fleumatis,⁶ quia⁷ ubi ex crebris stigmatibus cicatrices obducuntur, corpora quasi picta redduntur. Suntque isti populi idem quod Gothi; nam cum Maximus tyrannus de Britannia in Galliam⁸ cum omni armato terræ⁹ milite ad occupandum imperium transvectus fuisset, Gratianus et Valentinianus, fratres imperiique consortes, gentem hanc Gothicam, in rebus bellicis fortem et strenuam, beneficiis et blanditiis allectam, a Scythiæ finibus in boreales Britanniae partes ad infestandum¹⁰ Britones, omni armato milite tunc nudatos, navigio transmiserunt. Sicque de prædonibus accolæ effecti,¹¹ usurpatas¹² sedes aquilones¹³ tenuerunt.¹⁴ *Gaufridus.* Carausius

¹ *copulaverunt*, B.

² *præferatur*, C.D.

³ C.D. omit the reference. The true reference is to Girald. *De Instr. Princ.* lib. 1, c. 6. (p. 188, Brewer). The Harl. MS. is wrong.

⁴ *tamen*] om. C.D.

⁵ *vel*, B.

⁶ *fleumatis*, A.B.D., Gale.

⁷ *qui*, E.

⁸ *Franciam*, C.D.

⁹ *terra*, B.

¹⁰ *infestandos*, Gale.

¹¹ *facti*, D.

¹² *voluptates*, E.

¹³ *aquilones*, B.

¹⁴ *effecti . . . tenuerunt*] *facti usurpatas ad sedes aquilones pervenerunt*, C. (not D.)

seilled into Irlond, and toke hem to wyfes Irischemen TREVISIA.
 douzters, at ¹ pat couenaunt, pat the moder blood schulde be
 putt to fore in successioun of heritage. *Giraldus, capitulo*
septimodecimo. Nopeles Seruius ² super Virgilium seip pat
 Pictes beep Agatirsis, ³ pat hadde som wonynge places aboute
 pe wateres of Scythia, and pei beep i-cleped Pictes by cause
 of peyntynge [and snittyng] ⁴ of woundes pat beep i-sene on
 hire bodies, for pey hadde moche fleem, ⁵ and were ofte bois-
 tousliche i-lete blood, ⁶ and hadde many woundes i-sene on
 hire bodies, ⁷ so pat pey semede as it were men i-peynt wip
 woundes; perfore pey were i-cleped Pictus, as it were peynted
 men. Pese men and the Gotes ben al oon peple; for whan
 Maximus pe tyraunt was i-went ⁸ out of Britayne in to
 Fraunce for to occupie pe empere; panne Gratianus and
 Valentinianus, pat were brepren and felawes of pe empere,
 brozte pese Gothes out of Scythia wip greet ziftes, wip flater-
 ynge and false ⁹ byhestes, in to pe north contray of Britayne;
 for pey were stalworpe and strong men of armes. And so
 pese briboures were i-made men of pe ¹⁰ lond and of pe ¹¹ con-
 tray, and wonede in pe northe contraies, and hilde pere citees
 and townes. *Gaufridus.* ¹² Carausius ¹³ pe tyraunt slow ¹⁴

willenge to mary with theyme, saylede in to Yrlonde in MS. HARL.
 marynge to theyme the dozhters of men of Yrlonde, in 2261.
 this condicion, that the bloode female scholde be preferrede
 in succession. *Giraldus De Papa, capitulo septimo.*
 Neuerthelesse Seruius on Virgille callethe the Pictes
 Agathyrsi, ¹⁵ and to haue hade theire habitaciones somme tyme
 abowte the marras of Scythia whiche were callede Pictes, f. 72. a.
 for the habundance of fleume in theyme. These peple be
 callede also Gothi, for whan Maximus the tyrante wente
 from Englonde in to Fraunce with a grete multitude of armede
 men to occupy the empyre, Gratian and Valentinian, breden
 and felowes of thempire, toke to theyme the peple callede
 Gothi, nowble and stronge in batelle, thro rewarde and feire
 speche, from the costes of Scythia in to the northe partes of
 Briteyne, with a grete multitude of peple, to vexe the Britones;
 and so that peple, of robbers made inhabitatores, occupiede
 the northe partes of Briteyne thro presumption. *Gaufridus.*

¹ by, Cx.

² *Sirinus*, MS. and Cx.

³ *Agatirsis*, a.

⁴ Added from a. and Cx.

⁵ *fleume*, Cx.

⁶ *ofte bozed and lete blood*, Cx.

⁷ *body*, a., Cx.

⁸ *wente*, Cx.

⁹ *fayre*, Cx.

¹⁰ *pe*] om. a., Cx.

¹¹ *pe*] om. a., Cx.

¹² Added from a. and Cx.

¹³ So a.; *Carausius*, MS. (which has *Careucius* below), and Harl. MS.

¹⁴ *slow*, a.

¹⁵ *Agatirsi*, Harl. MS.

tyrannus dolo Pictorum, qui in auxilium Bassiani venerant,¹ ipsum² Bassianum interfecit, deditque Pictis locum mansionis in Albania; ubi permixti cum Britonibus per subsequens ævum permanserunt. *Ranulphus*.³ At⁴ cum Picti boreales⁵ prius Albanie partes occupassent, videtur quod locus mansionis, quam Carausius iste⁶ dedit Pictis, sit pars⁷ austrina Albanie, a muro scilicet Romani operis transverso⁸ usque ad mare Scoticum protensa; in quo⁹ continetur Galwodia et Lodoneya, de quo Beda, libro tertio, capitulo secundo, sic loquitur: "Ninianus,¹⁰ vir sanctus, convertit australes "Pictos,"¹¹ et cætera. Hunc tandem pagum Saxones supervenientes fecerunt pertinere ad provinciam Northimbrorum Berniciorum,¹² donec Kynadius Alpini filius, rex Scotorum, deletis¹³ Pictis, illud territorium quod est inter Twedam et mare Scoticum, fecerat suo regno pertinere.¹⁴ *Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo.* Processu vero temporis Scoti, duce Reuda de Hibernia, quæ proprie Scotorum¹⁵ patria¹⁶ est, egressi,¹⁷ vel amicitia vel ferro sibimet juxta Pictos¹⁸ sedes statue-

Scoti.

¹ *venerant*] om. E.² *ipsum*] om. D.³ *Ranulfus*] om. C.D.⁴ *Et*, C.D.⁵ *boreas*, B.⁶ *iste*] om. C.D.⁷ *pars*] om. B.⁸ *transversa*, Gale.⁹ *qua*, C.D.¹⁰ *Ninian*, A.B.¹¹ *Pictos australes*, B.¹² *Berniciorum*] om. C. (not D.)¹³ *delectis*, E.¹⁴ Sentence varied in C.D.¹⁵ *Scotticorum*, A. Here (and sometimes elsewhere) E. has the double *t*.¹⁶ *propria*, C., Gale (not D.)¹⁷ *egressi*] *progressi*, C.D.¹⁸ *Pictos*] om. E.

Bassianus by help and tresoun of þe Pictes þat come in help and socour of Bassianus, and ʒaf þe Pictes a wonynge place in Albania, þat is Scotland. Þere þey wonede long tyme afterwarde i-medled¹ wip Britouns. R. Þanne sippe þe Pikkes² occupied rapen³ þe norþside of Scotlond,⁴ it semep þat þe wonynge place þat þis Carausius ʒaf hem is þe souþside of Scotlonde þat streccheþ [from þe]⁵ þwart ouer wal of Romayn werk to þe Scottische see, and conteyneþ Galewey and Lodouia [þat is]⁶ Lodway. Þerof Beda, libro tertio, capitulo secundo, spekeþ in þis manere: Nynyan þe holy man converted þe souþ Pictes. Afterward þe Saxons come and made þat contray longe to Brenicia, þe norþ partie of Norþhumberlond, for to⁷ Kynadyus, Alpynus his sone, kyng of Scotlond, put out [þe Pictes]⁸ and made þat contrey þat is bytwene Twede and þe Scottische see longe to his kyngdom. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo.* Afterward longe tyme the Scottes were i-lad by duke Reuda, and com out of Irlond, þat is þe propre contray of Scottes, and wip loue oþer wip strengþe made hem a place faste by þe Pictes in þe norþ

TREVISA.

Carausius the tyraunte did sle Bassian thro the decepcion of the Pictes, whiche come to haue schewede helpe to þe seide Bassian, whiche ʒafe to the Pictes a place to inhabite in Albania, where thei did abyde afterwarde by continuacion permixte with Britones. R. And when the Pictes hade occupiede afore tyme the northe partes of Albania, hit semethe that the place of inhabitation whom Carausius graunted to theym was the sowthe parte of Albania, protendede from the famose walle of Roman werke ouertwarde⁹ to the Scottissee, in whom Galoway is conteynede; of whom Beda spekethe, libro ij^o, capitulo 2^o, seyenge, Seynte Ronyon conuertede þe sowthe Pictes. And at the laste the Saxones causede that coste to perteyne to the prouince of Northumbrelonde, vn til Kinadius the son of Alpinus, kyng of Scottes, destroyenge the Pictes, made that territory whiche is betwene Twede and the Scottissee to longe to his realme. *Beda, libro primo, capitulo primo.* And in processe of tyme the Scottes, takenge to theyme Reuda of Yrlonde to theire gouernoure, whiche londe is nye to the Scottes, wente furthe and toke to theyme seetes, what thro marte other fauor, nye to the Pictes, at the northe parte of an arme of the see,

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *i-medled, a.*² *seþþe þat Pictes, a, Cx.*³ *firste, Cx.*⁴ *þere þey wonede* added in MS. (not in *a.* or *Cx.*)⁵ Added from *a.* and *Cx.*⁶ Added from *Cx.*⁷ *unto the tyme that, Cx.*⁸ Added from *a.* and *Cx.*⁹ So Harl. MS.

runt, ad septentrionalem scilicet¹ partem sinus maris, qui ab occidente in terram longo spatio² irrumpens³ Britones antiquitus secernebat a Pictis.⁴ A quo duce Reuda Scoti vocabantur Dalreudini;⁵ nam lingua eorum *dal* partem significat.⁶ *Giraldus, distinctione prima.* Picti, quia uxores quas de Britonibus habere non poterant de Scotis⁷ Hiberniensibus obtinuerant,⁸ eos⁹ ad cohabitandum allexerunt; terramque maritimam, ubi mare angustum est, quæ nunc Galwodia dicitur, eis¹⁰ concesserunt. *Marianus.*¹¹ Apud Argayl¹² applicuerunt Scoti,¹³ qui et Hibernienses, quod sonat Latine margo Scotorum,¹⁴ eo quod Scoti ibidem¹⁵ applicarent¹⁶ ad faciendum damna Britannis; vel quia locus ille proximior est¹⁷ Hibernicis ad applicandum.^{18 19} *Beda, libro primo.*²⁰ Et sic Scoti tertiam in Britannia²¹ post Britones et Pictos gentem addiderunt. *Ranulphus.*²² Tandem Saxones contra²³ Scotos et Pictos a Britonibus invitati, expulsis Britonibus usque in Cambriam,²⁴ terram paulatim occupantes, et usque ad mare Scoticum fines suos dilatantes,²⁵ quartam in insula gentem fecerunt.

Saxones.

¹ *scilicet*] om. Gale.² *spatio*] om. C. (not D.)³ *irrumpentis*, C.; *irrumpentes*, Gale; *erumpens*, D.⁴ C.D. add: *ubi erat et civitas Britonum Alclud.*⁵ *Daroudini*, A.; *Dareudini*, B.⁶ *A . . . significat*] om. C.D.; *signet*, B.⁷ *Scoticis*, A.⁸ *obtinuerunt*, C.D.⁹ *eos*] om. E.¹⁰ *eisdem*, C. (not D.)¹¹ *Martinus*, E.¹² *Argail*, B., Gale.¹³ *Scotivi*, A.¹⁴ *Scoticorum*, A.¹⁵ *ibi*, C.D.¹⁶ *applicarunt*, C. (not D.)¹⁷ *est*] om. A.B.¹⁸ *est . . . applicandum*] et affinis est Hiberniæ, C.D.¹⁹ C.D. insert here the following

passage: "*Ranulfus.* Seu quia "Scoti super Pictos locum illum "occupavere sicut jam dicitur. "Extenditur autem Galwedia ab "illo famoso maris sinu ubi quondam urbs Aleluid fuerat, ubi et "Severus vallum fecerat, qui etiam "solebat secernere Britones a Pictis " [usque ad mare Scoticum, quod "Scotice Forth dicitur, currens- "que juxta oppidum de Scrivelyn], "usque ad flumen Tæ regna Scotorum et Anglorum solebat dividere." The words in brackets added from D.

²⁰ *Alfidus*, C.D.²¹ *in Brit. tertiam*, B.²² *Ranulfus*] om. C.D.²³ *contra*] quasi ad expugnandum, B.²⁴ *Wallias*, C.D.²⁵ *et . . . dilatantes*] om. A.B.

side of þat arme of þe see þat brekep in to the ilond in þe west side, þat departed in olde tyme bytwene Britouns and Pictes. Of þis duke Reuda þe Scottes hadde þe name, and werē¹ i-cleped Dalreudynes, as it were Reda² his part, for in here speche a part is i-cleped *dal*. *Giraldus, distinctione prima*. Þe Pictes myȝte haue noon³ wyfes of Bretouns, but þey toke hem wifes of Irisch Scottes, and byhete hem faire forto wonye wiþ hem, and graunted hem a lond by þe see side; þere þe see is narwe; ⁴ þat lond now hatte Galewey. *Marianus*. Irisch Scottes londede at Argoyl,⁵ þat is Scottene Clyf, for Scottes londede þere forto harmye⁶ þe Britouns, oþer for þat place is next to Irlond forto come in⁷ to Britayne. *Beda*. And so the Scottes after Bretouns and Pictes made þe þridde manere of⁸ peple wonynge in Bretayne. R. Þanne after þat come⁹ Saxouns at þe prayenge of þe Britouns, to helpe¹⁰ aȝenst þe Scottes and þe Pictes; and þe Britouns were i-putte out anoon to Wales, and Saxons occupied þe lond litel and litel and este more and more, and¹¹ straiȝt¹² anon to þe Scottische see; and so Saxons made þe

TREVISA.

whiche, brekenge vp in to the londe from the weste in a grete space, departede in olde tymes the Britones from the Pictes: of whiche duke, Reuda by name, the Scottes were callede Dalreudini; for *dal* in the langage of theyme signifieth the parte. *Gaufridus*,¹³ *distinctione prima*. The Pictes, hauenge not licence to marye with the doȝhters of Britones, mariede with the Scottes of Yrlonde, movenge theym to inhabite that londe with theyme, [and] grauntede to theyme the londe in the costes nye to the see, where the see is not brode and large, callede now Galaway. *Marianus*. The Scottes londed, otherwise callede men of Yrlonde, at a place callede Argail, whiche sowndethe in Engliche, the brynke of Scottes, in that the Scottes did londe þer to do harme to the Britones, other elles for cause that place was most nye to men of Yrlonde to londe at. *Beda*. And so the Scottes brouȝhte to Englonde the thridde peple, after Britones and Pictes. R. And at the laste the Saxones desirede to inhabite that londe of the Britones ageyne the Scottes and Pictes, the Britones expulsede in to Wales, occupiede that londe to the

MS. HARL.
2261.

f. 76. b.

¹ weþe, MS.² Reuda, a.³ no, a.⁴ narowe, a., Cx.⁵ Argayl, a., Cx.⁶ doo harme to, Cx.⁷ alonde in Britayne, a.⁸ of] om., a.⁹ comeþe, a.; come the, Cx.¹⁰ helpe hem, Cx.¹¹ and] om., a. and Cx. (the latter has other omissions.)¹² streiȝt, a.¹³ The true reference is to Girald. *De Inst. Princ.* lib. 1. c. 6.

*Beda, libro quinto, capitulo nono.*¹ Quia Angli seu Saxones a Germania originem duxerunt, hactenus a vicina gente Britonum corrupte Germani² nuncupantur. *Ranulphus.*³ Veruntamen circa annum Domini octingentesimum Egbertus rex Westsaxonum jussit omnes indigenas vocari Anglos. *Alfridus.* Dani denuo ducentis ferme annis, a tempore scilicet⁴ Egberti usque ad tempora Sancti Edwardi, terram conterentes, quintam in insula gentem fecerunt; sed et⁵ illi postmodum defecerunt.⁶ Postremo Normanni sub duce Willelmo, subjugatis Anglis, terram usque hodie possidentes, sextam in insula gentem fecerunt. Sed et Flandrenses,⁷ tempore regis Henrici,⁸ in magna copia juxta⁹ Mailros ad orientalem Angliæ plagam habitationem pro tempore accipientes, septimam in insula gentem fecerunt.¹⁰ Jubente tamen eodem rege¹¹ ad occidentalem Walliæ partem apud Haverford¹² sunt translati. *Ranulphus.*¹³ Sicque¹⁴ Britannia, modo¹⁵ deficientibus omnino Danis et Pictis, his quinque¹⁶ nationibus habitat in præsentem, videlicet,¹⁷ Scotis in Albania, Britonibus in Cam-

¹ Reference omitted in D.

² *Garmanni*, Gale; *Germani*, D.

³ Reference added from B, Gale.

⁴ *scilicet*, om. C.D.

⁵ *et*] om. C.D.

⁶ *evanuerunt*, C.D.

⁷ *Flandres*, A.

⁸ *Henrici regis primi*, A.B.D., Gale.

⁹ *juxta*] om. E.

¹⁰ *Sed . . . fecerunt*] om. C. (not D.)

¹¹ *idem Flandrenses*, add. C.D.

¹² *Haverforth*, A.

¹³ *Ranulphus* om. C.D.

¹⁴ *Itaque*, C.D.

¹⁵ *modo*] om. C.D.

¹⁶ *Danis Pictis hisque*, B.

¹⁷ Added from A., Gale.

fourþe manere men¹ in þe ilonde of Bretayne. *Beda, libro quinto, capitulo quinto.*² For Saxons and Anglis come out of Germania, 3et som Bretouns þat woneþ nygh clepeþ hem schortly³ Germans. R. Notheles aboute þe 3ere of oure Lord ey3te hondred, Egbertus, kyng of West Saxon, commandede and het clepe⁴ alle manere men of þe londe⁵ Engliche men. *Alfridus.* Þanne after þat þe Danes pursued þe lond, aboute a two hondred 3ere, þat is to menyng from þe forseide Egbertes tyme anon to Seint Edwardes tyme, and made þe fifte manere peple in þe ilond, bot þey faillede afterward. At þe laste come Normans vnder duke William his tyme,⁶ and suduwede Engliche men, and 3it holdeþ⁷ þe londe; and þey made þe sixte peple in þe ilonde. But in þe firste kyng Henries⁸ tymes come many Flemmynges and fenge a wonyng place for a tyme bysides Mailros in þe west side of Engelond, and made þe seuenþe peple in þe ilond. Nopeles by heste of þe same kyng, þey were i-houe þennes and i-putte⁹ to Hauerforde his side, [in þe west side]¹⁰ of Wales. [R.]¹¹ And so now in Brytayne, Danes and Pictes failleþ al out, and fyue naciouns woneþ þerynne; þat beþ Scottes in Albania, þat is Scotlond, Britouns in Cambria, þat is Wales, but þat Flemmynges woneþ ynne is in¹² West Wales, and

TREVISA.

Scottisse costes and see, so they brou3hte in to that londe the iij^{the} nacion. *Beda, libro quinto, capitulo nono.* And for cause Engliche men other Saxones toke their originalle of Germanye, 3itte thei be callede schortely Germani of the nye peple of Britones. R. And abowte the viij^{c.} yere of grace Egbertus kyng of Weste Saxones commaundede alle the inhabitores of that londe to be callede Engliche men. *Alfridus.* After the tymes of Egberte by ij^{c.} yere foloenge allemoste, the Danes entreng in to that yle brou3hte the v^{the} peple in to hit vn to the tymes of Seynte Edwarde, but thei failede afterwarde. After that the Normannes with William Conqueroure subduenge Engliche men to theyme, hauenge that londe in possession vn to this tyme, brou3hte the vj^{the} peple to that yle. But after that men of Flaundes toke to theyme an inhabitation at Mailros, the este plage of Englonde, with a grete multitude, in the tyme of kyng Henry the firste, and brou3hte the vij^{the} peple in to Englonde as for a season and tyme. But after that thei were removede

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ of men, a., Cx.² nono, Cx.³ So a. and Cx.; clepeþ schortly þc, MS.⁴ badde men to calle, Cx.⁵ So a.; londe of, MS.⁶ his tyme] om. a. and Cx., probably rightly.⁷ kepe they, Cx.⁸ Henry his tyme, a.⁹ put thens and dryuen, Cx.¹⁰ Added from a. and Cx.¹¹ Reference added from Cx.¹² is in] that is, Cx.

Pictorum
dolosa
extinctio.

bria, Flandrensibus in Westwallia, Normannis et Anglis permixtim in tota insula.¹ Cum igitur de subtractione Danorum quoad modum et eventum² apud historicos nulla sit hæsitatio, qualiter Picti defecerint³ modo sit agendum.⁴ *Giraldus, distinctione prima, capitulo septuagesimo quinto.*⁵ Occupata aliquando⁶ a Saxonibus Britannia,⁷ stabilique cum Pictis pace firmata, Scoti, qui Pictis adjuncti supervenerant, videntes Pictos quamquam pauciores, tamen armis et animi⁸ præstantiores, ad solitas tanquam sibi innatas⁹ proditioes, quibus cæteris præminent gentibus, recurrerunt.¹⁰ Convocatos¹¹ namque¹² tanquam ad convivium Pictorum magnates, captata crapulæ opportunitate, extractione clavorum qui tabulata tenebant, (in bancorum concavitate sedebant,)¹³ mira decipula poplite tenus communiter¹⁴ et improvise lapsos statim trucidarunt. Sicque ex¹⁵ duobus populis gens bellicosior totaliter evanuit.

¹ Slightly altered and transposed in C.D.

² *quoad . . . eventum*] om. C.D.

³ *defecerunt*, B.

⁴ *modo sit agendum*] videndum est, C.D.

⁵ C.D. omits reference; *cap. 17°*, A. B., Gale. The true reference is to c. 6, as before; C. and D. agree best with Giraldus.

⁶ *aliquando*] om. C.D.

⁷ *insula*, C.D.

⁸ *omnino*, B.; *animo*, A., Gale.

⁹ *innatas sibi*, B.

¹⁰ Slightly altered in C.D.; *recurrerunt* before *quibus* in B.

¹¹ *Convocatosque*, E.

¹² *itaque*, C.D.

¹³ *sedebant*] *sederunt*, B.; *quibus* *insidebant*, C. (not D.)

¹⁴ *similiter*, C. (not D.) The sentence is slightly varied in these MSS.

¹⁵ *de*, C.D.

Normans and Englischemen [ben] i-medled¹ in alle þe ilond. TREVISA.
 For it is no doute in stories how and in what manere þe Danes
 were i-putte away and destroyed out of Bretayne; now it is
 [to]² declarynge how þe Pictes were destroyed and failed.
Giraldus, distinctione prima, capitulo 17. Bretayne was som-
 tyme occupied wip Saxons, and pees was i-made and i-stabled³
 wip the Pictes; þanne Scottes⁴ þat come wip the Pictes
 syhe⁵ þat þe Pictes were lasse þan þe Scottes, and⁶ were
 nobler of dedes and better men of armes þanne were þe Scottes;
 þanne þe Scottes⁷ turnede to hir kynde⁸ tresouns þat þey vseþ
 ofte, for in tresoun þey passeþ⁹ oþer men, and beþ tretours
 as hit were by kynde. For þey preyed to a feste al þe grete
 of þe Pictes, and wayted her tyme when þe Pictes were at
 ese and mery, and hadde wel i-dronke, and drewe vp nayles
 þat helde vp þe holow benches vnder þe Pictes, and þe
 Pictes sodenliche an vnware fel ouer þe hammes into a
 wonder putfalle.¹⁰ Þanne þe Scottes fille on þe Pictes and
 slowh hem, and lefte noon onlyue;¹¹ and so of þe tweye

to Hauerforde, at the weste parte of Wales, thro commaunde- MS. HARL.
 mente of þe the same kyng. R. And so by succession 2261.
 of tymes, the Danes failenge in Englonde, and Pictes, now
 Albania is inhabite with Scottes, Wales with Britones, and
 men of Flaundes in Weste Wales, Normannes and Engliche
 men mixte in alle the yle of Briteyne. As in the sub-
 traccion of Danes as vn to the maner and chaunce þer of
 croniclers make noo mencion, but hit schal be determinate
 consequently how the Pictes failede. *Giraldus, distinctione*
prima. Briteyne occupiede some tyme with the Saxones,
 and a stable fidelite made with the Pictes, the Scottes whiche f. 76. a.
 were ioynede to the Pictes seenge the Pictes thauþhe fewe
 in nowmbre, neuertheles thei were myȝhty men of armes
 and bolde of herte, desirede the capiteynes of the Pictes
 and mony other to the feste, whiche vsenge a cautele
 made the seetes in there festes to be movable with pynnes
 of woode; and when the Pictes ȝafe attendaunce to surfette
 and ryette, the Scottes toke aweye the nailes other pynnes,
 and so the Pictes felle bakwarde, the legges of theyme beenge
 vpwarde, in to holoo places vnder the seetes, and so thei
 were alle sleyne. And so of ij. bolde peple, the more bolde

¹ *i-medled, a.; ben men medled,*
 Cx.
² Added from *a.* and Cx.
³ *stablysshyd, Cx.*
⁴ *the (sic) Scottes, a., Cx.*
⁵ *size, a.; sawe, Cx., who varies*
 the sentence.

⁶ *and] om., a.*
⁷ Cx. adds, *hauyng therof enuye.*
⁸ *naturel, Cx.*
⁹ *tresoun ... apasseþ, a.*
¹⁰ Sentence varied in Cx.
¹¹ *only, a.; alyue, Cx.*

Altera vero gens Scotorum longe¹ impar, ex tali² proditione emolumentum³ quodammodo consecuta, totam⁴ terram illam, quam a nomine suo Scotiam vocaverunt,⁵ usque hodie possident.⁶ Quibus eo tempore, diebus videlicet Edgari regis,⁷ Kynadius⁸ Alpini filius præsidens⁹ Pictaviam invasit, Pictos delevit, sexies Saxoniam debellavit, et terram omnem¹⁰ a mari Scotico usque ad flumen Twedæ¹¹ usurpavit.

CAP. LIX.

*De incolarum linguis.*¹²

*Ranulphus.*¹³ Ut patet ad sensum,¹⁴ quot in hac insula¹⁵ sunt gentes, tot gentium sunt linguæ; Scoti tamen et Wallani,¹⁶ uptote cum aliis nationibus impermixti, ad purum pæne pristinum retinent idioma; nisi forsitan¹⁷ Scoti ex¹⁸ convictu Pictorum, cum quibus olim confederati cohabitabant,¹⁹ quippiam contraxerint

¹ *modis omnibus*, add. C.D.

² *tali*] om. C.D.

³ *emolumenta*, C. (not D.)

⁴ *a mari usque ad mare*, add. C.D.

⁵ *dixerunt*, C.D.

⁶ *in hodiernum diem obtinent*, C.D.

⁷ *diebus . . . regis*] om. C.D.

⁸ *Linaldus*, B.; *Kinaldus*, A.

⁹ *possidens*, Gale, absurdly.

¹⁰ *omnem*] dudum Saxonibus subtractam, quæ est, C.D.

¹¹ *flumen Twedæ*] Mailros, quæ est in ripa Twedæ fluminis, C.D.

¹² So Gale; *moribus*, E.

¹³ *Ranulphus*] om. A.B.D.

¹⁴ *Ut . . . sensum*] om. C.D.

¹⁵ *in . . . insula*] incolarum, B.

¹⁶ So E., Gale; *Wallici*, B.

¹⁷ *forte*, B.

¹⁸ *a*, C.D.

¹⁹ *habitabant*, B.

peple þe better werryour was ¹ hollyche destroyed. Bote þe TREVISIA.
 opere, þat beep þe Scottes, þat beep traytours, wel ² vnliche
 to þe Pictes, took profiȝt by þat false tresoun; for þei
 took al þat lond, and holdeþ it ȝit hider to, and clepeþ hit
 Scotlond after here ³ owne name. Þat tyme, þat was in kyng
 Edgar his tyme, Kynadius Alpynus his sone was ledere of
 Scottes, and werred in Picten londe, ⁴ and destroyed þe
 Pictes; he werred sixe sipes in Saxon, and took al þat ⁵ lond
 þat is bitwene Twede and þe Scottische see, wiþ wrong and
 wiþ strengþe.

De incolarum linguis. Capitulum quinquagesimum nonum.

As it is i-knowe how meny manere peple beep in þis ilond,
 pere beep also so many dyuers ⁶ longages and tonges; noþeles
 Walsche men and Scottes, þat beep nouȝt i-medled ⁷ wiþ oper
 naciouns, holdeþ wel nyh ⁸ hir firste longage and speche; but
 ȝif the ⁹ Scottes þat were somtyme confederat and wonede wiþ

peple was vtterly destroyed. That other peple of Scottes MS. HARL.
 hauenge a grete awayle by the dethe of theyme, haue that 2261.
 londe in possession whom thei calle Scotlande vn to this
 tyme. And also Kinadius, the son of Alpinus, entrede in to
 the cuntre of the Pictes in the tyme of kyng Edgare, and
 destroyede theyme, [and] fiȝhtenge soore vj. tymes ageyne
 the Saxones, presumede alle the grownde from the Scottisse
 vn to the water of Twide departenge now Englonde from
 Scottelonde.

Of the langage of the inhabitatores of Englonde.

Capitulum quinquagesimum nonum.

Hir may be schewede clerely to the wytte that there
 were so many diuersites of langages in that londe as were
 diuersites of naciouns. But Scottes and men of Wales
 kepe theire propre langage, as men inpermixte with other
 naciounes; but peraventure Scottes haue taken somme parte

¹ *werriours were, Cx.*

² *So Cx.; were wel, MS.*

³ *So a. ß.; theyr, Cx.; his, MS.*
 There is much confusion of num-
 bers generally, and of the pronouns
 especially, in the MSS. of Trevisa's
 text.

⁴ *Pictelond, a., Cx.*

⁵ *þe, a., Cx.*

⁶ *dyuers] om. a. and Cx.*

⁷ *melled beþ, a.*

⁸ *kepe neygh yet, Cx.*

⁹ *yet tho, Cx.*

in sermone.¹ Flandrenses vero, qui occidua Walliæ incolunt, dimissa jam barbarie,² Saxonice satis proloquuntur. Angli quoque, quamquam ab initio tripartitam sortirentur linguam, austrinam scilicet, mediterraneam, et borealem, veluti ex tribus Germaniæ populis procedentes, ex commixtione tamen primo cum Danis, deinde cum Normannis,³ corrupta in multis patria⁴ lingua peregrinos jam captant boatus⁵ et garritus. Hæc quidem nativæ linguæ corruptio provenit hodie multum⁶ ex duobus; quod videlicet pueri in scholis contra morem cæterarum nationum a primo⁷ Normannorum adventu, derelicto proprio vulgari, construere Gallice compelluntur;⁸ item quod filii nobilium ab ipsis cunabulorum crepundiis ad Gallicum idioma⁹ informantur. Quibus¹⁰ profecto¹¹

Linguae
nativæ
corruptionis
causæ.

¹ *in sermone*] in verbo, B., apparently.

² *barbare*, B.; *barbaria*, E., Gale.

³ *quorum juga pertulerunt*, add. C.D.

⁴ *propria* Gale.

⁵ *balatus*, C.D.

⁶ *potissime*, C.D.

⁷ *post*, B.

⁸ *compellantur*, B.

⁹ *idioma*] om. C.D.

¹⁰ *Quos*, C.D.

¹¹ *agrestes et*, add. C.D.

þe Pictes drawe somewhat after hir speche; but þe Flemmynges. **TREUISA.** þat woneþ in þe weste side of Wales haueþ i-left her straunge speche and spekeþ Saxonliche i-now.¹ Also Engliche men, þey [þei]² hadde from the bygynnyng þre manere speche, norþerne,³ sowþerne, and middel speche in þe myddel of þe lond, as þey come of þre manere peple of Germania, nopeles by comyxtioun and mellyng firste wip Danes and afterward wip Normans, in meny⁴ þe contray longage is apayred, and som vseþ straunge⁵ wlafleryng,⁶ chiteryng, harrayng, and garrayng grisbayting.⁷ This apayryng of þe burpe of þe⁸ tunge is bycause of tweie þinges; oon is for children in scole azenst þe vsage and manere of alle opere naciouns beþ compelled for to leue hire owne langage, and for to construe hir lessouns and here þynges in Frensche, and so þey haueþ sep⁹ þe Normans come first in to Engeland.¹⁰ Also gentil men children beþ i-tauzt to¹¹ speke Frensche from þe tyme þat þey beþ i-rokked in here cradel, and kunneþ speke and playe wip a childes broche; and vplondisshe men wil likne hym self to gentil men, and fondeþ wip greet besynesse for to speke Frensee, for to be i-tolde of.¹² *Treuisa.* Þis manere was moche i-vsed to for firste

in their comunicacion of the langage of Pictes, with whom **MS. HARL.** thei dwellede somme tyme, and were confederate with theyme. **2261.** Men of Flaundes that inhabite the weste partes of Wales levenge the speche of barbre speke after the Saxones. And thauzhe men of Englonde hade in the begynnyng a langage tripartite, as of the sowthe parte of Englonde, of the myddelle parte of Englonde, and of the northe parte of Englonde, procedenge as of thre peple of Germanye, borowe moche in their speche now, as of¹³ thro the commixtion f. 79 b. with the Danes and after that with the Normannes. The corrupcion of that natife langage is causede moche of ij. thynges, that is to say, childer sette to schole after the commenge of Normannes in to Englonde were compellede to constru in Frenche ageyne the consuetude of opere naciones. In so moche that the childer of nowble men, after that they were taken from the cradelle, were sette to lerne the speche of Frenche men. Wherefore churles seenge that, willenge to be like to theyme, laborede to speke Frenche with alle their myzhte. Where hit is to be hade

¹ *speken lyke to Saxons, Cx.*

² *þei]* added from *a.* and *Cx.*

³ *souþorn, norþorn, a.*

⁴ *many thynges, Cx.*

⁵ *So a. and Cx.; strong, MS.*

⁶ *wlafluyng, Cx.*

⁷ *grysbityng, a., Cx.*

⁸ *of þe]* om. *a.*; *appayryng of the langage, Cx.*

⁹ *sepþe þe, a.*

¹⁰ Sentence much varied in *Cx.*

¹¹ *forto, a.*

¹² Sentence abbreviated and much varied in *Cx.*

¹³ *So Harl. MS., but perhaps as of should be cancelled.*

rurales homines assimilari volentes,¹ ut per hoc spectabiliores videantur, francigenare² satagunt³ omni nisu.⁴ Ubi nempe⁵ mirandum videtur,⁶ quomodo⁷ nativa et⁸ propria Anglorum lingua,⁹ in unica insula coartata, pronunciatione ipsa¹⁰ sit tam diversa; cum tamen Normannica lingua,¹¹ quæ adventitia est, univoca maneat¹² penes¹³ cunctos. De prædicta quoque lingua Saxonica tripartita, quæ in paucis adhuc agrestibus¹⁴ vix remansit, orientales cum occiduis¹⁵ tanquam sub eodem cæli climate lineati¹⁶ plus consonant in sermone quam boreales cum austrinis. Inde est quod Mercii sive Mediterranei Angli, tanquam participantes natu-

¹ *in quibus merito genialis lingua remaneret, pro posse zelantes, C.D.*

² *francigenari, Gale.*

³ *satagunt] om. B.*

⁴ *Slightly varied in C.D.*

⁵ *nempe] om. B.*

⁶ *est, B.D.*

⁷ *quod, C.D.*

⁸ *et] om. Gale.*

⁹ *Transposed in C.*

¹⁰ *ipsa] om. C.D.*

¹¹ *lingua] om. C.D.*

¹² *manet, A.*

¹³ *pene penes, E. (not A.B.C.D., Gale.)*

¹⁴ *silvestribus, C.D.*

¹⁵ *cum occiduis] om. B.*

¹⁶ *limitati, C. (not D.)*

deth¹ and is sippe sumdel i-chaunged ; for Iohn² Cornwaile, TREVISIA.
 a maister of grammer,³ chaunged þe lore in gramer scole and
 construccioun of Frensche in to Engliche ; and Richard Pen-
 criche lerned þe⁴ manere techynge of hym and of⁵ oþere
 men of Pencrich ; so þat now, þe zere of oure Lorde a þowsand
 pre hundred and foure score and fyue, and of þe secounde
 kyng Richard after þe conquest nyne, in alle⁶ þe gramere
 scoles of Engeland, children leueþ Frensche and construeþ
 and lerneþ an Engliche, and haueþ þerby auantage in oon
 side and disauantage in anoper side ; here auantage is, þat
 þey lerneþ her gramer in lasse tyme þan children were i-wo-
 ned to doo ; disauantage is þat now children of gramer scole
 conneþ⁷ na more Frensche þan can hir lift heele, and þat is
 harme for hem and þey schulle passe þe see and trauaille in
 straunge landes and in many oþer places. Also gentil men
 haueþ now moche i-left for to teche here children Frensche.
 R̄. Hit semeþ a greet wonder how Engliche, [þat is þe
 burpe tonge of Englishe]⁸ men and her owne langage and
 tonge, is so dyerse of sown⁹ in þis oon ilond, and þe langage
 of Normandie is comlynge of anoper londe, and hath oon
 manere soun among alle men þat spekeþ hit ariȝt in Engeland.¹⁰
Trevisa. Neuerþeles þere is as many dyuers manere Frensche
 in þe reem of Fraunce as is dyuers manere Engliche in þe
 reem of Engeland. R̄. Also of þe forsaide Saxon tonge þat
 is i-deled aþre, and is abide scarsliche wiþ fewe vplondisse

in meruayle that the propr langage of Engliche men MS. HARL.
 scholde be made so diurse in oon lytelle yle in pronuncia- 2261.
 cion, sythe the langage of Normannes is oon and vniuocate
 allemoste amonge theyme alle. But as of the tripartite
 langage of Saxones, whiche remaynethe now but amonge
 fewe men, the¹¹ weste men of Englonde sownde and acorde
 more with the men of the este of that londe as vnder the
 same clyme of heuyn, then the men of the northe with men
 of the sowthe. Wherefore hit is that Engliche men of þe
 Marches of the mydelle partes of Englonde, takenge as by

¹ to fore þe firste moreyn, a.

² Sir Iohan, Cx. ; who greatly
 varies the remainder of the extract
 from Trevisa.

³ gramyre, a.

⁴ þat, a.

⁵ of] om. a.

⁶ in al, a. ; and alle, MS.

⁷ So a. ; comeþ, MS.

⁸ Added from a.

⁹ soun, a.

¹⁰ Cx. amplifies the sentence thus :

“ And the langage of Normandye is
 “ comen oute of another lond, and
 “ hath one maner soun among al
 “ men that speketh it in Englonde ;
 “ for a man of Kente, southern,
 “ western, and northern men speken
 “ Frensche al lyke in sowne and
 “ speche ; but they can not speke
 “ theyr Englyssh so.”

¹¹ the the, Harl. MS.

ram¹ extremorum, collaterales linguas² arcticam et antarcticam melius intelligant quam adinvicem se intelligunt³ jam⁴ extremi. ⁵*Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio*. Tota⁶ lingua Northimbrorum,⁷ maxime⁸ in Eboraco, ita stridet incondita,⁹ quod nos australes eam vix intelligere possumus; quod puto propter viciniam¹⁰ barbarorum contigisse, et etiam propter jugem remotionem regum¹¹ Anglorum¹² ab illis partibus, qui magis ad austrum diversati,¹³¹⁴ si quando boreales partes adeunt,¹⁵ non nisi magno auxiliatorum manu pergunt.¹⁶ *Ranulphus*.¹⁷ Frequentioris autem moræ in austrinis partibus¹⁸ quam in borealibus causa potest esse gleba feracior,¹⁹ plebs numerosior, urbes²⁰ insigniores, portus accommodatiores.

Lingua
Anglorum
boreali-
um ab australi-
bus vix
intelligi
potest.

¹ *naturam*] om. E.

² *linguas*] om. C. (not D.)

³ So D.; *intelligent*, A.E., which, as well as Gale, have *intelligunt* above.

⁴ *nam*, B.

⁵ *Quod testatur*, add. C.D.

⁶ *inquit*, add. C.D.

⁷ *Northanhumbroorum*, B.; *Northumbriæ*, D.

⁸ *et maxime*, C.D.

⁹ *incognita*, B.

¹⁰ *vicinitatem*, C. (not D.); *viciniam*, A.

¹¹ *quondam*, add. C.D.

¹² *modo Normannorum*, add. C.D.

¹³ *sunt versati*, B.; *conversati*, C. (not D.)

¹⁴ *domestico militum contenti numero*, add. C.D.

¹⁵ *adierunt*, D.

¹⁶ *manu pergunt*] comitatu vadunt, C.D.

¹⁷ *Ranulphus*] om. A.B.C. The latter part is as follows in C.D. :
" Cujus quidem demorationis regum in austrinis partibus causa solet esse quod ad austrum gleba sit feracior, plebs numerosior, aer temperatior, urbes insigniores, et plures portus ad necessaria aliunde convehendo accomodatiores, utensilia denique, suppellectilia, et quicquid humano usui congruit præstantius ministrantur."

¹⁸ *partibus austrinis*, B.

¹⁹ *feracior*, A.

²⁰ *et urbes*, A.

men is greet wonder; for men of þe est wip men of þe west,¹ TREVISA.
 as it were vndir þe same partie of heuene, acordeþ more
 in sownyng of speche þan men of þe norþ wip men of þe
 soup; þefore it is þat Mercii, þat beep men of myddel Enge-
 lond, as it were parteners of þe endes, vnderstondeþ bettre þe
 side langages, norþerne and souþerne, þan norþerne and souþ-
 erne vnderstondeþ eiper oþer.² *Willelmus de Pontificibus,*
libro tertio. Al þe longage of þe Norþhumbres, and specialliche
 at 3ork, is so scharp, slitting, and frotyng and vnschape, þat
 we souþerne men may þat longage vnneþe vnderstonde. I
 trowe þat þat is bycause þat þey beep nyh to straunge men
 and naciouns³ þat spekeþ strongliche,⁴ and also bycause þat
 þe kynges of Engeland woneþ alwey fer from þat cuntrey; for
 þey beep more i-torned to þe soup contray, and 3if þey⁵ goop
 to þe norþ contray þey goop wip greet [help]⁶ and strengþe.
 Þe cause why þey beep more in þe soup contrey þan in þe
 norþ, [is] for hit⁷ may be better corne londe, more peple,
 more noble citees, and more profitable hauenes.

participacion the nature of bothe extremities, vnderstonde MS. HARL.
 the langages collateralle arthike and anthartike better then 2261.
 the extremities vnderstonde theyme selfe to geder. *Willel-*
mus de Pontificibus, libro tertio. Alle the langage of men
 of Northumbrelonde, and specially in Yorke, sowndethe so
 that men of the sowthe cuntre may vnnethe vnderstonde
 the langage of theyme, whiche thyng may be causede for
 the nye langage of men of barbre to theyme, and also
 for the grete distaunce of kynges of Englonde from hyt,
 whiche vse moste the southe partes of that londe, returnenge
 not in to the costes of the northe but with a grete multi-
 tude. Also an other cause may be assignede, for the sowthe
 partes be more habundante in fertilite then the northe
 partes, moo peple in nowmbre, hauenge also more plesaunte
 portes.

¹ *west is*, MS. (not *a.*).

² Sentence slightly varied in Cx.

³ *aliens*, *a. β.*

⁴ *straungliche*, *β.* and Cx.; which seems right, but the extract from

William is so altered, that Caxton's critical authority is here very slight.

⁵ *he*, *a. β.*

⁶ Added from *a.*

⁷ *for hit*] om. *a. β.*; *is by cause that ther is*, Cx.

CAP. LX.

*De incolarum moribus.*¹

Gentis
Flandrensis
mores et
vaticina-
tiones.

Giraldus. Significatis superius² utcumque Wallanorum et Scotorum moribus, jam de ritibus permixti Anglorum populi erit perorandum. *Giraldus in Itinerario.* Et quidem gens illa Flandrensis³ ad occidentem Walliæ, quasi Anglica jam convictu⁴ est effecta; fortis⁵ est et robusta, bellico conflictu⁶ Cambrensibus infestissima, lanificiis et⁷ mercimoniis usitatissima,⁸ ad subeundum terræ marisque pericula pro lucro captando promptissima, vicissim pro loco et tempore nunc ad arma nunc ad aratra accommoda. De qua⁹ gente mirandum¹⁰ videtur, quod in armis arietum dextris carne nudatis non assis sed elixis¹¹ futura prospiciunt,¹² præterita, et¹³ præsentia; sed¹⁴ loco absentia, quasi quodam spiritu fatidico¹⁵ et arte miranda, pacis et guerræ signa, regni statum, cædes¹⁶ et adulteria, rimularum¹⁷ et notularum indiciiis certissime¹⁸ declarat.¹⁹

Ranulphus. Reliqua vero gens Anglorum Loegriam

¹ *De gentis hujus moribus*, A.; *De gestis et moribus*, C.; *De gentis hujus terræ moribus*, D.; B. omits title.

² *Digestis in superioribus*, C.D.

³ *Flandrensis*] added in margin in C. in another ink; omitted in D.

⁴ *conventu*, B.

⁵ *quasi . . . fortis*] apud Roos et Haverford dudum transmissa origine Flandrensis, convictu jam Anglica est effecta gens fortis, &c., C.D.

⁶ *belli conflictu assiduo*, C.D.

⁷ *et*] om. A.E.

⁸ *lanificiis . . . usitatissima*] om. C.

⁹ *De qua*] Hac autem de, C.D.

¹⁰ *mirandum*] notabile mihi, C.D.

¹¹ *ulixis*, A.; *elixis*, B.; *tam*, ins. C.D.

¹² *quam*, ins. C.D.; *præsentia et præterita*, A.B.

¹³ *etiam*, ins. C.

¹⁴ *sed*] om. A.

¹⁵ *prophético*, C.; *vaticido*, MSS. and Gale.

¹⁶ *sedes*, A.B.

¹⁷ *rimularum*] rumularum (rimarum, D.) quarundam, C.D.

¹⁸ *certissime*] om. Gale.

¹⁹ *declarant*, C. (not D.)

De gentibus hujus moribus. Capitulum sexagesimum.

TREVISA.

Giraldus in Itinerario. For þe maneres and þe doynge of Walsche men and of Scottes beþ to fore honde somdel declared, now of þe maneres and of þe doynge of þe medled¹ peple of Engelond nedep forto telle. But þe Flemynges þat beþ in þe westside of Wales beþ now by torned as þough þey were Engliche by cause of companye wiþ Engliche men, and þey beþ stalworþe² and stronge to fiȝte, and beþ þe moste enemyes þat Walsche men haþ,³ and vseþ marchaundyse and cloþynge, and beþ ful redy to putte hem self to auentures and to peril in þe see and in þe⁴ lond, by cause⁵ of greet wynnynge, and beþ redy for to goo somtyme to þe plowȝ and somtyme to dedes of armes whan tyme and place axep. Hit semeþ of þis⁶ men a grete wonder⁷ þat in a boon of a wethres riȝt schuldre, whan þe flesche is aweye i-sode⁸ and nouȝt i-rosted, þey knowep what hap be do, is i-doo, and schal be doo, and as hit were by a spirit of prophecie and a wonderful craft þey telleþ what me doþ in fer contrayes, tokens of pees and of werre, þe staat of þe reeme,⁹ sleynge of men, and spousebreche; soche þey declareþ certeynliche by schewynge of tokenes and of synnes¹⁰ þat beþ in suche a schulder boon. R. But þe Engliche men þat woneþ in Engelond, þat beþ i-

*Of the maneres of the peple of hit.*MS. HARL.
2261.*Capitulum sexagesimum.*

A DECLARACION hade in processe precedenge as of þe maneres of men of Wales and of Scottes, we schalle determinate of the rites of the permixte peple of Englonde. *Giraldus in Itinerario.* And that peple of Flaundes f. 77. a. whiche inhabite the weste partes of Wales is made now in disposicion like to the peple of Englonde, beenge myȝhty and stronge in conflictes and in batelle, contrarious to Walsche men, vsenge moche wolle and marchaundise, prompte to take on them perelle of the see either of the londe for lucre, nowe applienge theyme to labour, as for the place and tyme, and soone to batelle. R. That other peple of Engliche men inhabitenge Loegria, as of yles permixte,

¹ melled, a.	⁶ these, Cx.
² myghty, Cx., who has also many slight variations.	⁷ þis crafte ys nat usyd þer now as y trow. Note in MS.
³ haueþ, a.	⁸ i-sode] So a.; is sode, MS.
⁴ þe] om. a.	⁹ reame, a.; royamme, Cx.
⁵ and by cause, MS. (not a. or Cx.)	¹⁰ synnes, a.

Reliqua-
rum gen-
tium vir-
tutes et
vitia.

inhabitans, utpote¹ insulana,² permixta, et a primitivis scatebris longius derivata, proprio motu etiam sine alieno hortatu facile flectitur ad opposita; adeo quoque quietis impatiens, ³ curæ æmula,⁴ otium ⁵ nauseat; (*Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio;*) ut⁶ cum hostes externos funditus depresserit, ipsa⁷ mutuo se⁸ conterat, et more vacui stomachi agat in seipsam. *Ranulphus.*⁹ Gens tamen australis quietior et mitior, borealis vero mobilior et ferocior, gens media participii¹⁰ vicem tenet.¹¹ Item¹² gens Angligena præ cæteris gulæ¹³ dedita, in victu¹⁴ et vestitu multum¹⁵ sumptuosa; quod quidem vitium a diebus Hardekanuti¹⁶ regis Danici, qui bina bis fercula etiam¹⁷ in cœnis jusserat apponi, creditur contraxisse. Gens hæc equo et pede¹⁸ expedita; ad omne genus armorum accommoda;¹⁹ in bellicis congressibus,²⁰ ubi fraus abfuerit,

¹ *ut puta*; B.

² *Loegriam . . . insulana*] per Loegriam, C. (not D.)

³ *ut*, ins. B.

⁴ *quæ*, ins. C. (not D.)

⁵ *socium*, B.

⁶ *Et*, B.

⁷ *ipsam*, B.

⁸ *mutuo se*] se mutuo, C. (D. omits *se*; *de*, E.)

⁹ *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.

¹⁰ *participia*, E.

¹¹ *Ranulphus*, ins. C.D.

¹² *Item*] om. C.D.

¹³ *gulæ*] nationibus cibis et potibus, C.D.

¹⁴ *in victu*] om. B.

¹⁵ *nimum*, C.D.

¹⁶ *Hardeknuti*, A.; *Hardeknuti*, B.

¹⁷ *etiam*] om. B.

¹⁸ *tam pede quam equo*, C.D.

¹⁹ *ad omnem militiæ conflictum apta*, add. C.D.

²⁰ *conflictibus*, C. (not D.)

medled¹ in þe ilond, þat [beþ]² fer i-spronge from þe welles³ TREVISA.
 þat þey spronge of first, wel liȝtliche wiþ oute entisyng of eny
 oper men, by here owne assent tornen⁴ to contrary dedes. And
 so⁵ vnsey, also ful vnpacient of pees, enemy of besynesse, and
 wlatful of⁶ sleupe, (*Willelmus de Pontificibus, libro tertio*),
 þat whan þey haueþ destroyed here enemyes al to þe grounde,
 þanne þey fiȝteþ wiþ hem self, and sleep eueriche oper, as a voyde
 stomak and a clene worcheþ in hit self. [R.]⁷ Nopeles men of
 þe souþ beþ esier and more mylde; and men of þe north be⁸
 more vnstable, more cruel, and more vnsey; þe myddel men beþ
 someþe partyners wiþ boþe: also þey woneþ⁹ hem to glotonye
 more þan oper men, and beþ more costlewe in mete and in
 drynke¹⁰ and in clopyng. Me troweþ¹¹ þat þey took þat vȳce¹²
 of kyng Hardeknute þat was a Dane, for he sette twyes double
 messe and also at soper.¹³ Þese men been speedful boþe on hors
 and on foote, able and redy to alle manere dedes of armes, and
 beþ i-woned¹⁴ to haue the victorie and þe maistrie in euerich

be liȝhtely declynede thro their awne mocion vn to thynges MS. HARL.
 contrarious, whiche be soe impaciente, as Willelmus de Ponti- 2261.
 ficibus, libro tertio, rehersethe, that when that peple hathe
 depressede their enmyes then thei fiȝhte amonge theyme
 selfe, and laboure ageyne nature in the maner of a voide
 stomake. R. Neuerthelesse, the peple of the sowthe is
 meke and quiete, the peple of þe northe is more moveable
 and cruelle, the peple of the myddelle partes be in maner
 as a participulle. Also the peple of Englonde is ȝiffen
 more to glotony and to surfettes a fore other peple, takenge
 grete coste in meite and clothes, whiche is seide to haue
 bene taken in the tyme of Hardeknutus kyng, a Dane,¹⁵
 whiche vse many diversities of meites at a meite. That
 peple is apte to alle kyndes of armes, bothe on foote and
 on horse, wonte to haue a crowne off a lauref¹⁶ tre for the

¹ *i-medled* or *medled* is generally
medled in *a*.

² Added from *a*.

³ *places*, Cx., who has a few other
 slight variations.

⁴ *torne*, *a*.

⁵ So *a*. and Cx.; *Also*, MS.

⁶ *on*, *a*.; *ful of*, Cx.

⁷ Reference added from Cx.

⁸ *beþ*, *a*.

⁹ *vse*, Cx.; who has also various
 slight deviations throughout the
 extract.

¹⁰ *and in drynk*] om. *a*. and Cx.

¹¹ *Me supposeth*, Cx.

¹² *vse*, MS. (not *a*. or Cx.)

¹³ *souper*, *a*.; *at dyner and at soper*
also, Cx. (but the improvement
 seems to be his own. See the
 text.)

¹⁴ *wonte*, Cx.

¹⁵ So Harl. MS., but the sentence
 seems a little corrupt.

¹⁶ So Harl. MS.

solet lauream reportare. Gens ista¹ curiosa satis, ut noscat et narret² mirabilia quæ viderit; regiones colustrat;³ in solo proprio vix locupletior, in longinquis magis felix. Nova nancisci melius novit, quam hæreditaria conservare. Hinc est quod late per orbem dispergitur, putans sibi patriam omne solum. Gens denique⁴ ad omnem idonea industriam; sed ante factum importuna et præceps, post factum sagacior, facile deserit quod incepit. *Pol., libro sexto.*⁵ Proinde est quod Eugenius papa dixit, gentem Anglicam⁶ ad quæcunque vellet fore idoneam, et cæteris gentibus præferendam,⁷ nisi levitas animi impediret. Et sicut Hannibal negabat posse vinci Romanos nisi in patria propria, ita et⁸ gens Anglica⁹ dum peregrinatur invincibilis est, in sedibus propriis facilius¹⁰ expugnatur. *Ranulphus.*¹¹ Gens¹² ista¹³ quæ sua sunt fastidiens vituperat propria, commendat aliena; de status sui

¹ itaque ista, C.D.

² narrat, A.B.; aut narret, D.

³ rimatur, C.D.

⁴ quoque, A.B.; itaque, D.

⁵ C.D. omit reference.

⁶ Angligenam, D.

⁷ et . . . præferendam] om. C.D.

⁸ et] om. B.

⁹ Anglicana, B.

¹⁰ facilius] om. E.

¹¹ Reference added from B. and Gale.

¹² etiam, add. C.D.

¹³ ad aliena noscenda sive experienda valde curiosa, add. C.D. See Harleian translation.

fiȝt wher no treson is walkynge ; and [beȝ]¹ curious, and ^{TREVISIA.}
 kunneȝ wel i-now telle dedes and wondres þat þei haueth ..
 i-seie. Also þey goop in dyuers londes, vnnep̄e beep̄ eny men
 richere in her owne londe oȝere more gracious in fer and in
 straunge² londe. Þey³ konneȝ betre wyne and gete newe
 þan kepe her owne heritage ; þerfore it is þat þey⁴ beep̄
 i-spred so wyde and wenep̄ þat euerich oȝer⁵ londe is hir owne
 heritage.⁶ Þe men beep̄ able to al manere sleipe and witte,
 but to fore þe dede blondrynge and hasty, and more wys after
 þe dede, and leueȝ ofte⁷ liȝtliche what þey haueȝ bygonne.
Polycraticon, libro sexto. Þerfore Eugenius þe pope seide þat
 Englishe men were able to do what euere þey wolde, and to
 be sette and putte to fore alle oȝere, nere⁸ þat liȝt wiȝ letteȝ.
 And as Hannibal⁹ saide þat þe Romayns myȝte nouȝt be ouer-
 come but in hir owne cuntray : so Englishe men mowe not
 be ouercome in straunge londes, but in hir own cuntray þey
 beep̄ liȝtliche ouercome. R̄. Þese men despiseȝ hir owne, and
 preiseȝ oȝer menis, and vnnep̄e beep̄ apaide wiȝ hir owne
 estate ; what byfalleȝ and semeȝ oȝer men, þey wolleȝ glad-

victory in batelles, if treason reigne not amonge theyme. ^{MS. HARL.}
 That peple is curious ynowe that hit may knowe, and telle ^{2261.}
 meruellous thynges goenge to oȝer regiones, vnnethe ryche
 and fortunate in their awne londe, but fortunate specially
 in ferre costes. For hit can purchase better then kepe the
 propur inheritaunce of theyme, wherefore the peple of that
 londe is dispersede a brode thro alle the worlde, trawenge
 alle the worlde to be a cuntre to theyme ; a peple apte
 moche to wylenes and decepcion, but importune a fore the
 dede, levenge liȝhtly a thyng y-begunne. *Policronicon*,¹⁰
libro vij^{to}. Wherefore hit is that Eugenius the pope seide
 the peple of Englonde apte to euery thyng, and to be
 preferred a fore peple of other naciones but for inconstance
 of theyme ; and like as Hannibal denyede the Romanes to be
 ouercome but in their propre cuntre, soe in lyke wise the ^{f. 77. b.}
 peple of Englonde is invincible in other cuntres, and soone
 deuicte in their awne cuntre. R̄. The peple of Englonde is
 fulle curious to knowe straunge thynges by experience, deprave
 theire awne thynges [thei] commende other straunge,

¹ Added from *a.* and *Cx.*

² So *Cx.* ; *strounge*, *MS.*

³ *þy, a.*

⁴ *þeyȝ, a.*

⁵ *oȝer*] om. *a.* and *Cx.*

⁶ *heritage*] om. *a.* and *Cx.*

⁷ *of, a., Cx.*

⁸ *ne were that light wytte, Cx.,*
 just after.

⁹ *Hanyba, MS.*

¹⁰ So *Harl. MS.* at length.

gradu¹ vix unquam contenta, quod alteri congruit libenter in se transfiguratur; unde fit ut vernaculus quod armigeri est,² armiger quod militis, miles quod ducis, dux quod regis est in se repræsentat.³ Immo nonnulli⁴ omne genus circueuntes in nullo⁵ genere sunt, omnem ordinem attemptantes⁶ nullius ordinis sunt.⁷ Nam in gestu⁸ sunt histriones, in affatu Cicerones,⁹ in convictu nebulones, in quæstu caupones, in apparatu sunt tirones, in lucris Argi, in laboribus Tantali, in curis

¹ *de . . . gradu*] om. B.

² *est*] om. A.,

³ *representent*, B.

⁴ *Unde nonnulli*, A.; Gale, A., and E. omit *omne*.

⁵ *novo*, Gale, badly.

⁶ *acceptantes*, Gale, badly.

⁷ *omnem . . . sunt*] added in margin of C.—(D. has them in text).

⁸ *gestis*, B.

⁹ *Cicherones* or *Citherones*, MSS.; *Citherones*, Gale (for *Cithærones*?) which however brings out little or no sense.

lyche take to hem self; perfore hit is þat a ȝeman¹ arraieþ hym as a squyer, a squyer as a knyȝt, a kniȝt as a duke [and]² a duke as a kyng. Ȝit som goop a boutte to alle manere staate and beep in noon astaate,³ for þey þat wole take eueriche degree beep of non degre, for in berynge⁴ þey beep menstralles and heraudes,⁵ in talkyngre grete spekeres, in etyngre and in drynkynge glotouns, in gaderyngre of catel hoksters⁶ and tauerners, in aray tormentoures, in wynnynges Argi, in trauaile Tantal, in takyngre hede Dedaly, and in beddes Sardanapally, in chirches mamettes, in courtes ponder, onliche in privelege of clergie and in prouendres⁷ þey knowlecheþ hem silf clerkes. *Trevisa.* In wynnyngre þey beep Argy, in trauaile Tantal, in takyngre hede Dedaly, and in beddes Sardanapally. For to vnderstonde þis reson ariȝt foure wordes [perof]⁸ moste be declared, þat beep þese foure, Argi, Tantal, Dedaly, and Sardanapally; perfore take hede that Argus in an herde, Argus a schippe, a schipman, and a chapman. But here it is more to purpos þat poetes feyneþ oon þat was somtyme al ful of eyȝen in eueriche side⁹ and heet Argus, so þat this Argus myȝte see¹⁰ to fore and byhynde, vpwarde and downward, and al aboute in eueriche side, and by a manere likenessse of þis Argus, he þat is war and wys, and kan see and be war in eueriche side is i-cleped Argus, and ful of yȝen as Argus was. Ðan forto speke to meny such he moste be i-cleped Argi in þe plural nombre. Ðan in þat cronyke he seiþ þat þey beep Argy in wynnyngre, hit is to mene þat þey beep ware and seeþ aboute in euery side where wynnyngre may arise. Ðat oper word is Tantal; perfore take hede þat þe poete feyneþ þat Tantalus was a man and slowh¹¹ his owne sonne, perfore he was i-dampned to perpetual penaunce, as þe poete feyneþ þat Tantalus stondeþ¹² alway in a water vp anon to þe¹³ ouer

TREVISA.

vnnethe other neuer contente of the state of theire degre, transfigurengre to theyme that is congruente to an other man. Wherefore hit is seen oftetymes þat a yoman dothe represente as the state of a es[q]wier, an esqwier of a knyȝhte, a knyȝhte of a lorde, a lorde of a duke, a duke off a kyngre. There fore mony men goenge abowte euery degre be founde in noo degre, attemptenge euery ordre be not of eny ordre; for thei be as ioculars in behaour, glotones in meite, tauerners in expense, myȝhty men or frauncleones in apparelle, Argi in lucre, like to Tantalus in

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ ȝymman, a.² Added from a.³ no stat, a.⁴ beryng outward, Cx.⁵ herowdes, Cx.⁶ hucksters, Cx.⁷ prebendis, Cx.⁸ Added from a.⁹ So a; a side, MS.¹⁰ So Cx.; i-see, MS.¹¹ slow, a.¹² stondes, a.¹³ þe] om. a.

Dædali, in cubilibus Sardanapali, in templis simulacra,
 in curiis tonitrua, solis¹ privilegiis et præbendis clericos
 se fatentur. Sed et² in cunctis passim Angligenis³
 tanta vestium varietas et apparatus⁴ multiformitas
 inolevit, ut neutri jam generis quilibet pæne censeatur.⁵
 De qua re prophetavit quidam sanctus anachorita tem-
 poribus⁶ regis Egelfredi⁷ in hunc modum. *Henricus*,
libro sexto.⁸ Angli quia prodioni, ebrietati, et negli-
 gentiæ domus Dei dediti sunt, primo per Danos,
 deinde⁹ per Normannos, tertio per Scotos, quos vilis-

¹ *solis*] om. Gale.

² *etiam*, C.D.

³ *Angligenis*] om. Gale.

⁴ *multiplicitas ac*, ins. B.

⁵ *censeat*, E.

⁶ *tempore*, C.

⁷ *Egeldredi*, B. ; *Egelredi*, D.,
 Gale.

⁸ Added in margin of C.

⁹ *secundo*, C.D.

brerde ¹ of þe neþer lippe, and haþ all way euene at his mouþ ² **TREVISIA.**
 ripe apples and noble fruyt, ne water comeþ wiþ ynne his
 mouþ, he is so i-holde vp; and so he stondeþ in þat array
 bytwene mete and drynke, and may noþer ete ne drynke, and
 is an hongred and apirst þat woo is hym on lyue. By a manere
 likeness of þis Tantalus þey þat dooþ riȝt nouȝt, þere ³ moche
 þing is to doo in euery side, beþ i-cleped Tantalus. Hit semeþ
 þat þis sawe is to mene, in trauaille þey beþ Tantalus, for þey
 dooþ riȝt nouȝt þerto. Þe þridde word is Dedalus; take hede
 þat Dedalus was a wel sligh ⁴ man, and by likness of hym men
 þat beþ sliȝe beþ i-cleped Dedalus in þe plurel noumbre, so
 it is to mene as hit semeþ in þis sawe, in takyng hede and in
 cry ⁵ þey beþ Dedalus, þat is fel and sly. The ferþe word is
 [Sardanapallus; þerefore take hede þat], ⁶ Sardanapallus was a
 kyng, rex Assyriorum, and was ful vnchast, and by a manere
 liknesse of hym þey þat beþ swiþe vnchast beþ i-cleped
 Sardanapallus. R. But among alle Engliche i-medled to
 giders is so grete chaungyng and diuersite [of cloþinge and] ⁷
 of array [and so many manere and dyuerse shappes, that wel
 nyghe is there ony man knowen by his cloþyng and his
 arraye] ⁸ of what degre he is. Þerof prophecied an holy anker
 to kyng Egilred his tyme in þis manere. *Henricus, libro sexto.*
 Engliche men for þey woneþ hem to dronkelewnesse, to
 tresoun, and to rechelesnesse of Goddes hous, first by Danes
 and þanne by Normans, and at þe þridde tyme by Scottes, þat
 þey holdeþ most wrecches and leste worþ of alle, þey schulleþ be

laboure, and as Dedalus in cure, lyke to Sardanapallus in **MS. HARL.**
 beddes, simulacres in temples, thundres in courtes, know- **2261.**
 leggenge them to be clerkes throoonly priuileges and
 benefices other prebendes. But now in these daies suche
 diuersites of vesture and apparell be vsede alle moste
 amonge alle men of Englonde, that thei seme to be as of
 noo gendre or kynde; of whom an holy heremite did pro-
 phecy in the tyme of knyng Egilredus in thys maner.
Henricus, libro sexto. For cause that Engliche men be
 ziffen to treason, drunkenesse, and to the negligence of
 þe howse of God, thei schalle be punyschede sore, firste by
 Danes, in the secunde tyme by Normannes, in the thrydde
 tyme by the Scottes, whom thei acompte as a peple moste

¹ *brered, a.*

² *mouþ*] om. *a.*

³ So MS. *a.* and *β.*; but *where*
 seems to be required. See p. 187.

⁴ *subtyl and a slye, Cx.*; who has
 very much re-cast the whole extract
 from Trevisa.

⁵ *kuyre, a.*

⁶ Added from *a.*

⁷ Added from *a.*

⁸ Added from *Cx.*, who may have
 somewhat amplified his text.

simos reputant, erunt conterendi; adeoque¹ tunc varium erit sæculum, ut varietas mentium multimoda vestium variatione² designetur.³ *Explicit Liber Primus.*

LIBER SECUNDUS.

Prologus Libri Secundi.

CAP. I.

Major mundus propter minorem mundum (*i.e.* hominem) est creatus.

ORDO narrationis historicæ hoc expostulat, ut post descripta mundi⁴ loca etiam orbis gesta describantur. Sed si unumquodque propter quid et illud magis, cum propter minorem mundum factus sit major, juxta illud, "Major" inquit⁵ "serviet minori," non ab re erit, descripto in præcedentibus majori mundo,⁶ ipsum quoque minorem mundum⁷ in principio actuum suorum parumper describere; ut qualis quantusve sit agnos-

¹ *adeo*, B.; *adeo quia*, Gale.

² *varietate*, C. (not D.)

³ *designabitur*, D. (on an erasure).

⁴ *orbis*, C.D.

⁵ *inquit Scriptura*, B.

⁶ *mundo*] om. C.D.

⁷ *mundum*] om. C.D.

ouercome ; þan þe worlde schal be so vnstable and so dyuers TREVISA.
and variable þat þe vnstabilnesse of þouȝtes schal [be]¹ by-
tokened by many manere dyuersite of clopinge. *Explicit*
Liber Primus.

Incipit Liber Secundus. Capitulum primum.

AFTER þat places and contrees beþ [rekened and]² dis-
cryued of þe worlde wyde, þe ordre of þe tale of þe story
axep þat berynge and dedes of þe worlde be also discreued.
But ȝif³ every þing is for somewhat and þat is more, (*Trevisa*.
Here is⁴ auctorite of philosophre, and⁵ is to mene þat al þing
þat is resonabliche⁶ and kyndeliche i-ordeyned for anoper þing
as a mene forto come perto [and forto]⁷ save it, is i-or-
deyned for bettre þing and more noble þan is þat þing þat
is i-ordeyned⁸ perfore : ensauple,⁹ erynge and sowynge and
dongynge of lond is ordeyned for to haue good corne, [and
good corne]¹⁰ is better þan al þe oper deel ; also medecyne is
i-ordeyned for hele, and hele is better þan þe medecyne ; also

vile, in so moche that the worlde schalle be then so vari- MS. HARL.
able, that the diuersite of myndes schalle be designate in 2261.
the mony folde diuersite of vesture and of apparelle. *Ex-*
plicit Liber Primus.

INCIPIIT LIBER SECUNDUS.

Liber Secundus. Capitulum primum.

f. 78. a.

THE ordre of the narracion of stories requirethe that
the gestes of the worlde scholde be describete also after
the places of the worlde schewede and expressede ; then,
sythe the gretter worlde was made for the lesse worlde, as
hit is seide, "The gretter worlde schalle serue the lesse,"
then the descripcion in the precedenge processe of the
grete worlde schalle not be with owte a cause and vtilite.
Wyllenge now to describe the lesse worlde in the begyn-
nenge of his actes, that the qualite or quantite of hit may

¹ Added from a.

² Added from a. and Cx.

³ ȝif] om. Cx. ; badly, not per-
ceiving the extract from Trevisa to
be parenthetical.

⁴ þis, a., Cx.

⁵ and] om. Cx.

⁶ resonable, Cx.

⁷ Added from a. and Cx.

⁸ so ordeyned, a. ; soordeyning, Cx.

⁹ ensauple] om. Cx.

¹⁰ Added from a. and Cx.

catur qui tam pusillus in tam magno tam magnifica operatur. Et quidem cunctorum entium opifex, apud quem ideales rerum rationes sunt reconditæ,¹ post peractam majoris mundi machinam minorem mundum condidit, quem licet majori mundo prætulerit,² in eo tamen majoris mundi similitudinem impressit.³ In tribus namque⁴ assimilantur mundus et homo,⁵ in dimensione diametrali, in dispositione naturali, in operatione virtuali. Et primo quidem quamvis⁶ humani corporis longitudo quæ est a planta pedis usque⁷ ad verticem capitis⁸ sexies sit major ejus latitudine quæ est a crate lateris ad cratem, et etiam⁹ decies major ejus altitudine quæ est a dorso usque ad ventrem: veruntamen¹⁰ secundum Plinium, libro septimo, capitulo octavodecimo, quanta est distantia inter cenit¹¹ capitis

Homo et mundus inter se comparantur.

¹ *condita*, B.

² So A.B. ; *pertulerit*, E.

³ So A.E. ; *expressit*, B.C.D.

⁴ *autem*, B.

⁵ *et homo*, om. E.

⁶ *licet*, C.D.

⁷ *pedis usque*] om. C.D.

⁸ *capitis*] om. C.D.

⁹ *etiam*] om. B.

¹⁰ *veruntamen*] om. C.D. ; adding *tamen* after *Plinium*.

¹¹ *cenum* corrected to *cenit* in C. ; *chenit*, B., see Ducange, s.v. *cenith*.

mete and drynke and oper þynges beep i-ordeyned¹ for þe lyf, and þe lyf is better and more noble þan mete and drynke and alle opere² þinges þat beep so i-ordeyned for þe lyf.) R.—þanne, seþþe þat þe more worlde is i-made for þe lasse, as holy writte seiþ, “þe more schal serue þe lasse,” and now þe more world is discreued in oure foure sawes in þe firste book, þan it is skilful somdel to descryue þe lasse world also from þe bygynnyng of his forme³ dedes, þat⁴ hit myȝte be knowe what manere þing hit is and how grete, þat is so litel and doop so grete dedes in þe more worlde, þat is so grete and so huge. And also þe worchere and þe⁵ makere of alle þinges þat hap wip him schapliche resouns of al manere resouns and⁶ þinges, whanne he hadde i-made þe more worlde, þan he made þe lasse; and þey he made him lord of þe grete world, ȝit he prynted on hym þe likenesse of þe greet⁷ world. For a man and þe world beþ liche in þre þynges: in lengþe, in brede, and in dipnesse;⁸ in kyndely disposicion; and vertues worchyng.⁹ And firste þeiȝ þe lengþe of a manis body, þat is from þe sole of þe foot to þe top of þe heed, be¹⁰ suche sixe as þe brede, þat is from þe oon side of þe ribbes to þat oper side, and ten so moche as þe depnesse þat is from þe rugge¹¹ to þe wombe; nopeles Plinius, libro 7º, capitulo 18º, seiþ þat as moche space as is bytwene cinit,

TREVISA.

be knowen, whiche beenge so litelle worchethe so grete thynges in so grete a thyng. The maker of alle thynges, anendes whom the ydealle reasones of thynges be hidde, made the lesse worlde after the grete engyne of the worlde made, in whom he impressede the similitude of the grete worlde. For a man and the worlde be assimilate in iij. thynges, in dimension diametralle or dimetralle, in disposition naturalle, and in operation virtuale. And thauȝhe þe longitude of the body of man, whiche is from the soole of the foote vn to the toppe of the hedde, be vj. tymes more then the latitude of hym whiche is from side to side, and x. tymes more then þe altitude of hyt, whiche is from the backe to the bely; for¹² after the grete clerk Plinius, libro quinto, capitulo decimo octavo, what distaunce is betwene

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ So Cx. (but with *be* for *beep*); þat beep so i-ordeyned, MS. and *a*.

² þe opere, *a*.

³ forne, Cx.

⁴ So Cx.; þan, MS.

⁵ þe] om. *a*.

⁶ and] om. *a*; *al maner thynges*, Cx.

⁷ So *a*. and Cx.; *lasse*, MS.

⁸ and in dipnesse] om. *a*.

⁹ Here ys þe proporcyon of mannys body. Note in MS.

¹⁰ So *a*; *ben*, MS.

¹¹ rygge, *a*; *rigge*, Cx.

¹² The translator should have written *yet*.

nostri ad oppositum punctum in cælo, tanta est ab oriente in occidentem, sic fit in corpore humano ; quod quantum est homini¹ spatium a vestigio ad verticem, tantum est homini² spatium extensis³ manibus inter extrema longissimorum digitorum. Tradit etiam⁴ Plinius ibidem capitulo septimodecimo, quod in trimatu ætatis cujuslibet mensura erit futuræ staturæ dimidia, si vixerit. *Ranulphus*.⁵ Secundo, sicut videmus⁶ in mundo, ita in homine, quod partes et membra mutuo sibi correspondent, compatiuntur, et vicem supplent ; nam superiora regunt et influunt, inferiora supportant et serviunt, media recipiunt et refundunt. Et in utroque mundo dum membrum fuerit extra locum suum et intraverit alienum, fit statim perturbatio ; sicut quando aër includitur⁷ in terræ visceribus, fit terræ motus ; quando vero⁸ in nubibus, fit tonitrus ; sic quoque⁹ in cor-

¹ *hominis*, C. (not D.)
² *hominis*, C. (not D.) ; *ei*, B.
³ *expansis sive extensis*, C. (not D.)
⁴ *enim*, B.

⁵ *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.
⁶ *vidimus*, B.
⁷ *includerit*, E.
⁸ *vero*] om. C.D.
⁹ *quoque*] om. C.D.

pat is þe point pat is in þe welken¹ euen aʒenst hem² in þe TREVISA.
 oþer side of þe erþe, so moche is out of þe est in to þe
 weste; and so hit is in þe body of a man pat as moche as
 is from þe sole of þe foot to þe top of þe hede,³ so moche is
 bytwene his tweie lengest fynGRES endes, and he strecche out
 his armes and hondes abrood. Also Plinius þere⁴ riʒt, capitulo
 7^o,⁵ seip pat þe stature and þe mesure of a childe whan he is
 þre ʒere olde is euen half mesure of⁶ his stature pat he schal
 haue whan he is of age, and he lyue⁷ so longe. Þe secounde
 as we seeþ in þe world so we seeþ in a man, pat þe membres
 and þe parties helpeþ and stondeþ euerich oþer in stede, and
 byneneþ⁸ his woo. For þe ouer lymes gouerneþ and ʒeueþ;
 þe neþer lymmes bereþ and serueþ; þe myddel fongeþ and deleþ
 aboute to⁹ oþer lymes. And in eieþer¹⁰ world ʒif a lyme is oute
 of his owne place, and i-entred in to anoþer place þan his¹¹ owne,
 anon is grete distourbaunce i-made, as whan þe ayer¹² is closed¹³
 wiþ ynne þe erþe, þan þe erþe schakeþ,¹⁴ and whan with ynne
 þe cloudes þan is greet þondrynge; also in þe body of a man

cenit of oure hedde and a poynte contradictorious to hit in MS. HARL.
 heuyn, soe moche distaunce is from the este in to the weste; 2261.
 soe in lyke wyse hit is in the body of man, that as moche
 distaunce is betwene the soole of his foote to the toppe of
 the hedde, so moche distaunce is betwene the extremities
 of the longeste fynGERS, his armes extente. Also Plinius
 dothe rehearse in the same boke, capitulo 17^o, pat in euery
 thrydde age the measure of the peple schalle be but halfe of
 the firste age precedente in stature, if hit lyue. For lyke
 as we see in the worlde so hit is in man, that the partes
 and membres be corespondente to gedre and supplyenge
 the place of that other. For the bodies above gouerne
 and ʒiffe influence, the membres inferialle supporte and do
 seruyce, the meane other membres mediate, receyve, and
 refunde. And if a member of either worlde be owte of
 his place naturalle, and a straunge thyng haue introite f. 78. b.
 in to hit, the body is troublede anoon. As when the wynde
 is includede in the wombe of the erthe, a mouenge of the
 erthe is made, and when hit is in the clowdes a thundre is

¹ *wolkyn, a.*; *firmament, Cx.*

² *hym, Cx.*, more correctly.

³ *heued, a.*

⁴ *the, Cx.*

⁵ 17, *Cx.*

⁶ *and, a., Cx.*

⁷ *alyue, a.*

⁸ So *a.* and *Cx.*; *bymeneþ, MS.*

⁹ *about the, Cx.*

¹⁰ *the eyther, Cx.*

¹¹ *in his, Cx.*

¹² *eyer, a.*

¹³ *enclosed, Cx.*

¹⁴ *quaketh, Cx.*

pore humano quando ¹ membra dislocantur aut humores corrumpuntur, fit dolor et morbus. Insuper cum ² membra bene fuerint proportionata quoad figuram, colorem, qualitatem,³ quantitatem, situm, et motum, denotatur ⁴ bona mentis habitudo. Econtra ⁵ fit cum membra male ⁶ fuerint proportionata ;⁷ inde ⁸ sentiavit Plato quod qualis animalis effigiem gestat homo, talis animalis sequitur ⁹ mores et affectus. Præterea sicut in rerum ordine mundanarum supremum inferioris generis tangit infimum superioris ;¹⁰ utpote ostria, quæ quasi infimum tenent locum in genere animalium, parum excedunt vitam plantarum, eo quod immobilia sint ¹¹ terræ ¹² hærentia et solum habeant ¹³ tactum ; et ultimum terræ tangit infimum aquæ, et supremum

¹ cum, A.

² etiam cum, C. ; et cum, D.

³ qualitatem] om. C.D.

⁴ denotat, E.

⁵ E contrario, D.

⁶ male] om. B.

⁷ proportionantur, D.

⁸ inde et, C. (not D.)

⁹ gestat, C.D.

¹⁰ generis, ins. C.D.

¹¹ sunt, B.C.

¹² terræ] om. E.

¹³ habent, B.

whan þe lymes beþ awreiȝt¹ out of her² owne places, oper
 ȝif þe humours beþ apaired, þanne is ache, sicknesse, and
 sorwe. Also whan þe lymes beþ wel arayed, and as they
 schulde be in schappe, colour and hewe, manere, quantite, and
 gretnesse and smalnesse, meuyng and place, þan haþ þe man
 good þees and quiete, and is in good heele and reste. Þe
 contrary falleþ,³ and þe lemes⁴ be eucl and nouȝt riȝtly [and
 richeliche]⁵ arrayed; þerfore Plato ȝaf his doom, and seide
 suche ordenaunce, disposicioun, and schap as a man hap in his
 kyndeliche [membres and lymes, suche kyndeliche]⁶ maneres
 þey foloweþ in⁷ dedes. Also as it is in þe parties of þe
 grete world þat þey beþ so i-ordeyned and i-sette þat þe
 ouermeste⁸ of þe neþer kynde touche þe neþermeste⁹ of þe
 ouer¹⁰ kynde, as oistres and schelle fische, þat beþ as it were
 lowest in bestene¹¹ kynde, passeþ but litel þe perfeccioun of
 lyf of treen and of herbes, for þey mowe not meue hem but
 as culpes of þe see waggeþ wiþ þe water, elles þey cleueþ to þe
 erthe and mowe noþer [see]¹² ne hire, ne taste, ne smelle, but
 onliche fele whan þey beþ i-touched; and þe¹³ laste [of]¹⁴ þe
 erþe toucheþ þe lowest of þe water, and þe ouermeste¹⁵ of þe

TREVISA.

causede and made by hyt, in lyke wise in the body of
 man; sorowe and sekenesse be causede when membres be
 owte of theire places naturalle, auther humores be corrupte.
 And also lyke as a goode habitude of the mynde is signi-
 fiede when the membres be welle proporcionate as vn to
 figure, coloure, qualite, quantite, place, and movenge, and in
 sentence contrarious when the membres be inproporcionate to
 gedre; wherefore Plato ȝafe sentence that man folowethe
 the maneres and affectes of that beste, of whom he hathe
 similitude. And lyke as the hieste thyng of a thyng
 inferialle towchethe the laweste place of his superior, in
 the ordre of worldely thynges; as oestres, whiche holde as
 the laweste place in the kynde of bestes, excede but a
 litelle the life of plantes in that thei be immoveable and
 drawenge to the erthe, hauenge oonly the witte of towch-
 enge. And the hieste parte of the erthe towchethe the
 loweste parte of the water, and so ascendenge by degrees

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *writhed*, Cx.² *here*, a.³ So a. and Cx.; *conray failleþ*, MS.⁴ *lymes*, a.⁵ Added from a. Not in Cx.⁶ Added from a. and Cx.⁷ *and*, a., Cx. The latter varies the sentence.⁸ *highest*, Cx.⁹ *lowest*, Cx.¹⁰ *high*, Cx.¹¹ *beestes*, Cx.¹² Added from a. and Cx.¹³ *at þe*, MS. (not a. or Cx.)¹⁴ Added from a. and Cx.¹⁵ So Cx. (Words are repeated without sense in MS.)

aquæ tangit primum aeris, et sic gradatim ascendendo usque ad ultimum orbem: sic quoque supremum in genere corporum quod potest dici, corpus humanum, æqualiter complexionatum attingit infimum proximi generis superioris, quod¹ est anima humana, quæ quasi tenet ultimum gradum in genere intellectualium substantiarum. Atque ideo horizon dicitur et confinium corporeorum et incorporeorum, in qua gradatim ascenditur ab infima potentia usque ad supremam intellectivam,² quæ quando a terrenis affectibus fuerit depurata, attingit quandoque³ substantias separatas. Insuper et homo habet aliquid commune cum⁴ partialibus mundi rebus, quia, secundum Gregorium in homilia⁵ de Ascensione, homo⁶ habet esse cum lapidibus, vivere cum arboribus, sentire cum animalibus, intelligere cum angelis. Quinetiam in humano corpore apparet terra in carne et ossibus, aqua in sanguine et⁷ humoribus, aer in pulmone, ignis in corde. Sed et *homo* Latine⁸ dicitur *antropos* Græce, quasi arbor

¹ *quod*, A.

² So A.D.E.; *intelligentiam*, B.

³ *quandoque*] added in margin of C.

⁴ *cum*] om. E.

⁵ *Omelia*, MSS., and so below.

⁶ *in . . . homo*] om. C.D.

⁷ *sanguine et*] om. C.D.

⁸ *antropos dicitur*, B.; *Sed et homo Græce dicitur antropos, Latine, quasi arbor eversa*, D. This seems to be right, but was manifestly not Trevisa's text.

water toucheþ þe loweste of þe ayer, and so vpward by degrees anon to þe ouermeste hevene: also ¹ þe hiȝeste in bodiliche kynde, þat may skilfulliche be i-cleped manis body, kyndeliche and perfiltiche disposed arecheþ to þe lowest of þe nexte ouerkynde; þat is manis soule, þat holdeþ þe lowest degre of spiritis and of gostes þat haueþ knowleche and vnderstondinge, and perfore he is i-cleped orisoun, as it were þe next marche in kynde bytwene bodily and goostly þinges. By þe soule me gop vp from ² þe lowest kynde by degrees of knoweleche and vnderstondynge, and whan þe soule is al clene wiþ oute erpeliche likynge he recheþ operwhile to holy [spirites] ³ þat beþ no þyng bodilich. Also man ⁴ haþ somewhat comyn wiþ þynges þat beþ parties of þe grete world. For Gregorie in an omelye seiþ þat man haþ beynges wiþ stones, lyuynges wiþ trees and herbes, felynges ⁵ wiþ bestes, knowleche and vnderstondynge wiþ aungels. Also in manis body semeþ erþe in flesche and bones, water in blood and in oper humours, ayer in þe longen, ⁶ fuyre in þe herte; and hatte *homo* in Latyn and *antropos* ⁷ in Grewe, þat is as hit were a tree

TREVISIA.

vn to the laste worlde: so in lyke wise the hieste thyng in the kynde of bodies, that may be seide, the body of man egally complexionate, atteynethe the laweste thyng of the kynde superialle other generalite, whiche is the sawle of man, whiche holdethe as the laweste place in the kynde or generalite of substaunces intellectualle. Wherefore hit is called orizon, and as the coste of thynges corporealle and incorporealle, in whom hit is ascended by degres from the laweste power to the hieste powere intellectiue; whiche, separate somme tyme from substaunces terrestrialle, as in affecte atteynethe otherwhile substaunce separate. Also a man hathe somme thynges commune with parcialle thynges of þe worlde. For after Seynte Gregory, in an omely in the Ascencion of oure Lorde God, "A man hathe beenge with stones, lyvenge with trees, felenge with bestes, vnderstondenge with "angelles." Also erthe apperethe in the body of a man in the flesche and in the boones, water in the bloode and humores, aier in þe longes, and fire in the herte. But a man in Grewe is called *antropos*, as a tre euertede; for a

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ So MS. *a.β.*; but probably we should read *so*.

² *and from*, MS. (not *a.* or *Cx.*)

³ Added from *a.* and *Cx.*

⁴ So *a.* and *Cx.*; *men*, MS.

⁵ So *a.* and *Cx.*; *felynges*, MS. (first hand.)

⁶ *lungen*, *a.*

⁷ *antropos*, *a.*

eversa. Habet enim caput cum comis instar radices, et quasi ramos habet brachia cum cruribus. Quoad tertium simile, quod est¹ virtualis operatio,² videmus, ³sicut dicit Gregorius in homilia de Adventu, quod mundus in annis prioribus velut in juventute viguit; ad propagandam prolem robustus fuit, utpote⁴ salute corporum⁵ viridis, opulentia rerum pinguis; at nunc ipsa⁶ senectute sua deprimitur, et quasi ad vicinam mortem crebris molestiis urgetur. Ita et⁷ homini in juventute viget corpus, roboratur pectus, torosa est cervix,⁸ plena sunt brachia; in annis autem senilibus statura curvatur, cervix deprimitur, crebris suspiriis pectus urgetur, anhelitus succiditur,⁹ virtus per totum deficit; et etiam, si languor defuerit, plerumque ipsa salus in senibus est ægritudo. Præterea³ sicut videmus quod¹⁰ in majori mundo duo sunt¹¹ motus, unus naturalis, quo moventur orbes¹² inferiores ab occidente in orientem, et alius violentus, quo rapiuntur econtra raptu primi mobilis¹³ ab oriente in occidentem;¹⁴

¹ est quod, E. (first hand.)

² quod . . . operatio] om. D.

³ sicut dicit . . . Præterea] added in margin of C. in another ink; absent from D.

⁴ ut, B.

⁵ cōpm, A.

⁶ ac ipsa nunc, B.

⁷ ut, E.; et homini, A.B.

⁸ thorax et cervix, B.

⁹ succiditur, A.

¹⁰ quod] om. E.

¹¹ sunt] om. B.

¹² urbes, B.

¹³ violentus . . . mobilis] quo moventur orbes inferiores, B.

¹⁴ et . . . occidentem] om. A.; ad modum primi orbis after occidentem, B.

i-torned vp so doun, and hap an heed¹ wip heer as it were² TREVISA.
 a roote, and hap armes and pyghes as it were bowes.
 Touchynge þe þridde liknesse, þat is vertuous worchyng,
 we seeþ, as Gregory seiþ in an omelie of þe Aduent, þat
 þe world was at þe begynnynge þryuyng and strong for to
 brynge forþ children as it were in þowþe, and was ful of hele,
 and so fresche and grene, and by greet richesse it was fatte.
 But now it³ is abated, wipelde, and ait⁴ were i-dryue
 toward þe deth wip ofte and meny diseses. So in a mannys
 þowþe þe body is þryuyng, þe brest is strong, the nolle is
 bolde, þe armes beþ fulle. But in his elde þe stature boweþ
 and crokeþ and stoupeþ adoun, þe bolde nolle abateþ, þe brest
 is i-dryue ofte wip many sighes and soore, þe breþ schorteþ, in
 to alle⁵ þe body myzt and strengþe abateþ, and ȝif þey⁶ þere
 were noon oper siknesse in olde men, for þe more deel hele is
 siknesse. Also as we seeþ þat in þe more worlde beþ
 tweie contrary meuynges; oon is kyndeliche, by þe whiche þe
 planetes and þe neyþer wolkons moeueþ out of þe west in to
 þe est; þat oper is violent, by þe whiche þey beþ i-rauisched
 aȝenward wip the meuyng⁷ of þe ouermeste wolken out of
 þe est in to þe west: so it fareþ in a man þat the flesche

man hathe an hedde with heire, in the maner of a rote of MS. HARL.
 a tre, and armes as bowȝes. As vnto the thridde similitude, 2261.
 whiche is virtuale operacion, we see, as Seynte Gregory seythe in an omely of Aduente, that the worlde hathe
 thryvede in yeres afore as in yowthe to the multiplicacion
 of peple, for hit was myȝhty as for healethe of bodies,
 grene and fatte as in plente of thynges. But hit is now
 as depressede with age, and is constreynede as with ryfe
 greuances to a nye dethe. Also in lyke wise the body of
 man encreasethe in youthe, the breste is stronge, the armes
 be fulle; but the stature is boede downe in age, the coppe
 is depressede, the breste is constreynede with mony sighes,
 the brethe is succidede, and vertu faillethe thro alle the
 body. Also like as we see that þer be ij. movenges in
 the gretter worlde, oon naturalle, thro whom the worldes
 inferialle be movede from the weste in to the este, that
 other is a movenge violente, by whom the worldes be rapte
 thro the rape of the firste mover from the este in to þe
 weste: soe hit is in like wise in man, that the flesche

¹ heued, a.

² Several words are erroneously repeated in MS., but omitted in a. and Cx.

³ he, a.

⁴ as hit, a, Cx.

⁵ in al, Cx.

⁶ and ȝif þeiȝ, a.; and though, Cx.

Probably ȝif should be cancelled.

⁷ meuyng, a.

sic fit in homine, quod caro concupiscit adversus spiritum et¹ spiritus adversus carnem, et inferiores potentiæ militant contra rationem. Ad hæc² homo cum rebus sæculi nonnullis quasi communia operatur seu patitur;³ nam torpet quandoque⁴ ut terra, fluit ut aqua, cedit ut aer, furit ut ignis, mutatur ut luna, mactat ut Mars, ambit ut Mercurius, degenerat ut Jupiter, sævit ut Saturnus. Cæterum, teste Plinio, libro septimo, capitulo tertio, sicut extrema orbis loca potissime scatent miraculis,⁵ sicut patet in India, Æthiopia,⁶ Africa, ita et in ipso hominum genere ingeniosa natura fecit sibi miraculosa ludibria. Nam primum in ipsa humana facie, ubi decem aut⁷ paulo plura sunt membra, tanta est diversitas, ut in tot hominum milibus una alteri vix conveniat. In Africa⁸ sunt familiæ quædam habentes linguas fascinantes, adeo ut earum laudatione intereant commendata,⁹ arescant arbores,¹⁰ moriantur inpuberes.

¹ *et*] om. C.D.

² *huc*, B.

³ *seu patitur*] om. D.

⁴ *nam torpet quandoque*] denique vicissim torpet, C.D.

⁵ *miraculis*] om. E.

⁶ *et*, C.D.

⁷ *vel*, A.D.

⁸ *quoque sunt*, C.D.

⁹ *probata*, C.D.

¹⁰ *earum . . . arbores*] om. B.

coueyteþ aʒenst þe spirit, and þe spirit aʒenst þe flesche; for þe neþere knoweleches and wittes fiʒteþ aʒenst [þe]¹ resoun. And ʒit a man hap comoun worchyng and suffryng leche² to many oþere parties of þe more³ world; for he is slow and heuy as þe erþe, and fleteþ away as þe water, and wiþdraweþ sodeynliche as þe ayer, and hetep as þe fuyre, chaungeþ as the mone, fiʒteþ and sleep⁴ as Mars, coueyteþ as Mercurius, goop oute of kynde as Iupiter,⁵ and is cruel as Saturnus. Also Plinius, libro 7^o, capitulo 3^o, seiþ þat as þe vtter parties of þe grete worlde wellep and springeþ ful of myracles, wondres, and meruailles, as in Ynde, in Ethiopia, Blomen⁶ londe, and in Affrica; so in mankynde, kynde hap slilyche and craftiliche i-made wonderful werkes and merþe. For first in a mannys face pere⁷ beþ ten lymes oþer fewe moo, þer⁸ is so grete diuersite, þat among meny þowsand men vnneþe is oon i-founde in face i-liche to anoper. In Affrica beþ meyneys⁹ þat haueþ wycchen¹⁰ tonges, so þat þinges þat þey preiseþ þey schendeþ and sleep wiþ hire preisynge. So þat trees þat þey preiseþ waxen drie¹¹ and children

TREVISA.

covetethe ageyne the sawle, and the sawle ageyne the flesche, and þe powers inferialle laboure and stryve ageyne reason. Also a man is comparate with mony thynges in the worlde, and suffrethe as thynges commune with theyme, for he is slawe otherwhile as the erthe, floenge like to the water, ʒiffenge place like to the aier, brennenge as fire, chaungege like to the moone, sleenge as Mars, goenge abowte other couetenge like to Mercurius, goenge owte of kynde like Iupiter, beenge woode or cruelle like to Saturnus. Also, after Plinius, libro septimo, capitulo tertio, lyke as the extremalle places of the worlde be moste habundante in miracles, as in Ynde, Ethioppe, and Affrike, soe in like wise nature hathe made moste meruellous disportes in that kynde of men. For now there is suche diuersite in the face of man, where x. members were firste, or fewe moo, that vnnethe ij. men be lyke amonge mony mī. Also there be men in Affrike, thro the lawde of whom thynges commended dye, trees do wedre, and wexe drye: also in Tri-

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ Added from *a*.² *suffryng leche, a*.³ *the body more, MS.*⁴ So *a*. and *Cx.*; *sleep, MS.*⁵ So *a.*; *Jubiter, MS.*⁶ *blew men, a*.⁷ Perhaps we should read *where*. See p. 173.⁸ So *Cx.*; *þat, MS.*⁹ *many, Cx.*¹⁰ *wicching, a.*; *wirchyng, Cx.*¹¹ So *Cx.* Various words erroneously repeated in *MS.* (not *a*.)

Ita¹ et in Triballis² et in Illyricis sunt homines³ qui solo visu interimant diutius⁴ conspecta, præsertim si intuentes sunt⁵ irati; et hi quidem binas pupillas habent in singulis oculis. Sic enim⁶ testatur Varro, quod in quorundam hominum oculis peperit natura venenum; ne quid uspian mali sit, quod in homine non reperiatur. Sic etiam aliquæ corporum partes nascuntur ad aliqua mirabilia ostendenda, sicut Pyrrho regi Epirotarum pollex in dextro pede, cujus tactus contra venenum valuit; quem⁷ cum reliquo corpore cremari non posse tradiderunt⁸ auctores.⁹ Ita¹⁰ Plinius, libro septimo, capitulo septimo decimo, testatur quod quidam gignuntur¹¹ concreto genitali; aliqui vice dentium concreto osse generantur, sicut patuit in filio Prusiæ, regis Bithyniæ; cujus superior pars dentium¹² sic concreta fuit, ut reliquo corpore combusto illa pars cremari non potuit. *Item ibidem*,¹³ capitulo octavo decimo. Aliqui vivunt concretis toto corpore ossibus et sine medullis; et hi nec sitim sentiunt

¹ *Ita*] om. B.

² *Trivallis*, MSS. (Latin and English), *b* and *v* being often interchanged.

³ *hominibus*, B.

⁴ *diutius*] om. B.

⁵ *fuertint*, and slightly transposed in C.D.

⁶ After *enim* apud nos, C.D.; nos A.

⁷ *quem*] hinc (hunc, D., by cler. error) etiam, C.D.

⁸ *tradunt*, B.

⁹ *posse . . . auctores*] potuit, C.D.

¹⁰ *At*, C.D.; *Item*, B.

¹¹ *nascuntur*, B.

¹² *dentium*] om. C.D.

¹³ *ibidem*] eodem libro, C.D.

deyep.¹ So in Triballis and in Illyricis² beep men þat sleep TREVISA.
wip hir siȝt what þey beholdep and lokep on longe, nameliche
and þey be greued and wroþ while þey lokep so and by-
holdep, and þese hauen³ in eueriche yȝe⁴ tweie blakkes.
Also among vs, Varro seip, kynde haþ i-gendred and i-
brouȝt forþ venym in som mennys eyȝen, so þat non euel
is y-founde þat pere nys somewhat i-liche and i-founde in
mankynde. So som parties of a manis body beep forseynge⁵
and bodynge of wondres. So Pyrrhus,⁶ kyng of Epirotes, hadde
a greet too in his riȝt foot, þe touchynge of þat too was a good
medicynne aȝenst venym; and þat too myȝte noȝt be brent [wip
þe oþer body]⁷ whan þe oþer bodyes was i-brent,⁸ so auctors
telleþ. Also *Plinius, libro 7º, capitulo 17º*,⁹ seip þat som men
beep i-gete and i-bore wip gendrynge stoncs cleuyng to
gidres as it were al oon; som beep i-bore wip oon boon al¹⁰ in
stede of teep, and þat boon is hardere and scharpere þan any
mannys toop. So Prusy, kyng of Bithynia, hade a sone þat hadde
a bone in his mouþ instede of his ouer¹¹ teep, oon bone al hool,
and þat boon was so harde, þat whan þe oþer deel of þe body
was i-brent þat bone myȝte nouȝt brenne also. *Ibidem, capi-
tulo 18º*. Som men lyueþ þat¹² eueriche of hem haþ þe bones
of his body cleuyng to gidres as hit were al oon boon, al hool
and wip oute marwe;¹³ þese men been neuere aferst,¹⁴ also þey
sweteþ neuere more. *Trevisa.* Som men telleþ þat som man

ballis and in Illyricis be men whiche cause thynges beholden MS. HARL.
longe to peresche, and specially if the men beholdenge be 2261.
wrothe, whiche haue ij. apples in either eie. So in lyke
wise the poete Varro rehersethe that nature hathe infuded
in to the eien of somme men venom, so that þer is noone ylle
thyng but hit is reperible in man. Also somme partes
off men be causede for somme meruellous thynges, to be
schewede, as a thowmbe in the ryȝhte foote of Pyrrhus⁶
kyng, the towchenge of whom ȝafe subsidy ageyne venom,
whom auctores say not to haue be brente when the body
of the kyng was brente. Also Plinius seithe, libro 7º,
capitulo 17º, that somme men lyve alle the body concrete
and compacte with boones, with owte eny maro, and these
men do not thurste, neithe¹⁵ swete. Also in the same boke,

¹ dreyep, a.

² *Trivallis and in Iliricis*, MS.

³ haueþ, a.

⁴ ye, a.

⁵ *forbuson, a.*; *forbyson*, Cx.

⁶ *Pirus* or *Pirrus*, MS.

⁷ Added from a. and Cx.

⁸ *whan the other partyes of his
bodye was* (sic) *brente*, Cx.

⁹ 27, Cx.

¹⁰ *al hool*, Cx.

¹¹ *oþere, a.*, Cx.

¹² *and, a.*, Cx.

¹³ *marouȝ, a.*; *mary*, Cx.

¹⁴ So also a.; *a thirst*, Cx.

¹⁵ So Harl. MS.

nec sudorem emittunt. *Item capitulo vicesimo primo.* Aliqui¹ etiam rectos et transversos cancellatim toto corpore nervos habentes prodigiosa virium elatione micuerunt.² Aliqui indefesso cursu prævalent, quidam visu præpollent, ut Strabo miles, qui per centum triginta quinque passuum milia³ classem Punicam vidit e specula.⁴ Item, secundum Plinium, libro undecimo, capitulo quadragesimo nono,⁵ Tiberius Cæsar clarius vidit in tenebris quam in luce, ita ut de nocte expergefactus perspicue cuncta videret. *Item libro septimo, capitulo vicesimo septimo.* Nonnulli etiam memoria viguerunt, ut Cyrus, rex Persarum; qui cunctis in exercitu suo militibus nomina reddidit. *Ranulphus.*⁶ Et Seneca in primo prologo declamationum testatur de seipso,⁷ quod tanta memoria viguit, ut duo milia nominum⁸ eo quo erant ordine dicta recitasse⁹ ex corde, et etiam plusquam ducentos versus ab aliis

¹ *Alii*, C.D.

² *interierunt*, B.

³ *milia passuum*, B.; *miliaria*, A. E.

⁴ Sentence slightly varied in D.

⁵ The true reference is to lib. xi. c. 54.

⁶ *Ranulphus . . . composuit*. This is placed after the next sentence in C., and is there added in the margin; it is absent from D.

⁷ *testatur* after *seipso*, B.

⁸ *hominum*, C.

⁹ *recitassent*, C.; *recitasset*, B.

in Irlond hap oon boon al hool in oon side instede of all his ribbes; and Thomas¹ Hayward of Berkeley hap in pe molde of his heed, pol and forheed, but oon boon al hool; perfore he may wel suffre grete strokes aboue on his heued,² and busche azenst men and horshedes, and breke strong dores wij his heed, and hit³ greueþ hym nouzt. Also *Plinius, libro 7º, capitulo 21º*, seiþ þat som men hadde in to alle þe body senewes, even i-streizt,⁴ þwart ouer in⁵ a crosse wise, and passyng wonderful in strengþe. Som mowe dure to renne wij out [werinesse; som be passyng clere of sighte, as a knyghte þat highte Strabo stode in]⁶ a weytes place, and sigh þe navey of schippes⁷ of Puni þat were from hem⁸ an hondred and fyue and þretty myle.⁹ Also *Plinius, libro xi., capitulo 44º*, seiþ þat Tiberius Cesar sigh more clereliche in derkenesse þan in lizt, so þat whan he were awaked anyzt¹⁰ he myzt see¹¹ al þing cleerliche aboute hym. Also *Plinius, libro 7º, capitulo 27º*. Som were wonder myzty of mynde, as Cyrus kyng of Pers, that to al þe kynztes of his oost zaf certayne names. And Seneca, libro primo declamationum, seiþ of hym self, þat he was so myzty of mynde þat he rehersed two þowsand names arewe by herte in pe same ordre as þey were i-seide. And þat he rehersed mo þan two hondred vers þat oþer men hadde i-zeue,¹² and bygan

TREVISA.

capitulo 21º, somme men hauenge senowes as transuertede and ouercrossede thro alle the body, haue bene of grete myzhte; somme preuayle in swifte course and rennenge; somme men be nowble in sizhte, as a knyghte callede Strabo was, whiche see the schippes Punicalle and myrroures by c.xxxv^{ti} mⁱ passes from hym. Also, after *Plinius, libro xiº, capitulo xlixº*, Tiberius themperour see more clerely in derknesse then in lyzhte, in so moche that he awakede in the nyzhte see alle thynges clerely. Also *Plinius, libro 7º, capitulo 27º*. Mony men haue hade grete scharpenesse in mynde, as Cyrus kynge of Pers[i]a, whiche zafe names to alle the knyghtes in his hoste. Also Seneca rehersethe of hym selfe in the firste prologe, that he was of suche memory that he wolde haue rehersed ij. mⁱ names by herte, after the ordre thei were seide, and also moo then ij^c versus seide of an other man, begynnenge at the laste

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *Thomme, a.; Tom, Cx.*² *heed without hurt, Cx. (omitting the rest of the sentence.)*³ *hit] om. a.*⁴ *i-straut, a.; strayght, Cx.*⁵ *and, a., Cx.*⁶ *Added from Cx.*⁷ *nauyes and shippes, Cx.*⁸ *him, Cx.*⁹ *myles, Cx.*¹⁰ *waked in the nyght, Cx.*¹¹ *So Cx.; i-see, MS.*¹² *yeuen, Cx.*

datos ab ultimo incipiens usque ad primum repetisset. Item ibidem dicit quod Cineas legatus Pyrrhi regis Epirotarum postero die adventus sui¹ apud Romam omnem senatum et circumfusam plebem propriis nominibus salutaverit. Et quidam alius recitatum a poeta carmen novum suum esse dixit, eo quod carmen illud semel auditum expeditius recitaret quam ille qui composuit. *Item Plinius, libro septimo, capitulo vicesimo septimo.*² Quidam etiam³ ingenii vigore claruerunt, ut Julius Cæsar, qui legere, scribere, et audire simul solebat; quaternas etiam simul epistolas dictare consuevit.⁴ *Item libro septimo, capitulo octavo decimo.* Quibusdam vires majores sunt in dextra, quibusdam in læva, quibusdam⁵ æqualiter in utraque. Item ponderosiora sunt mares fœminis, defuncta viventibus, dormientia vigilantibus. Virorum quoque cadavera supina fluitant,⁶ fœminarum vero prona et resupina, ac si pudori⁷ parcat natura.⁸ *Item libro septimo, capitulo septimo decimo.*⁹ Legimus unum hominem risisse eo quo natus est die, ac manum

¹ *sui*] om. E.

² C. omits reference. The true reference is to lib. vii. c. 25.

³ *et*, B.

⁴ Transposed in C.

⁵ *quibus*, A.

⁶ *fluctuant*, B.

⁷ *pudore*, E.

⁸ Paragraph slightly abbreviated in C.D.

⁹ The true reference is to lib. vii. c. 15.

at þe laste and rehersed anon to þe firste wip oute eny faile. TREVISA.
 Also he seip þere þat Cineas, Pyrrhus messenger¹ kyng of Epirotes, þis Cineas þe secunde [day]² þat he come to Rome, he saluted³ and grette þe senatoures, and spak to eueriche of þe peple þat come aboute hym by his owne name. Anoper seide þat Cineas hadde⁴ a grete makynge of poyesie, for he rehersed hit at þe firste bygynnyng⁵ more swiftly þan he þat hadde i-made it. Also *Plinius, libro 7º, capitulo 21º*,⁶ seip som were more noble and wys of witte, as Iulius Cesar, þat was i-woned to rede and write what me⁷ seide wip good avisement al at ones. Also he vsed to write quayers, and endite letters and pisteles al at ones. Also *Plinius, libro 7º, capitulo 18º*, seip þat som men haueþ more strengþe in þe riȝt side, and som haueþ more in þe lift⁸ side, and some beep i-liche strong in eiper side.⁹ Also men beep heuyer þan wommen, and dede men¹⁰ bodyes heuyer þan quykke, and sleping þan wakyng heuyer also. Of dede men kareyns rennep foule moistures and humours, and þey ligge vpriȝt; and of dede wommen kareyns and þey ligge neuelyng and dounriȝt,¹¹ as þey kynde spared schame. Also *libro 7º, capitulo 17º*, we redeþ þat oo man lowh¹² þat day þat he was i-bore, and

vn to the firste. Also he rehersethe there, that Cineas, MS. HARL. 2261.
 meassenger of kyng Pyrrhus, salutede alle the senate of Rome and alle the peple abowte by theirre propre names in the secunde day after his commyng to the cite. Also an other man rehersenge the versus of a poete, ascribede the lawde to hym, in that he rehersede theym more expedientely then the poete whiche made theyme. Also *Plinius, libro 7º, capitulo 27º*, rehersethe that somme men haue bene nowble of witte, as Iulius Cesar, whiche was vserde to rede, wryte, here, and to endyte epistoles at oon tyme. Also *Plinius* rehersethe, *libro 7º, capitulo 28º*,¹³ that somme men haue moste strenȝhte in the ryȝhte honde, somme in the lifte honde,¹⁴ and somme men⁷ haue egalle strenȝhtes in either f. 80. a.
 honde. Also men be moore heuy then womien, and dedde thynges more then thynges in lyfe, and thynges slepence more then thynges wakenge. Also, *libro 7º, capitulo 17*, we haue a-redde a man to haue laȝhede in the firste day

¹ messenger, a.

² Added from a. and Cx.

³ salewed, Cx.

⁴ hadde made, Cx.

⁵ atte firste heryng, Cx.

⁶ 27, a., Cx.

⁷ men, Cx. (and so generally.)

⁸ left, a.

⁹ So a. and Cx. Some words are repeated in MS.

¹⁰ mennes, Cx. (with other slight variations above and below.)

¹¹ þis ys a merueyle. Note in MS.

¹² louȝ, a.

¹³ The true reference is to capp. 17, 18.

¹⁴ londe, Harl. MS.

cujusdam palpantis¹ repulisse. *Item*² *capitulo vicesimo*. Et feruntur aliqui³ nunquam risisse, aliqui⁴ nunquam flesse,⁵ aliqui nunquam exspuisse, aliqui nunquam eructasse. *Item*⁶ *capitulo quarto*. Et quemadmodum in cæteris animalibus, sic in humano genere gignuntur quandoque utriusque⁷ sexus personæ, quas Hermaphroditas⁸ vocamus, olim androgynos vocatos,⁹ et inter prodigia notatos,¹⁰ nunc vero inter delicias computatos.¹¹ Sed et sexum ipsum mutari vidimus et audivimus. Nam in Africa vidimus puellam ipso¹² nuptiarum die in marem mutari,¹³ barbarumque et cætera virilia produxisse, uxoremque cito postmodum¹⁴ duxisse. *Ranulphus*. *Item* tangit Augustinus de Civitate, libro tertio, capitulo vicesimo nono, quod¹⁵ tradit A. Gellius,¹⁶ libro Atticarum noctium, ex fœminis mutationes fieri in mares non esse fabulosum, sed potius ad litteram verum, unde¹⁷ et ipse A.

Hermaphroditæ.

Sexus mutationes.

¹ *palpantis se*, C. D.

² *Idem*, C. D.

³ *multi*, B.

⁴ *alii*, B., and so below (twice).

⁵ *flevisse*, C. (not D.)

⁶ *Idem*, C.

⁷ *utrus*, C. (not D.)

⁸ *hermofroditas*, MSS.

⁹ *vocitatos*, C. D.

¹⁰ So A.; *computatos*, B.; *vocatos*, D. E.

¹¹ *notatos*, B.

¹² *ipsa*, B.

¹³ *vidimus . . . mutari*] added in margin of C. Absent from D.

¹⁴ *postmodum cito*, B.

¹⁵ *quod cum*, C.

¹⁶ *Agellius*, MSS.

¹⁷ *unde*] om. C.

putte away a manis hond þat groped and handeled hym. *Also*, TREVISIA.
Capitulo 20°. Men¹ spekeþ of som men þat neuere lowh, of
 som þat wepe neuere, of som þat spat² neuere, of somme þat
 bolked³ neuere. *Trevisa*. Rogge⁴ Bagge was a ful old man at
 Wotton vnder hegge, in Glowcetre schire, he spat neuere, he
 kowhed⁵ neuere. *Also Seneca, ubi prius, capitulo* 4°. And
 as hit is among oper⁶ bestes, so hit is in mankynde þat
 somtyme oon of mankynde is bope man and woman, and
 such oon is i-cleped hermofrodita, and was somtyme i-cleped
 androgumus,⁷ and acounted among meruayles and wondres ;
 but now among us it is deynte, for it is seelde i-seye. *Also*
 we haueþ i-seie and i-herde þat some haueþ i-chaunged⁸
 hir schap ; for we sighe in Affrica a mayde þe same day þat
 sche scholde haue be i-wedded, i-chaunged and i-torned into a
 man, and was i-berded anon, and anoon hadde alle lymes
 as a man schulde haue, and wedded a wyf with inne a
 schort tyme after. *Also Seynte Austyn de civitate Dei, libro*
3º, capitulo 29º, toucheþ þat A. Gellius⁹ [libro] Atticarum¹⁰
 noctium seiþ þat wommen beþ somtyme i-torned into men :
 hit is no made¹¹ tale, but hit is soop as þe lettre is i-write ;

of his natiuite, and to haue put a way the honde of the MS. HARL.
 man towchenge hym. *Also, capitulo* 20. Somme men be 2261.
 seide to haue not lazhede in there lyfe, somme men neuer
 to haue wepede, somme men neuer to haue spytte. *Also,*
capitulo quarto, lyke as hit is in other bestes, so hit is in
 the kynde of man, that somme persones be gendred of bothe
 kyndes, whom we calle hermofroditas, callede somme tyme
 androdinos, namede as amonge wondres, now acomptede
 amonge delites. *Also* we haue seen and herde peple to
 haue chaungede there kynde. For we see a maide in
 Affrike in the day of here mariage to haue ben chaungede
 in to a man, and to haue hade a berde and other membres
 of a man, and to haue mariede soone after with a woman.
Also Seynte Austyn seithe, De Civitate Dei, libro tertio,
capitulo 29, that A. Gellius⁹ rehersethe, libro Atticarum
 noctium, women to haue ben chaungede in to men, and that
 hit is not a fable but a trawthe. Wherefore A. Gellius⁹ dothe

¹ *Me, a.*, and also Cx. (contrary to his custom.)

² *spytte*, Cx., and so below.

³ *balked*, Cx.

⁴ *Rogger*, Cx. (not a.)

⁵ *coughed*, a., Cx.

⁶ *opere*, a.

⁷ *androgimus*, a. Both in Trevisa

and in the Harl. translation we should read *androgynous*.

⁸ *chaunge wonderly*, Cx.

⁹ *Agellius*, MS., a., and Harl. MS.

¹⁰ *atticaruco*, MS., a., and Cx. (not Harl. MS.) Several proper names have been tacitly corrected throughout the chapter.

¹¹ *magel*, Cx.

Gellius refert se vidisse apud urbem Smyrnam puellam mutatam in marem eo die quo nubere debuit. Unde et aliquando tale monstrum allatum senatui sub Licinio Crasso et Cassio Longino¹ consulibus jussu aruspicum in desertam insulam deportatum est. Item de gallinis sexum mutantibus in gallos loquitur Titus Livius, et etiam Avicenna, libro octavo de animalibus, quod gallina quædam vicerat gallum in pugna, quæ post victoriam levavit caudam ut gallus; aculeus corneus sibi crevit in tibia, et crista in capite.² *Item*

Varia miracula ad conceptum spectantia.

*Trogus, libro septimo, capitulo quintodecimo.*³ Cæterum in Ægypto Trogus refert septenos fœtus uno partu edi; sed et tunc editis geminis, præcipue si varii sexus fuerint, aut puerperæ aut puerperio raram vitam superesse. *Item capitulo duodecimo.*⁴ Sed et aliquoties modico interveniente tempore duo conceptus fiunt, et itidem duo vicissim fiunt partus et uterque perfectus, sicut patuit in Hercule et ejus fratre⁵ Iphicle.⁶

¹ *et Longino, C.*

² All this passage from Ranulphus added in margin of C. A. and B. transpose it after the next two passages, after *Hippicle*. It is absent from D.

³ *Item ... quintodecimo*] Idem capitulo 40, C.; Idem c. 5, D.; Item

libro 7, c. 40, A.B. The true reference is to Plin. vii. 3.

⁴ C. omits reference. D. has c. 2°. The true reference is to Plin. vii. 9. Ed. Franz (but this is c. 11 of some).

⁵ *fratre suo, B.*

⁶ *Hippicle, MSS.*

perfore A. Gellius seip, pat in a citee pat het Smyrna he seih¹ a maide i-torned in to a stoon² pe same day pat sche schulde haue be wedded. Also suche oon was i-brouzt to Rome to pe senatoures in pe tyme of Licinius³ and Cassius Longinus, consulus⁴ of Rome, and by heste of dyuynours pat toke hede of pe⁵ weder and of chitterynge of briddes it was i-bore into a wild ilond. Also Titus Liuius spekep of hennes pat were i-torned into cokkes And Auicenna, libro 8^o de animalibus, spekep of an hen pat hadde ouercome a cok in fiȝtinge, and after pe fiȝtyng and pe victorie, he⁶ rered vp the tayle as a cok, and had anon i-growe⁷ a spore on pe leg and a crest on pe heed as it were a cok. Also *capitulo* 50^o. Trogus seip in Egipt beep seven children i-boren⁸ at oon berpen; but ȝif tweie twynnes beep i-bore, it is wel seelde⁹ pat pe moder and pe firste childe lyveþ longe after pe burpe, and nameliche ȝif pat oon is a knaue childe and pe oper a mayde childe. Also *capitulo* 12^o. And somtyme a womman conceyueþ twey children and is but a litel tyme bytwene; and so pe children ben afterward i-bore oon after oper, and beep perfit i-now, as hit was of Hercules and his broper Iphicles.¹⁰ And so it ferde¹¹ of pat woman pat bare

TREVISA.

reherse hym selfe to haue seen at a cite callede Smyrna, a maide chaungede in to a man in the day of their weddeng. Wherefore suche a wondre brouzhte oon tyme to the senate, in the tyme of Licinius Crassus, and Cassius Longinus,¹² consules, whiche was sende in to a deserte place thro the counsaile of wicches. Also Titus Liuius spekethe of hennes chaungenge their kynde in to kokkes, and also, Auicenna, libro octauo de animalibus, that an henne hade the victory of a cokke in fiȝhte, whiche lifte the tayle lyke to a cokke after the victory, spurres groenge in the legge of hit, hauenge a combe in the hedde. Also the same Auicenne, *capitulo* 5^o. Also Trogus reherseþ a woman in Egipte to haue chiledede vij. childer at oon season, but other the moder other the childer contynue not in lyfe longe after. But mony women haue ij. childer at oon tyme, and tweyne at an other tyme, as hit was schewede in Hercules, and in Iphicles¹⁰ his brother. Also somme

MS. HARL.
2621.

¹ *syze, a.; sawe, Cx.* (and so usually.)

² *a man, a., Cx.*

³ *Lascivius, MSS.*

⁴ *consuls, ., Cx.*

⁵ *pe] om. a., Cx.*

⁶ *she, Cx.*

⁷ *i-crowe, a.*

⁸ *i-bore, a.; born, Cx.* (The latter varies the sentence.)

⁹ *selde, a.*

¹⁰ *Hispicle, or Hispicles, MSS.; Hispycle, Cx.*

¹¹ *ferde or happend, Cx.*

¹² *Lascivius Crassus, Cassius, and Longinus, Harl. MS.*

Et etiam in illa muliere, quæ gemino partu alteram marito¹ alterum adultero similem genuit. Et in illa quæ sub septimo mense edito puerperio in secundis post hoc² mensibus geminas enixa est. Quasdam autem semper³ fœminas, quasdam semper mares parere, quasdam hoc⁴ alternare manifestum est. Aliquæ etiam semper et ad omnes viros sunt steriles; aliquæ ad aliquos sunt steriles, ab aliis tamen concipiunt. *Item*⁵ *capitulo tertio decimo*. Quasdam etiam sibi similes semper parere, quasdam similes patri, quasdam similes nulli, quasdam fœminam patri, marem sibi; quasdam antiquioribus parentibus similes producere notum est.⁶ Exemplum est de Nicæo nobili pictore⁷ apud Byzantium, qui de pulchra matre natus degeneravit in avum⁸ Æthiopem. *Hugutio, capitulo*⁹ *Molo*. Talem ferunt fore fœminarum naturam, ut quales formas conspexerint,¹⁰ dum concipiunt, talem sobolem procreare; nam anima humana in usu venereo formas extra inspectas intus transmittit, et earum species in propriam qualitatem rapit. Sic solent in Hispania obicere¹¹ generosos equos obtutibus equarum

¹ *alterum marito*] om. A.

² *hæc*, D.

³ *super*, B.

⁴ *hæc*, D.

⁵ *Item*] libro septimo, C.

⁶ Slightly varied in C.D.

⁷ Higden should have written *pycte*. See Plin., vii. 10.

⁸ *nanum*, C.D.E.; *atrum*, B.

⁹ *Hugo*, A.B. *Hugutio* . . . *xij*°, added in margin of C. Absent from D.

¹⁰ *mentaliter* added in B.

¹¹ *subjicere*, A.

tweie children oon liche to hire housbonde, and þe opere to þe copenere,¹ and of þat woman þat in þe seuenþe monþe aftir hir birþe in þe secounde monþe after sche bare tweie children. Som women bereþ alwey mayde children, and some alway knaue children, and som alway chaungeþ and bereþ somtyme a mayde² childe [and]³ somtyme a knaue childe. Som beep bareyn and conceyueþ neuere of no man, and som conceyueþ [of som men]⁴ and [of]⁴ som men conceyueþ nouȝt. Also, *capitulo* 13°. Som bereþ children liche to [hem self and some liche to þe fader, and som liche to no man. Some bereþ douȝters liche to þe fader⁵ and sones⁶ liche to hemself. Some bereþ children liche to]⁷ some of⁸ hire forfadres. Ensample is of⁹ Niceus þe¹⁰ noble peyntour at Byzantium, þat was i-bore of a faire moder and wente out of kynde and hadde on honde [as]¹¹ a blew man. *Hugo, capitulo malo.* Me seip þat women kynde¹² is suche þat þey¹³ conceyueþ children i-liche to þinges þat þey seep i-peynt and i-schape; for þe worchyng of the soule while þe body is in getyng of a childe sendeþ inward liknes and schappes þat þey¹⁴ seep wiþ oute, and rauischeþ þe ymages þerof as hit were to his disposicion. And so þey useþ in Spayne for to brynge

TREVISA.

women haue in alle tymes male childer, somme women at alle tymes female childer, and somme women bothe at diuerse tymes. Also somme women be bareyn at alle tymes and to alle men, and somme women beenge bareyn to somme men conceyve of somme men. Also, *capitulo* 13°. Somme women haue childer like to theyme, somme like to the fader, and somme like to their predecessors afore tyme. An exemple may be schewede of Niceus, a nowble peynter at Byzantium, whiche borne of his moder, a feire woman, wente owte of kynde in to a fowle man of Ethioppe. *Hugo, capitulo Malo.* Philosophers say the nature of women to be of suche disposicion that thei brynge furthe suche childer like to the formes whom thei beholde in the tyme of concepcion, for the sawle of man in the vse venereal transmittethe interially formes other similitudes conceyvede exteriorly, and takethe, as by rape, the similitudes of theyme in to his propre qualite. Therefore men in

MS. HARL.
2261.
f. 80. b.

¹ *compyner*, Cx. (who has other slight variations.)

² *mayden*, a.

³ Added from a. and Cx.

⁴ Added from a. and Cx.

⁵ *fadris*, β.

⁶ So β.; *some* a.

⁷ Added from a., which is partly corrected from β. and Cx.

⁸ *some of*] om. β.

⁹ *of*] om. a. and Cx.

¹⁰ *þe*] So a. β. and Cx.; *for*, MS.

¹¹ Added from a. and Cx.

¹² So a.; *womans kynde*, Cx.; *kyn-dynde*, MS.

¹³ *he*, a.; *she*, Cx.

¹⁴ *he*, a.; *she*, Cx.

concupientium, et pulchras columbas depingere in locis ubi columbæ conversantur. Et Quintilianus defendit matronam accusatam de adulterio, eo quod Æthiopem genuisset, allegans talem imaginem tempore conceptus in cubiculo depictam fuisse. Et Hippocrates¹ scribit quandam fuisse condemnandam, eo quod pulcherrimum puerum utrique parenti dissimilem pepererat, nisi Hippocrates monuisset quærere an similis pictura fuisset in cubiculo parentum tempore conceptionis. *Plinius, libro septimo, capitulo tertio decimo.* Idcirco autem² in homine plures differentiæ fiunt, quia³ animi celeritas et ingenii⁴ varietas multiformes notas in ipso hominis conceptu imprimunt. In cæteris⁵ animantibus animi sunt quasi⁶ immobiles, et ideo in illis⁷ quisque⁸ fœtus est suo generi similis.

¹ *Ipocras* or *Ypocas*, MSS. here and below.

² *autem*] om. A.

³ *quoniam*, C.D.

⁴ *ingenii humani*, C.D.

⁵ *cæteris vero*, C.D.

⁶ *quasi*] om. C.D.

⁷ *in illis*] om. C.D.

⁸ *quisquam*, B.

faire hors and gentil, and holdeþ hem to fore þe mares and in hir siȝt while þey conceyueþ. And þey vseþ also to paynte faire coloures¹ in places þere² coluers beþ i-woned to dwelle. And Quintilianus excuseþ and defendeþ a womman þat was accused of spousebreche for sche hadde i-bore a blew man, and he leggeþ³ for hir þat suche an ymage was i-peynt in hir bed chambre whan sche conceyued þat childe. And Ypocras⁴ wroot of a woman þat schulde be dampned to þe deef, for sche⁵ hadde i-bore a faire childe þat was not liche hir self noþer to þe fader; but Ypocras made men assaie, and it was i-founde þat suche an ymage was i-peynt in þe fader and þe⁶ moder bedchambre while þat childe was i-conceyued, and so þe moder was i-saued. *Plinius, libro 7º, capitulo 13º.* Perfore in a man beþ many dyuersitees, for swiftnes of þouȝtes and chaungynge of witte in þe concepcioun preentip⁷ in meny dyuers liknesse and schappes. In oþer bestes wit is as it were not chaungeable, perfore among hem al þe brood is liche⁸ to þe same kynde.

TREVISA.

Speyne vse to sette or putte feire horses to the siȝhte of the mares when thei vse to gendre, and to peynte in places where dofes vse freschely with feire dofes in picture. And Quintilianus⁹ defended a woman accusede of advoutery, in that sche was delyuerede of a man of Ethioppe, makenge allegacion suche an ymage to haue be made in picture a bowte the bedde in the tyme of here concepcion. Also that grete clerk Ypocras writethe a woman to haue been despisede, in that sche was delyuerede of a feire childe, like neither to the fader neither to the moder, but that Ypocras defendede that woman, in that there was suche an ymage abowte the bedde in the tyme of here concepcion. *Plinius, libro septimo, capitulo tertio decimo.* Therefore many difference be in a man, swiftnesse of sawle, variableness of witte, impressenge many similitudes in the concepcion of a man. But the sawles in other bestes be as immovable, and þer fore enery concepcion of theyme is like to the kynde of hit.

MS. HARL. 2261.

¹ coluers, a., Cx., who adds or dowues.

² As in other places this word appears in the MSS. for where.

³ leieþ, a.; leyed, Cx. (with other slight variations.)

⁴ As this form occurs in Chaucer it has been allowed to stand.

⁵ he, a.

⁶ þe] om. a. and Cx. (which is better.)

⁷ empynteth, Cx.

⁸ glyche, a.

⁹ Quintilianus, Harl. MS.

CAP. II.

*De monstruosis hominum partibus.*¹

Varii
hominum
partus
monstruosi;
Cyclopes,
Sciopodes,
&c.

Augustinus de Civitate, libro sextodecimo, capitulo septimo. De monstruosis hominum partibus² quæritur utrum ex primo homine an ex Noe credantur propagari, quales dicuntur Cyclopes unum oculum in fronte habentes.³ Quidam autem⁴ utrumque sexum⁵ dicuntur habere, dextram mammam virilem, sinistram⁶ muliebrem, vicissimque⁷ inter se coeundo et gignere et parere. Alibi etiam quinquennes⁸ fœminas concipere; et octavum a nativitate⁹ annum non excedere. Alii crura sine poplite habere¹⁰ mira celeritate præstantes, quos Sciopodas¹¹ vocant, eo quod æstivo tempore resupini jacentes umbra pedum se protegant.¹² Ad quod dicimus, quod omnia hominum genera qui dicuntur esse credere non est necesse; veruntamen qualis ratio redditur apud nos de monstruosis partibus, talis de monstruosis gentibus reddi potest.

¹ Title in D. only.

² *partubus*, E.

³ C.D. bring in here the reference to Augustine.

⁴ So C.D.; *quod quidam*, A.E. (without sense); *dicuntur* before *utrum*, B.

⁵ *sexuum*, A.

⁶ *et sinistram*, C.D.

⁷ *que*] om. E.

⁸ *quinquennas*, A.; *quinquies*, B.

⁹ *nativitatis*, B.E.

¹⁰ *habere*] om. E.; *dicuntur habere*, B.

¹¹ So E.; *sciopatas*, B.; *sciopcidas*, A.

¹² *protegant*, B.

Capitulum secundum.

TREVISA.

Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro 16^o, capitulo 7^o. Off broodes, þat beep wonderliche i-schape, me axeþ 3if þey come of Adam and Noe. Som of hem hatte Cyclopes, and haueþ but oon ey3e in þe for heed. Some hap¹ eiper schap of man and of womman, and gendreþ to gidres and geteþ, and conceyueþ and bereþ child,² as þe cours comeþ aboute. For ones he schal gete a childe, and sche³ schal eftsones conceyue and goo with childe, euerich in his tyme as hit goop aboute. Som wommen conceyueþ at fyue 3ere olde, and lyueþ nou3t over ei3te yere. Somme haueþ þighes with oute hammes, and beep wonderliche swift, an⁴ hatte Sciopodes;⁵ for þei liggeþ neuelynge⁶ and doun ri3t in þe somer tyme, and defendiþ hem self wip þe schadewe of here feet from þe hete of þe sonne. Herto⁷ we answerþ and seiþ þat it nedep nou3t to trowe þat þere beep so many manere schape men⁸ as me spekeþ of. Nopeles resoun as it is y-3oue of wonder schappe children þat beep among vs, suche resoun me may 3eue of dyuers manere peple þat

Capitulum secundum.

Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro sexto decimo, capitulo septimo. MS. HARL. 2261. A question may be movede of suche mervayles in nature wheder thei come of Adam or of Noe, as men callede Cyclopes, hauenge oon eie in the forehede. And somme be f. 81. a. seide to haue either kynde as the ry3hte pappe of a man and the lifte of a woman, other while gendrenge to gedre and to conceyve. Also in other places hit is seide women of the age of v. yere to childe, and not to excede the viij^{the} yere from the natiuite of theyme, and somme men have thees with owte a homme of grete swiftenes, whiche peple be callede Sciopode,⁹ in that thei lyenge in the somer tyme with their faces vpwarde, defende alle their body thro the schado of their foote. To the whiche question we say that hit is [not] necessary a man to beleve the kyndes of alle men whiche be seide to be; neuerthesse the same reason may be assignede of the monstrous peple whiche

¹ haveþ, a.
² childer, Cx. (with other slight variations.)
³ he, a., Cx.
⁴ and, a.

⁵ Cyopodes, MS., &c.
⁶ nyuelynge, a.; neuelynge, ß.
⁷ Wherto, Cx.
⁸ mishappen men, Cx.
⁹ stropode or scropode, Harl. MS.

Deus enim ubi et quando aliquid¹ oporteat creari novit, sciens universitatis pulchritudinem, qualium partium similitudine aut dissimilitudine contextat. Certe sub nostra ætate in oriente natus est homo in superiori parte² duplex usque ad medium ventris, inferius autem simplex. Nec propter hoc diffitebimur eum ab³ Adam processisse. Igitur hujusmodi⁴ monstruosa aut omnino non sunt, aut si sunt homines non sunt, aut si homines sunt⁵ ex Adam procul Antipodes. dubio processerunt. Quod vero⁶ Antipodas quidam fabulantur existere, id est, homines a contraria parte mundi adversa pedibus nostris calcare vestigia, nulla ratione credibile⁷ est. Nec⁸ enim hoc⁹ ulla historica cognitio prodit, sed tantum conjectura humana adinvenit. Quamvis¹⁰ enim terra sit rotunda, et intra convexa cœli quodammodo suspensa, non tamen est nuda ex illa parte ubi constat eam aquarum congerie circumamictam;¹¹ sed et licet terra ibidem esset nuda,

<p>¹ <i>aliquam</i>, C. ; <i>aliqua</i>, A.D. ² <i>superiori parte</i>] superioribus, C. D. ³ <i>ex</i>, C.D. ⁴ <i>Hujusmodi igitur</i>, B. ⁵ <i>homines non . . . sunt</i>] om. C.D. ⁶ <i>autem</i>, C.D.</p>	<p>⁷ <i>credendum</i>, C., <i>credē</i>, D. ; <i>ratio plena non notabit</i>, B. ⁸ <i>Neque</i>, C.D.B., which last omits <i>enim</i>. ⁹ <i>hæc</i>, D. ¹⁰ <i>Licet</i>, C.D. ¹¹ <i>circumcinctam</i>, C.D.</p>
--	--

beep wonderliche i-schape. For God knowep where and TREVISA.
whanne it needep to make eny manere ping, he knowez pe
fairnesse of al creatures, and wip what liknesse and vnlik-
nesse of parties þey beep i-medled¹ to gidres. Certeynliche
in oure tyme was aman i-bore in þe est þat hadde tweie
bodies aboue anon to þe myddel of þe wombe, and byneþe
but oon; but 3it for al þat we schal trowe þat he com² of
Adam. Þerfore, suche þat beep wonderliche i-schape oþer
þey beep nouzt; oþer þey beep no men; oþer 3if þey beþ
men, wip oute doute þey come of Adam his kynde.³ Touch-
inge Antipodes þat men spekeþ of and seip⁴ þat þey beep men
in þe oþer side of þe erþe, and here feet toward oure,⁵ and
hire heed 3onward and tredeþ hiderward, þat may be trowed
by no resoun, þere is no storie þat makeþ vs haue knowleche;
but onliche by gessynge of mankynde suche a tale is i-founde.
Þey þe erþe be rounde al aboute and somdel honginge wip
ynne þe holownesse of heuene, neuerþeles þe erþe is nouzt
bare in þat side, for he is byclipped and i-closed wip ynne

we schewede afore of the monstrous partes. For God MS. HARL.
knowethe how euery thyng awe to be create, and how he 2261.
scholde dispose the pulcritude of the vniuersite in hit, in
similitude of partes either in dissimilitude. In oure tyme
and age a childe was borne in the este, dowble in the
superior parte vn to the myddes of the bely, and single
from that place downewarde, 3itte for alle that we schalle not
[haue] diffidence but that he come of Adam. Therefore won-
drefulle or monstrous thynges, other thei be not in eny wyse,
or if thei be thei ar noo men, or if thei be men withowte
eny dowte thei toke their originalle of Adam. And that
somme men say, as in fables, men callede Antipodas to be,
that is to say, men to be in a contrarious parte of the
worlde, and to trede with their feete ageyne oure stappes;
hit is not credible by eny reason, neither the cognicion of
eny story dothe not expresse hit to be soo, but that the
coniecture of man movethe that thyng. For thau3he the
erthe be rownde and conuexede with ynne, neuertheless hit
is not bare of þat parte, siþe that hit is circumamiete with
waters, and thau3he the erthe were bare þer, hit wolde not

¹ *melled, a.*² *come, a., Cx.*³ Text as in *a.* and *Cx.*; clauses
transposed in MS.⁴ *syngeth, Cx.*⁵ *owres, Cx.*

non ideo esset consequens quod homines ibi haberet. *Ranulphus*.¹ Nisi forte velimus intelligere Antipodas eo modo quo tradit Marcianus in Astrologia sua,² dicens quod antipodibus³ æstatem facit Capricornus et hyemem Cancer, quod utique ultra australem partem Æthiopiæ conjicitur⁴ fore,⁵ ubi obliqua et pæne contraria fiunt vestigia his qui circa insulam Tylæ⁶ sub ipso polo arctico morantur.⁷ *Isidorus, libro undecimo.*

Portenta
futuri
præscia.

Portentorum creationes quandoque fiunt ad significa-

¹ *Ranulphus*] This sentence added in margin of C. Absent from D.

² See Mart. Capell. *De nupt. Phil.* lib. viii. § *De cursu solis* (in fine), p. 295. Ed. Grot.

³ *antipodis*, A.E.

⁴ *convicitur* A.E.

⁵ *esse*, C.

⁶ *Tile*, A.

⁷ *commorantur*, A.B.C.

pe water. And þey he were bare¹ and nouȝt so i-closed, ^{TREVISIA.}
 ȝit it folowep nouȝt that men schulde wonye pere. R.
 But we² wolde mene, as Marcianus seip in his Astrologie, pat
 Capricornus þe goot makeþ somer to þe Antipodes, and þe
 Crabbe³ makip to hem wynter; and þat is accounted byȝonde þe
 side of Ethiopia, blew men⁴ londe; þere men torneþ wel nigh
 here feet towarde men⁴ feet þat wonep aboute þe ilond Tyle
 vnder þe norþ sterre. *Trevisa.* Here take hed þat þe cercle
 þat⁵ þe sonne holdeþ his cours ynne by the ȝere is i-deled in
 twelue parties, and eueriche partie þerof is i-cleped a signe, and
 euerich signe hap his owne name.⁶ Þese beep þe names of þe
 signes: þe Wether, þe Boole, þe Twynnes, þe Crabbe, þe Leon,
 þe Mayde, þe Balaunce, þe Scorpion, þe Archer, þe Goot, þe
 Sceen,⁷ þe Fisshe. Also twelue monþes ben⁸ in þe ȝere, and
 eueriche monþe þe sonne entreþ in to a signe,⁹ as it falleþ for
 þe monþe. And so in Marche þey entreþ into þe Weþer; in
 Averel¹⁰ in to the Boole; in May in to þe Twynnes; in Iuyn
 into þe Crabbe; and so forþ arewe by monþes and signes, so
 pat in Decembre þe sonne is in þe Goot. Þanne Marcianus wil
 mene whan he seip þat þe Goot makeþ somer [to Antipodes, þat
 whanne þe sonne is in þe Goot þan hit is somer]¹¹ wiþ hem.
 But in Decembre it is mydwynter monþe; and whanne he seip
 þat þe Crabbe makeþ hem wynter, he meneþ þat whanne þe
 sonne is in þe Crabbe þan it is wynter wiþ ham, þat is in Iuyn,
 þat is mydsomer monþe: and so hit is i-clared¹² what it is to
 mene, þe Goot makeþ hem somer, and þe Crabbe wynter.
Isidorus, Etymolog., libro xj^o. Som tyme burþes beep i-bore
 wonderliche and¹³ wonderliche i-schape for to be bodynge

folowe by a directe consequente that the erthe scholde con- MS. HARL.
 teyne men in that parte. R. Peraenture but if we vnder- 2261.
 stonde Antipodas men so namede in that maner as Mar-
 cianus dothe in his Astrology, seyenge that Capricorne f. 81. b.
 makethe somer to men called Antipode, and Cancer wynter;
 whiche thyng is supposede to be caused ouer the sowthe
 parte of Ethioppe, for the stappes þer be oblike and con-
 trarious to theyme whiche dwelle abowte the yle callede
 Tyle vnder that pole artike. *Isidorus, Eth., libro xj^o.*
 The creaciones of wondres be causede otherwhile to the

¹ baar, a.

² he, Cx.

³ the cancer, the signe, Cx.

⁴ mennes, Cx. (twice.)

⁵ So Cx. (that); of, MS.

⁶ a propre name, Cx.

⁷ scene, a.; scene, ß; stewe, Cx.

There is very little doubt that scene

(Germ. *Schenk*) is the true reading.
See Glossary.

⁸ bep, a.

⁹ So a.; assigne, MS.

¹⁰ Aprile, Cx.

¹¹ Added from a. and Cx.

¹² declared, Cx., a.

¹³ and] om. a.

tionem¹ futurorum, et tunc non diu vivunt; ut quod² in tempore Xerxis,³ regis Persarum,⁴ vulpes ex equa nata solvi regnum portendebat. Et tempore Alexandri Magni cujusdam monstri superiores partes hominis erant sed mortuæ, inferiores vero variarum bestiarum sed viventes, significabant repentinam regis interfectionem; nam⁵ supervixerant deteriora melioribus. *Isidorus, libro undecimo, capitulo ultimo.*⁶ Fiunt⁷ quandoque monstruosæ transformationes hominum in bestias, quod fit magicis carminibus seu⁸ herbarum veneficiis.⁹ Quædam enim recipiunt mutationem per ipsam naturam, quædam¹⁰ per corruptionem transeunt

¹ *significationes*, D.

² *quod*] om. C.D.

³ *Xerxis*, A.E.; *Xerses*, B.

⁴ *Persarum*] om. C.D.

⁵ *enim*, C.D.

⁶ *Item capitulo ultimo*, C.D. (E. omits *capitulo ultimo*.)

⁷ *fiunt etiam*, C.D.

⁸ *aut*, C.

⁹ *beneficiis*, B.

¹⁰ *quædam vero*, C.D.

and forto¹ comynge² of wondres pat schal bifalle, but panne ~~TREVIS~~
 pey lyveþ nouzt l[o]nge.³ As in Xerxes⁴ kyng of Pers
 his tyme a mare foled [a fox],⁵ and boded pat þe kyngdom
 schulde be vndoo.⁶ And in þe grete kyng Alisaundes⁷ tyme
 was i-brouzt forþ a beest wonderliche i-schape, [for þe ouer
 parties of hym were i-schape]⁸ as þe parties of a man, but þey
 were dede, and [þe]⁹ neþer parties were i-schape as þe parties
 of dyuers manere bestes, and were onlyue,¹⁰ and bode¹¹ sodeyn
 sleynge of þe king,¹² for þe worse parties lyuede lengere
 þan þe bettere. *Trevisa*.¹³ William Wayte of Berkeley sigh
 a childe wip tweye hedes and tweye nekkes i-bore and i-fulled¹⁴
 at Mese in Loreyn, þe 3ere of oure Lord a powsand þre¹⁵
 hondred and sixe and fifty, pat 3ere þe kyng of Fraunce was
 i-take at þe batayle of Peyters. Þis child hadde tweie armes¹⁶
 and tweie legges, as oþer children haueþ, and he hadde þe
 pridde legge growynge oute aboue þe buttokke byhynde, and
 þe pridde arme bytwene þe tweie schuldres. *Item Isidorus,*
libro ij^o, capitulo 3^o. Somtyme is grisliche and wonderliche
 chaungynge and schapyng¹⁷ of men in to bestes, and is i-doo
 by wordes oþer by wichecraft. Som hap and som¹⁸ fongeþ
 suche chaungynge by þe same kynde, somme by corrupcioun
 passeþ and chaungeþ in to oþer kynde, and so of calues

significacion of thynges to comme, and then thei lyve not MS. HARL.
2261.
 longe; as a fox was foolede of a mare in the tyme off Xerxes
 kyng of Persa. And also þer was suche a wondre in the
 tyme of Alexander the Conquerour, the superior partes of
 whom were of a man, but dedde, and the partes inferialle
 were of diuerse bestes, and in lyfe, whiche signifieth or
 signifiede the soden dethe of kyng Alexander, for the
 more vile partes lyvede more longe then the partes more
 nowble. *Isidorus, libro xj., capitulo ultimo.* And mon-
 struous transformaciones of men in to bestes be made other-
 while thro charmes of wiches and wikkede operaciones of
 yerbes. Somme thynges receyve mutacion by their nature,
 somme thynges goe in to other kyndes by corrupcion, as
 bees of roten calves, and vermyn callede scarabei of cor-

¹ to] om. a.

² and to kenning, Cx., who has also various slight alterations.

³ longe, a.

⁴ Excercises, MS., &c.

⁵ Added from a. and Cx.

⁶ vndo, a., Cx.

⁷ Alisaundre his, a.

⁸ Added from a. and Cx.

⁹ Added from Cx. (the).

¹⁰ alyue, Cx.

¹¹ bodede, a.; betokened, Cx.

¹² So a. and Cx.; kyngdom, MS.

¹³ Reference added from a.

¹⁴ cristened, Cx.

¹⁵ So. a. and Cx.; size, MS.

¹⁶ So Cx.; names, MS., and a.

¹⁷ wonderfully chaungynge of schappes, Cx.

¹⁸ som] om. a.

in alias species, ut¹ de putridis vitulis apes, de putridis equis scarabæi; unde Ovidius:²

“Concava littorei si demas brachia cancri,
“Scorpius³ exhibit, caudaque minabitur unca.”

*Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavodecimo, capitulo sextodecimo.*⁴ Quoad monstruosas hominum transformationes tenendum est, quod dæmones et mali homines nec possunt naturam aliquam creare, neque⁵ quod creatum est mutare; possunt tamen, Deo permittente, species transfigurare. Ita videlicet ut illud fantasticum hominis, quod cogitando sive somniando varias corporum formas haurit,⁶ sopitis corporeis sensibus, etiam⁷ cum corpus non sit, veluti tamen corporatum in alicujus animalis effigie appareat sensibus alienis; talisque sibi homo esse⁸ videatur, qualis sibi videri posset in somnis, et etiam⁹ portare onera, quæ si vera sunt¹⁰ onera, portantur a dæmonibus;¹¹ ut sic, Deo juste judicante, illusio fiat hominibus. *Ranulphus.* De ista materia vide plenius infra¹² post bellum Trojanum.

¹ et, E.

² *Met.* x. 369.

³ *Coppus*, A.

⁴ 19°, C. The true reference is to lib. xviii., c. 18. D. omits all the remainder of this chapter.

⁵ nec, B.

⁶ capit, Aug.

⁷ et, B.C.

⁸ esse] om. B.

⁹ etiam] om. B., Aug.

¹⁰ sint, A. (not Aug.)

¹¹ ab hominibus, B. (not Aug.)

¹² infra] om. B.C.

i-rooted comeþ bees, and of hors i-roted comeþ harnettes.¹ TREVISA.
Perfore Ouyde seip—

Ȝf pou craft habbe,
Take armes holow² for þe crabbe.
Scorpio bryngeþ³ haile,
To styngre with croked tayle.

Augustinus, libro 18^o, capitulo 6^o. In þe manere of wonder-ful tornynge, chaungynge, and schappinge of men and wommen hit is to holdynge þat fendes and euel men mowe make no kynde, noþer chaunge þat is i-made. Neuerþeles Almyȝti God soffreþ liknesse of þinges dyuersliche forto seme,⁴ so þat þe fantasie of a man þat gadreþ liknesse of dyuerse þinges in pouȝt, and in sweuenynge⁵ whanne þe wittes beþ i-lette and takeþ noon hede, makeþ to seme liknesse of bodies þat is nouȝt present, also of ymages and of dyuers liknesse and schappes of þinges þat neuere were i-made; and so men takynge semeþ þat þey seeþ liknesse and schappe of dyuers þinges and of bestes, as men semeþ slepyngre and metynge wonderful sweuenes, and semeþ somtyme þat þey bereþ many ful heuy burpenes; [bote and þei ben berpennes]⁶ fendes bereþ hem, and so God þat demþ riȝtfulliche suffreþ mankynde be ofte so bigiled. R. Of þis matire loke⁷ wiþ ynne more pleynliche after þe batayle of Troye.

rupte horses, cancrs and scorpiones of mules. *Augustinus, MS. HARL. libro octavo, capitulo sexto.* As vn to the monstrous trans-
formaciones of men, hit is to be holden that the deuelles
and ylle men may not create eny nature, neither chaunge
that is create; neuerthelesse thei may thro the permission
of God transfigure similitudes, so that the thyngre fan-
tasticalle of a man that he⁸ seethe diuerse similtudes, as in
thenkenge other in dremenge, the wyttes corporealle op-
pressede; sithe hit is no tru body, ȝit hit dothe appere as
to straunge wittes as a thyngre corporealle in the similitude
of somme beste, and hit apperethe to hym suche as he did
see in dreames and to bere burdones. But and if the ordre
of trawthe be considerate, the burdones be borne of deuelles.
R. We schalle expresse more of this mater after the batelle
of Troye.

¹ *cheaffers, a.; chavers, Cx.*

² *holw, a.*

³ *springap, γ. (not a or β.)*

⁴ *sene, MS. (not a. or Cx.)*

⁵ *dreamyng or sweuenyng, Cx.*

(who has various slight alterations.)
Trevisa's translation is not very in-

telligible, and may be a little cor-
rupt.

⁶ Added from a. and Cx.

⁷ *lokeþ, MS. (not a.)*

⁸ *that he]* These words should be
cancelled apparently.

CAP. III.

*De dissimilitudine inter hominem atque mundum.*¹

Primævi
hominis
status.

² LICET igitur homo³ juxta prædicta conveniat cum mundo et ejus contentis, in nonnullis tamen conditionis⁴ prærogativis a mundo discrepat. Nam licet corpus humanum ab initio fuerit⁵ de limo formatum, suæ tamen animæ ita fuit proportionatum ut in eo esset complexionis æqualitas, organizationis conformitas, staturæ rectitudo, et figuræ pulchritudo. Et sic foret deinceps corpus animæ obtemperans⁶ sine pugna rebellionis, propagans sine pronitate libidinis, vegetabile sine defectione vigoris, immutabile⁷ sine corruptione mortalitatis. Quinetiam conceptus hominis⁸ fieret sine pudore, partus sine dolore, victus sine sudore,⁹ motus membrorum sine errore.¹⁰ Ad hæc datus¹¹ sibi fuit paradisus ad habitaculum, mulier ad consortium,

¹ Title wanting in MSS.

² C.D. needlessly prefix *Ranulphus*.

³ *homo* after *prædicta*, B.

⁴ *suæ* added in A.B.C.D.

⁵ *fuerat*, C. (not D.)

⁶ *contemporans*, D.

⁷ *immortalitatis*, A.; *immortalc*, B.

⁸ *humanus*, B.

⁹ *labore*, C.D.

¹⁰ *horrore*, C.D.

¹¹ So C. D., correctly; *data* A.E.; the longer form of the chronicle changing for the worse.

Capitulum tertium.

TREVISA.

THEY man, as it is i-seide, be liche [and]¹ acord to þe world, and to² þinges þat ben conteyned þerynne; neuerþeles in many poyntes of manis condicioun, of his prerogatif³ and his worþynesse, he is dyuerse and vnliche to the world. For þey mannis body⁴ we[re]⁵ firste i-made of erþ, neuerþeles hit was [so]⁶ couenabliche and so acordyng to þe soule, þat in mannis body was eueness of complexioun, acordyng of⁷ lemes, riȝtfullnesse of stature, fairnesse of schappe. And so schulde þe body afterward be buxom to þe soule wip oute eny rebelnesse,⁸ and bryng forþ children wip oute eny synne, and lyue wip oute eny defaute of strengþe, and be translated and chaunged in⁹ þe blisse of heuene wip oute deienge and deep. Also he schulde gete and conceyue children wip oute schame, and a womman schulde bere children wip oute sorwe and woo, and haue mete and drynke wip oute sweet¹⁰ and trauaille, sterynge and meuyng in lymes wip oute eny mysfare. And to al þis paradys was i-ȝeue to¹¹ mankynde forto wonye ynne,

*Capitulum tertium.*MS. HARL.
2261.

THEREFORE thauȝhe man haue conuenience with the worlde, after thynges aforeseide, and with the contentes off hit, neuerthelesse he differrethe from the worlde in mony prerogatifes of his condicion. But thauȝhe the body of man was made in the begynnenge of the erthe, hit was so proporcionate to the sawle that equalite of complexion was in hit, conformite of organizacion, rectitude of stature, and pulcritude of figure, and so the body scholde be afterwarde obtemperate to the sawle with owte fiȝhte of rebellion, vegetable with owte defawte of strenghte, immutable with owte corrupcion of mortalite. And also the concepcion of men scholde be withowte schame, the byrthe with owte sorowe, lyvenge with owte laboure, the mouenge of membres with owte erreure. Paradise was ȝifen

¹ Added from *a.* and *Cx.*² *in two*, *Cx.*³ *prerogatiue*, *a.*⁴ *body*] om. *a.*⁵ *were*, *a.*, *Cx.*⁶ Added from *a.* and *Cx.*⁷ *of*] *to*, *Cx.*⁸ *withouten ony rebellion*, *Cx.*⁹ *in to*, *Cx.*¹⁰ *swoot*, *a.*; *swete*, *Cx.*¹¹ *to*] om. *a.*, *Cx.*

Conditio
hominis
post lap-
sum.

lignum vitæ ad edulium, universa creatura ad solatium, et tandem ipse Deus in præmium. Sed heu cito¹ cecidit tantus signifer, qui mane oriebatur. In honore quippe constitutus non intellexit; comparatus est jumentis inhærendo vetitis,² adeo ut ab illo die corpus corruptum per peccatum aggravet³ animam, caro concupiscat adversus spiritum, et proni sint sensus hominis in malum, inimicique⁴ hominis⁵ domestici sensus ejus; quinetiam tentatio sit tota vita hominis super terram, sed et ipsa animæ accidentia ipsum corpus afficiant et transmutent, sicut e converso⁶ corporis passiones redundant in animæ perturbationem. Insuper et inest homini assiduitas deficiendi, impossibilitas permanendi,⁷ facilitas cadendi, difficultas resurgendi, vilitas nascendi, anxietas vivendi, necessitas moriendi. *Plinius, libro xvij^o.⁸ capitulo primo.⁹* Et

¹ *hodie*, B.

² *inhærendo vetitis*] om. D., which also omits *per peccatum* below.

³ *aggravaret*, B.

⁴ *quoque*, C.D.

⁵ *hominis*] om. E.

⁶ *e contrario*, B.C.

⁷ *standi*, C.D.

⁸ 17^o, B.

⁹ 13^o, B. The true reference is to lib. vii. c. 1.

and womman forto be manis [felawe],¹ paradys to wonyng place, þe tree of lyf for mete, and al creatures for solace, at² þe laste God hem³ self to be manis mede. But allas þat so noble a banyour fil so sone, þat was erliche i-brouzt and i-putte into⁴ worschippe: þey⁵ knewe nouzt þat þey⁵ schulde be liche to bestes, whan he dede þat was forbode. From þat day forþward þe body þat is corrupt by synne greueþ þe soule. Þe flesche coueyteþ azenst þe soule, and⁶ manis wittes torneþ and assenteþ liztliche to euel. A mannes owne meynal wittes beep his owne enemyes. So þat al a manis lyf is in temptacioun while he lyueþ here in erþe, and þe dispocisioun of þe soule ruleþ, meyn-teneth, helpeþ, and conforteth þe body; but azenward þe wrecched dispocionioun⁶ of þe body distourbeþ þe soule. Also man⁷ is euere faillynge [and] awayward,⁸ he may nouzt stedfastliche abide; he falleþ liztliche, but he may nouzt liztliche arise; profit of berþe is sorwe⁹ and care in¹⁰ lyuyng; and man moot nedes deie. *Plinius, libro 17º, capitulo 13º.*¹¹ And þey alle opere þat beep i-made haue schilles,¹²

TREVISA.

to man as a inhabitacion, where he scholde reioyce thynges afore seide, and a woman was ziffen to be his felowe, the tre of lyfe to refreschenge, euery creature to a solace, and at the laste God was zifen to hym in to rewarde. But allas so nowble a sterre hade soone a falle that spronge fulle tymely, whiche sette in honor hade not knowlege of hym selfe, whiche is comparable to brute bestes in drawenge to thynges prohibitte, in so moche that the corrupte body from that day laborethe to greve the sawle. For scripture dothe expresse that the flesche covetethe ageyne the sawle, and the wittes of a man be prompte to synne, and the propre wittes of a man be enemyes to hym, so that temptacion is alle the lyfe of man on the erthe. And also the accidentalle thynges of the sawle punnysche and transmute the body, soe in lyke wise the passiones of the body redunde in to the perturbacion of the sawle, wherefore assiduite of feyntenesse longethe to a man, impossibilitie of permanence, lyzhtenes to falle, difficulte to aryse,¹³ disease to lyve, and necessite to dye. *Plinius, libro 17º, capitulo 13º.* And sythe other

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ Added from *a.* and *Cx.*² and *atte*, *Cx.*³ *him*, *a.*⁴ *in*, *a.*⁵ *he*, *Cx.* (twice.)⁶ So *a.* and *Cx.*; *dispensacioun*, MS.⁷ So *a.* and *Cx.*; *men*, MS.⁸ and *awayward*, *a.*; and *wayward*, *Cx.*⁹ So *Cx.*; *profit is (is of, a.) berþe sorwe*, MS. and *a.*¹⁰ *in hym*, MS. (not *a.* or *Cx.*)¹¹ Reference transposed in MS.¹² *shelles*, *Cx.*¹³ *a ryse*, MS., and similarly elsewhere.

cum cætera producta aut habeant testas, cortices,¹ coria, villos,² setas, pilos, plumas, pennas, aut squamas, homo ipse, tegumento carens, nudus effusus plorat in principio membris devinctus,³ quadrupedi similis, animante⁴ quovis debilius, nihil sciens, nihil aliud de se valens nisi sponte flere. Nulli⁵ uspiam vita⁶ fragilior, nulli morbus gravior, nulli libido major, nulli rabies acrior. Denique cætera animantia ad sese afficiuntur, in suo genere prope⁷ degunt, non sæviunt nisi ad sui⁸ dissimilia et⁹ ad sibi contraria solummodo¹⁰ et adversa. Homo tamen in seipso sibi¹¹ contrarius in sibi proximum grassatur, et cum propinqua defecerint¹² in seipsum sævit.¹³ *Ranulphus.* Ad hoc duplex homini inflictum est infortunium, et hoc quidem juste, unum ab intra, ut qui in vita sua¹⁴ projecit intima sua jam illa non habeat tranquilla, sed bella sibi pariant¹⁵ intestina. Aliud quoque incommodum imminet ab extra, ut qui suo superiori Deo¹⁶ obtemperare noluit, jam suum inferiorem sibi sentiat

¹ *et cortices*, A.

² *velles*, A.

³ *devinctus*] originally *destitutus*, but *devinctus* written above line in another ink in C. ; *destitutus*, D.

⁴ *animante*, B.

⁵ *Nulla*, A.E.

⁶ *vitam*, A.

⁷ Pliny has *probe*, which is much better.

⁸ *sui*] so A.B.; om. C.D. ; *sibi*, E.

⁹ *et*] om. E.

¹⁰ *solummodo*] om. C.D.

¹¹ *sibi*] so A.B.C.D. ; *sibiipsi*, E.

¹² *defuerint*, C.D.

¹³ *sævit*] om. B.

¹⁴ *vita sua*] *vitia*, B.

¹⁵ *parent*, B.

¹⁶ *scilicet Deo*, B.

ryndes, skynnes, wolle, heer, bristles, feperes,¹ wynges, oþer scales, man is i-bore wiþ oute eny helynge,² naked and bare, and anoon at his berþe he gynneth forto wepe; at þe bygynnynghe liche to a beste, but his lymes failleþ hym, and may nouȝht helpe hym self. But he is feblere þan eny oþer beest; he can non helpe, he may nouȝt doo of hym self, bot wepe wiþ alle his myȝt. No beest hap lyf more brutel and vnsiker. Noon hap siknesse more grevous, noon more likynghe to doo oþer wise þan he schulde. Noon is more cruel. Also oþer bestes loueþ everiche oþer of þe same kynde, and woneþ to gidres, and beep not cruel but to bestes of oþer kynde þat beep contrarye to hem. But man torneþ þat manere doynge vp so down, and is contrarye to hym self and cruel to oþer men; and³ he may not reche for to greuc oþere, þan he bycomeþ angry and cruel to hym self. [R.]⁴ And ȝit to al þis man hap tweie⁵ myshappes, and þat riȝtfulliche: oon is of hym selue wiþ ynne hym;⁶ so þat he þat prewe away pees and reste þat⁷ werreþ with ynne hym in his lyuynghe, he hap neiþer⁸ pees ne reste, but werre and stryf wiþ ynne. An oþer myshap man hap wiþ oute forþ, so þat he þat wolde not be sogette to God þat is aboue hym, now he feleþ his vnderlynges rebel to him. So þat þe

TREVISA.

thynges brouȝhte furthe other haue schelles, barke, skynnes, MS. HARL. hure, plumes other pennes, or scales; a man entrethe in to 2261. this worlde bare and nakede, wontenge eny couerenge, wepene in his begynnenge, more feble then eny other beste. For he can not do eny other thynghe of him selfe but wepe. The lyfe of noon other thynghe is more frayle, replete with moste infirmite, noo beste moore leccherous. For alle other bestes luffe to gedre in theire kynde, and lyve to gedre, not cruelle but to bestes of other kyndes and contrarious to theim; but a man is contrarious oftetymes to his kynde and to hym selfe. R. Where fore ij. infortunys be ȝiffen to man by ryȝhteuousenes, oon is interialle in that he caste furthe his partes interialle in his lyve, he scholde not haue theim now in tranquillite, but that the partes interialle scholde be to hym a conflicte. That other infortuny is exteriorle, that man scholde haue his inferior rebellante to hym, in that he was inobediente to God his maker, so that

¹ *veperes, a.*² *helynge or keueryng, Cx.*³ *and yf, Cx.*⁴ *Added from Cx.*⁵ *So a. and Cx.; mystweie happes, MS.*⁶ *hym] om. a., Cx.*⁷ *þat] om. Cx.*⁸ *noþer, a.*

rebellantem. Ita plane ut reliquæ creaturæ,¹ quæ sibi concessæ fuerant² ad solatium fragilitatis, ad sustentaculum recreationis, ad vehiculum imbecillitatis, ad obsequium subjectionis, ad spectaculum admirationis, jam magna ex parte hominis aspectum refugiant, tactum abhorreant, dominium non sufferant, convictum reformident.³

CAP. IV.

*De creatione Adam.*⁴

Compara-
tio status
innocentiæ
et status
miseriæ.

FORMATUS itaque⁵ Adam homo primus de limo terræ extra paradisum in agro Damasceno sexto die sæculi, et in paradisum translatus, peccatoque eodem die commisso dejectus est post meridiem. Sicque cecidit de statu innocentie ad statum miseriæ, vir quidem⁶ in primordiis suis dulces in domo Dei capere potens⁷ cibos, sed vetita volens et prohibita probans cecidit ab alto ad imum, de luce ad limum,⁸ de incolat uad exilium, de domo ad devium, de fructu ad fletum,⁹ de laude ad luctum, de joco ad jurgium, ab¹⁰ amore ad odium, de prosperitate ad pœnalitatem,¹¹ de sospitate ad infirmitatem, de penu ad penuriam, de gratia ad culpam, de pace [ad rixas, de gaudio]¹² ad pœnam, de familia-

¹ *reliqua creatura*, D.E.

² *fuerat concessa*, D.E. (but the verbs below in the plural).

³ *convictum reformident*] om. D.

⁴ Title in E. only.

⁵ *igitur*, C.D.

⁶ *qui*, B., om. D.

⁷ *potens capere*, B.

⁸ *tenebras*, D.

² *de risu ad rictum*, added in C.D.

¹⁰ *de*, C.D.

¹¹ *dulcore ad absinthium*, added in C.D. The latter MS. has several clerical errors and omissions.

¹² Added from B.

creatures þat were i-zeue man to solas of brutelnesse, to susteynyng of confort, to bere vp febilnesse, to seruise and subiectioun, to merour¹ and schewyge of wondres, now for þe moste deel he² fleep mannys siȝt, and his felawschippe, and his companye, and hateþ his handelynge, and wil nouȝt of his lordschippe, and dredeþ sore to lyue and dwolle³ wip hym.

TREVISA.

Capitulum quartum.

ADAM was i-made of erþe in the filde of Damask þe sixte day of þe world, and i-brouȝt in Paradys, and synned þe same day, and was i-putte out after mydday. And he fel out of þe state of innocence and of⁴ welþe in to þe state⁵ of wrecchednesse and of woo. Man in his⁶ bygynnyng myȝte take wel swete mete in Goddis owne hous, but he desired þat he schulde nouȝt, and he assaied þat was forbode, and fel out of hiȝe in to lowh, out of liȝt in to derknesse and slym, out of his owne londe and contray in to outlawyng, out of hous in to maskyng and wayles⁷ contray and lond, out of fruit into wepyng and woo, out of preisyng in to deel and sorwe, out of merþe in to stryf, oute of loue in to hate, out of ioye and welþe in to peyne and tene, out of helpe and grace in to gilt and synne,⁸ out of pees in to peyne,

bestes and other creatures, whiche were create to the solace of man, to the sustentacle of recreacion, to the obsequy of subieccion, to the spectacle of admiracion, flee in grete parte the siȝhte of man, abhorrenge his towchenge, takenge not hym as their lorde.

MS. HARL.
2261.

Of the creation of Adam, the firste man.

Capitulum quartum.

ADAM the firste man, yformede of the slycche of the erthe, in the felde Damascene with owte Paradise, in the vjth day of the worlde, and translate in to Paradise, was deiecte for synne, doen that same day, from Paradise after noue. And so Adam felle from the state of innocency to the state of miserye, from the hie place to a lawe place, from liȝhte to darkenese, from inhabitacion to exile, from frute to weipenge, from ioy to peyne, from luffe to hate, from swetenesse vn to bytternesse, from prosperite to penaunce, from healethe to infirmite, from grace to blame, from familiarite to offense.

¹ *myroure*, Cx.

² *þei*, B.; *a*, γ.; *they*, Cx., rightly; but see p. 237 note.

³ So *a*.; *dwelle*, Cx.; *dye*, MS.

⁴ *of þe*] MS. (not *a*.)

⁵ *staat*, *a*.

⁶ So *a*. and Cx.; *womman* in *his*, MS.

⁷ So *a*., B., γ.; *into waylyngs and trouble*, Cx.; *valeyys*, MS.

⁸ So *a*. and Cx.; *sitte*, MS.

Cain et Abel. ritate ad offensam.¹ *Methodius*. Hic² Adam quinto-decimo vitæ suæ anno genuit Cayn³ et Calmanam sororem ejus.⁴ Iterum⁵ post hoc⁶ quintodecimo anno,⁷ quod⁸ est trecesimo vitæ suæ anno, genuit Adam⁹ Abel et Delboram sororem ejus, sed interfecto Abel¹⁰ luxerunt eum parentes ejus centum annis. *Ranulphus*. Adam secundum Hebræos centesimo trecesimo ætatis suæ anno genuit Seth, et postmodum¹¹ vixit octingentis annis;¹² sed Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorus, Etymologiarum¹³ libro quinto, dicunt Adam fuisse ducentorum triginta annorum ante nativitatem Seth, et postmodum¹⁴ vixisse septingentis annis; et sic Adam in toto vixit nongentis triginta annis; et mortuus sepultus est in Hebron,¹⁵ quod est Cariatharbe, quod sonat,¹⁶ *Urbs quatuor*, id est quatuor patriarcharum qui ibi sepulti sunt, scilicet Adam, Abraham, Isaak, Jacob.¹⁷

De numero annorum Adam. Seth centum quinque annorum¹⁸ genuit Enos, et post vixit octingentis¹⁹ annis, sed Septuaginta interpretes²⁰ dixerunt²¹ Seth²² ducentorum quinque annorum²³ genuisse Enos, et post²⁴ vixisse dcc. vij. annis.²⁵

De generationibus ab Adam usque ad Noe. Seth. Enos. Enos nonaginta annorum genuit Caynan, et post vixit octingentis²⁶ quindecim annis; sed Septuaginta interpretes dicunt Enos centum nonaginta annorum genuisse Caynan, et post vixisse septingentis²⁷ quin-

¹ C.D. add *de prospero ad pænale, de vivo ad mortale*. B. adds, after *offensam, de dilectione ad inobedientiam*.

² *Hic itaque*, C.D.

³ *Caym*, B.

⁴ *suam*, D., and so below.

⁵ *Item*, A.B.

⁶ *hæc*, D.

⁷ *xv. annis*, B. #

⁸ *id*, C. (not D.)

⁹ *Adam*] om. C.

¹⁰ *sed . . . Abel*] eo (Abel, D.) vero interfecto, C.D.

¹¹ *postea*, D.

¹² *Petrus* is here inserted in C.D.

¹³ *Etymologiarum*] om. C.D.

¹⁴ *post*, D.

¹⁵ *Ebron*, A.D.

¹⁶ *quod sonat . . . Jacob*] om. D.

¹⁷ *et Jacob*, B.

¹⁸ *secundum Hebræos*, added in C. D., and so below.

¹⁹ *septingentis*, B.

²⁰ *et Isidorus*, added in C.D.

²¹ *dicunt*, B.

²² *Seth*] om. A.

²³ *ducentorum annorum et quinque*, B.

²⁴ *postmodum*, B.

²⁵ D. adds: *itaque in toto vixit 912 annis*.

²⁶ *septingentis*, B.

²⁷ *ducentis*, A.

out of homlynnesse into offence and wreppe. *Methodius.* Þis TREVISIA.
 Adam þe fiftenþe 3ere of his lyf gat ¹ Cayn, þat is comounliche
 i-cleped Caym, and his suster Calmana. Þanne fiftene 3ere
 afterward, whan Adam was þritty 3ere olde, he gat Abel and
 his suster Delbora. But Abel was i-slawe, and his fader and
 moder made [deel and] ² sorwe i-now ³ an hundred wynter. R.
 As Hebrewes seiþ, Adam gat Seth þe 3ere of his age an
 hundred and þritty, and lyued after ei3te hondred 3ere, and
 so Adam lyued in al nyne hondred 3ere and þrittey. *Trevisa.*
 Þere were þre score and ten þat torned Holy Writte out of
 Hebrew in to Grewe, and þey beþ i-cleped þe þre score and
 ten. R. Adam deide and was i-buried in Ebron, þat is
 i-cleped also Cariatharbe, þat is to menyng ⁴ þe cite of foure,
 þat beþ patriarkes þat beþ i-buried þere, þat beþ Adam,
 Abraham, Ysaac, and Iacob. Seth gat Enes whan he was an
 hondred 3ere olde and fyue, and lyuede afterwarde ei3te
 hondred 3ere; but [þe] þre ⁵ skore and ten seith þat Seþ was
 two hondred 3ere and fyue whan he gat Enos, and lyued after-
 ward seuen hondred 3ere and seuen. Enos, foure score 3ere
 olde and ten, gat Caynan, and lyuede afterward ei3te hondred

Methodius. Adam gate Cayn and Calmana his suster in MS. HARL.
 the xvth yere of his age; also in the xvth yere after that, 2261.
 whiche is the xxxth yere of his age, he gate Abel and
 Delbora his sustyr, but Abel sleyn, Adam and Eve wailede
 his dethe by an c. yere folowenge. R. And, after men
 of Hebrew, Adam gate Seth in the c. and xxxth yere of
 his age, and lyffede after viij^c. yere. But, after the lxxth
 interpretatores and after Isidorus, *Ethi. libro quinto*, Adam
 was of ij^c. and xxxth yere in age afore the natiuite of Seth,
 seyenge Adam to haue lyvede after vij^c. yere. And soe
 hade Adam in age ix^c. yere and xxxth, whiche dyenge was f. 83 a.
 buriede in Ebron, that is callede Cariatharbe, whiche sownd-
 ethe a iiij. cite, that is to say, of iiij. patriarkes whiche
 were beriede there, Adam, Abraham, Ysaac, and Iacob.
 Seth, beenge of a c. and v. yere in age, gate Enos, and
 lyvede after viij^c. yere: but after the lxxth interpretatores,
 Seth, beenge of cc. and v. yere, gate Enos, lyvenge after
 vij^c. and also vij. yere. Enos of xc. yere gate Cainan,
 lyvenge after decc. and xv. yere. But after the lxxth inter-

¹ *bigate*, Cx.; and so below
sometimes.

² Added from a. and Cx., who has
dole.

³ *i-now*] om. a. and Cx.; which
 have *for him*, probably rightly.

⁴ *meane*, Cx.

⁵ *the þre*, a. and Cx.; the latter
 has some omissions below.

decim annis.¹ *Ranulphus*.² Iste Enos dicitur specialiter³ invocasse nomen Domini primo ;⁴ quia forte primus invenit verba deprecatoria, vel secundum Hebræos⁵ quia⁶ fecit imagines ad honorem Dei, vel⁷ ad excitandum pigritiam humanæ memoriæ in Deum.⁸

Cainan. Caynan septuaginta annorum genuit Malaleel, et post vixit octingentis quadraginta annis ; sed⁹ Septuaginta interpretes¹⁰ præponunt centum annos ad septuaginta, et postmodum subtrahunt centum.¹¹

Mahalaleel. Malalael¹² sexaginta quinque¹³ annorum genuit Jareth,¹⁴ et postmodum¹⁵ vixit octingentis triginta annis ; sed Septuaginta interpretes¹⁶ præponunt centum annos ante¹⁷ sexaginta quinque, et¹⁸ post subtrahunt centum.¹⁹

Jared. Jareth²⁰ centum sexaginta duorum²¹ annorum genuit Enoch, et vixit postmodum²² octingentis annis. In hoc concordant Septuaginta interpretes cum aliis.²³

Enoch. Enoch sexaginta quinque²⁴ annorum genuit Mathussale,²⁵ et postmodum vixit trecentis annis sexaginta quinque, ambulavitque cum Deo, et translatus est ; sed Septuaginta interpretes præponunt centum ad sexaginta quinque. Iste²⁶ Enoch adinvenit²⁷ aliquas literas, et aliquos libros scripsit, sicut innuit Judas Apostolus in canonica sua ; sub cujus tempore²⁸ Adam creditur

¹ *dicunt . . . annis*] om. B. ; sed lxx. et Isidorus ante Caynan ponunt 190 annos et [dicunt] post 715 vixisse ; ita quod dies ejus sunt 908 anni, C.D.

² *Ranulphus*] om. A.B.C.

³ *specialiter fertur*, B.

⁴ *primo*] om. B.

⁵ *secundum Hebræos*] prout dicunt Hebræi, A.B.C.

⁶ *primus*, A.B.

⁷ *et*, A.B.

⁸ Sentence added in margin of C., slightly abbreviated ; absent from D.

⁹ *sed . . . centum*] et facti sunt omnes dies ejus nongenti decem anni, B.

¹⁰ *interpretes*] et Isidorus, C.D.

¹¹ *et decem annos*] ins. C.D.

¹² *Malaleel*, E.

¹³ 45, B.

¹⁴ *Jared*, B.

¹⁵ *post*, C.D., and so frequently.

¹⁶ *interpretes*] et Isidorus, C.D., which add the reference to Isidore throughout. After this it is not noted.

¹⁷ *ad*, C.D.

¹⁸ *et . . . centum*] ita quod vixit in toto 895 annis, C.D.

¹⁹ *sed . . . centum*] et facti sunt omnes dies ejus 895 anni, B.

²⁰ *secundum Hebræos*, added in C. D.

²¹ *cxlij*, B.

²² *post*, C.D.

²³ *interpretes . . . aliis*] et Ysidorus, C.D.

²⁴ *xlv*, B.

²⁵ *Matussale*, A.

²⁶ *Iste . . . fuit*] om. C.D.

²⁷ *invenit*, A.

²⁸ *diebus*, A.B.

zere and fiftene ; but þe pre score and ten seiþ þat Enos was nyne score zere and ten and gat Caynan, and lyued afterwarde seuen hondred zere and fiftene. Me seith specialliche þat Enos cleped fyrst Goddis name, for vppon caas he fonde first wordes of prayenge. Opere, as Hebrewes telleþ, he fond first ymages to worschippe of God : forto wake þe sloupe of manis mynde into God Almyzty. Caynan, pre score zere olde and ten, gat Malaleel, and lyuede afterwarde eyzte hondred zere and fourty ; but þe pre skore and ten putteþ an hondred zere to fore þe¹ seuenty, and wiþ draweþ an hondred afterward. Malaleel, fyue and sixty zere olde, gat Iareth, and lyuede afterwarde eihte hondred zere and þretty. But þe seuenty setteþ an hondred to fore fyue and sixty, and wiþ draweþ an hondred aftirward. Iareth, an hondred zere olde and two and sixty, gat Enoch,² and lyuede afterwarde eihte hondred zere foure score and ten.³ [In]⁴ þis seventy acordeþ wiþ othere. Enoch, fyve and sixty zere olde, gat Matusale, and lyued afterward pre hondred zere, and helde God Almyzty his way, and was translated and i-brouzt in paradys, but þe seuenty setteth a hondred zere tofore fyue and sixty. Þis Enoch was fyndere of lettres, and wroot som bookes, so seiþ Seynt Iudas the postle in⁵ his pistle.⁶ Me trowede⁷ þat Adam deyde in

TREVISIA.

pretatores, Enos of c. and xc. yere to haue geten Cainan, and to haue lyffede afterwarde vij^c. and xv. This Enos is seyde to haue callede to helpe specially and firste the name of Godde ; for, as men of Ebrewe say, he made firste ymages to þe honor of God, to excite the slawthe of the memory of man in to the lawde of God. Cainan beenge of lxx^{ti} yere gate Malaleel, and lyvede after viij^c. and xl^{ti} yere ; but the lxx^{ti} interpretatores adde an c. yere afore lxx^{ti}, and after thei withdrawe an c. yere. Malaleel of lx. and v. yere gate Iareth, and lyvede after viij^c. and xxx^{ti} yere ; but the lxx^{ti} interpretatores putte an c. yere afore lx. and v. yere, and take after that an c. yere away. Iareth of an clxij. yere gate Enoch, and lyvede after viij^c. yere ; and the lxx^{ti} interpretatores acorde with other in that. Enoch of lx. and v. yere gate Matussale, and lyvede after iij^c. yere, and walkede with God, and was translate ; but the lxx^{ti} interpretatores putte an c. yere to lxxv. This Enoch founde somme letters firste and did write bookes, as Iudas thapostle rehersethe in Canonica sua ; in the daies of whom mony men suppose Adam to haue diede. And lyke as the vij^{the} in

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ So a. and Cx. ; and, MS.

² *Enoch*, MS., but *Enoch* below. The bar seems here and elsewhere to be only redundant.

³ *foure score and ten*] om. Cx.

⁴ Added from a. and Cx.

⁵ *apostle*, a.

⁶ *pistel*, a. ; *epistle*, Cx.

⁷ *troweth*, Cx.

mortuus fuisse.¹ Et² sicut in generatione Cayn septimus ab Adam, scilicet Lamech, pessimus fuit, sic in generatione Seth septimus ab Adam, scilicet Enoch, optimus fuit.³

Methuse-
lah.

Mathussale⁴ centum octoginta⁵ annorum genuit Lamech, et post⁶ vixit septingentis duobus⁷ annis, hoc est usque ad diluuium⁸ secundum veriore⁹ traditionem, et¹⁰ non ultra per quatuordecim annos sicut quidam posuerunt. Sed anno vitæ suæ nongentesimo sexagesimo¹¹ nono, quò cœpit diluuium, mortuus est.

Lamech.

Lamech¹² centum octoginta duorum annorum¹³ genuit Noe, et postmodum¹⁴ vixit quingentis nonaginta¹⁵ annis.

CAP. V.

*De posteritate Lamech.*¹⁶

Cayn¹⁷ primogenitus Adæ genuit Enoch, qui genuit Irad, qui genuit Mauaiel,¹⁸ qui Mathussael, qui Lamech.

¹ *obisse*, A.B.

² *Ut*, A.

³ *Iste . . . fuit*] om. C.D.

⁴ *secundum omnes*, ins. C.D.

⁵ *septem*, ins. A.

⁶ *postmodum*, B.

⁷ 782, C.D.

⁸ *sed non ultra*, ins. B.

⁹ *variorem*, B.

¹⁰ *sed*, B.

¹¹ *xlix.*, B.

¹² *secundum omnes*, ins. C.D.

¹³ *annorum*] om. E.

¹⁴ *post*, A.

¹⁵ *quinque*, ins. B.C.D.

¹⁶ Title wanting in MS.

¹⁷ *Cuin*, A. The following passage occurs before this in C. (It commences with a large capital N, but the words Cap. 5. are placed opposite *Cayn primogenitus*, &c., in the margin of C.) :—" Noe vero quingentorum annorum genuit Sem, Cham, et Japheth; et spatio centum annorum conficiens arcam, sexcentesimo anno vitæ suæ ingressus est eam primo die secundi mensis, introducens ad se per octo dies quæ præcepta fuerant introduci, ante-

" quam Dominus plueret super terram. Et sic factum est diluuium per annum pæne terram occupans. " Aqua nempe diluuii transcendit montes excelsos quindecim cubitis, quia per tantam altitudinem creduntur opera hominum fœdassee aera per ignis adorationem, qui tam alte extulit fumum et favillas. " In quo anno terminatur prima ætas ab Adam usque ad diluuium sub generationibus decem, habens annos secundum Josephum, libro primo, capitulo quarto, et secundum Hebræos, 2656, sed secundum Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorum libro quinto, 2242, secundum Hieronymum non plene 2000, secundum Methodium 2000. Ipse tamen Methodius omittit annos aliquos, si superfuerint; quia per chiliades sæcula disponit." This passage is given also in D., but more shortly; and it occurs with some variations in the text of the longer MSS. below.

¹⁸ *Mataleel*, D. badly; see Gen. iv. 18.

þis Enoch his tyme; and as [in]¹ Cayn his children Lamech þe TREVISA.
 seuenþe from Adam was worst; so in Sep his children Enoch
 þe seuenþe from Adam was best. Metusale, an hondred ʒere
 olde foure skore and seuene, gat Lamech, and lyued afterward
 seuen hondred ʒere and tweyne, þat was anoon to Noes flood.
 Lamech, an hondred ʒere olde foure skore and tweyne, gat
 Noe, and lyued aftirward fyue hondred ʒere foure score and
 ten.

Capitulum quintum.

CAYM, Adams firste sone, gat Enoch, he gat Irad, he
 gat Mauaiel,² he gat Matusale, he gat Lamech. Þis Lamech

the generacion of Cayn, whiche was Lamech, was moste MS. HARL.
 wyckede in his generacion, soe in lyke wise Enoch, the 2261.
 viithe from Adam, was moste goode. Matussale of c.lxxx.
 and vij. yere gate Lamech, lyvenge after vij^e and ij. yere,
 that is to the grete floode of Noe, and noo longer, after
 the trewe tradicion; by xiiij. yeres, as somme men putte: but
 he diede in the ix^e yere lx. and ix., in whiche yere the
 grete floode began. Lamech of a c.lxxxij. yere gate Noe,
 and lyvede afterwarde d.xc. and v. yere.

Capitulum quintum.

CAYN the firste son of Adam gate Enoc, whiche gate
 Iradus, whiche gate Mauaiel; and he gate Matussale, whiche

¹ Added from β. γ.

| ² So a.; *Manuel*, MS.

De uxori- bus et filiis Lamech. Artes in- ventæ.	Hic Lamech acceptis duabus uxoribus Ada et Sella, genuit ex Ada duos filios, Jabel qui fuit pater habitantium in tentoriis, et Tubal ¹ qui fuit pater canentium in cithara ² et organo. Ex altera uxore, Sella, genuit Tubalcayn, ³ qui fuit faber et malleator, et sororem ejus ⁴ Noema, quæ invenit artem texturae. <i>Josephus</i> . Cayn violenter opes congregans ad luxuriam et latrocinia homines ⁵ invitavit, simplicem hominum vitam transtulit ad ponderum et mensurarum adinventionem, terminos et limites terræ primus ⁶ instituit, civitatem fecit et muravit, timens quos lædebat.
Primi homines inermes.	<i>Isidorus, libro quintodecimo, capitulo secundo.</i> Homines primum tanquam nudi et ⁷ inermes, nec contra bestias aut ⁸ homines tuti, nec receptacula frigoris aut æstus habentes, naturali solertia oppida excogitaverunt; unde et ⁹ tuguria et casas ex ¹⁰ virgultis et arundinibus contexuerunt, ¹¹ ut vita eorum foret ¹² tutior. <i>Petrus, capitulo vicesimo septimo.</i> Lamech septimus ab Adam et pessimus primus induxit bigamiam, et sic adulterium contra legem Dei et ¹³ naturæ ac contra Dei decretum.
Bigamia inducta.	
Iabal.	<i>Josephus.</i> ¹⁴ Jabel primus greges ordinavit a ¹⁵ characteribus, distinxit hædos ab agnis, ¹⁶ seniores a ¹⁷ junioribus divisit. ¹⁸ <i>Petrus, capitulo xxvij.</i> ¹⁹ Tubalcayn invenit
Tubalcayn et Iabal.	

¹ *Iubal*, D.² *cythara*, C.; *cithera*, A.B.³ *Tubalcayn*, A.⁴ *suam*, B.⁵ *homines*] om. B.⁶ *primo*, A.⁷ *et*] om. C.⁸ *nec*, B.⁹ *et*] om. C.D.¹⁰ *ex*] om. C.D.¹¹ *contexerunt*, A.¹² *vita esset*, C.D.¹³ *ac*, B.¹⁴ *Petrus* . . . *Josephus*] om. D.¹⁵ *et*, B.C.D.¹⁶ *ovibus*, C.¹⁷ *et*, A.¹⁸ C.D. introduce the following

passage :—“*Petrus*. Tubal (Iubal, “ D.) fuit inventor consonantiarum, “ non instrumentorum; quia longe “ post inventa fuerunt; sed inventor “ fuit musicæ, id est, consonantia- “ rum; ut labor pastoralis verte- “ retur in delicias. Et quia audierat “ Adam prophetasse de duobus ju- “ diciis, ipse scripsit hanc artem “ in duabus columnis, in utraque “ totam; in marmorea contra “ diluvium, in lateritia contra “ incendium, ne periret ars in- “ venta.” See p. 232.

¹⁹ 20, C.D. The true reference is, to c. 28., both here and just above and also below, p. 228.

took tweie wives, Ada and Sella, and gat tweie sones, on TREVISA.
 Ada Iabel, pat was fader of hem pat wonede in tentes
 and in paulyouns. And Tubal pat was fadre of organistres
 and of harpores. And Lamech gat on Sella Tubalcan, pat
 was a smyth worchyng wip hamer; and his suster Noema,
 sche was first fyndere of¹ weuyng craft. *Iosephus*. Cayn
 gadèred richesse violentliche by strengpe, and made men be
 lecchoures and peues, and tornede symple lyuyng [of]² men
 to fyndyng of mesures and of wyztes; he ordeyned merkes
 [and]² boundes of fildes and of londes, and bulde a citee and
 walled hit, for he dredde³ ful sore hem pat he hadde i-greued.
Isidorus, libro 15^o, capitulo 2^o. Men were first naked and vn-
 armed, nouzt siker azenst bestes, noþer azenst men, and hadde
 no place to fonge hem, and to kepe hem fro⁴ colde and for
 hete; þan by besynesse of kynde witte þey bepouzt hem of
 buldyng, þerfore þey bulde hem smale cootes and cabans,
 and waf ham and heled hem wip smale⁵ twigges and wip reed,
 pat hire lyf myzte be þe more saaf. *Petrus, capitulo 27^o*.
 Lamech, þe seuenþe from Adam and most schrewe, was þe
 firste pat brouzte yn bygamy, and so spousebreche azenst þe
 lawe of God and of kynde, and azenst Goddis owne dome.⁶
Iosephus. Iabel ordeynede first flokkes of bestes, and mer-
 kis to knowe oon from anoþer, and departide kydes from

gate Lamech. This Lamech, takenge to hym ij. wives, Ada MS. HARL.
 and Sella, gate of Ada Iabel and Tubal, and of his other 2261.
 wife, Sella, Tubalcaym, whiche was a smythe, and Noema,
 his suster, whiche founde firste the arte of weyvenge.
Iosephus. Cayn gedrenge violently richesse, desirede men
 to thefte and robbery, chaungenge the simple lyfe of men,
 founde measures firste, and made a cite, dredenge men, whom
 he hurte. *Isidorus, libro quinto decimo, capitulo secundo*.
 The firste men, as bare and with owte armore, not sure ageyne
 men either bestes, hauenge as noo places for coldenese
 other hete, made places to theyme by naturalle reason of
 roddes and reedes, that theire life myzhte be in more suerte.
Petrus, capitulo vicesimo septimo. Lamech, the vijth from
 Adam, and the moste wickede man, inducede firste bigamy,
 and so adultery, ageyne the lawe of God and of nature,
 and ageyne the ordinaunce of God. *Iosephus*. Iabel or-
 deynede firste flockes, diuidenge kyddes from lambes with

¹ was first fyndere of] fonde first,

Cx. ² Added from a.

³ drad, Cx.

⁴ for, a.

⁵ cabans and keuerd hem with
 smale, Cx.

⁶ doom, a.

Musices
origo.

artem ferrariam et sculpturam; quo fabricante Tubal sono malleorum delectatus proportiones et consonantias ex eorum ponderibus invenit,¹ id² est, exercitator fuit consonantiarum, non autem inventor instrumentorum musicalium, quia illa³ longe postmodum sunt inventa. *Ranulphus.* Hic dicunt docti, quod licet Tubal ad alleviandum tædium pastorale musicam primus exercuerit, non ideo rationem consonantiarum per pondera primus invenit; sed magis Pythagoras. De quo vide⁴ infra, libro tertio, de⁵ Pythagora, capitulo undecimo.⁶

Pœna
Lamech.

*Petrus, capitulo xxvij^o.*² Lamech sagittarius, sed cæcutiens habuit adolescentem ductorem, cum exerceret venationem pro delectatione et usu pellium; quia non erat usus carniū ante diluvium.⁷ Casu interfecit Cayn latentem inter fructea, æstimans ipsum esse feram. Et quia ductor suus eum non præmunierat, eum similiter interfecit. Et ideo cum⁸ peccatum Cayn sit punitum

¹ *ad invenit*, C. D.

² *id. . . xxvij^o*] abbreviated in C. D. to—"Quod tamen Græci Pythagoræ (Pittagoræ, MSS.) fabulose ascribunt; sic etiam excogitavit operari in metallis ex figuris, quas metalla liquefacta referebant."

³ *illa after postmodum*, B.

⁴ *videtur*, B.; om. A.

⁵ *de . . . undecimo*] capitulo de Pythagora, B.

⁶ *capitulo undecimo*] om. A.

⁷ *quia . . . diluvium*] om. C. D.

⁸ *tamen*, B.

lambren,¹ and zonge from olde. *Petrus*. Tubalcain fonde first smythes craft² and grauynge, and whan Tubalcain wrouz³te in his smepes⁴ craft, Tubal hadde grete likynge to hire þe hameres sowne,⁵ and he fonde proporciouns and acorde of melodye by wyz⁶te in þe hameres, and so þey vsed hym moche in þe acorde of melodye, but he was nouzt fyndere of þe instrumentis of musik, ffor þey were i-founde longe afterward. *R.* Here wise men telleþ þat þey Tubal vsede first musyk for to releue hym self⁷ while he was an herde, and kepte bestes, ffor all þat he was nouzt þe firste þat fonde þe resoun of acorde in musyk by wiztes, but Pittagoras fonde þat; þerof loke wip ynne, in þe þridde book, of Pittagoras. *Petrus*, 27°. Lamech, an archer but somdel blynde, hadde a zongelynge þat ladde hym while he honted for pley and likynge, oper for loue⁸ of bestes skynnes, ffor men ete no flesche to fore Noes flood. And hit happe⁹ þat he slow Caym, þat loted¹⁰ among þe busshes, and wende þat it were a wyld beste; and for his ledere warned hym nozt, he slow hym also. And þefore sippe þat Caym his synne was i-punsched seuen-

TREVISA.

carectes, and the elder from the yonger. *Petrus, capitulo 27°*. MS. HARL. 2261.
Tubalcaym fonde firste the arte of smythes and gravenge, whiche laborenge at the foerge, Tubal hauenge delectacion in the sownde of the malle fonde proporcionones and consonance of the weizhtes of theyme; that is to say, Tubal was an exciter of consonances but not the fynder of instrumentes musicalle, for thei were founde by a longe season after that tyme. *R.* But discrete men say, thauzhe Tubal exercisede firste musike to alleuiate the tediousenes pastoralle, neuertheless he was not the firste fynder of the reason of consonance by weizhtes, but rather Pitagoras, of whom hit schalle be schewede in the thrydde booke. *Petrus, 27° capitulo*. Lameche the schoter hade a yonge man to his gouernoure and leder, whiche vsenge to hunte for delectacion and vse of skynnes, for men vsede not flesche afore the grete floode, did slee Cayn lyenge priuely in couerte, trawenge hit to haue bene a dere, whiche did slee also his leder, in that he zafe not to hym a monicion þer of. Therefore, sythe the synne of Cayn was punyschede vij. folde, that is to say, in

¹ *lambryn, a.*; *lambes, Cx.*² *smythcraft, a.*³ So *a. B. γ.*; *Tubal gan worke,*

MS.; Cx. has omissions here.

⁴ *smyth, a.*⁵ *soun, a.*⁶ *in]* of, Cx.⁷ *for his plesir, Cx.*⁸ *one, Cx.*⁹ *happede, a.*¹⁰ *loyterd, Cx.*

septuplum, id est in¹ septima generatione,² peccatum Lamech est punitum septuagesies³ septies, quia⁴ septuaginta et septem animæ egressæ sunt⁵ de Lamech, quæ⁶ in diluvio perierunt; vel quia tot erant generationes inter Lamech et⁷ Christum, qui pœnam pro omnibus solvit.

De longæ-
vitate
patriarch-
arum, et de
gigantibus.

Josephus. Nullus putet falsum quod de tanta anti-
quorum longævitate legitur, cum ipsi essent religiosi,
et pabula haberent opportuniora, et etiam propter
gloriosas virtutes quas⁸ jugiter scrutabantur, scilicet
astrologiam et geometriam, quæ nunquam addiscere⁹
possent,¹⁰ nisi ad minus sexcentis viverent annis; quo
in spatio magnus annus astrorum impletur.¹¹ *Jose-
phus.*¹² Usque ad septimam generationem filii Seth
fuerunt boni; sed postmodum¹³ viri¹⁴ abusi sunt viris,
et mulieres mulieribus. *Genesis.* Ingressique filii Dei
ad filias hominum, id est, filii Seth ad filias Cayn,
genuerunt gigantes. *Petrus, vicesimo nono.*¹⁵ Et potuit
esse, ut¹⁶ incubi dæmones generarent gigantes, in qui-
bus magnitudini corporum correspondebat immanitas

¹ in] So B.; om. E.

² in septimam generationem, C.
(not D.)

³ septuagesies, E.

⁴ id est, B.

⁵ sunt] om. C.D.

⁶ quæ] om. C.D.

⁷ inter . . . et] usque ad, C.D.

⁸ quas ipsi, B.

⁹ addicere, E.

¹⁰ possunt, A.

¹¹ Slightly varied in C.D.

¹² Reference added from A.B.C.

¹³ postmodum] post 700 anno,
C.D.

¹⁴ viri after sunt, B.

¹⁵ xxix] om. C.D.

¹⁶ quod, C.D.; om. B.

fold, þat is in þe seuenþe generacioun; for Lamech¹ TREVISA.
 was þe seuenþe from Adam in þat lyne; Lamech his synne
 was i-punsched seuene and seuenty folde; ffor seuen and
 seuenty children þat come of hym were dede in Noes floode.
 Opere for so many generaciouns were bytwene Lamech
 and Crist, þat payed a payne for vs alle.² *Iosephus*. No
 man schal trowe þat it is false, þat is i-rad of so longe lyuynge
 of men þat were somtyme, for þey lyuede faire lyf, and
 hadde couenable and clene mete and drynke, and also for
 blisful vertues þat þey vsede, and made hem besy aboute
 astrologie and gemetrie, þat þey myz̄te neuere lerne but 3if þey
 lyuede sixe hondred 3ere at þe leste; for in so longe tyme
 is þe grete 3ere of [þe]³ sterres fulfilled. *Petrus*. Seth
 his children were good men anon to þe seuenþe generacioun;
 bot afterward men mys vsede men, and women [mysusede
 women].⁴ *Genesis*. Godes sones took men dou3tres, þat is to
 menyng, Seth his sones took Caym his dou3tres, and gete
 geantis. *Petrus* 29. And hit myz̄hte be þat Incubus,⁵ suche
 fendes as lieþ⁶ by wommen in liknesse of men, made geantes,
 be i-gete, in þe whiche geantes gretnesse of herte answereth
 and acordep to þe hugenesse of body. But after Noes flood

the vijthe generacion; the synne of Lamech was punyschede MS. HARL.
2261.
 lxx^{ti} tymes vij. tymes, for lxxvij. sawles commenge furthe
 from Lamech were pereschede in the grete floode. Other
 elles so many generaciones were betwene Lamech and Criste,
 which redemed mankynde. *Iosephus*. I move that a man
 thenke not this to be fals that is redde of the longe lyfe
 of men in that tyme, sythe thei were religious men, and
 oportune exhibicion was 3iffen to theyme, hauenge glorious
 vertues, as astrology and geometry, whom thei serchede
 besily, whiche thynges they myz̄hte not haue lernede with-
 owte thei hade lyvede vj^c. yere, for the grete nowmbre of
 sterres is fullefillede in that space. *Petrus*. The childer
 of Seth were goode vn to the vijthe generacion; but after
 that men abused men, and women abused women. *Genesis*.
 The childer of God goenge to the do3hters of men, that is
 to say the sones of Seth to the do3hters of Cayn, gate
 gigantes. *Petrus*. And hit myz̄hte be that spirittes gate
 gigantes, in whom hugenesse of sawle was correspondente
 to the hugenesse of their body. But other gigantes were

¹ *Adam Lameth, a.*

² *payed rawnsome, Cx., who omits
for vs alle.*

³ *Added from a.*

⁴ *So Cx. and a.*

⁵ *Incuby, a. γ.; Incubi, β., Cx.,
a preferable reading; but possibly
Incubus may be meant for an
(English) plural.*

⁶ *liggeþ, a.*

animorum. Sed et post diluvium nati sunt alii gigantes in Hebron, et postmodum¹ fuerunt alii in Than civitate Ægypti, qui dicti sunt Tithanes,² de quorum stirpe fuit Enachim,³ cujus filii habitaverunt in Hebron,⁴ de quibus ortus est Goliath.⁵

De duabus columnis contra diluvium et ignem.

Josephus. Illis temporibus scientes homines, sicut per Adam prædictum fuerat, quod aut aquis aut igne forent perituri,⁶ studia sua et artes quas excogitaverant⁷ scripserunt in duabus columnis, lapidea et lateritia,⁸ ne tolleretur⁹ a memoria quod¹⁰ sapienter excogitaverant;¹¹ in marmore¹² quidem contra diluvium aquæ, in lateritia contra¹³ incendium. E quibus ferunt columnam¹⁴ lapideam diluvium evasisse, et adhuc in

De diluvio Noe, et de arcæ constructione.

Syria permansisse.¹⁴ *Genesis.* Igitur Noe cum quingentorum esset annorum genuit Sem, Cham, et Japhet, hoc est dicere, cum tantæ esset ætatis¹⁵ habuit hos tres filios generatos, et post hoc spatio centum annorum confecit¹⁶ arcam de lignis lævigatis, id est, politis, scilicet¹⁷ intus et extra bituminatam, trecentorum cubitorum in longitudine, quinquaginta cubitorum in latitudine, triginta cubitorum in altitudine, id est, a fundo¹⁸ ad tabulatum sub tignis, in qua fecit fenestram, et ostium

¹ *postea*, B.C.D.

² *Titanes*, A.D.; *Titantes*, B.

³ *Eneachym*, B.

⁴ *Ebron*, A.

⁵ *Goliath*, B.

⁶ *forent perituri*] fuerant perituri, B.; deberent perire, C.D.

⁷ *excogitaverunt*, B.

⁸ *lateritia et marmorea*, B.

⁹ *tollerentur*, B.

¹⁰ *que*, B.

¹¹ *excogitaverunt*, B.

¹² *marmorea*, A.B.

¹³ *contra ignis*, B.

¹⁴ Extract slightly abbreviated in C.D.

¹⁵ *esset ætatis tantæ*, B.

¹⁶ *Igitur . . . confecit*] Fecit quoque Noe, C.D.

¹⁷ *scilicet*] om. B.

¹⁸ *fundo usque*, A.D.

were opere geantes i-bore in Ebron, and afterward were opere TREVISA.
 in Than, a citee of Egipte, and pilke geantes were i-cleped
 Tithanes ; of hem com Enachym, his children woned in Ebron ;
 of hem come Golias. *Iosephus.* Pat tyme men wiste, as
 Adam hadde i-seide, pat þey schulde be destroyed by fuyr,
 oper¹ by water, þerfore bookes pat þey hadde i-made by grete
 trauaille and studie þey closede hem in tweie greet pillers
 i-made of marbyl and of brend tyle. In a piler of marbyl
 for water, and in a pyler of tyle for fuyre ; ffor hit schulde
 be i-saued in² pat manere to helpe [of]³ mankynde. Me seip
 pat þe piler of stoon scaped þe flood and is zit in Siria.
Genesis. Þanne whan Noe was fyue hondred zere⁴ olde
 he gat Sem, Cham, and Iapheth ; pat is to menyng⁵, when he
 was so olde, he hadde þese pre sones i-gete, and he made þe
 schippe an hondred zere afterward of tymber, i-planed wel
 smethe,⁶ and was i-glewed with ynne.⁷ Þe schippe was þre
 hondred cubite long, and fifty cubite brood, and þretty cubite
 high from þe cule⁸ to þe hacches vnder þe cabans and
 housyng. Noe made a wyndow in his schippe, and a dore on

borne in Ebron after the grete floode, and other in Tan,⁹ MS. HARL.
2261.
 a cite of Egipte, whiche were callede Titanes, of the stokke
 of whom Enachim was, whose childer dwellede in Ebron, of
 whom Golias come. *Iosephus.* Men in that tyme know-
 enge by Adam that thei scholde peresche with water other
 fyre, did write artes whom thei hade geten by labore in ij.
 pillers of diverse ston, that hit scholde not peresche from
 memory. Oon ston was of marbole, ageyne the floenge of
 water ; that other was of tyleston, ageyne the brennenge of
 fyre ; whiche pillers be seyde to be zitte in Siria. *Genesis.*
 Þerfore Noe beenge of v^e yere in age, gate Sem, Cham,
 and Iapheth, that is to say, when Noe was of that age, he
 hade geten those childer, Sem, Cham, and Iapheth ; and
 after that, by the space of a c. yere, Noe made the schippe of
 pleyne burdes, dressede with picche with ynne and with owte,
 conteynenge iij^c cubites in longitude and lⁱⁱ cubites in brode-
 ness, xxxⁱⁱ cubites in hiȝhte, that was from the bothom of
 hit vn to the hacches, where he made a wyndowe, and a

¹ or *ellys*, Cx.

² *in*] by, Cx.

³ Added from *a.* and Cx.

⁴ *zere he*, MS. (not *a.*)

⁵ *to seyne*, Cx.

⁶ *smoth*, Cx.

⁷ *within and without*, Cx.

⁸ *kele*, *a.* and Cx.

⁹ *Can*, Harl. MS.

in latere deorsum. Fecit etiam mansiunculas, cœnacula, et tristega, consummans eam in¹ cubito.²

Arcæ cum
homine
compara-
tio.

*Petrus, capitulo tricesimo.*³ Et facta est hæc arca instar corporis humani, in quo longitudo, scilicet⁴ a planta usque ad verticem, sexies major est latitudine, quæ extenditur a crate lateris ad cratem; et iterum longitudo decies major est⁵ altitudine, quæ extenditur a dorso usque ad ventrem. ⁶*Hugutio de arca.* Arca ista non valebat⁷ tot et tanta⁸ capere, nisi cubiti illi fuissent geometrici; cubitus enim communis et usualis⁹ continet pedem et dimidium, sive sex palmos. Palmus autem¹⁰ extenditur a pollice usque ad extremum digitum. Cubitus vero geometricus continet sex cubitos communes, quod est¹¹ novem pedes.

Noe arcam
ingreditur.

Igitur¹² arca perfecta, Noe sexcentesimo anno vitæ suæ ingressus est in eam primo die secundi mensis, introducens ad se per octo dies quæ precepta fuerant introduci, antequam Dominus plueret super terram. Et sic factum est diluvium per annum pæne terram¹³ occupans.

¹ in] om. B.

² Paragraph abbreviated in C.D.

³ capitulo xxx.] om. C.D.

⁴ scilicet] om. B.

⁵ est] om. B.

⁶ Rabanus et, ins. C.D.

⁷ valuit, C.D.

⁸ tot et tanta] tanta et tot, B.; tam multa, C.D.

⁹ usualis et communis, B.

¹⁰ enim, B.; quoque, C.D.

¹¹ quod est] scilicet, B.; qui sunt, D.

¹² The rest of this chapter is wanting in C.; part is transposed to the beginning of the chapter. See previous note.

¹³ terram fere, B.

pe side downward, and housynge and cabans wip dyuers flo-
 rynge: pe wyndow was a cubyt highe. *Trevisa*. Here me¹
 may wondre how pe wyndowe was i-made bynepe in pe side
 of the schippe for comynge [yn]² of water. Doctor de Lyra
 meueþ pis doute, and [sayth]³ þat pere we haueþ fenestra, þat
 is a fenestre and a wyndow, pe lettre of hebrew hatte⁴ lucerna,
 þat is a lanterne; and som men seip þat þat lanterne was a car-
 buncle oper som oper precious stoon, þat schoon and ʒaf liʒt
 clere i-now pere it was i-sette. Bot som oper seip þat þat
 wyndowe was an hool⁵ cristal stoon, and feng yn liʒt⁶ and hilde
 out water. Meny oper wyndowes were in pe schippe, and so it
 nedede, for [pe]⁷ schippe was ful grete and huge, and had yn
 ful many bestes. *Petrus*, 30. Þis schip was i-made somdel to
 pe liknesse of manis body, in pe whiche pe lengþe from pe sole
 of pe foot in to pe top of pe heued⁸ is suche sixe as pe brede,
 þat is from pe myddel of pe side ribbes in pe oper side. Also⁹
 pe lengþe is suche ten as pe depnesse þat streccheþ from pe
 ribbe¹⁰ to pe wombe. *Trevisa*. Yf pe man is¹¹ ful schape as
 he schulde be, noþer to greet noþer¹² to smal. *Hugo de Arca*.¹³
 Þis schippe myʒte nouʒt fonge so meny bestes and oper þinges
 and so grete, but pe cubites were cubites of gemetrie.¹⁴ For
 pe comoun cubite þat me vseþ conteyneþ but a foot and an
 half, þat is sixe spannes. A spanne streccheþ from pe ende of
 pe þombe to pe ende of pe myddel fynger, whan pe honde is
 i-strauʒt. But a cubite of gemetrie conteyneþ sixe comoun
 cubites, þat wil be nyne foot long. *Genesis*. Þanne whan the

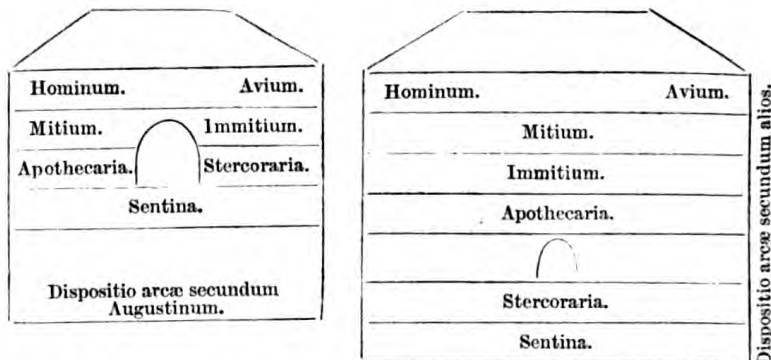
TREVISA.

durre in the side downwarde. And also mansiones and
 other chambres, endenge theym in a cubite. *Petrus*, 30.
 That schippe was made after similitude of the man, in whom
 the longitude, whiche is from the soole of the foote vn to
 the toppes of the hede, is in vj. tymes more then the brode-
 nesse of hym, whiche is extended from side to side; and
 also the longitude of hym is x. tymes more then the hiʒhte
 whiche is extended from the bak to the bely. *Hugutio de*
Arca. That schippe myʒte not conteyne so mony thynges
 with owte the cubites were geometricalle, for the commune
 cubite and vsualle conteynethe a foote and a dimidia, a geo-
 metricalle cubite conteynethe vj. commune cubites, whiche
 make ix. footes. *Genesis*. Noe endenge that schippe in the

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ men, Cx.² Added from a. and Cx.³ Added from Cx.⁴ hab, a. β. γ. and Cx., which
seems right.⁵ at hool of, a. and Cx.⁶ by whiche light entred, Cx.⁷ Added from a. and Cx.⁸ heed, Cx.⁹ Also in, MS. (not a. or Cx.)¹⁰ rigge, Cx.¹¹ be of, Cx.¹² ne, a.¹³ Arm, MS.¹⁴ geometry, Cx.

Prima ætas
sæculi ter-
minatur.

Aqua nempe diluvii transcendit montes excelsos quindecim cubitis, quia per tantam altitudinem putantur opera hominum fœdasse aera, scilicet per ignis adorationem, qui tam alte extulit.¹ In hoc² anno terminatur prima ætas sæculi, ab Adam usque ad diluvium sub generationibus decem, quæ supra tanguntur, habens annos secundum Josephum, libro primo, capitulo quarto, et etiam secundum Hæbræos, duo milia sexcentos quinquaginta sex. Sed secundum Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorum, libro quinto, duo milia ducentos, quadraginta



duos. Sed secundum Hieronymum non plene duo milia; secundum Methodium duo milia. Ipse nempe Methodius³ omittit annos, si qui superfuerint supra millenarios, quia ipse calculat ætates per chiliades.

¹ *Aqua . . . extulit*] om. A.B.

² *quo*, A.B.

³ *Methodius*] om. A.B.

schippe was i-made, Noe, in þe 3ere of his lyf sex hondred, entrede and 3ede in to [þat]¹ schippe þe firste day of þe secunde monþe, þat is May.² And in ei3te dayes he brou3te in to þe schippe al þat he was i-hote yn for to brynge,³ or⁴ oure Lorde sent reyne vpon⁵ erþe. And so þe flood was i-made, and occupied þe erþe wel nyh al a 3ere. Þe water of þe flood passede fiftene cubites aboue þe hi3est hilles. For the workes of mankynde defouled þe ayer so hi3e, as me troweþ, by worschippyng of fuyre þat smokede and spranclede⁶ vp so hi3e. Þis 3ere endep⁷ the firste age of þe world from Adam to Noe his flood vnder ten generaciouns þat we speke of raper. *And Iosephus, libro primo, capitulo quarto.* And also the Hebrewes seiþ þat þis firste age of þe world conteynep two þowsand 3ere seuen hondred⁸ and sixe and fifty; but þe seuenty torneres and Isidre also, libro quinto, seiþ two þowsand 3ere seuen hondred and two and fourty. But Ierom seiþ not fullliche two þowsand. And Methodius seiþ two þowsand, for here he leueþ þe odde 3eres þat beep ouer þe þowsandes.⁹ For þey¹⁰ calclep and acountep þe ages of þe world by þowsendes, and leet þat oper deel abyde.

TREVISA.

(Diagrams of the ark as in Higden's text.)

vj^c. yere of his life, entrede in to hit þe firste day of the secunde monethe, bryngenge to hit by viij^{the} dayes thynges commaunded to be brou3hte to hit, or the reyne began: after that a floode was made, occupienge the erthe allemoste by a yere. The water of þat floode was above the hieste hilles by xv. cubites, by whiche altitude hit is seide the werkes of men to haue corrupte the aier. In whiche yere the firste age of the worlde is terminate, from Adam to the grete floode, vnder x. generaciones, hauenge, after Iosephus, libro 1^o, capitulo 4^o, and after men of Ebrewe, ij^m vj^c. lvj. yere. But after the lxx^{ti} interpretatores, and after Isidorus, libro 5^o, ij^m ij^c. xliij^{ti} yere; after Seynte Ierom not fully ij^m; after Methodius ij^m, but he levethe yeres, if þer be eny ouer m^t, for he dothe calcle the ages by ciliades.

MS. HAR.:
2261.

(Here follow diagrams of the ark, entitled, *Descriptio arca Noe, secundum doctos.*)

¹ Added from a. and Cx.
² of Maii, Cx.
³ al that he was warned to brynge in, Cx.
⁴ ar, a.; er, Cx.
⁵ here vpon, a., Cx.
⁶ sprynkeld, Cx.

⁷ ended, Cx.
⁸ hondred 3ere, MS. (not a. or Cx.)
⁹ So a. and Cx.; þowsand, MS.
¹⁰ he, β. γ. and Cx., which is right, but the strange use of the pronouns has been noticed before both in MS. and a.

CAP. VI.¹*De posteritate Noe.*²De arcu
celesti.

Genesis. Exsiccatis tandem aquis diluvii,³ et Noe egresso vicesimo septimo die mensis secundi, id est, Maii,⁴ promisit Dominus Noe quod ultra non fieret diluvium. In cujus fœderis signum posuit arcum suum in nubibus celi. *Petrus.*⁵ Arcus est signum duorum iudiciorum, iudicii scilicet præteriti per aquam ne⁶ timeatur, et futuri per ignem ut expectetur. Inde est quod arcus⁷ habet duos⁸ colores, exteriorem cæruleum, id est, aqueum, quia⁹ præterit; et igneum interiorem, quia¹⁰ futurus est. Et tradunt sancti quod per quadraginta annos¹¹ ante iudicium non videbitur¹² arcus.

Ranulphus. Secundum sanctos ab Adam usque ad Noe non pluerat, nec Iris apparuerat; nec fuit usus

¹ The division of the chapters is not marked by the original scribe in A., but a later hand has noted Cap. vi. in the margin.

² Title wanting in MSS.

³ *diluvii*] om. C.D.

⁴ *vicesimo . . . Maii*] eadem scilicet die qua ingressus est anno revoluto, C.D.

⁵ A.B. add 32. The true reference is to c. 35.

⁶ *ut*, B.

⁷ *arcus*] om. C.D.

⁸ *duos*] om. B.

⁹ *qui*, B.

¹⁰ *qui*, A.B.

¹¹ *per . . . annos*] 40 annis, C.D.

¹² *videtur*, B.

Capitulum sextum.

TREVISA.

At þe laste whanne þe water of þe flood was wiþdrawe¹ and² Noe went out of þe schippe þe seuen and twenty day of þe secounde monþe, þat is, May; þan oure Lorde byhete Noe þat no suche flood schulde be after þat; and in tokenynge³ of þe⁴ couenant he sette his bowe in þe clowdes, þat is, þe reyn-bowe. *Petrus*, 32°. Þe reynbowe is tokenynge⁵ of tweye domes, of þe dome þat was i-doo by water; for me schulde nouzt drede hit; and of þe doome þat schal be by fuyre, for me schulde drede hit. Þerfore þe bowe hap tweie coloures, þe vtter is watery, for þe dome of water is apassed; þe ynnere is fury, for þe dome of fuyre schal be. And holy seyntes telleþ þat þe reynbowe schal nouzt be seie fourty zere to fore þe day of dome. Also þei telle þat it roon neuere from Adam to Noes flood. Also noon reynbowe was i-seie at þat tyme, noþer flesche ne fische i-ete, noþer wyn i-dronke. For þat tyme was as hit were springing tyme, and þoo was i-now and plente of al⁶ heleful⁷ þinges, þat was afterward i-chaunged þorw synne.

Capitulum sextum.

THE waters of that grete floode dryede, and Noe goen MS. HARL. 2261. furthe from his schippe the xxvijth day of the secunde monethe, whiche was Maii, God promisede to Noe that the waters scholde sease, in a signe where of he put his bawe in the clowdes of heuyn. *Petrus*, 22° *capitulo*. That bawe is a signe of ij. iuggementes, oon paste by water, whiche scholde not be dredde, and an other iuggemente to comme by fyre whiche scholde be taryede. Therefore hit is that a bawe hathe ij. coloures, the coloure exteriale as of water, whiche is paste, and a coloure of fire with ynne, whiche is to comme. Also holy men expresse that the bawe schalle not be seen by xlth yere afore the iuggemente. Also they say that there was noo reyne from Adam vn to the grete floode, neiper that bawe did appere, neither the exercise of flesche, fische, either of vynes, was vsede; for that tyme was as the temperate tyme of ver, and habundaunce of hollesomme thynges whiche were chaungede afterwarde by synne. Wherefore the eitenge of flesche

¹ *flode withdrewe*, a. and Cx.² *and*] om. Cx.³ *tokyn*, a. Cx.⁴ *þat*, a.⁵ *tokyn*, a.⁶ Text as in a. and Cx.; some words repeated without sense in MS.⁷ *helthful*, Cx.

Incipiunt
genera-
tiones a
Noe usque
Abraham.
Shem.
Arphaxad.

carnis aut piscis aut vineæ, sed herbarum et radicum.¹ Vixit Noe post diluuium trecentis² quinquaginta annis, et sic in toto vixit nongentis quinquaginta annis; et sic³ mortuus est, relictis post se filiis⁴ Sem, Chaam, et Jafeth,⁵ de quibus disseminatum est omne genus hominum.⁶ *Genesis*.⁷ Igitur biennio post diluuium Sem centum annorum existens⁸ genuit Arfaxath,⁹ et vixit postmodum¹⁰ quingentis annis.¹¹ Arfaxat, pater Chaldæorum secundum Hieronymum, centum triginta quinque annorum existens secundum Isidorum, libro sexto, sed¹² secundum Hebræos triginta quinque¹³ annorum genuit Sale, et vixit postmodum trecentis tribus annis, sed secundum Septuaginta interpretes, et¹⁴ secundum Lucam Evangelistam qui secutus est Septuaginta interpretes, Arfaxat centum triginta quinque annorum existens genuit Caynan,¹⁵ et postmodum vixit trecentis triginta annis.¹⁶

Cainan.
Salah.

Caynan¹⁷ centum triginta¹⁸ annorum existens genuit Sale,¹⁹ a quo sunt antiqui Samaritæ vel Judæi,²⁰ et postmodum, secundum Septuaginta interpretes,¹⁴ vixit quadringentis triginta octo annis.

¹ *R. . . radicum*] This passage (added in margin of C.) is as follows in A.B.C.:—"Item dicunt quod ab Adam usque ad diluuium non pluerat nec arcus apparuerat,* nec usus carnis, piscis, aut vineæ fuerat, quia tunc fuit quasi vernalis temperies et copia rerum salubrium, quæ postmodum per peccatum fuerunt immutata,† unde et‡ post diluuium esus carniæ concessus est homini, qui prius herbis et radicibus vescebatur."

² *cc.*, B.

³ *sic*] om. C.D.

⁴ *post se filiis*] tribus post se filiis, A.; tribus filiis, B.; tribus filiis suis, C.D.

⁵ *Japhet*, A.B.D.

* *erat*, B.

† *immutata sunt*, A.B.

‡ *et*] om. A.

⁶ *humanum*, A.

⁷ *Genesis*] om. C.D.

⁸ *secundo anno post diluuium*, ins. C.

⁹ *Arphaxat*, A.D.

¹⁰ *postmodum*] almost always *post* in this cap. in C.; *postea*, D.

¹¹ *annos*, D.; correctly; but the MSS. have *annis* almost always.

¹² *et*, A.

¹³ 239, B.

¹⁴ *et . . . interpretes*] om. B.

¹⁵ *Chaynan*, A.

¹⁶ Sentence slightly transposed and abbreviated in C.D.

¹⁷ *Luca teste*, ins. C.D., badly.

¹⁸ 230, D.

¹⁹ By a blunder of the scribe the sentence has been transposed in A., marginal notes being placed to indicate the errors.

²⁰ *vel Judæi*] Iudi, E.; om. A.

Bot after þe flood mankynde hadde leue forto ete fische and flesche,¹ þat raper ete herbes and rootes. Noe lyuede after þe flood þre hondred ʒere and fifty, and he leuede in alle nyne hondred wynter² and fifty, and so deyde, and lefte þre sones [on lyue]³ Sem, Cam, and Iapheth, of þe whiche þre com al manere of mankynde. *Genesis.* Þanne two ʒere after þe flood Sem was an hondred ʒere old, and gat Arphaxath, and lyuede afterward fyue hondred ʒere. Arphaxath was fader of Caldeys, and gate Sale whan he was an hondred ʒere olde and fyue and þritty, as Ierom seip; but Isidre, libro sexto and þe⁴ Hebrewes seip fyue and þritty ʒere. He gat Caynan,⁵ and lyued afterward þre hondred ʒere and þre;⁶ [but þe seventy, and Luc also þat folweþ hem: Arphaxat whanne he was an hondred ʒere and fyue and þritty, he gat Caynan, and lyuede afterward þre hondred ʒere and þritty.]⁷ Caynan, an hondred ʒere olde and þritty, gat Sale; of hym come þe olde Samaritans and the Iudees, and lyuede afterward foure hondred and eiʒte and þritty ʒere,⁸ so⁹ þe seenty telleþ.

TREVISA.

was grauntede to man after that grete floode, vsenge a fore that tyme to eite yerbes and rootes. Noe lyvede after that floode by ccc. and l^{ti} yere, and so he lyvede in alle ix^c and l^{ti} yere, whiche dyenge lefte his iij. childer after hym, Sem, Cham, and Iapheth, of whom alle the kynde of man was disseminate. *Genesis.* Sem beenge of a c. yere in age, in the secunde yere after the grete floode, gate Arphaxat, and lyvede after v^c yere. Arphaxat, the fader of men of Caldea, after Seynte Ierom, beenge of a c. and xxxv^{ti} yere after Ysoder and men of Hebrewes, when he was of the age of xxxv^{ti} yere, he gate Sale, and lyvede after ccc. iij. yere. But after the lxx^{ti} interpretatores, and after Seynte Luke Euangeliste, whiche foloede theyme, Arphaxat of a c. and xxxv^{ti} yere in age, gate Cainan, and lyvede after ccc. and xxx^{ti} yere. Cainan, hauenge a c. and xxx^{ti} yere in

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *flesch and fische, a.*² *yere, Cx.*³ *Added from a. and Cx.*⁴ *þe] om. a.*⁵ *He gat Caynan] om. a. and Cx.*⁶ *So a. and Cx.; þritty, MS.*⁷ *Added from a. and Cx. (the latter has also foloweth.)*⁸ *ʒere] transposed in a.*⁹ *so þat, MS. (not a. or Cx.)*

- Sale. Sale secundum Hebræos triginta¹ annorum existens genuit Heber, a quo dicti sunt Hebræi; et postmodum vixit quadringentis² annis; sed Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorus anteponunt centum ante³ triginta et post trecentos triginta.⁴
- Heber. Heber, a quo dicti sunt⁵ Hebræi⁶ secundum Hebræos triginta quatuor⁷ annorum existens genuit Phaleg,⁸ et postmodum vixit quadringentis triginta annis; sed⁹ Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorus ponunt centum ante triginta quatuor.¹⁰
- Phaleg. Phaleg¹¹ secundum Hebræos triginta annorum existens¹² genuit Reu vel¹³ Ragau, et postmodum vixit¹⁴ ducentis novem annis; sed Septuaginta interpretes¹⁵ et Isidorus addunt centum ante¹⁶ triginta, et postmodum ponunt¹⁷ ducentos octo.¹⁸ Et vocatus est iste Phaleg,¹⁹ quod interpretatum est²⁰ *divisio*, eo quod²¹ in diebus²² ejus, cum terra esset labii unius, linguæ confusæ sunt turris²³ constructione, et sic gentes per terras sunt divisæ.²⁴
- Ragau vel Reu. Ragau secundum Hebræos triginta duorum annorum existens²⁵ genuit Sarug, et vixit postmodum ducentis²⁶ septem annis; sed²⁷ Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorus ponunt centum annos ante triginta duos,²⁸ et postmodum²⁹ ponunt³⁰ ducentos septem.³¹

¹ 100, D.² 430, C.; 403, D.³ *ante*] om. B.⁴ 303, D.; sentence slightly varied in C.D.⁵ *dicti sunt*] om. C.D.⁶ *a...Hebræi*] om. B.⁷ *quatuor*] om. B.C.⁸ So C.D.; *Phalech*, A.B.E.⁹ *quadringentis...sed*] 40, B.¹⁰ *ponunt...quatuor*] anteponunt cxxxiiij. annos, B.; ante ponunt 100 et post 330, C.D.¹¹ So C.D.; *Phalech*, A.B.E.¹² *existens*] om. C.D.¹³ *Reu vel*] om. D.¹⁴ *vixit*] added from A.C.D.¹⁵ *interpretes*] om. A.¹⁶ *anteponunt centum*, B.¹⁷ *ponunt*] om. B.¹⁸ *sed...octo*] om. C.D.¹⁹ *Phalech*, A.B.E.²⁰ *interpretatur*, C.D.²¹ *eo quod*] quia, C.D.²² *tempore*, B.²³ *in turris*, B.²⁴ Transposed in C.D.²⁵ *existens*] om. C.D.²⁶ *trecentis*, C.D.²⁷ *sed secundum*, B.²⁸ *anteponuntur* 132, B.²⁹ *post*, B.³⁰ *ponunt*] om. B.³¹ 107, B.; *sed lxx. et Isidorus ponunt 300 ante* 32, C.D.

Hebrewes seip þat Sale, whan he was pritty 3ere olde, gat TREVISIA.
 Heber. Of pis Heber þey were i-cleped Hebrewes. And Sale
 lyuede after he hadde i-gete Heber foure hondred 3ere, but þe
 seenty and Isidre acountep¹ þe hondred 3ere afore² þe pritty,
 and þre hondred 3ere after þe pritty. Of [Heber]³ Hebrewes
 had⁴ þe name. Þe Hebrewes seip þat Heber foure and pritty
 3ere olde gat Phalech, and lyuede afterward foure hondred
 3ere and pritty; but þe seenty putteþ þe hondred tofore þe
 foure and pritty. Hebrewes seip þat Phalech pritty 3ere olde
 gat Reu, þat hatte Ragau also, and lyuede afterward two hon-
 dred 3ere and nyne; but þe seenty and Ysidre putteþ þe hon-
 dred tofore þe pritty, and afterwarde two hundred and nyne.
 Þis hatte⁵ Phalech ri3tfulliche, for Phalech is to menyng⁶
departynge; for longage was departed in his tyme, þat raper
 was al oon in þe buldynge of þe tour Babel. And so men
 were departed in to dyuers londes. Ragau, two and pritty
 3ere olde, gat Sarug, and lyuede afterward two hondred yere
 and seune; so seip Hebrewes. But þe seenty and Isidre
 seip an hondred tofore two and pritty, and afterwarde two hon-
 dred and seune. Hebrewes seip þat Sarug pritty 3ere olde gat

age, gate Sale, of whom the olde Samarites come. Sale, after MS. HARL.
 men of Hebrewe, beenge of xxx^{ti} yere in age, gate Heber 2261.
 of whom men of Hebrewe toke name, and lyvede after
 cccc. yere; but after the lxx^{ti} interpretatores a c. yere
 be put afore xxx^{ti} yere, and after that ccc. and xxx^{ti}.
 Heber, of whom men of Hebrewe toke name, hauenge xxxiiij.
 yere in age, gate Phaleg, and lyvede after cccc. and
 xxx^{ti} yere; but the lxx^{ti} interpretatores put a c. yere
 afore xxxiiij^{ti} yere. Phaleg, after men of Hebrewe, of
 xxx^{ti} yere in age, gate Reu or Ragau, and lyvede after ij^c
 and ix. yere; but the lxx^{ti} interpretatores and Ysoder
 putte a c. yere afore xxx^{ti} and cc. and vij. yere after, and
 he was callede Phaleg, as diuision by interpretation, in that
 the langage were confusede in his daies in the construccion
 of the towre of Babel, and so the peple were diuided.
 Ragau, after men of Hebrewe, hauenge xxxij^{ti} yere in age,
 gate Sarug, lyvenge after cc. and vij. yere; but the lxx^{ti}
 interpretatores and Ysoder putte an c. yere afore xxxij^{ti}
 and after ij^c vij. yere. Sarug, after men of Hebrewe, of xxx^{ti}

¹ *accompted*, Cx.

² *tofore, a.; bifor*, Cx.

³ *Added from Cx.*

⁴ *haue*, Cx.

⁵ *heet*, Cx.

⁶ *to say*, Cx.

- Sarug. Sarug secundum Hebræos triginta annorum existens¹ genuit Nachor, et postmodum vixit ducentis duobus² annis, sed Septuaginta interpretes et Isidorus ponunt centum annos ante triginta et postmodum ducentos.
- Nachor. Nachor secundum Hebræos viginti annorum³ existens⁴ genuit Thare, et postmodum⁵ vixit annis centum novem; sed Septuaginta interpretes⁶ ponunt⁷ centum ante viginti novem. Isidorus⁸ dicit Nachor fuisse septuaginta novem annorum, quando genuit Thare.
- Thare. Thare secundum Hebræos et secundum Isidorum cum esset⁹ annorum septuaginta genuit Abram,¹⁰ Nachor, et¹¹ Aram; et postmodum vixit centum triginta annis; sed Septuaginta interpretes ponunt centum ante septuaginta annos. *Petrus, tricesimo octavo.*¹²
- Ætas
secunda
terminatur. Et sic¹³ terminatur secunda sæculi ætas a diluvio usque ad nativitatem Abrahæ, per decem generationes protensa; habens secundum Hebræos, Josephum, et Hieronymum annos ducentos¹⁴ nonaginta duos, sed secundum Septuaginta interpretes et Augustinum sunt¹⁵ anni mille septuaginta duo sub generationibus¹⁶ undecim; sed¹⁷ secundum Isidorum sunt anni nongenti¹⁸ quadraginta duo, secundum Methodium habet chiliadem.

¹ *existens*] om. C.D.² *ducentos*, C.D.³ *annorum*] om. E.⁴ *viginti existens*] annorum 39, C.D.⁵ *et postmodum*] om. B.⁶ *interpretes*] om. B.⁷ *præponunt*, A.⁸ *autem*, ins. C.D.⁹ *cum esset*] om. C.D.¹⁰ *Abraham*, C.D.¹¹ *Nachor et*] om. B.¹² *tricesimo octavo*] om. C.D.¹³ *sic*] om. B.¹⁴ *mille ducentos*, C.D.¹⁵ *sunt*] om. B.¹⁶ *et generationes*, C.D.¹⁷ *sed*] om. C.D.¹⁸ *nonaginti*, E.

Nachor, and lyued afterward two hondred ʒere and tweyne; but the seenty and Ysidre putteþ an hondred ʒere to fore pritty,¹ and two hondred after.² Hebrewes seiþ þat Nachor nyne and twenty ʒere olde gat Thare, and lyued afterward an hondrede ʒere and nyne; but þe seenty putteþ an hondred ʒere to fore nyne and twenty; and Isidre seiþ þat Nachor was seenty ʒere and nyne, whan he gat Thare. [þe Hebrewes and Isidre seiþ þat]³ Thaare seenty ʒere olde gat Abraham, Naachor, and Aram,⁴ and lyued afterward an hondred ʒere and pritty, but the seenty putteþ the hondred to fore þe seenty ʒeres.⁵ *Trevisa.* ʒit take hede rediliche of þe seenty: I haue i-seide to fore þat þey were þre score and ten, þat tornede Holy Writte out of Ebrew in to Grewe: hem I clepe þe Seenty, and so þey beþ i-cleped in þis book and of meny holy doctoures; and þey beþ specialliche i-cleped þe Seenty tourneris,⁶ for þey torned Holy Writte out of Ebrew in to Grewe.⁷ *Petrus, tricesimo octavo.* And so the secunde age of þe world is i-ended, from Noes flood to Habrahams burþe; and conteyneþ ten generaciouns, and two hondred ʒere foure⁸ score and twelue, so seiþ the Hebrewes, Ioseph, and Ierom. But þe seenty, as⁹ Seynt Austyn, acounteþ a þow-sand ʒere and two and seenty, and eleuene¹⁰ generaciouns. But Isidre acounteþ nyne hondred ʒere, and two and fourty;

TREVISA.

yere in age, gate Nachor, and lyvede after ij^c and ij. yere; but the lxx^{ti} interpretatores and Ysoder putte a c. yere afore xxx^{ti}, and after that cc. yere. Nachor, after men of Hebrewes, hauenge xxix^{ti} yere in age, gate Thare, and lyvede after a c. and ix. yere. But Ysoder seithe Nachor to haue been of lxxix. yere when that he did gette Thare. Thare, after men of Hebrewes and Ysoder, of lxx^{ti} yere, gate Abraham, and lyvede after a c. and [x] xx^{ti} yere; but the lxx^{ti} interpretatores putte a c. yere afore lxx^{ti}. *Petrus, capitulo 38º.* And so the secunde age of the worlde is terminate from the grete floode to the natiuite of Abraham by x. generaciones, hauenge, after men of Hebrewes, Iosephus, and Seynte Ierom, ix^c xc. and ij. yere; but after the lxx^{ti} interpretatores and Seynte Austyn, m^l yere, lxxij., vnder a xj. generaciones. And after Ysoder, ix^c yere xlij^{ti}. And after Methodius, hit hathe a ciliade. The cause of this

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *the thrytty*, Cx.² *afterward*, Cx.³ Added from a. and Cx.⁴ *Aaron*, MS.; *Aran*, Cx.⁵ *yere*, Cx.⁶ *turneres*, a.⁷ Cx. omits the extract from *Trevisa*.⁸ So a. and Cx.; and *pritty foure*, MS.⁹ and, a. and Cx.¹⁰ *enleuene*, a. and Cx.

Diversitas
inter He-
bræos et
lxx. inter-
pretes.

Causa hujus diversitatis est quod Septuaginta interpretes et Augustinus addunt centum annos ad ætatem cujuslibet generationis¹ ab Arphaxat² usque ad Nachor.

Beda. Sicut Noe fuit decimus ab Adam, sic Abram³ fuit decimus a Noe. Veruntamen Lucas in serie⁴ genealogiæ suæ⁵ quando dixit “qui fuit Sale, qui fuit “Caynan, qui fuit Arphaxat,” secutus est Septuaginta interpretes, qui unam generationem plusquam Hebræi posuerunt, *Augustinus De Civitate, libro quintodecimo, capitulo tertiodecimo.* Cum aliquid diversum in pluribus translationibus reperitur quod juxta fidem rerum gestarum stare non potest, potius credatur illi linguæ unde in aliam fit translatio. *Beda.* Translatio⁶ Septuaginta interpretum vel minus solícite primo edita est, vel postmodum a gentilibus⁷ corrupta. *Eusebius.* Ab Adam usque ad Abraham nulla penitus⁸ Græca nec barbara invenitur historia. *Methodius.* Centesimo anno tertiæ⁹ chiliadis¹⁰ natus est¹¹ Noe filius nomine Ionicus,¹² cui dedit Noe dominationes usque ad mare Eliocora, cui

Ionicus,
Noe filius.

¹ generantis, A.C. ; ætatem after generationis, B.

² So A.D. ; Arfaxat, E.

³ Abraham, A.B.C.D.

⁴ suæ, added from A.B.C.D.

⁵ geneologie, E. (not A.)

⁶ vero, ins. B.

⁷ gentibus, B.

⁸ est nec, ins. C.D. ; nec (only), ins. A.B.

⁹ tertiæ] om. B.

¹⁰ chiliadis, C.

¹¹ est] om. E.

¹² Ionichus, E.

and Met[h]odius a þowsand. Þe caas of þis dyuersite¹ is, for þe TREVISIA.
 seenty, and Seynt Austyn² also, putteþ to eueriche fader his
 age from Arphaxath to Nachor an hondred ʒere. *Beda.* As
 Noe was þe tenþe from Adam, so Abraham was þe tenþe from
 Noe. Nopeles Luke followeþ þe seenty in his genelogie,
 whan he seip, "Qui fuit Sale," þat is to menyng, "þat was
 " Sale his sone " and so forþ, " þat was Caynan his sone, þat
 " was Arphaxath his sone." Þere Luke foloweþ þe seenty, þat
 putteþ on generacioun moo þan þe Hebrewes putteþ. *Augus-
 tinus de Civitate, libro quintodecimo, capitulo tertiodecimo.*
 Whanne in meny translaciouns is dyuersite i-founde, þat may
 noupt stonde ; þanne þe firste longage, þat þe tornyng and
 translacioun is i-made of, schal be most i-trowed.³ *Beda.* Þe
 tornyng and translacioun of þe seenty was first nouzt ful
 rediliche i-torned, oþer it was afterward apayred by mysbe-
 leued men. *Eusebius.* From Adam to Abraham is no storie
 i-founde in Grewe, noþer in straunge langage. *Methodius.*
 Noe hadde a sone i-bore two þowsand ʒere and an hondred
 after þe begynnynge of þe worlde ; þat sone heet Ionicus ;
 Noe ʒaf hym lordschip anoon to þe see Eliochora. To hym
 God Almyʒty ʒaf witte and wisdom þat he schulde fynde

diuersite may be assignede þat the lxx^{ti} interpretatores, MS. HARL.
 and Seynte Austyn putte a c. yere to the age of euery 2261.
 man from Arphaxat to Nachor. *Beda.* And lyke as Noe
 was the xth from Adam, soe Abraham was the xth from
 Noe ; but truly Seynte Luke folowede the lxx^{ti} interpre-
 tatores in the ordre of his genealogy when he seyde " whiche
 " was Sale, whiche was Cainan," whiche putte oon genera-
 tion more then men of Hebrewes putte. *Augustinus de Civi-
 tate Dei, libro quinto decimo, capitulo 13^o.* When a thyng
 is founde variable and diuerse in many translaciones, that
 hit may stonde accordenge to the trawethe of the gestes,
 then hit is to ʒiffe moste specialle credence to that lan-
 gage from whom the translacion is made. *Beda.* The
 translacion of the lxx^{ti} interpretatores was made insuffi-
 cientely, either hyt was corrupte of peple afterwarde.
Eusebius. There is noo storrye founde from Adam vn to
 Abraham in Grewe other in the langage of Barbre. *Me-
 thodius.* Ionicus, the son of Noe, was borne in the c. yere
 of the thridde ciliade ; to whom Noe ʒafe many dominations ;
 and God ʒafe to hym a ʒiffe of sapience that he myʒhte

¹ dyuercete, a.
² Augustyn, Cx.

³ bileued, Cx.

etiam dedit Deus donum sapientiæ, ut inveniret astronomiam, et quod¹ sciret prædicere quosdam eventus, potissime² de ortu et occasu quatuor regnorum principalium; scilicet quod primi³ de Cham regnarent Assyrii, de quo fuit Belus; postmodum de Sem,⁴ Medi, Persæ, et Græci; denuo⁵ de Japhet, Romani. Hæc ostendit Ionicus⁶ Nemphroti⁷ discipulo suo, qui exhinc accensus libidine⁸ dominandi regnavit inter filios Cham in Babylone, qui interim obtinuerunt Assyrios et Ægyptios, quousque regnaret Ninus⁹ Assyrios. *Josephus, libro primo, capitulo quinto.*¹⁰ Post obitum Noe in diebus Phaleg,¹¹ cum terra esset labii unius, filii filiorum Noe, ducente et docente eos Nemphrot, filio Chus filii Cham filii Noe, putantes felicitatem non a Deo sed propria virtute sibi provenire, insuper et¹² arbitrantes¹³ quod Deus per invidiam eos separare vellet,¹⁴ ut sic divisos eos facilius subjugare posset, timentesque aliud¹⁵ diluvium adventurum,¹⁶ turrim altam ex cocto latere et bitumine colligato ædificabant in campo Sennaar,¹⁷ ubi postmodum constructa est Babylonia. Sed verius¹⁸ eos dispersit Deus, ne dis-

Nemphrot
vel Nim-
rod.

Turris
Babel.

¹ quod] ut, B.; om. C.D.

² præcipue, C.D.

³ primo, B.

⁴ Seem, B.

⁵ post, C.D.

⁶ Ionichus, some MSS.

⁷ Nembroti, D., and similarly below.

⁸ amore, C.D.

⁹ qui primo subjugavit, C.D.

¹⁰ capitulo quinto] om. B.

¹¹ Phalec, E.

¹² et] om. B.

¹³ So C.D.; arbitrabantur, A.E.

¹⁴ hac de causa, ins. C.D.

¹⁵ aliud] om. C.D.

¹⁶ adventurum] om. C.D.; venturum, B.

¹⁷ Sennar, B.

¹⁸ Verius autem, D.

science of astronomye, and he coupe¹ telle to forehonde² what schulde byfalle³ and come afterward; and specialliche of þe bygynnyng and endyng of þe foure cheef kyngdoms. And so þey knewe [þat]⁴ firste of Cham þe Assires schulde regne; of Cham com Belus. Afterward of Sem þe Medes, þe Perses, and Grees.⁵ Ðan of Iapheth þe Romayns. Ionichus schewed al þis to his disciple [Nemproth, þerfore]⁶ Nemproth had greet desire to reigne, and reigned in Babiloyne amonge Cham his children. Þey get and hild Assiria and Egipt, forto Nynus regned in Assiria vpon þe Assires. *Iosephus, libro primo, capitulo quinto.* After þat Noe was deed in Phalech his tyme, whan⁷ al þe men of þe worlde hadde oon longage and tonge, Noe his children by ledyng and by techyng of Nemproth trowed þat good happes and good speede is nouzt of God Almyzty, but by manis owne vertues and dedes. Also þey wende þat God Almyzty wolde departe hem by enuye, þat he myzte þe more liztliche make hem suget. Also þey dradde þat anoper flood schulde come, and bulde a wel hiþe place⁸ of brent tyle and glewe instede of mortar in þe feeld þat hatte Sennaar; þere Babiloyne was afterward i-bulde, but God Almyzty departed

TREVISA.

c 7

fynde astronomy, and to knowe thynges to comme, and specially of the spryngenge and fallenge of iiij. realmes, that is to say, men of Assiria scholde [come] of Cham, of whom Belus come. Afterwarde men of Media, of Persa, and men of Grewe scholde comme of Sem, and the Romanes of Iapheth. Ionicus schewede this to Nemproth his disciple, whiche accende in luste of dominacion reignede in Babilon among the childer of Cham, whiche obteynede men of Assiria and of Egipte vn tille that Ninus reignede there. *Iosephus, libro primo, capitulo quinto.* After the dethe of Noe in the daies of Phaleg, when the erthe was of oon langage, Nemproth techenge theyme, son of Chus, the son of Cham other Chuder,⁹ the son of Noe, trawenge felicite not to be of God but of their propre vertu, supposede that God wolde separate theyme that he myzhte subiecte theym diuidede the rather to hym, dredenge an other floode to comme, made to theyme an hie towre of sodde, tyle, ston, made sure with pycche, in the felde of Sennar, where Babilon was edifiede afterwarde. R. But truly God dispersede theyme

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ kouþ, a.² bifore, Cx.³ So a. and Cx.; byfalleþ, MS.⁴ Added from a. and Cx.; knew-
ethe, MS.⁵ the Grees, Cx., which is better.⁶ Added from a. and Cx.⁷ than, Cx.⁸ tour, a.⁹ The MS. has been corrected, and
the reading is somewhat uncertain.

sentiones inter se¹ facerent. Vocatus est autem² locus ille Babel, quod sonat *confusio*, eo quod linguæ ædificantium ibidem divino nutu sint³ confusæ. *Ranulphus*.⁴ Heber putatur immunis a conspiratione in turris constructione, et ideo⁵ immunis⁶ a linguæ confusione. *Petrus, capitulo tricesimo quinto*.⁷ Igitur Nemphrot robustus venator hominum,⁸ id est, oppressor, expulso Assur de terra illa, cœpit regnare inter filios Cham in Babylone civitate, quam fundavit. Hanc tamen postmodum Semiramis regina ampliavit. Deinde Nemphrot transivit ad Persas, et⁹ docuit adorare ignem et colere,¹⁰ ubi fundavit civitatem Niniven; quam postmodum Ninus et Semiramis¹¹ ampliarunt.¹²

CAP. VII.¹³

De filiis Noe et de regnis ab eorum posteris fundatis.¹⁴

Gentes
per terras
divisæ;
hominum
variæ for-
tunæ.

Augustinus De Civitate, libro octavodecimo, capitulo primo.¹⁵ Gentibus itaque per terras divisis, quibusque suas cupiditates sectantibus, dum id¹⁶ quod appetebatur nemini sufficere videbatur, adversus seipsas¹⁷ dividebantur;¹⁸ et pars prævalens reliquam opprimebat,

¹ eos, B.

² autem] so A.B.C.D.; om. E.

³ sunt, B.

⁴ *Ranulphus*] *Freculphus*, B.; om. A.C. The passage is added in the margin of C.; D. omits it.

⁵ iccirco, A.B.

⁶ fuit, B.C.

⁷ *capitulo xxv.*] om. C.D. The true reference is to *Hist. Gen.* c. 37.

⁸ hominum] om. B.

⁹ et] quos, C.D.

¹⁰ et colere] om. B.

¹¹ So B.; *Semira*, E.; *Samiramis*, A.; *Semiramis uxor sua plurimum*, C.D.

¹² ampliaverunt, A.

¹³ *Cap. VII.*] om. B.

¹⁴ No title in MSS.

¹⁵ The true reference is to lib. xviii. c. 2.

¹⁶ illud, A.B.

¹⁷ So B.; *se ipsam*, A.D.E.

¹⁸ So B.; *dividebatur*, A.D.E.

hem for þey schulde not make discencioun and stryf among hem self. Þis Nemprot was Chus his sone ; Chus was Cham his sone ; and Cham was Noe his [sone].¹ Þat place is i-cleped Babel, þat is to menyng *schedynge* ; for þere at God Almyȝte his heste þe longages and tonges of þe bulders were i-schad and to schift.² Heber was i-holde gilteles of conspiracioun in þe buldinge of þe toure, and perfore he was i-spared as gilteles in þe schedynge of tonges. *Petrus, tricesimo quinto.* Þanne Nemprot, a stronge huntene of men, þat is, a tyraunt vppon men, he putte Assur out of þat londe, and byganne to reigne among Cham his children³ in þe citee of Babiloyne þat he bulde. Noþeles Semiramis þe queene afterward made þis citee wel more. Afterward Nemprot wente to þe men of Pers and tauȝte hem to worschipe þe fuyre, and foundede þere þe citee of⁴ Nyneue. Afterward Ninus and Semiramis⁵ made þat citee more.

TREVISIA.

Capitulum septimum.

Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro octavodecimo, capitula primo. Whanne men were departed and to schift⁶ in to dyuers londes, and euerich folowed his owne likynge and wille, while

rather leste thei scholde make dissencion amonge theyme selfe, whiche place was callede Babel, sowndenge *a confusion*, in that the langages of men edifienge hit were confusede by the wyll of God. But Heber was trawede to be with owte blame from conspiracion in the makenge of that towre, wherefore he was partelesse in the confusion of the langage of theyme. *Petrus, 15^o.* There Nemproth the bostuous oppressor of men, expellenge Assur, began to reigne in the cite of Babilon amonge the childer of Cham, whiche cite he made, whom whene Semiramis made more large. After that Nemproth wente to men of Persa, and tauȝhte theyme to worschipe fire, where he made the cite of Ninuen, whom Ninus and Semiramis did ampliate afterward.

MS. HARL.
2261.

Capitulum septimum.

Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo, capitulo primo. This peple diided in to the worlde, and folowenge the lustes of ambicion, seenge that thynges not to be suffici-aunte that was desirede, was diidede amonge theyme selfe;

¹ Added from a. and Cx.

² skaterd, Cx.

³ childer, Cx.

⁴ of] om. a.

⁵ Semyramys, MS. (*Semyramis*, above.)

⁶ to schufte or skatred, Cx.

saluti libertatem præferens, ita ut magnæ¹ fierent admirationi, qui perire maluerunt quam servire; cum² vox naturæ sit malle subici quam deleri. Hinc non sine Dei providentia factum est, ut quidam essent regnis præditi, quidam subditi.³ *Isidorus, libro octavo, capitulo secundo.*⁴ Gentes igitur de Sem, primogenito Noe, descendentes possederunt terram meridianam ab ortu solis usque ad Phœnices, sub linguis viginti septem, patrias⁵ quadringentas sex occupantes.⁶ Qui vero⁷ de Cham descenderunt a Sidone per oceanum austri-
 num⁸ usque ad Gaditanum⁹ fretum tenuerunt patrias trecentas nonaginta quatuor sub linguis triginta. *Augustinus De Civitate, libro sextodecimo.*¹⁰ Qui autem de stirpe Japhet a Tauro monte Ciliciæ¹¹ descenderunt¹² versus aquilonem per oceanum septentrionalem mediam partem Asiæ et omnem Europam usque ad oceanum Britannicum, tenuerunt patrias ducentas sub linguis et gentibus quindecim, nomina locis et po-

Posteritas
Sem.

Posteritas
Cham.

Posteritas
Japhet.

¹ *magni*, A.

² *tamen*, ins. C. (not D.)

³ *subjecti*, B.

⁴ *Isidorus, libro quarto*, C.D. The true reference is to lib. ix. c. 2.

⁵ *vero*, ins. C.

⁶ *occupantes*] om. E.

⁷ *vero*] om. C.D.

⁸ *astrum*, C. (not D.)

⁹ *Gadithanum*, A.

¹⁰ b. 18. c. 1., D. The true reference seems to be lib. xvi. c. 3.

¹¹ *Scicilia*, B.

¹² *descenderunt*] om. D.E.

[pat]¹ it semede þat what þat² was desired was i-now to no man. Mankynde was departed aȝenst hym self, and þe strengre party bare doun þat [oper],³ and tolde more prys of fredom þan of sauacioun and of hele; so þat it was greet wonder of hem, þat hadde leuere be lost and i-spilde þan be vnderlynges and seruy.⁴ And ȝit be⁵ lore of kynde, bettre is to⁶ be vnderlynge and seruaunt þan be put out of lyf. Þefore by Goddes ordenaunce hit is doo þat som men beþ kynges and lordes and some beþ sugettis and seruautes. *Isidorus, libro octavo, capitulo tertio.* Þan men þat come of Sem, Noe his [firste]⁷ sone, hadde þe souþlond from þe rysyng of þe sonne anon to þe Fenices, men þat so hatte. [Þese men, þat so hatte,]⁸ þat come of Sem, occupied foure hondred contrees and sixe vnder seuene and twenty longages. Þey þat come of Cham helde þe londe by þe souþ ocean anon to þe see Gaditan, þre hondred contrayes⁹ foure score and fourtene vnder pritty longages and tonges. *Augustinus, libro sexto.* Þey that come of Iapheth helde þe lond from þe hil þat hatte mons Taurus in Cilicia norþward toward þe norþ ocean, þe haluendel¹⁰ of Asia, and al Europa anon to þe Britische see,¹¹ þat is þe Englische see, þre hundred contrayes vnder fiftene longages and tonges, and lefte eche lond and

TREVISA.

—

and the stronger parte oppressede the parte more feble, MS. HARL. 2261. preferrege liberte to theire sawle healethe, to be hade in grete meruayle, wyllenge rapre to die then to be subiecte; sythe nature willethe rather to be subiecte then to be destroyede: whiche thyng was not doen with owte the prouidence of God, that somme scholde be gouernoures in realmes and somme subiectes. *Isidorus, libro octavo, capitulo tertio.* Therefore peple descendenge from Sem, the firste son of Noe, hade in possession the londe meridien, whiche was from the rysenge of the son to the Feniceannes vnder xxvij^{ti} langages, occupienge cccc. and vj. cuntres. And men that come of Cham occupied ccc. xc. cuntres and iiij., vnder xxx^{ti} langages, from Sydon by the sowthe ocean vn to the see Gaditan. *Augustinus, libro sexto.* And men that come of Iapheth occupiede from the mounte callede Taurus towarde the northe, and halfe parte of Asia, and alle Europa vn to the see of Briteyne, conteynenge cc. cuntres, vnder xv. langages, levenge to the places and to

¹ Added from a. β. γ. and Cx.

² Possibly þat should be cancelled; it is found however in a. β. γ., as well as in MS.

³ Added from a. and Cx.

⁴ seruautes, Cx.

⁵ by, a. and Cx.

⁶ to] om. a. and Cx.

⁷ Added from a. and Cx.

⁸ Added from a. and (partly) Cx.

⁹ contrayes and sixe] MS. (first hand.)

¹⁰ to half dele, Cx.

¹¹ ocean, a.

Nomina
locorum
unde deri-
vantur.

pulis¹ relinquentes; de quibus plurima sunt immutata aut a regibus locorum, aut ab ipsis locis, aut² ab incolarum moribus. Cætera autem permanent, ut³ fuerunt. Ita etiam⁴ ut⁵ hodie rationabiliter appareat unde fuerunt⁶ derivata, sicut ex Assur Assyrii, ex Heber Hebræi. De quibusdam vero ratio non apparet, sicut illud quod dicunt Ægyptios⁷ pertinere ad Mesraim,⁸ Æthiopes ad Chus. *Josephus, libro primo, capitulo quinto.*⁹ A Chus usque¹⁰ nunc Æthiopes dicti sunt Chusei, a Mesraim¹¹ Ægyptii dicti sunt Mesrei. Sicque¹² gente per terras divisa aliqui nomina locis imposuerunt; aliqui, ut Græci, ad libitum nomina mutaverunt, aut propter scripturæ decorem, aut propter¹³ legentium delectationem, aut ut¹⁴ antiquorum gloriam suam propriam facerent. *Hugutio, capitulo*¹⁵ *Phrygia.*¹⁶

Diversa
nomina
pro diver-
sis condi-
tionibus.

Sæpe etiam pro qualitate negotii varia imponuntur nomina; ut cum Trojanos volumus designare timidos, vocamus¹⁷ eos Phrygios; si generosos, vocamus¹⁸ eos Dardanos; si fortes, dicimus eos Trojanos; si audaces, vocamus¹⁹ eos Hectores.²⁰ *Isidorus, libro nono,*²¹ *capitulo secundo.* Gentes orientales in gutture verba collidunt,

¹ *locis et populis]* gentibus et regnis, C.D.

² *aut]* om. A.

³ *permanent, ut]* *permanentia*, B.

⁴ *etiam]* om. A.B.C.; *ut etiam*, D., which is better.

⁵ *jam*, ins. C.

⁶ *fuerant*, B.

⁷ So D.; *Egiptiones*, A.E.

⁸ *mensuram*, B.

⁹ 2^o, B. The true reference is to lib. i. c. 6.

¹⁰ *sicut*, C.D.

¹¹ *a Mesraim]* added from C.D.

¹² *quia sic*, A.B.

¹³ *propter]* om. A.

¹⁴ *ut]* om. A.

¹⁵ *de*, C. Reference omitted in D.

¹⁶ *Frigia*, MSS. Other slight errors in spelling proper names have been tacitly corrected in this and the following chapter.

¹⁷ *dicimus*, C.D.

¹⁸ *dicimus*, B.C.; *eos*, om. B.D.

¹⁹ *dicimus*, C.D.

²⁰ *Hectoreos*, D.

²¹ 14, C. Extract from Isidore omitted in D. The true reference is to lib. ix. c. 1.

puple his name ; of the whiche meny beep now i-changed oper TREVISA.
of kynges of londes, oper of the same londes, oper of maneres ¹
of men of londes. Oper thinges stondeþ, as it were ;² so þat
ʒit it is sene of whom þey come ; as þe Assures come of
Assur, and the Hebrewes come of Heber. Of som is no resoun
i-knowe, as þat þat me seiþ þat þe Egipcians perteynep
to Mesraim and Ethiopes to Chus. *Iosephus, libro primo,*
capitulo quinto. Of Chus forto now þe Ethiopes beep i-cleped
Cusey³ and þe Egipcians Mesrei. And so, when men were
to schift into dyuers londes, som chaungede names as hem
likede, as the Grees, oper for fairenesse of wrytinge, oper for
likyng of rederes, oper forto make her owne [selfe the]⁴
noblete of hir forfadres. *Hugo, capitulo Frigia.*⁵ Ofte names
beep i-sette for a manere of doynge.⁶ As whan we wole mene
þat þe⁷ Troians beep feerful, we cleped hem Frigios ; and
ʒif we wole mene þat þey beþ gentil and noble, we clepeþ
hem Dardans ; ʒif we wil mene þat þey beþ stronge, we clepeþ
hem Troians ; ʒif hardy, we clepeþ hem Hectores.⁸ *Isidorus,*
libro 14^o, capitulo secundo. Men of the est sownep her

the peple names. Of whom mony thynges be changed MS. HARL.
now, other of kynges of those places, other of the places, 2261.
other elles thro the maneres of the inhabitatores of theym.
Other thynges be permanente as thei were, as men of As-
siria toke their name of Assur, men of Hebrewes of Heber.
Ozee,⁹ libro primo, capitulo quinto. Men of Ethiope be
callede vn to this tyme Chusei, of Chus, and men of Egipte
Mesrei, of Mesra. Soe this peple, diuided by regiones and
cuntrees, some men haue ʒiffen names to places, somme men
haue ʒiffen names to them after their pleasure, like to
men off Grewe. Somme men haue chaungede the names
for feirenesse of scripture, other for the delectacion of men
redenge, other elles that thei myzhte ascribe to theyme
the lawde of olde men as their propre lawde. *Hugutio,*
capitulo Frigia. Diuerse names be assignede ofte for
the qualite of labores, as callenge men of Troy Frigios,
when we wille calle thyeme afrayed, callenge theyme
Dardanos when thei be gentille, and Troianes when we
wille calle theyme myzty, and Hectores when we calle
theyme bolde. *Isidorus, libro decimo quarto, capitulo se-*
cundo. Peple of the este sownde the wordes in the throte,

¹ So a. and Cx. ; manere, MS.

² stande as they were, Cx.

³ Chusei, a.

⁴ Added from Cx.

⁵ Frisia, MS. and a.

⁶ Dyverce namys after dyverce con-
dycyouns in margin of MS. and a.

⁷ So a. and Cx. ; þei, MS.

⁸ So a. and Cx. ; Ector, MS.

⁹ So Harl. MS. for Iosephus.

ut Hebræi et Syri; gentes mediterraneæ in palato feriunt,¹ ut Græci et Asiani;² occidentales inter dentes verba frangunt, ut Romani et Hispani. *Augustinus De Civitate, libro sextodecimo, capitulo octavodecimo.*³

Regna
quatuor
primæva,
Assyrio-
rum,
Ægyptio-
rum, Scy-
tharum,
Sicyonio-
rum.

Sed a principio dispersionis⁴ gentium quamquam⁵ regna Assyriorum in oriente, Ægyptiorum in meridie, Scytharum in aquilone, Sicyoniorum in occidente, id est,⁶ in Græcia, fuerunt quasi coæva quoad initium, *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo primo*, regna tamen

Regna
quatuor
principalia
demum
effecta, As-
syriorum,
Persarum,
Græcorum,
Roma-
norum.

Assyriorum, Medorum, seu⁷ Persarum, Græcorum, et Romanorum consequenter sibi⁸ succedentia fuerunt principalia inter cætera quoad progressum; quorum tamen primum et ultimum clariora fuere⁹ et durabiliora. Cætera quoque regna sive reges velut appendices istorum dixerim;¹⁰ Atheniensium quoque gesta majora fuere fama quam reipsa, teste Salustio et Varrone,¹¹ et hoc propter scriptorum et philosophorum ibidem florentium præclara ingenia, qui gesta ipsa laudibus nimium extulerunt. *Ranulphus*. At¹² quia tractatus generalis quatuor regnorum principalium prædictorum,¹³ a principio videlicet¹⁴ regni¹⁵ Assyriorum usque ad finem regni Romanorum vastum^{16 17} vindicat procursum, idcirco de

¹ *fereunt*, A.; *ferent*, B.

² *Aciani*, B.

³ E. omits c. 18. The true reference is to c. 17. apparently; just below lib. xviii. c. 2. is certainly intended.

⁴ *dispositionis*, B.

⁵ *quamvis*, B.; *licet*, C.D., which abbreviate the sentence.

⁶ *scilicet*, B.

⁷ *et*, C. D.

⁸ *sibi*] om. D.

⁹ *litora fuerunt*, B.

¹⁰ *dixerunt*, D.

¹¹ *Verone*, A.

¹² *Et*, C.D.

¹³ *prædictorum*] om. C.D.

¹⁴ *scilicet*, C.D.

¹⁵ *regni*] om. A.

¹⁶ *vastat*, A.

¹⁷ *sibi*, ins. C.D.

wordes in þe þrote as Hebrewes and Siries ;¹ men of myddel TREVISIA.
 londes in þe roof of þe mouþ, as Grees and Asyans ; men of
 þe west brekep here words bytwene þe teep, as Spaynardes²
 and Romayns. *Augustinus de Civitate, libro sextodecimo,*
*capitulo octavodecimo.*³ But siþe þat men were first to schift⁴
 into dyuerse londes, þey þe kyngdoms of Assiries⁵ in þe est,
 of Egipcians in þe soup, and of Sithes⁶ in þe norþ, þat is in
 þe⁷ Grees, begunne as it were at ones : *Augustinus, libro*
octavodecimo, capitulo primo :—noþeles the kyngdoms [of]⁸
 Assiries, of Medes, þat is of Perses, of Grees, of Romayns,
 folowede eche after oþer, and were principal among oþere.
 Noþeles þe firste and þe laste were more noble, and durede
 lengere.⁹ Oþer kyngdoms [and kynges longede to pese kyng-
 doms].¹⁰ Also berynge and dedes of men of Athenys beþ
 gretter in loos and in fame þan þey beþ in dede ; so seiþ
 Salustius and Varro¹¹ also. And þat is for¹² writers and philo-
 sofres of Athenes were solempne of witt, and preysede þe
 dedes hugeliche and ouermesure. R̄. And for þe tretysis¹³
 ful and general of þe forsaide foure cheef kyngdoms, from þe
 begynnyng of þe kyngdom of Assiries to þe ende of þe
 kyngdom of Romayns, axep longe writyne and proces ; þefore

as men of Hebrewe and of Siria, peple of the myddel MS. HARL.
 cuntre breke theire wordes in the hier parte of the mowthe, 2261.
 as men of Grece and of Asia, men and peple of the weste
 breke theire wordes amonge the teithe, as men of Rome
 and of Speyne. *Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavo de-*
cimo, capitulo primo. Neuerthelesse the realmes of Assiria,
 Media, or of Persia, of Grekes and of Romanes, by succes-
 sion were realmes moste principalle amonge other realmes,
 as vn to progresse, the firste of whom and the laste were
 moste clere and durable. And other realmes and kynges
 were as dependenge to theyme ; for the gestes of kynges
 of Athenes were made more glorious in fame than thei
 were in trawthe, and that was causede by the actes of phi-
 losophers and of other discrete men inhabitenge that study,
 exaltenge the gestes with grete lawde. R̄. And for cause
 that a generalle tracte of the iiij. principalle realmes afore
 seide, from the begynnyng of that realme of Assiria vn to
 the ende of the reigne of the Romanes, dothe require a large f. 78. b.

¹ Syres, a.² Spaynols, Cx.³ Cx. prints *octodecimo* (at length,
and so below.)⁴ firste skatred, Cx.⁵ Assyricus, Cx.⁶ Schytes, a. ; Shites, Cx.⁷ þe] om. a.⁸ Added from a.⁹ lengere þan, MS. (not a. or Cx.)¹⁰ Added from a. and Cx.¹¹ Farro, MS. and a.¹² for that, Cx.¹³ tretys is, MSS. and Cx.

tribus regnis primævis, regno Assyriorum quasi coævis, primitus est agendum.¹

CAP. VIII.

*De regnis Scytharum, Ægyptiorum, Assyriorum, Persarum, Græcorum, et Romanorum.*²

§ 1. *Regnum Scytharum incipit.*³

Tanaus
primus rex
Scytharum.

⁴REGNUM⁵ Scytharum⁶ in aquilone, quod ratione temporis et ætatis secundum post Assyrios vendicat ordinem, incepit tempore Sarug⁷ proavi Abrahæ sub Thanao primo ipsorum⁸ rege, a quo fluvius⁹ Thanay videtur denominari,¹⁰ qui ad orbis boream dividit Asiam ab Europa. Hoc quidem¹¹ regnum nulli hominum unquam cessit, quin¹² etiam Asiam ter conquistavit, Darium regem Persarum fugavit, Cyrum regem occidit, Zephironem Alexandri magni ducem delevit. *Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo.*¹³ Aliud quoque regnum in occidente fuit¹⁴ Sicyoniorum,¹⁵ id est, Arcadiæ, quæ pars est Græciæ in Europa, currens sub Agilao¹⁶ primo per annos nongentos septuaginta unum sub regibus

Reges
Sicyonis.

¹ tractandum, C.D.

² Title wanting in MSS.

³ A.B.C.D. omit title of the section; and so below; *incipit*, E., here and below.

⁴ *Willelmus*, ins. C.D.

⁵ *itaque*, ins. C.D.

⁶ *Scitatarum*, A.

⁷ *Sarag*, E.

⁸ *illorum*, A.E.; *eorum*, C.D.

⁹ *flumen*, C.D.

¹⁰ *denominatur*, C.D.

¹¹ *quidem*] om. B.

¹² *quin*] om. B.

¹³ 40, B.; C.D. omit reference.

¹⁴ *fuit*] om. B.

¹⁵ *Cicionorum*, A.; *Scicioniorum*, B.; *Sicioniorum*, D.; *Scicionorum*, E.; and similarly below.

¹⁶ *sub Agilao*] a *Gilao*, B. *Ægialeus* is the true form of the name of the first mythic king of Sicyon.

of þre þe¹ firste kyngdoms, as it were of þe same age wip TREVISIA.
þe kyngdom of Assiries, firste we schal write.

Capitulum octavum.

THE kyngdom of Sithes² in þe north by cause of age and of tyme axep þe secunde place in ordre, and is sette after þe kyngdom of Assiries, and bygan in Sarug his tyme vnder Thanaus þe firste kyng þat³ was þere. Sarug was Abraham his fader graunsire. Hit semep þat þe ryver Thanays hap þe name of þis kyng Thanaus; þe whiche ryuer in þe norþside of þe world departep betwene Asya and Europa. Þis kyngdom was neuere ouercome, but þries he conquerede Asia and ouercome Darius, kyng of Perses, and slowh Cyrus þe kyng, and dede away Zephiron, þat was þe grete Alisaundre his ledere. *Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo.* Also anoper kyngdom was in þe west, and was þe kyngdom of Scicions,⁴ þat is of Arcadia, a partie of Grees in Europa, and durede vnder Agilaus first nyne hundred þere þre score and enlevene. Agilaus is a lorde, as it were a kyng oper an emperoure. Afterwarde

processe, þefore we wylle procede and determinate of the MS. HARL.
thre firste realmes as egalle to hit. 2261.

Of the inception of realmes. Capitulum octavum.

THE realme of Scitia, other the reigne of kynges in hit, whiche chalangethe the secunde place and ordre after men of Assiria, began in the tyme of Sarug, grawntefader to Thare the fader of Abraham, requirenge that place bothe by the reason of tyme and of age, vnder Thanaus, firste kyng of theyme, of whom that floode callede Thanay semethe to haue taken name, whiche diuidethe Asia from Europa in the northe partes of the worlde. That realme was not gotten by conqueste of eny man, but men in hit conquerede iij. tymes Asia, causenge Darius kyng of Persia to flee; sleenge also Cirus the kyng, and destroyenge Zephiro, duke of grete Alexander. *Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo.* There was an other realme in the weste⁵ of men of Scitia, that is to say of Archadia, whiche is a parte of Grece in Europa, rennenge other contynuenge vnder the firste Agilaus by ixc. yere lxxj., vnder xxxj^u kynges, from

¹ þre þe] So MS., a. B. γ.

² Schytes, a.

³ þer, a.

⁴ Either for *Sicyon* or *Sicyonians*.

⁵ este, MS. originally; but the correction may be by the first hand.

triginta uno, ab¹ anno vicesimo quarto Nachor avi Abrahæ usque ad Zeuxippum,² qui regnavit septimodecimo anno Hely sacerdotis. Inde quædam regio in Arcadia quondam vocabatur³ Agealea,⁴ quæ tamen postmodum dicta est Peloponnesus,⁵ ubi fuit unum de Græciæ⁶ regnis.⁷ *Ranulphus*.⁸ Vult tamen Dionysius quod⁹ regnum Sicyoniorum inceperit quinquagesimo¹⁰ anno Thare, vicesimo videlicet¹¹ anno ante nativitatem Abrahæ, in quo regnavit primus¹² Cecrops¹³ per annos quadraginta quinque.¹⁴

§ 2. *Regnum Ægyptiorum incipit.*

Menes
primus rex
Ægypti.

Variæ in
Ægypto
dynastiæ.

Persarum
occupatio.

Aliud¹⁵ regnum quasi coævum¹⁶ prædictis fuit regnum Ægyptiorum in meridie, quod tempore¹⁷ Nachor avi Abrahæ incepit, habens quindecim dynastias, quæ dicuntur summæ potestates, a primo Mineo vel Zones¹⁸ usque ad tempora Abrahæ. Deinde Thebæi tenuerunt sexdecim dynastias. Tandem Diapolitani, qui dicebantur Pharaones,¹⁹ tenuerunt octodecim dynastias.²⁰ Sicque duravit hoc regnum Ægyptiorum usque ad tempus

¹ *sub*, D., and similarly in some other places.

² *Zeusippum*, MSS.

³ *dicebatur*, C.

⁴ *Agealia*, A.D. The true form is *Ægaleia*.

⁵ *Peloponensis*, MSS.

⁶ So, A.B.; *Græcis*, E.

⁷ *Græciæ regnum*, C.D.

⁸ *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.

⁹ *quia*, B.

¹⁰ *primo*, ins. C.D.

¹¹ *scilicet*, C.D.

¹² *primus*] om. D.

¹³ *Cicrops*, MSS.

¹⁴ *quadraginta quinque*] om. B.

¹⁵ *etiam*, ins. C.D.

¹⁶ *vicinum istis*, B.

¹⁷ *tempore*] xlv. anno, B.

¹⁸ *Zenes*, A.

¹⁹ *Pharones*, E.

²⁰ *Deinde . . . dynastias*] Deinde 16 dynastias tenuerunt Diapolitani, qui dicebantur Pharaones, C.D. Higden should have written *Diospolitani*.

pis kyngdom durede, vnder oon and pritty kings,¹ from þe foure and twenty ʒere of Nachor Abraham his graunsire anon to Zeuxippus,² þat reignede þe ʒere of Hely þe preost seuentene. Þerfore oon kyngdom in Arcadia somtyme heet Agcalea. Noþeles afterward hit heet Peloponnensis; þere was oon of þe kyngdom of Grees. [R.]³ Noþeles Denys seip þat þe kyngdom of Scicions bygan þe ʒere of Thare fifty; þat was twenty ʒere or Abraham was i-bore; Thare was Abraham his fader. In þis kyngdom þe firste kyng was Cecrops,⁴ and reignede fyue and fifty ʒere. Anoper kyngdom as hit were in þe same age with þe⁵ forseide kyngdoms was⁶ þe kyngdom of Egipt in þe souþ, and bygan in Nachor his tyme, Abraham⁷ his grauntsire. Þis kyngdom hadde fiftene grete lordeschippes, and cleped hem Dynastias, from þe firste Mineus, oper Zones,⁸ to Abrahams tyme. Afterward Thebei, men of Thebes, hylde sixtene⁹ grete lordeschippes, and cleped hem Dynastias.¹⁰ Þan Diapolitani, þat were i-cleped Pharaones, þat were kynges of Egipt, hylde eiʒteteue grete lordeschippes and cleped hem Dynastias. Dynastia is *grete lordschippe*, and power duryng in a prouince to chese¹¹ kyng oper emperoure. And so þis kyngdom of Egipt durede anon to þe tyme of Cambys[es]¹² þat was

TREVISA.

the xxiiijth yere of Nachor, grauntfader to Abraham, vn MS. HARL. 2261.
to Zeuxippus,² whiche reignede in the xvijth yere of Hely the preste. Where of a region in Archadia was callede somme tyme Agialia, whiche was callede afterwarde Peloponensis, where oon realme of Grece was. R. Neuertheless Dionisius wille that þe reigne of men of Scitia began in the 1st yere of Thare, that was afore the natiuite of Abraham by xxth yere, in whom Cicrops reignede firste by xlv. yeres. Also the realme of men of Egipte in the [sowthe] was coegalle vn to theyme whiche began in the tyme of Nachor, grawntefader to Abraham, hauenge xv. hye potestates from the firste Mineus other Zones vn to the tymes of Abraham. After that men callede Thebei occupied and did holde xvj. hye potestates. At the laste Diapolitanes, whiche were callede Pharaones, holded xvij. hie potestates, and so the realme of men of Egipte durede vn to the times of Cambises, son of Cirus kyng of Persia, to

¹ So a. and Cx.; *kyngdoms*, MS.² *Zeusippus*, MSS. and Cx.³ Reference added from a. and Cx.⁴ *Cicropos*, MS.; *Cicrops*, a.⁵ *þese*, a. Cx.⁶ *þat was*, MS. (not a. or Cx.)⁷ *Abrahams*, a.⁸ *sonnes*, Cx.⁹ *sexten*, Cx.¹⁰ *Damastias*, MS., and similarly below.¹¹ *that chose*, Cx.¹² *Cambis*, MS. and a.

Cambysis,¹ filii Cyri regis Persarum, cui pater adhuc vivens regnum Assyriorum jam tunc ad Medos translatum concesserat, et eum² Nabugodonozor cognominaverat;³ cujus quoque⁴ princeps Holofernes⁵ Ægyptum subjugavit. Et extunc sub septem regibus Persarum Ægyptus mansit.

Decem
reges in-
digenæ.

Persæ
iterum
occupant
Ægyptum.

Succedunt
Lagidæ
vel Ptole-
mæi.

Romanis
cedit
Ægyptus.

Post quos recessit Ægyptus a Persis, habens decem⁶ proprios reges; quousque Ochus, qui et⁷ Artaxerxes,⁸ rex Persarum duodecimus, expulso usque ad⁹ Æthiopiam Nectanebo,¹⁰ rege Ægypti ultimo, regnum Ægypti recuperaret. Quod quidem regnum extunc¹¹ sub tribus regibus Persarum mansit usque ad septimum annum Alexandri Magni. Ex quo tempore regnum Ægypti et Persarum cessit ditioni Græcorum per annos trecentos sub regibus tredecim, qui dicebantur Lagidæ sive¹² Ptolemæi¹³ usque¹⁴ ad tempora Julii Cæsaris, sive, ut quibusdam placet, usque ad quintumdecimum annum Augusti Cæsaris, qui superavit Cleopatram filiam Dionysi¹⁵ Ptolemæi ultimi Lagidæ.¹⁴¹⁶ Ex quo tempore¹⁷ Ægyptus cessit Romanis. Sicque a principio omnes reges Ægypti usque ad Alexandrum fuerunt

¹ *Cambise*, A.E. (not D.)

² *eum*] om. C.D.

³ So C.D.; *cognominavit*, B.; *cognoverat*, A.E.

⁴ *etiam*, C.

⁵ *Olofernes*, B.D.

⁶ *duos*, E.

⁷ *et*] om. E.

⁸ *Arthaxerses*, A.; *Artaxerses*, B., *Artexerses*, E.

⁹ *usque ad*] usque in, B.; in, C.D.

¹⁰ *Nectanabo*, MSS.

¹¹ *extunc*] om. D.

¹² *sive*] om. B.

¹³ *Ptolomei*, MSS., here and below.

¹⁴ *usque . . . Lagidæ*] om. A.B.(not C.D.)

¹⁵ *Dionisii*, MSS.

¹⁶ Sentence slightly varied in C. D.

¹⁷ *Ex quo tempore*] Et extunc, C.D.

Cyrus his sone. Cyrus was kyng of Pers, and 3af while he lyuede þe kyngdom of Assyria þat was poo i-torned to þe Medes to his sone Cambys[es], and cleped him Nabugodonor also, and his prince Olofernes,¹ and sodued Egipt. And Egipt was vnder seuene kynges of Perse, and after wente from the Perses, and hadde ten kynges of her owne forto Ochus, þat heet Artaxerxes² also, þe twelfþe kyng of Perses, put out Nactanabo,³ the leste kyng of Egipt, anon to Ethiopia, and wan þe kyngdom of Egipt. Afterward þe kyngdom durede vnder þre kynges⁴ anoon to the seueneþe 3ere of þe grete Alisaundre,⁵ after [þat]⁶ þe kyngdoms of Egipt and of Perse was⁷ vnder þe Grees þre hondred 3ere vnder þrittene kynges, þat were i-cleped Lagides and Ptholomeus⁸ anoon to Iulius Cesar his tyme; oþer, as som mem menep, anon to þe fifteneþe 3ere of Augustus Cesar that ouercome Cleopatra,⁹ Denys his do3hter. Denys was Ptholomeus and last Lagid. Egipt from that¹⁰ tyme fel to¹¹ Romanys,¹² and so al þe kynges of Egipt from the firste begynnyng anoon to Alisaundre were foure score and eleuene. Þe kynges of Egipt weré first i-cleped

TREVISIA.

whom his fader 3afe, beenge in lyfe, the realme of Assiria, MS. HARL. 2261. whiche he did translate to men of Medea, and namede hym Nabugodnosor, whose prince, Olofernes by name, subdued to him Egipte, and after that Egipte remaynede under vij. kynges of Persia. After whom Egipte was occupiede by x. kynges of that cuntre, vn til that Ochus, otherwise callede Artaxerses, þe xijth kyng of Persia, expellenge Nectanabus, kyng of Egipte, vn to Ethioppe, recurede that realme ageyne. Whiche realme remaynede afterwarde vnder thre kynges of Persia vn to the vijth yere of Alexander the Conqueroure, from whiche tyme the realmes of Persia and also of Egipte began to be subiecte to the domination of Grekes by ccc. yere, vnder xiiij. kynges, whiche were callede Lagide other Ptolomei, vn to the tymes of Iulius Cesar; other elles, after somme men, vn to the xvth yere of Augustus Cesar, whiche hade victory of Cleopatra, the do3hter of Dionysius Ptolomeus, laste of that name callede Lagide. From whiche tyme Egipte was subiecte to the Romanes. Soe alle the kynges in Egipte from the begynnenge to kyng Alexander were xc., of whom the firste were callede Dinas-

¹ So *a.*; *Olofernus*, MS.
² *Arthaxerses*, MS.; *Artharexerses*, *a.*
³ So *a.* and *Cx.*, *Nactabono*, MS.
⁴ So *Cx.*; *þre kyndoms*, *a.*; *þe kyng Donis*, MS.
⁵ *Alexander*, *a.*
⁶ Added from *a.* and *Cx.*

⁷ So MS., *a. β. γ.*; *were*, *Cx.* Perhaps his own correction.
⁸ *Tholomeus*, *Cx.* (i.e. *Ptolemies*.)
⁹ *Cleopatram*, *a.*
¹⁰ So *Cx.*; *the*, MS.
¹¹ So *a.* and *Cx.*; *in to*, MS.
¹² *þe Romanys*, *a.*

nonaginta,¹ quorum primi dicebantur Diastenes,² postmodum³ Pharaones, tandem⁴ Lagidæ sive Ptolemæi. *Josephus, libro octavo, capitulo tertio.*⁵ Reges Ægypti ab infantia aliis reor⁷ nominibus appellari, sed ad imperium ascendentes vocabantur Pharaones,⁸ quod lingua Ægyptiaca⁹ sonat *rex*; sic etiam¹⁰ reges Alexandriæ ad regnum pervenientes¹¹ vocabantur Ptolemæi, et reges Romanorum dicebantur Cæsares;¹² sed post socerum Salomonis nullum legi apud Ægyptios Pharaonem vocatum.

§ 3. *Incipit regnum Assyriorum.*¹³

Regnum
Beli
antiquis-
simum.

Durat
usque ad
Sardanapa-
lum.

Arbaces
regnum ad
Medos
transfert.

*Augustinus De Civitate Dei, libro sextodecimo, capitulo octavodecimo.*¹⁴ Quartum regnum sed tempore primum fuit¹⁵ Assyriorum in oriente sub Belo Nemprotide, incipiens vicesimo quinto anno Sarug proavi Abrahamæ, quod toti¹⁶ Asiæ excepta India dominabatur. *Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo.*¹⁷ Et duravit per annos mille trecentos duo sub regibus triginta septem usque ad ultimum Sardanapalum,¹⁸ qui obiit septimo anno Ozia regis Juda. Deinde Arbaces sive Arbaccus¹⁹ præpositus²⁰ et interfector regis transtulit monarchiam Assyriorum²¹ ad Medos, quod intelligendum est spe sed nondum²² re.²³ *Ranulphus.* Nam apud Assyrios post Sardana-

¹ 91, A.B.C.D., and so Trevisa, but not Harl. MS. Higden should have written *septuaginta* according to his own calculation, including Alexander.

² *Diastines*, A.; *Dinastines*, D. Higden doubtless intended *Dynaste*.

³ *postea*, C.D.; *deinde*, B., omitting *tandem*.

⁴ *post Alexandrum*, ins. C.D.

⁵ 4^o, C.

⁶ 4^o, C.; 8^o, D. The true reference is to lib. viii. c. 6.

⁷ *sentio*, C. (not D.)

⁸ *Pharaones . . . Cæsares*] om. B.

⁹ *lingua Ægyptiaca*] *Ægyptiace*, D.

¹⁰ *etiam*] om. C.D.

¹¹ *venientes*, C.

¹² The reference to Augustin is brought in here in C.D., and the passage is abbreviated.

¹³ A.B.C.D. omit title of the section.

¹⁴ The true reference is to c. 17.

¹⁵ *regnum*, ins. B.

¹⁶ *quod toti*] *totique*, C.D.

¹⁷ 140, B.

¹⁸ *Sardanapallum*, MSS.

¹⁹ *sive Arbaccus*] om. C.D.

²⁰ *propositus*, D.

²¹ *usque*, ins. B.

²² *in*, ins. A.C. (not D.)

²³ Slightly transposed in C.D.

Dyastenes, and þan Pharaones, and at þe last Lagides and Ptholomeus.¹ *Iosephus, libro octavo, capitulo tertio.* Þe kynges of Egipt hadde in her childhode oper names, but whanne they were i-made kynges þey were i-cleped Pharaones. For a kyng is i-cleped Pharao in þe longage of Egipt. Þe kynges of Alexandria were i-cleped Ptholomeies, when þey were i-maked² kynges; and þe kynges of Romaynes were i-cleped Cesars. Salomon wedded a kynges douȝter of Egipt; [I rede of no kyng after hym of Egipt]³ þat was cleped Pharao. *Augustinus, libro sextodecimo, capitulo octavo-decimo.* Þe fourþe kyngdom, but þe eldest of tyme, is þe kyngdom of Assiries; and bygan in þe est vnder Belus Nemproth þe fyue and twenty⁴ ȝere of Sarug þat was Abrahams fader⁵ grauntsire. Þis kyngdom had lordschippe of al Asia outake Inde. *Petrus sexagesimo.* And it durede a powsand ȝere þre hundred and tweyne, vnder seuene and pritty kynges anon to þe [last]⁶ Sardanapallus þe kyng, þat dyede in⁷ þe seueneþe ȝere of Ozias, kyng of Iuda. Ðan Arbaces, þat heet Abbacus⁸ also, þe kynges styward and his traytour, for he slowh hym and tornede þe kyngdom of Assiries to þe Medes, þat is to vndirstondyng in hope and nouȝt in dede. [R.]⁹ For after Sardanapallus from þe

TREVISA.

tines, after that Pharaones, at the laste Lagide or Ptolomei. *Iosephus, libro octavo, capitulo secundo.* Kynges of Egipte, as I suppose, hauenge other names in theire yowthe, ascendege to the empyre were callede Pharaones, whiche is callede a kyng after the langage of men of Egipte. Soe in lyke wise kynges of Alexandrye ascendege to thempyre were callede Ptolomei, and kynges of the Romans were callede Cesares. *Augustinus, libro sextodecimo, capitulo octavo decimo.* The iiijthe realme, but firste in tyme, was of men of Assiria in the este, vnder Belus Nemprotides in the begynnege, in the xxvthe yere of Sarug grauntefader to Thare, whiche hade dominacion in alle Asia, Ynde excepte. *Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo.* And that realme indurede by a m^l ccc. ij. yere, vnder xxxvijthe kynges, vn to the laste Sardanapallus, whiche diede the vijthe yere of Ozias, kyng of Iuda. After that Arbaces, other wise callede Arbaccus, the governour and sleer of the kyng, did translate the monarchy of men of Assiria vn to men of Media; whiche is to be vnderstonde in kynde other in similitude, but not in trawethe. R. For vij. myȝhty

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *Ptolomees, a.*² *made, a.*³ Added from *a.* and *Cx.*⁴ So *a.* and *Cx.*: þritty, MS.⁵ *fader, a.*⁶ Added from *a.* and *Cx.*⁷ *in]* om. *a.* and *Cx.*⁸ *Abaccus, a.*⁹ Added from *a.* and *Cx.*

Reges Assyriorum post Sardanapalum non monarchæ; eorum nomina.

Regnum Babylonis tempore Ezechiei exortum. Regum nomina.

palum, a septimo anno Oziæ regis Juda¹ usque ad Manassen regem Juda, per annos circiter centum et duodecim, septem fuerunt reges potentes,² quamvis non monarchæ, quorum nomina sunt Arbaces, Phull,³ Teglafalazar,⁴ Salmanazar,⁵ Senacherib, Assaradon, Sargon.⁶ Volunt tamen quidam⁷ ut post mortem Sardanapali, a septimo anno Oziæ usque ad vicesimum⁸ primum annum transmigrationis Judaicæ, monarchia orientis steterit apud Medos per annos ducentos sexaginta sub regibus octo, a primo scilicet Arbace usque ad ultimum Astyagen; qui fuit avunculus Darii et avus Cyri; quem Astyagen Cyrus subvertens transtulit regnum Medorum ad monarchiam Persarum, relicto ibi⁹ Astyagi¹⁰ regno Hyrcanorum.¹¹ Veruntamen¹² tempore Senecherib regis Assyriorum et Ezechiaë regis Juda surrexit magnum regnum Babyloniorum et Chaldæorum,¹³ currens sub regibus septem, qui sunt Merodak seu Baladak,¹⁴ Nabugodonosor, Nabugodonosor secundus,¹⁵ E[vi]merodac,¹⁶ Regusar,¹⁷ Labofardac, Balthazar,¹⁸ qui et Nabar; quem occidens Cyrus junctus Dario avunculo suo transtulit

¹ *regis Juda*] om. C.D.

² *potes*, A.

³ *Phulli*, B.

⁴ *Teglafalazar*, A.; *Tegbathfalazar*, B.; *Teglasphalasar*, D.

⁵ *Salmanasar*, D.

⁶ The orthography of E. for these Assyrian kings has been kept here and below.

⁷ *quidem*, A.; *quidam tamen*, B.

⁸ *tricesimum*, B.C.; 31, D.

⁹ *ibi*] *ipso*, A. (second hand); *illi*, which the Harl. MS. probably had, seems to be the true reading.

¹⁰ *Astragi*, B.

¹¹ *relicto . . . Hyrcanorum*] om. C. D.; the whole passage being slightly transposed.

¹² *Denique*, C.; *Diebus tamen*, D.

¹³ *Caldeorum*, A.D.

¹⁴ *Merodac seu Balodac*, A.; *Balladac*, B.; *Meradac seu Baladac*, D.

¹⁵ *Nabugodonosor secundus*] om. A.B.C.D.

¹⁶ *Evilmerodac*, A.D.

¹⁷ *Ragusar*, D.

¹⁸ *Baltasar*, A.; *Balthasar*, D.

seuenþe 3ere of Ozias kyng of Iuda to Manasses kyng TREVISA.
of Iuda, aboute an hondred 3ere and twelue, the Assiries
hadde seuen my3ty kynges, þey [he]¹ hadde nou3t þe kyng-
dom al hool, of þe whiche þese beþ þe names : Arbaces,
Phull, Teglafalasar, Salmanasar, Senacheryb, Assaradon,
Sargon. Nopeles som wil mene þat after Sardanapallus
his deþ, from þe seuenþe 3ere of Ozias þe kyng to þe 3ere
of² transmygracioun of Iewes oon and þritty, þe hoole
kyngdom of þe est stood with þe Medes two hondred 3ere
and þritty vnder ey3te kynges, from þe firste Arbaces
anon to Astyages þat was Darius em³ and Cyrus his
grauntsire. Cyrus ouertorned⁴ þis Astyages, and tornede þe
kyngdom of Medes to þe hool kyngdom of Perses, and
lefte þe kyngdom of Hircans to Astyages. Nopeles in
Senacheryb kyng of Assiries his tyme, and in Ezechias his
tyme kyng of Iuda, com vppe þe⁴ grete kyngdom of þe
Babileyns and Caldeys, and durede vnder seuen kynges,⁵
þat beþ Meredak,⁶ þat hatte Baladak also ; Nabugodonosor,
Euilmederok,⁷ Rugusar,⁸ Labofardok,⁹ Balthasar, þat heet
Nabar also. Hym slowh Cyrus i-socied to his eme³ Darius,

kynges reignede in Assiria after Sardanapallus, thau3he MS. HARL.
thei occupiede not the holle monarchye, from the vijthe yere 2261.
of Ozias kyng of Iuda, by a c. yere and xij., the names
of whom were Arbases, Phullus, Theglatphalazar, Salman-
azar, Sennacherib, Assaradon, and Sargon. Neuerthelesse
somme men wille that the monarchye of the este stode at
men of Media after the dethe of Sardanapallus, from the
vijthe yere of Ozias kyng of Iuda vn to the xxxjth yere
of the transmigracion of the Iewes, by cc. yere and lx.
yere, vnder viij. kynges, from the firste Arbases vn to the
laste Astiages, whiche was vncler to Darius and graunte-
fader to Cirus. Whiche Cirus, ouercommenge Astiages, did
translate the realme of Media to the monarchye of men of
Persia, levenge to that Astiages the realme of Hircannes.
And in the reigne of Sennacherib kyng of Assiria, and
of Ezechias kinge of Iuda, a grete realme of men of Caldea
and of Babilon did aryse,¹⁰ contynuede vnder vij. kynges,
whiche were Merodac other Beladas, Nabugodnosor, Euil-
merodac, Egesar, Regusar, Labefardac, Balthazar, other
elles Nabar, whom Cirus sleenge, pro help of Darius his

¹ Added from a.

² of þe, a.

³ eem, a ; vncler, Cx., and so be-
low.

⁴ to þe, MS. (not a. or Cx.)

⁵ So Cx.; kyngdoms, MS. and a.

⁶ Here and below the orthography

of the proper names has been left
unaltered.

⁷ Euilmerodoc, a.

⁸ Regusar, a.

⁹ Labofardak, a.

¹⁰ a ryse, Harl. MS. ; similarly a
passede below.

regnum ad Persas et Medos¹ sub anno transmigrationis Judaicæ² tricesimo primo; et³ sic fluxerunt anni ducenti⁴ sexaginta a septimo anno Oziæ regis Juda, quo cepit deficere monarchia Assyriorum usque ad tricesimum primum annum transmigrationis quando incepit monarchia Persarum.

§ 4. *Regnum Persarum.*

Cyrus, rex
primus
Persarum.
Nomina
succes-
sorum.

⁵ Deinde monarchia Persarum ab anno tricesimo primo transmigrationis⁶ usque ad septimum annum Alexandri Magni,⁷ hoc est, a primo Cyro usque⁸ ultimum Darium filium Arsamis,⁹ duravit per annos ducentos triginta quinque¹⁰ sub regibus tredecim, qui sunt, secundum Giraldum, Cyrus primus; ¹¹ Cambyses secundus, quem pater suus Cyrus cognominaverat Nabugodonozor, et se vivente¹² Nineven cum regno Assyriorum tradiderat annis duodecim, sub quo etiam historia Judith contigit; tertius Ermeides¹³ magus; quartus Darius,¹⁴ filius Hystaspis; ¹⁵ quintus Xerxes; sextus Artaxerxes; ¹⁶ septimus Xerxes; ¹⁷ octavus Sogdianus; ¹⁸ nonus Darius¹⁹

¹ *et Medos*] om. E.

² *Judaicæ*] om. C.D., which have slight transpositions.

³ *R̄*, ins. C.D.

⁴ *trescenti*, B.

⁵ *Willelmus*, ins. C.D.

⁶ *quando . . . transmigrationis*] om. B.

⁷ *Magni*] om. B.

⁸ *ad*, ins. B.

⁹ *Arsanni*, or *Arsanii*, MSS., and so below. Possibly Higden himself wrote the erroneous form.

¹⁰ 239 annis, C. (not D.)

¹¹ *licet alii ponant Darium avunculum Cyri esse primum*, ins. C.D.

¹² *se vivente et*, C.D. (the latter omits *et* altogether.)

¹³ *Ermeides*] Ermoides, B.; Emeridius, C.D.

¹⁴ *Carius*, C.D.

¹⁵ *Itapsis*, MSS.

¹⁶ *qui et Longimanus, sub quo Esdras et Neemias fuerunt*, ins. B.C.D.; *qui et Longimanus dictus est, sub quo Esdras et Nehemias floruerunt*, A. The versions also vary.

¹⁷ *septimus Xerxes*] om. E.

¹⁸ *Fogodianus*, MSS.

¹⁹ *Sarius*, B.

and tornede his kyngdom [to þe kyngdom]¹ of Perse and of Medes þe 3ere of þe transmygracioun of Iewes oon and þretty. And so passede two hondred 3ere and sixty from þe seuenþe 3ere of Ezechias² kyng of Iuda. In þe whiche 3ere bygan to faille þe hole kyngdom of Assiries anon to þe 3ere of þe transmygracioun oon and þretty. Þoo bygan þe hool kyngdom of Pers.³ [Þan þe hole kyngdom of Perse,]⁴ from þe 3ere of þe transmygracioun oon and þretty anon to þe seuenþe 3ere of þe grete Alexandre, þat was from þe firste Cyrus to þe laste Darius Arsanius his sone, durede two hondred 3ere and fyue and þretty vnder þrittene kynges; þat was Cyrus þe firste, Cambyses þe seconde. His fader Cyrus 3af hym anoper name, and cleped hym Nabugodonosor, and 3af hym Nynve wip þe kyngdom of Assiries, whyle he was hym self alyve.⁵ Vnder hym byfel þe storie of Iudith. Þe þridde Ermeudes Magus; þe ferþe Darius Tapsis his sone; þe fifte Excercises; þe sixte Athar Excercises,⁶ þat heet Longimanus⁷ also. Vnder hym were Esdras and Neemyas. Þe seuenþe Excercises; the ei3þe Fogodian; þe nynþe Darius Nothus. Nothus is a bastard, or he þat is i-gete of a worþy fader and i-bore of an vnworþy moder. Þe tenþe

TREVISA.

vncl, translate that realme to men of Persia and of Media MS. HARL. 2261.
in the xxxjth yere of the transmigracion of the Iewes. And so cc. and xlth yere apassede from þe vijth yere of Ozias kynge of Iuda, in whiche tyme the monarchy of men of Assiria began to fayle, vn to the xxxjth yere of the transmigracioun of Iewes, when the monarchy of men of Parthia began. And so the monarchy of men of Persia indurede from the xxxjth yere of the transmigracion vn to the vijth yere of grete Alexander, whiche was from the firste Cirus vn to the laste Darius, son of Arsannius, by cc. and xxxvth yere, vnder xiiij. kynges. Whiche be, after Giraldus, Cirus; after hym Cambyses, whom his fader namede Nabugodonozor, and 3afe to hym in his lyfe Niniuen with the realme of Assiria, by xij. yere afore his dethe, vnder whom the memory of that woman Iudith happede. The thrydde was callede grete Ermeides. The iiijth Darius, son of Ytapsis. The vth Xerses; the vjth Artaxerses, whiche was namede otherwise Longimanus,⁷ in the tyme of whom Esdras and Neemias floreschede. The vijth Perses. Fogodianus the viijth. Darius Nothus the ixth.⁸

¹ Added from a.² So Trevisa for Ozias.³ *Perse*, a. (*Peers*, above.)⁴ Added from a. and Cx.⁵ *anlyue*, a.⁶ *Artarexerses*, a.⁷ *Logimanus*, a.; *Longinianus*, Harl. MS.⁸ *the ixth Nothus the ixth*, Harl. MS.

Nothus; decimus Artaxerxes,¹ qui et Assuerus, sub quo² Hester fuit; undecimus Ochus; duodecimus Arsames;³ tertius decimus Darius, filius Arsamis; quem devincens⁴ Alexander Magnus transtulit regnum Persarum ad monarchiam Macedonum apud Græcos.

§ 5. *Regnum Græcorum.*

Cranus
primus
rex. Varia
per Græ-
ciam regna
exorta.

Hoc⁵ tamen regnum Macedonum prius inceperat sub primo Cranao quartodecimo⁶ anno Oziæ regis Juda; et sic duravit per annos sexcentos triginta sex⁷ usque ad ultimum, Persium,⁸ quem occiderunt Romani nono anno Oniæ pontificis, qui et Menelaus.⁹ Erant tamen¹⁰ in Græcia alia regna successive instituta; quorum primum fuit apud Arcadiam, id est Sicyonios, et inde translatum ad Peloponenses sicut supra dicitur.¹¹ Aliud regnum Græcorum¹² fuit apud Argivos, et inde translatum ad Mycenæ.¹³ Aliud fuit apud Athenienses, aliud apud¹⁴ Lacedæmones, id est Spartanos, aliud apud Epirum sive Thraciam,¹⁵ aliud apud Macedoniam; quæ omnia, sicut cætera terrarum regna, a regno Romano¹⁶ sunt¹⁷ absorpta, et eidem concorporata in hunc modum.

¹ *Artaxerses*, A.D.; *Artexerses*, E.

² *historia*, ins. B.

³ *Arsanius*, MSS., and *Arsani* below.

⁴ *interficiens*, C.D.

⁵ *Hoc*] *cum*, and the sentence beginning at *apud Græcos*, in C. (not D., which inserts in marg. *Willelmus*.)

⁶ *quarto*, D.

⁷ 626, C.D.

⁸ So MSS. Higden should have written *Persea*.

⁹ *Û*, ins. C.D.

¹⁰ *etiam nihilominus*, ins. C.D.

¹¹ *dicitur*] om. E.

¹² *Græcorum*] om. C.D.

¹³ *Mecenas*, A.E.; *Messenas*, D.

¹⁴ *apud*] om. B.

¹⁵ *Traciam*, E.D. (as usual); *Aran-
ciam*, B.; *Franciam*, C.

¹⁶ *tandem*, ins. C.D.

¹⁷ *sunt* after *concorporata*, B.

Artharexcerses, pat heet Assuerus also; vnder hym was Hester. Þe enleueneþe Ochus; þe twelfþe Arsanius; þe þrittenþe Darius Arsanius his sone. Þe grete Alexandre ouercome hym, and tornede þe kyngdom of Perses to þe hole kyngdom of Macedonyes¹ and² of Grees. Nopeles þis³ kyngdom of Macedons bygan raper vnder þe firste Cranaus þe fourtenþe zere of Ozias kyng of Iuda, and so durede sexe hondred zere and sixe and þritty anon to þe laste Persius. Þe Romayns slowh hym þe nynþe zere of Onias þe bisshop, pat heet Menelaus also. Nopeles þere were oper kyngdoms in Grees, eueriche after oper i-ordeyned; of þe whiche þe firste was in Arcadia at þe Scicions, pat peple, and was i-torned þens to þe Peloponenses, as it is i-seide tofore. Anoper kyngdom of Grees was among þe Argyues, and was i-torned þennes to þe Macens.⁴ Anoper was at Athenys, pat citee; anoper among þe Lacedemons, þese were þe Sportans. Anoper at Epirus, pat is T[h]racia. Anoper at Macedonia. Þe kyngdom⁵ of Rome swolowede vp alle þese kyngdoms [as he dede opere kyngdoms]⁶ of londes, and made hem [alle]⁷ longe to þe kyngdom of Rome. In þis manere þe kyngdom of Rome⁸

TREVISA.

Artaxerses other Assuerus þe x^{the}, vnder whom Hester was. Ochus the xj^{the}. Arsannius the xij^{the}. Darius the son of Arsanius the xij^{the}. Whom Alexander ouercommenge, did translate the realme of men of Persia vn to the monarchye of men of Macedony amonge the Grekes, whiche realme began afore vnder Cranaus in the xij^{the} yere of Ozias kyng of Iuda; and so that realme indured by vj^e and xxxvj^d yere, vn to the laste, Persius, whom the Romanes did slee in the ix^{the} yere of Onias the bischoppe, other Menelaus. After that other realmes were made in Grece by succession; the firste was at Archadia, after that tyme translate to men of Peloponense, as hit is expressede afore. An other realme of the Grekes was at Argiuos, whiche was translate from þens to Mecenas. An other was at Athenes, an other at Lacedemonia. An other realme at Epira other Tracia; an other at Macedonia. Whiche realmes were made subiecte to the realme of Rome, and concorporate to hit, as other realmes were in this maner. The realme of Romanes, begynnenge vnder Ianus the firste

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *Macedons, a.*² *at þe Grees, a.*³ *So a. and Cx. Nopeles þere were oper kyngdoms, but þis, MS.*⁴ *Mecens, a. and Cx.*⁵ *kyng, Cx.*⁶ *Added from a. and Cx.*⁷ *Added from a. and Cx.*⁸ *Text as in Cx.: words erroneously repeated in MS.*

§ 6. *Regnum Romanorum.*

Janus
primus
rex ;
postea
reges
Latini,
Albani,
Romani.

Consules,
tribuni
plebis,
dictatores.

Cæsares
vel impe-
ratores.

¹ Regnum Romanorum sub Jano primo² rege Italiæ³ exortum usque ad⁴ annum septimum Darii filii Arsamis regis Persarum,⁵ quem occidit Alexander Magnus, currebat per annos octingentos⁶ octoginta sub regibus viginti septem; quorum sex primi fuerunt Latini, et quatuordecim sequentes Albani, reliqui septem⁷ post urbem conditam⁸ Romani. Ex quibus Romulus fuit primus, et Tarquinius Superbus fuit ultimus. Denuo,⁹ expulsis ab¹⁰ urbe regibus, duo consules annuatim sunt¹¹ creati; deinde tribuni plebis et dictatores rem publicam tractabant usque ad Julium Cæsarem per annos quadringentos sexaginta tres.¹² Post hæc, omisso nomine regio, monarchæ, Cæsares, imperatores, et Augusti primatum tenuerunt. Quorum primus fuit Julius¹³ ex consule et dictatore factus imperator, cujus successor et nepos Octavianus¹⁴ Augustus regna totius orbis in unam redegit monarchiam.¹⁵ Tandem Philippus imperator vicesimus octavus primus¹⁶ Christianus est effectus. Deinde Constantinus Magnus sedem impe-

¹ *Willelmus*, ins. C.D.

² *primo*] om. E.

³ *Italiæ*] sexto anno Delboræ
judicis Israel, C.D.

⁴ *in*, C. (not D.)

⁵ *regis Persarum*] om. C.D.

⁶ *septingentos*, B.

⁷ *septem*] om. D.

⁸ *dicebantur*, ins. C.D.

⁹ *Denuo*] Post hæc, C.D.

¹⁰ *ex*, A.

¹¹ *sunt*] om. C.D.

¹² *quatuor*, A.B.C.D. and the ver-
sions.

¹³ *Cæsar*, ins. B.

¹⁴ *Octouianus*, MSS.

¹⁵ *mundi redegit in monarchiam*, B.

¹⁶ *vicesimus octavus primus*] om.
C.D.; *primo*, B.

bygan vnder Ianus þe firste kyng of Italy, and durede anon TREVISIA.
to þe seuene þere of Darius Arsanius his sone, kyng of
Perses. Hym slowh þe grete Alexander. And so þe grete¹
kyngdom of Rome durede at þat cours eiȝte hondred þere
and foure score, vnder seuene² and twenty kynges. [Of þe
whiche seuene and twenty³ kynges]⁴ sixe þe firste⁵ were
Latyns. Þe fourtene⁶ þat were⁷ after were Albans.
Þe opere seuene þat come after þat þe citee was i-bulde
were Romayns, of þe whiche Romulus was þe firste
and Tarquinius þe proude was þe laste. Afterward kynges
were i-put⁸ out of þe citee, and were from þere to þere
tweie consules i-chose. After consuls tribunes plebis⁹
and dictatores¹⁰ rulede the comounte anon to Iulius Cesar his
tyme, foure hondred þere þre score and foure. Afterward
he¹¹ lift of þe name of kynges, and cleped here cheef lordes
Cesares, emperours, and Augustes; of þe whiche Iulius
Cesar was þe firste of a consul and dictatour i-made empe-
rour; his successour and ne was Octavianus¹² Augustus, and
brouȝte alle þe kyngdoms of þe world in to oon kyngdom
al hool. Þanne Philippe þe eiȝte and twentype emperour
was þe firste emperour þat was Cristene.¹³ Þanne þe grete

kyng of Ytaly, vn to the vijthe yere of Darius, son of MS. HARL.
2261.
Arsanius, and kyng of Persia, whom Alexander the Con-
queroure did slee, contynuede by viij^e and lxxx. yere, vnder
xxvij. kynges, the firste vj. of whom were Latynes, and
other xiiij. succedenge were Albani. Other vij. were after
the makenge of the city of Rome, of whom Romulus was
firste and Tarquinius the prowde was laste. Then, the
kynges expulsede from the cite of Rome, ij. consules were
made and create yerly; after theym, tribuni, maisters of
the peple, vn to the tymes of Iulius Cesar, by cccc. yere
lxiiij. After that, the name of a kyng ylefte, monarche,
Cesares, emperoures, and men callede Augusti holdede the
primate and chiefe place. Of whom Iulius Cesar, of a
consul and a dictator, was made emperoure firste; Octa-
uianus Augustus, his successor and nevewe, redacte in to
oon monarchy the realmes of alle the worlde. At the
laste, Philippus the xxvijth emperoure was made a Cristen
man, firste of alle emperoures. After that, grete Constan-

¹ grete] om. a.² eiȝte, MS. and a. (not Cx).³ tweny, a.⁴ Added from a. and Cx.⁵ The same order of words in a.
and Cx.⁶ So Cx.; *fourtenþe*, MS.⁷ came, Cx.⁸ put, a.⁹ plebes, MS., Cx.¹⁰ doctores, MS. a. and Cx.¹¹ they, Cx.¹² So Cx.; *Octianus, a.; Oceanus,*
MS.¹³ *cristened*, Cx.

rialem apud Constantinopolim constituit, dignitatem tamen sedis apostolicæ apud Romam successoribus Beati Petri reliquit.¹ Translato tandem imperio ad Karolum Magnum regem Francorum, Pipini regis filium, nomen imperiale solummodo apud Constantinopolim mansit.³

CAP. IX.

*De Nini et Semiramidis imperio.*⁴

Ninus rex
Asiæ.

Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavodecimo. In diebus Sarug, Belus Nemprotides, rex Babylonis, intravit Assyriam, sed parum ibi conquisivit. At,⁵ cum per sexaginta quinque annos regnasset, mortuus est. Cui successit Ninus filius suus tricesimo anno Thare,⁶ patris⁷ Abrahæ, regnare incipiens, regnavitque fere⁸ toti Asiæ, excepta India, quinquaginta tribus annis. In cujus regni⁹ anno quadragesimo tertio¹⁰ natus est Abraham, anno ante urbem Romam conditam M. et pene CCC.¹¹ *Orosius, libro primo.* Anno ante urbem conditam M.CCC°. Ninus rex Assyriorum propagandæ dominationis libidine arma foris extulit, cruentamque vitam quinquaginta annis per totam

¹ *relinquit*, A. ; *relinquens*, C.D.

² *solomodo*, E. (not A.)

³ In the preceding chapter a few trivial errors of orthography in the proper names have been tacitly corrected ; all the more serious errors are recorded.

⁴ Title wanting in MSS.

⁵ *Cumque*, C.D.

⁶ *Dionysius* (in marg.) C.D.

⁷ *avi*, C.D.

⁸ So D. ; *fere* after *Asiæ* in A.E.

⁹ *regni*] om. C.D.

¹⁰ *anno ultimo*, C.D.

¹¹ *anno . . . ecc.*] om. C.D.

Constantyn made Constantynople¹ þe chief citee of þe TREVISA.
 empere, and lefte Rome forto be chief see of þe pope to
 Seint Petre his successours. Whanne þe empere was trans-
 lated and i-torned to þe grete Charles, kyng of Fraunce,
 Pipinus þe kynges sone, þanne þe name of þe emperour
 [was] lefte² allone at Constantynople.

Capitulum nonum.

Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro octavodecimo. In
 Sarug his tyme Belus, Nemproth his sonne, kyng of Babi-
 loyne, wente into Assyria, and wan it afterward wip ynne
 a schort tyme; and whan he hadde i-reigned fiue and sixty
 ʒere þanne he deide. And his sone Nynus regnede after hym,
 and bygan to reigne þe ʒere of Thare Abrahams fader euene
 pritty, and was kyng wel nygh of al Asia outake Inde þre
 and fifty ʒere. In þe ʒere of his kyngdom þre and fourty
 Abraham was i-bore, to fore þe buldinge of þe citee of
 Rome nyh a þowsand ʒere and þre hondred. *Orosius, libro*
primo. Þe ʒere to fore þe buldyng of þe citee of Rome a þow-
 sand and þre³ hondred, Nynus kyng of Assiriens for couetise
 to make hym greet lordschipe⁴ bare out armour, and lyuede

tyne ordeinede the seete imperialle at Constantinople, levenge MS. HARL.
2261.
 the dignite of the seete apostolicalle at Rome to the suc-
 cessores of Seynte Petre. At the laste, the empyre translate
 to grete Charles kyng of Fraunce, son to kyng Pipinus,
 the name imperialle remaynede oonly at Constantinople.

Capitulum nonum.

Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo. Belus
 Nemprotides kyng of Babilon, entrede in to Assiria,
 in the daies of Sarug, conquerenge but lytel þer, whiche
 diede after that he hade reignede lxx. yere. Whom Ninus
 his son succedede, begynnege to reigne in the xxx^{ti} yere of
 Thare fader to Abraham, reignenge in alle Asia, Ynde excepte,
 liij. yere; in the xliij^{di} of the reigne of whom Abraham was
 borne, by a m^l yere allemoste and ccc. afore the edificacion
 of the cite of Rome. *Orosius, libro primo.* In the m^l and
 ccc. yere afore the edifienge of the cite of Rome, Ninus
 kyng of Assiria, movede thro the luste of domination,

¹ *Constantynoble*, MS., α . β . γ . | or Cx.) The verb is wanting in
 here and below. (not Cx.) all, and in β . and γ .

³ *nyne*, α .

² *lifte* after *þanne* in MS. (not α .)

⁴ *þis lordschippe grete*, Cx.

Asiam bellis¹ egit.² A meridie atque mari³ Rubro surgens sub ultimo septentrione Euxinum Pontum vastando perdomuit. Scythicam⁴ barbariem adhuc tunc imbellem et innocentem vires suas nosse; et non jam lacte pecudum (ut prius) sed sanguine hominum vivere, dum vicit, edocuit. Novissime⁵ Zoroasten, Bactrianorum regem magicæque artis inventorem, interfecit. Postremo, dum deficientem a se urbem quandam obsideret, ictu sagittæ interiit.⁶ *Petrus, capitulo tricesimo sexto.*⁷ Ninus, filius Beli, mortuo patre obtinuit Assyriam; et civitatem Niniven, a nomine suo sic nuncupatam, caput⁸ regni sui fecit, ac⁹ trium dierum itinere ampliavit; nam prius Nemphrot eam¹⁰ fundaverat.¹¹ Devicit etiam Chaam, qui et Zoroastes, regem Bactriæ;¹² qui¹³ septem liberales artes¹⁴ in quatuordecim columnis, septem æneis et septem lateritiis, contra utrumque diluvium conscripsit. Cujus etiam¹⁵ libros Ninus combussit. *Isidorus, Etymolog., libro octavo.*¹⁶ Scripsit¹⁷ Aristoteles de Zoroaste, quod vicies centum milia versuum in arte magicæ¹⁸ com-

¹ *bellando*, A. (second hand).

² *exegit*, B.

³ So A.B.C.D.; *atque a mari*, E.

⁴ *Schiticam* or *Sciticam*, MSS.

⁵ So A.; *Novissimo*, E.

⁶ *Orosius . . . interiit*] om. D.; add. in marg. C.

⁷ The true reference is to *Hist. Libr. Gen.*, c. 39.

⁸ *caput* after *sui*, B.

⁹ *et*, A.

¹⁰ *illam*, A.

¹¹ *nam . . . fundaverat*] om. C.D.

¹² *qui . . . Bactriæ*] qui adhuc vivens regnabat in Bactria, qui etiam dicebatur Zoroastes, magicæ artis inventor, C.D. *Zoroastes* is the classical form.

¹³ *etiam*, ins. C.D.

¹⁴ *regem . . . artes*] om. B.

¹⁵ *etiam*] om. B.E.

¹⁶ 18, D. The true reference is to lib. viii. c. 9.

¹⁷ *Scripsit quidem*, C.D.

¹⁸ *magica*, A.

cruel lyf fifty ȝere in al Asia in werre and in bataille, and aroose out of þe souþ and from þe reed see, and destroyed in þe norþ vpon þe see þat hadde Eusinum þat streccheþ from the ryver Thanay to þe endes of Hiberia¹ and² Armenya. And so þis kyng Nynus ouer come men of Scitia barbarica, þat were ȝit no warriours, but stille men and esy,³ and made hem knowe strengþe, and tauȝte hem to lyue by manis blood þat lyvede toforhonde by⁴ melke of bestes; and at þe laste he slow Zoroastes⁵ kyng of Bactrians þat was fyndere of wycchecraft, but at þe laste dede, while he bysegede a citee þat was tornede from hym, he was i-hit wip an arewe, and so he was i-slawe. *Petrus*, 36°. Nynus Belus his sone, whanne his fader was dede, [hadde]⁶ Assiria and þe citee Ninyue i-nemped by his name, and made þat citee Ninyue [chef of his kyngdom, and made the citee]⁷ huger and more by þre iorneyes. For Nemproth hadde toforehonde i-founded þat citee, and slow also Cham, þat hete Zoroastes⁵ also, kyng of Bactria, þat wroot the seuene⁸ science in fourtene pileres, in seuene of bras and seuene of brent⁹ tyle, forto saue hem aȝenst eiper flood,¹⁰ but Nynus brende his bookes. *Isidorus*, libro 8°. Aristotil of Zoroastes he wroot þat he made twenty hundred powsand vers of wicchecraft, and Democritus made

TREVISA.

gedrede an hoste, ledenge a cruelle lyfe by l^{ti} yere, thro alle Asia, in batelles, begynnenge from the meridiem and the redde see, made tame the cruelle peple of Scitia; sleenge also at the laste Zoroastes, kyng of Bactria, and the firste fynder of wicchecraft. And at the laste Ninus was sleyne with an arowe at the seege of a cite. *Petrus*, 16° *capitulo*. Ninus, the son of Belus, after the dethe of his fader opteynede Assiria, and the cite of Niniuen, callede so after his name, and made hit the principalle place of his realme, makenge that cite more large by the iourneye of thre daies, whom Nemproth founded firste, ouercommenge Cham and Zoroastes kyng of Bactria, whiche did write ageyne eithre grete floode vij. artes liberalle in xiiij. pyllors, vij. of brasse and vij. of tylestones. The bookes of whom Ninus brente also. *Isidorus libro octavo*. The grete clerke Aristotille wrytethe of Zoroastes, that he made xx^d tymes a c.m^d versus of wicche craft, whiche

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *Heberia*, MS.² *an*, *a*.³ *pesible*, Cx.⁴ *with*, Cx.⁵ So *a*. and Cx.; *Zorastes*, MS., but *Zoroastes* below (once).⁶ Added from *a*. and Cx.⁷ Added from *a*.; so also in Cx. (nearly).⁸ So *a*. and Cx. (who has *sciences* below); *seuene*, MS.⁹ *brand*, Cx.¹⁰ *ayenste fyre and water*, Cx.

posuerit; quam artem Democritus¹ postmodum tempore Hippocratis² ampliavit. *Petrus tricesimo sexto.*³

De ortu
idololatriæ.
Beli simulacrum a
Nino
adoratum.

Ab isto Nino orta sunt idola in hunc modum. Mortuo Belo, Ninus filius ejus in solatium doloris imaginem patris fecit. Cui tantam reverentiam exhibuit, ut quibuslibet⁴ reis ad eam⁵ confugientibus parceret. Hujus rei⁶ exemplo plures suis caris imagines fecerunt. Et sicut ab idolo Beli cetera idola originem traxerunt, sic ab ejus nomine derivatum est⁷ generale nomen idolorum secundum diversitatem idiomatum. Nam aliqui Beel, aliqui Baal, aliqui Baalim⁸ dixerunt. Immo et nomina specificaverunt; alii Beelfegor, alii Belzebub⁹ dicentes.¹⁰ *Alexander in Mythologia.*

Alii aliter
rem
tradunt.

De ortu idolatriæ omnia pene figmenta manarunt. Nam cum¹¹ Cirophanes¹² Ægyptius dilecti filii sui jam defuncti simulacrum, quod ob specimen¹³ doloris idolum dicitur,¹⁴ in memoriam defuncti filii¹⁵ confinxisset,¹⁶ ac multipliciter a servis adoratum reorum confugium¹⁷ statuisset, dum tristitiæ remedium quærit, seminarium doloris invenit. Nam error inveteratus¹⁸

¹ *philosophus*, ins. C.D.

² *Ypocratis* or *Ipocratis*, MSS.

³ 26, A.; 16, B.; 38, C.D. The true reference is to c. 40.

⁴ *quibuscunque*, B.

⁵ *ipsam*, C. (not D.)

⁶ *rei*] om. C.D.

⁷ *derivatur*, C.D.

⁸ So A.; *balim*, F.

⁹ So A.B.; *Belsebub*, E.

¹⁰ *dixerunt*, C. (not D.)

¹¹ *cum*] om. E.

¹² So A.E.; *Sirophanes*, B.D.; *Strophanes*, C. Perhaps Chephrenes, also written Sefres, is intended. See Osburn's *Monumental Hist. of Egypt*, vol. i., pp. 305-311.

¹³ *spem*, A.E.

¹⁴ *quod... dicitur*] om. C.D.

¹⁵ *fili*] om. D.

¹⁶ *confixisset*, B.D.

¹⁷ *refugium*, A.B.C.D.

¹⁸ *intricatus*, B.

pat craft more afterward in Ypocratis¹ tyme. *Petrus* 36°. TREVISA.
 Of þis Nynus mawmetrie² bygan in þis maner.³ Whan Bellus
 was dede his sone Nynus, for to have som comfort of his
 sorwe, made an ymage of his fader, and he dede þat ymage so
 grete worschippe and reuerence þat he spared al eucl doeres
 þat fliȝe to þat ymage; by ensample of þis doynge meny men
 made yimages to her leue frendes, and so by ensample of Belus
 his mawmet come forþ opere mawmettes. [Also of Belus his
 name come forþ þe comoun names of mawmettis]⁴ in dyuerse
 longages and tonges; for som men clepeþ her mawmet Beel,
 som Baal, and som Baalim, and som ȝaf here mawmettes⁵ a
 surname, and cleped hir names⁶ Belphegor, and som Belsebub.
*Alexander in mythologia.*⁷ Of þe bryngynge forþ of mawme-
 trie com wel nyh al þe feyninge of poetrie, for whanne Siro-
 phanes of Egipt hadde an ymage of his sone þat was dede, þat
 ymage is i-cleped⁸ Ydolum, þat is, likenesse and schappe, for
 liknes of sorwe. Whanne þey⁹ hadde i-made þat image in mynde
 of his sone, þat ymage was hugeliche¹⁰ i-worschipped of his
 seruauntes; it was refute and socour to mysdoeres as he hadde
 i-ordeyned; and while þey souȝte helpe and remedye of sorwe
 þei fond seed and springynge of wel more sorowe; for þe old

arte Democritus amplifede in the tyme of Ypocras. *Petrus*, MS. HARL.
tricesimo sexto capitulo. Ydoles toke begynnenge of þis 2261.
 Ninus in this maner. Belus fader to Ninus dedde, Ninus
 made an ymage to the similitude of his fader in to the Of ydola-
 solace of his sorowe. To whom he ȝafe so grete reuerence trye.
 that he sparede gilty men fleenge to hit. Thro exemple
 of whom other nowble men made yimages of their frendes;
 and lyke as other ydoles toke begynnenge of the ydole of
 Belus, soe a generale name of ydoles is deriuat of the
 name of hym, after diuersite of speches. For men calle
 somme ydoles Beel, somme Baal, somme Baalim, specifienge
 somme names, as somme men Beelzabub, somme men Beel-
 phegor. *Alexander in Mythologia.* Alle figmentes toke
 begynnenge allemoste of ydolatrie, for when Sirophanes of
 Egipte hade made an ymage of his son for grete sorowe,
 worschippede moche of his seruauntes, ordeinede hit to be
 a refute of gilty men fleenge to hit. Whiche inquirenge a
 remedy of hevynesse founde a grete place of sorowe, for
 olde erreure began to be diffudedde thro the worschippenge

¹ *Ypocrat his, a.; Ypocras, Cx.*

² *Mawmetrye first, a.*

³ So Cx.; *tyme, MS. and a.*

⁴ Added from *a.* and Cx.

⁵ *mawmett, a.*

⁶ *mawmett, a. (not Cx.)*

⁷ *Mitologia, MS., a.; Mytilog., Cx.*

⁸ *he cleped, Cx., which is better.*
 (*β.* and *γ.* agree with MS. and *a.*)

⁹ *he, Cx.*

¹⁰ *gretely, Cx.*

in idolorum cultura cœpit diffundi. Nec tamen eosdem ritus cuncti recipiendos¹ statuerunt.² Nam philosophi unum Deum colunt; quem pro³ multiplici dispositione, qua variis modis mundum regit, variis vocabulis appellant; utpote⁴ Vitumnus, quia vitam præstat; Sentinus, quia sensum dat;⁵ Jupiter, quia juvat. Refert etiam Plato in libro qui intitulatur *Philosophus*, quod poetæ lucri causa et favoris rationes, scientias,⁶ et potentias ad usum vivendi concessas membratim effigiaverunt, et propriis nominibus assignaverunt; utpote scientiam colendi agros vocaverunt Cererem, scientiam colendi vineas Bacchum.⁷ Et etiam turpes actus hominum inter deos numeraverunt.⁸ *Isidorus, Etymolog., libro octavo.* Quos pagani deos asserunt homines fuerunt, et pro uniuscujusque vita meritis vel magnificentia coli apud suos post mortem cœperunt. Sed etiam⁹ dæmonibus persuadentibus¹⁰ quos illi pro sola memoria honoraverant, successores existimabant¹¹ deos. Et ad ista magis extollenda accesserunt figmenta poetica. *Ranulphus.* Et sicut innuit Augustinus de Civitate, libro secundo, capitulo undecimo, poeta Labeo¹² tradidit tres differentias numinum. Nam quosdam

Dii ethnicorum homines fuerunt, secundum Isidorum.

Tres differentie numinum, secundum Labeonem.

¹ *recipiendo*, A.

² *recipientes censuerunt*, C.D.

³ *ex*, C.; om. D.

⁴ *utpote*] ut, C.D.

⁵ For *Vitumnus* and *Sentinus*, see *Aug. de Civ. Dei*, vii., 2, and 3.

⁶ *et scientias*, A.; om. C.D.

⁷ *vocaverunt Bacchum*, A.; *Bacchum nuncupantes*, C.D.

⁸ *numerantes*, C.D.

⁹ *etiam*] om. C.D.E.

¹⁰ *persuadentibus*] so A.C.D.; om. E.; *suadentibus*, B.

¹¹ *æstimabant*, A.; *exæstimantes* C.; *existimarent*, D.

¹² *Labeo*, E. (not A.). This clerical error sufficed to lead Trevisa astray, and the Harleian translator also apparently.

error in worschippe of mawmettis gan to sprede. Noþeles þe TREVISIA.
 same manere doynge was nouzt¹ i-ordeyned of al men. For
 filosofres worschipped oon² God and ʒaf hym many names
 for meny manere doynge and worchynges þat he worcheþ ;
 lyveþ,³ for he ʒeueþ lyf ; feleþ, for he ʒeueþ felynge ; Iupiter,
 þat is, helper, for he helpeþ. Also Plato, in þe boke þat hatte
 Philosophus, seiþ þat poetes, by cause of wynnynge and of
 fauour, peyntede resouns sciens and myzt þat were i-graunted
 to þe vse of lyuyng in meny manere schappes, and ʒaf euerich
 a propre name. And so konnyng of telienge⁴ of feeldes þey
 cleped Cereres,⁵ konnyng of telienge of vynes þey clepede⁶
 Ba[c]hus, and accountede foule dedes of men amonge goddes.⁷
Isidorus, Etymologia, libro 8º. Þey þat payenis⁸ clepiþ goddis,
 þey were men. And as þey bere hem in her lif, bettre or wers,
 so þey were i-worschipped after her deef. Bote by false lore
 of fendes men þat come afterward worschipped hem for goddis,
 þat were first i-worschipped onliche for mynde ; and þau forto
 make it more solempne com feynnges of poetes. R. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro ij. capitulo xi.* Þe poete wiþ his
 lippe spekeþ of þre manere of goddes ; for som þey clepeþ

of ydoles, neuertheless that rite was not ordeynede for MS. HARL.
 alle men. For filosofers worschippede oon God, whom 2261.
 thei namede by diuerse names for the monyfolde dispo-
 sicion thro whom he gouernethe the worlde in diuerse
 maneres ; as Vitunnus,⁹ in that he ʒiffethe life ; Sentinus, in
 that he ʒiffeth wytte and felenge ; Iupiter, for he helpethe.
 Also that grete clerke Plato rehersethe in a boke of his
 callede Philosophus, that poetes for cause of lucre and of
 fauore haue chaungede reasones, sciences, and powers to
 the vse of lyvenge grauntede a fore tyme to the actes and
 vile operaciones of men, callenge Sereris the science of
 tyllenge felde, and Bac[c]hus of vynes, nowmbrenge these
 symple actes amonge goddes. *Isidorus, libro octavo.* The
 goddes, that paganes do worschippe, were men somme
 tyme, and began to be worschippede after their merites
 and magnificence in this lyfe ; but, thro the persuasion of
 the deuel, theire successores trawede theyme to be goddes,
 whom men afore worschippede oonly for a memory ; whiche
 thynges the figmentes of poetes helpede moche. R. And
 as Seynte Austyn semethe to reherse, *De Civitate Dei, libro*
secundo, capitulo undecimo, poetes in wrytenge ʒafe iij.
 differences and diuersites of ydoles, callenge somme of

¹ So a. and Cx. ; now, MS.

² o, a. ; oo, Cx.

³ and lyveþ, MS. a. β. γ. Probably we should read *lyver* (and *feler* below).

⁴ tellynge, a. ; tillyng, Cx.

⁵ So MS. ; and the error may be safely set down to Trevisa himself,

who elsewhere imagines *Appolyn* to be the nominative of *Apollo*. The Harl. version is somewhat worse.

⁶ So a. ; clepe, MS.

⁷ So Cx. ; goode, MS. ; gode, a.

⁸ paynmys, Cx.

⁹ *Victimus*, Harl. MS.

dixit deos, ut Jupiter, Mars; quosdam semideos, ut Hercules, Romulus; quosdam heroes, id est, virtuosos et morigeratos homines, qui putabantur aliquid divi-

Ex idololatria ortæ superstitiones.

nitatis habere, ut Hector, Achilles. Ex idolatria ortæ sunt variæ superstitiones et multæ, qualis est illa de qua loquitur Hieronymus super Isaiam decimo¹ octavo, dicens quod Ægyptii et pene omnes orientales colunt Fortunam, cujus idolum loco nominatissimo ponunt; dextræ ejus cornu repletum hydromelle apponunt,² de quo omnes³ circumsedentes nituntur gustare in ultimo die Novembris; quo tempore, si cornu plenum invenerint,⁴ pronosticant copiam rerum toto anno illo affuturam; si econtra invenerint, gemunt.⁵

*Trogus, libro primo, capitulo septimo.*⁶ Mortuo Nino

Semiramis uxor Nini.

successit uxor sua⁷ Semiramis cum filio impube Nino sive Ninian relicto; quæ non ausa immaturo puero regnum tradere, nec ipsa quidem regnum palam tractare, simulat se⁸ pro matre filium, pro femina puerum. Nam vox utrique⁹ gracilis et statura mediocris. Igitur brachia et crura velamentis, caput tiara tegit. Et

¹ So A.B.; *vicesimo*, E. The text is correct. See lib. xviii. c. 65. (tom. iv. p. 639. Ed. Migne).

² *ponunt*, B.

³ *omnes*] *homines*, B.

⁴ *invenerunt*, A.

⁵ *Ranulphus . . . gemunt*] om. C. D.

⁶ *cap. septimo*] om. A.C.D.; *primo*, B. The true reference is to lib. i. c. 1. and c. 2.

⁷ *sua*] *ejus*, B.

⁸ *se*] om. B.

⁹ *utriusque*, D.

goddes, as Iupiter¹ and Mars ; som half goddes, as Hercules and Romulus ; and som vertuous men þat me trowede þat hadde somewhat of godhede, as Hector² and Achilles. Of mawmetrie come meny eucl manere of doynge ; such is þat þat³ Ierom spekeþ vpon Isay [decimo] octavo,⁴ and seiþ þat Egipcians and wel nyh alle men of est⁵ londes worschippeth Fortune, þat is, god of happes, as þey meneþ ; the ymage of Fortune⁶ is i-sette in a place þat is wel i-knowe, and hap in his riȝt hond an horne ful of mede ; alle þat sitteþ aboute fondeþ⁷ to taste of þat horne þe laste day of Nouembre ; and ȝif þey fyndeþ þan þe horne ful, it bodeþ a good corn ȝere, and ȝif þey fyndeþ it empty,⁸ þanne þey makeþ sorwe. *Trogus, libro primo.* Whanne Nynus was dede, his wyf Semiramis, wiþ hir sone Nynus, þat heet Nynyan also, reignede in þis manere : þe womman durste⁹ nouȝt bytake þe kyngdom to þe ȝong childe, noþer sche durste hir self regne openliche ; þerfore sche desgised hir self in þe childes liche, þe moder for þe sone, a womman in stede of þe childe, for eiper hadde a small voys and [was]¹⁰ mene of stature. þerfore sche¹¹ hidde hir armes and hir pyȝhes wiþ dyuers helynges, and here heed wiþ a cappe. And for me schulde nouȝt seiþ þat sche hidde¹² eny þing wiþ þe¹³

TREVISIA.

theyme goddes, as Iupiter, Mars ; somme halfe goddes, as Hercules and Romulus ; and somme vertuous as hauenge parte of godhede, as Hector and Achilles. Also diuerse supersticionen began of ydolatri, as Seynte Ierom spekethe on the xvijth chapitre of Ysay, seyenge that men of Egipte and of the este partes worschippe Fortune. The ydole of whom thei sette in the chiefe place, holdenge an horne in the ryȝhtehonde replete with hony, of whom alle men syttenge aboute do taste in the laste day of Nouember ; and if thay fynde the horne fulle at that tyme thei prenosticate grete habundaunce of goodes to comme in that yere foloenge, and if hit be voided thei waile and sorowe. *Trogus, libro primo.* Ninus dedde, Semiramis his wife, lefted with Ninus other Ninian his son tendre in age, began to reigne, whiche wyllenge not here childe to reigne for infancy, feynede here as a son, beenge the moder. For thei were of an egalle stature, and lyke of speche. Wherefore sche made clothes for here hedde, legges, and armes of purpose, commaundenge the

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ So a. ; here, and elsewhere sometimes, MS. has *Iubiter*.

² So a. ; *Ector*, MS.

³ þa, MS.

⁴ 18^o, a., Cx., correctly.

⁵ þe est, a.

⁶ the ymage of Fortune] twice repeated in MS.

⁷ foundeth, Cx.

⁸ leer, a. ; voyd or empty, Cx.

⁹ þurste, a.

¹⁰ Added from γ. ; a. β. and Cx. agree with MS.

¹¹ they, Cx.

¹² had, Cx.

¹³ þe] om. a.

ne novo habitu aliquid¹ occultare videretur, populum suum simili modo vestiri jubet.² Quem quidem³ morem vestis gens illa adhuc⁴ tenet. Magna deinde hæc mulier gessit; at⁵ cum cunctorum invidiam superasset, quæ et qualis fuerit fatetur. Quod quidem factum magnam illi gloriam adauxit.⁶ Nam et⁷ Æthiopiam subjugavit, Indiam debellavit. Ad⁸ postremum, cum concubitum proprii filii⁹ expetisset, ab eodem interfecta est, cum quadraginta duobus annis regnasset.

Ninus, Nini Filius vero ejus¹⁰ Ninus, paternis ac maternis laboribus contentus, raro a viris visus est;¹¹ in turba fœminarum consenuit. Posterique sui ejus¹² exemplum¹³ secuti responsa¹⁴ gentibus per internuntios dabant. *Ranulphus*.¹⁵ Quod et usque ad tempora Sardanapali observatum est.¹⁶

CAP. X.

De Abrahâ.¹⁷

Abraham nascitur. *Genesis*. Thare, cum septuaginta esset annorum, genuit Aram,¹⁸ Nachor, et Abram.¹⁹ Natusque est Abram

¹ *Quæ novo habitu ut aliquid*, A.; *Et ne habitu quid*, D.

² *populum similiter vestiri jubet*, C.D.

³ *quidem*] om. C.D.

⁴ *adhuc*] om. D.

⁵ *at*] et, C.D.; ac, B.

⁶ *Quod . . . adauxit*] varied in C.D.

⁷ *et*] om. B.C.D.

⁸ *Ac*, B.

⁹ *ipsius filii*, A.; *proprii sui*, C. (not D.)

¹⁰ *ejus*] om. B.

¹¹ *est*] om. C.D.

¹² *ejus*] om. D.

¹³ *exemplar*, B.

¹⁴ *responsum*, C. (not D.)

¹⁵ Reference added from A.B.C.

¹⁶ *Quod . . . est*] om. D.; in margin of C.

¹⁷ Title wanting in MSS.

¹⁸ So MSS., for Aran (Haran).

¹⁹ *Abraham*, A.B.C.D., and so below. •

newe manere of clopinge, sche hi^zte þat hir peple schulde TREVISA.
 goo i-cloped in þe same array, and ^zit þat peple vseþ þe same
 manere clopinge. Þanne þis womman dede meny grete dedes,
 and whanne¹ sche had ouercome þe envie² of alle enemyes,
 þanne sche knowlechede what sche was and how sche hadde
 i-doo. Þan þe doynge torned hire to ful³ greet worschippe ;
 for sche ouercome Ethiopia, blew men lond, and Ynde also.
 And at þe laste sche desired hir owne sone, and had him forto
 ligge by here ; and he slow here, whan sche hadde i-reigned
 two and fourty ^zere. But hir sone Nynus helde hym apaied
 wiþ þe trauaille⁴ of his fader and moder, and was afterward
 selde i-seie amonge men, and leuede and wax olde among
 wommen. And his successoures, kynges þat come after hym,
 folwede þat ensample of hym and ^zeuen⁵ answeere to þe
 peple by messengers þat schulde goo by twene. R. Þat manere
 doynge was i-vsed anon to þe kyng Sardanapallus his tyme.

Capitulum decimum.

Genesis. Thare whanne he was pre score ^zere olde and ten,
 þan he gat Aaram, Nachor, and Abraham; [and Abraham]⁶ was

peple to be clothede in that maner also, whiche consuetude MS. HARL.
2261.
 peple of that cuntre vse in to this tyme presente ; whiche
 woman did grete thynges in here reigne. For sche made
 subiecte Ethioppe, and fau^zhte soore ageynes Ynde, whiche
 desirenge to haue hade the pleasure of the flesche with here
 awne son was sleyne by hym. And when Ninus, son to
 Semiramis, hade reignede xliij^{ti} yere, contente with the labores
 of his fader, [he] was seen but selde of men, drawenge and
 taryenge moche in the company of women ; whose succes-
 soures vsenge the seide condicion ^zafe answeres to peple by
 messyngers betwene. R. Whiche thyng was obseruede and
 keptede vn to the tymes of Sardanapallus.

Capitulum decimum.

THARE beenge of lxx^{ti} yere in age gate Aaram, Nachor,
 and Abraham ; whiche Abraham was borne in the xliij^{ti} yere

¹ and whan repeated in MS.

² enemy, Cx.

³ right, Cx.

⁴ transuaille, MS. ; trauail, Cx.

⁵ ^zeue, a. ; yaf. Cx.

⁶ Added from a. and Cx.

quadragésimo tertio anno Nini regis Assyriorum, ducentésimo nonagesimo secundo¹ anno post diluuium secundum Josephum. *Ranulphus*. De numero annorum istius secundæ ætatis vide supra.² *Genesis*. Porro Aram³ genuit Loth, Sarai,⁴ et Melcham. Sed⁵ mortuus est Aram ante patrem suum Thare⁶ in Ur Chaldæorum. Ex quibus liquet quod⁷ anno undecimo Abrahæ mortuus est Ninus. *Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo*. Cujus uxor Semiramis, ut regnare posset post maritum,⁸ nupsit proprio filio,⁹ quem ex Nino marito¹⁰ susceperat; et ex eo filium suscepit,¹¹ qui Babyloniam ampliavit. *Genesis*. Inde Thare, non valens ferre injurias sibi illatas de adorando igne, in Chaldæa, ubi et Aram primogenitum suum¹² extinxerant, peregrinatus est cum Abram et Nachor et familia Aram usque ad Charram¹³ Mesopotamiæ,¹⁴ ubi completis ducentis quinque annis mortuus est.¹⁵ Abram, mortuo patre suo Thare,¹⁶ descendit de Charra in Sichem, et inde Pentapolim; postmodum¹⁷ collocans tabernaculum inter Bethel et Hai,¹⁸ fame invalescente descendit in Ægyptum, dicens Sarai fore¹⁹ sororem suam.²⁰ *Josephus, libro primo,*²¹ *capitulo septimo*. Abraham, apud Chaldæos prius

Abraham de Charran in Ægyptum descendit.

Anno Abrahæ 75.

¹ 293, C.D.
² *Ranulphus . . . supra*] om. C.D.
³ So A.B.; *Abraham*, E.
⁴ So A.; *Saray*, E.
⁵ *Sed*] et, C.D.
⁶ *Thare*] om. C.D.
⁷ *Ex quibus . . . quod*] om. C.D.
⁸ *maritum*] eum, C.D.
⁹ *filio suo*, B.
¹⁰ *marito*] om. C.D.
¹¹ *suscepit*] genuit, C.D.
¹² *filium suum pr.* B.; *filium suum* C.D.
¹³ *in Carram*, A.B.C. (not D.)
¹⁴ *Mesopotamiæ*] om. B.
¹⁵ *moritur Thare*, C.D.
¹⁶ *suo Thare*] om. C.D.
¹⁷ *postea*, C.D.
¹⁸ So A.; *Hay*, D.E.
¹⁹ *esse*, B.C.D.
²⁰ *dicens Sarray uxorem suam esse sororem*, C.D., which is better.
²¹ *primo*] om. E. The true reference is to lib. i. c. 8.

i-bore þe 3ere of Nynus kyng of Assiria þre and fourty, two hundred 3ere foure score and twelue after Noe his flood, so seiþ Iosephus. **R.** Þe nombre and þe somme of þis secunde age loke to fore in þis book. *Genesis.* Ðan Aram¹ gat Looth, Sarray, and Melcham: Aaram deide to fore his fader Thare in Ur Caldeorum, a place in Caldea: and so Ninus deide þe 3ere of Abraham his age eleuene. *Petrus* 60°. Semyramis Ninus his wif, for sche wolde reigne after hir housbonde Ninus, sche wedded hir owne sone þat sche hadde by hir housbonde Nynus, and hadde by hir sone a childe þat eched² Babilonia and made it more. *Genesis.* Ðanne Thare my3te nou3t suffre þe wrong þat hym was doo of worschippyng of fuyr in Caldea, þere þei hadde i-slawe his eldest sone Aaram. He wente out of þe³ contre wip Abraham and Nachor and Aaram his meyny anon to Charram in Mesopotamia, and deide þere after two hundred 3ere and fyue. Abraham whanne⁴ his fader Thare was dede he wente doun out of Charra in to Siche[m], and þennes into Pen[ta]polis;⁵ afterward he pi3t his payloun bytwene Bethel and Hay. And honger wax⁶ strong he went doun in to Egipte, and tolde þere þat Sarray was his suster. *Iosephus, libro primo, capitulo 7°.* Abraham lernede in

TREVISA.

of Ninus kyng of Assiria, cc.xcij. yere after the grete floode, **MS. HARL.** after Iosephus. **R.** Beholde in the vjth chapitre afore **2261.** of the nowmbre of the yeres of the secunde age. *Genesis.* Aaram gate Loth, Saray, and Melcha, but Aaram diede afore Thare his fader, in the cite of men of Caldea, wherefore hit doth appere that Ninus diede in the xjth yere of Abraham. *Petrus, capitulo sexagesimo.* The wife of whom, Semiramis by name, did wedde here awne son, that sche my3hte reigne, whom sche hade by Ninus here howsebonde, hauenge a childe by here son, whiche did ampliate Babilony. Thare hauenge not powere to suffre iniuryes doen to hym as for fire to be worschippede in Caldea, where he pereschede, Aaram his firste son wente furthe with Abraham and Nachor, and with the meyne other seruauntes of Aaram, to Carra in Mesopotamia, whiche diede there, cc. and v. yere complete. Thare ded, Abraham wente from Carra to Siche[m], and afterwarde to Pentapolis, fixenge his tabernacle betwene Bethel and Hay. After that for hungre he wente in to Egipte, taking Saray with hym, sayenge here to be his sustyr. *Iosephus, libro primo, capitulo septimo.* Abraham, eruditè

¹ So a. and Cx.; *Aaron*, MS.² *echyd* and enlarged. Cx.³ *pat*, a., Cx.⁴ So a. and Cx.; *was*, MS.⁵ *Pentapolis*, a., Cx.⁶ *was*, Cx.

eruditus, in Ægyptum descendens¹ docuit Ægyptios primus² arithmeticam³ et astrologiam prius⁴ illis ignotam. *Genesis*.⁵ Abraham plurimum ditatus rediens de Ægypto⁶ ad locum prioris tabernaculi, propter jurgium pastorum recessit a Loth usque ad convallem Mambre juxta Hebron. *Petrus, quadragesimo secundo.*

Abraham
juxta
Hebron
revertitur.

De civitate
Hebron.

Hebron vel Chebron est⁷ civitas, quæ et Cariatharbe dicitur⁸ a *cariath* quod est civitas, et *arbe* quod est quatuor. Nam ibi⁹ sepulti¹⁰ sunt¹¹ quatuor patriarchæ maximi; Adam, Abraham, Isaak, et Jacob. *Ranulphus.* Sed Joseph sepultus est in Sichimis juxta Montem Ephraim,¹² sicut supra dictum est, et in libro Josuæ ultimo capitulo patet.¹³ *Genesis.* Abraham cum redisset de cæde¹⁴ quatuor regum dedit decimas de omnibus adquisitis occurrenti¹⁵ sibi Melchisedech, regi Salem, qui obtulit panem et vinum. *Hieronymus in epistola ad Evangelum, et Petrus capitulo quinquagesimo secundo.*¹⁶ Decimæ leguntur primum datæ ab Abraham, sed primitiæ prius dabantur ab Abel. Hunc etiam¹⁷ Melchisedech tradunt Hebræi fuisse Seem,¹⁸ primogenitum¹⁹ Noe, et vixisse usque ad

Decimæ
Melchise-
dech.

¹ *veniens*, C.D.

² *primus*] om. B.

³ *arithmeticam*, A. ; *arimetricam*, B.

⁴ *antea*, C.D., which, after *ignotam*, add, *a quibus postmodum ista scientiæ pervenerunt ad Ægyptios.*

⁵ Reference added from A.

⁶ *Abraham* after *Ægypto* in E.

⁷ *est*] om. D.

⁸ *dicitur*] om. B.

⁹ *ibi enim*, C.D.

¹⁰ *sepulte*, D.E.

¹¹ *sunt*] om. B.

¹² Various written in MSS.

¹³ *Ranulphus . . . patet*] om. C.D.

¹⁴ *occisione*, C.D., which vary the sentence.

¹⁵ *occurrente*, A.

¹⁶ 43, A.B.C.D. The true reference is to c. 46. and c. 47.

¹⁷ *autem*, C. (not D.)

¹⁸ *Sem*, A.

¹⁹ *filium*, D.

Caldea and wente doun in to Egipte, and was þe firste þat tauzte þe Egipcians ars metrick¹ and astrologie, þat was vnknowe to hem to fore honde. *Genesis*. Abraham was ful riche, and went aȝen out of Egipt to þe place of þe forseide paupyloun, and for strif of herdes he departede from Loth, and wente from hym anon to þe vale of Mambre besides Ebron. *Petrus* 42, *Hebron*. Hebron, þat hatte Chebron also, is² a citee, and hatte [also]³ Cariatharbe, of *Cariath*, þat is a citee, and *Arbe*, þat is foure; for foure þe grettest patriarkes were i-buryed þere, Adam, Abraham, Isaac, and Iacob; but Ioseph is i-buried in Sichem besides Mount Ephraym, as it is i-seide aboue in libro Iosue, capitulo ultimo. *Genesis*. Whan Abraham come aȝen from þe batayle of foure kynges, he ȝaf tēpyng of al þat he hadde i-gete to Melchisedek⁴ king of Salem; and Melchisedek offred bred and wyn. *Hieronymus in Epistola ad Evangelum, et Petrus* 43, *Decimæ Melchisedek*.⁵ Men⁶ spekeþ and⁷ demēþ þat Abraham ȝaf first tethynges; but Abel ȝaf rapē þe firste þat God sente hym of alle manere kynde. Þe Hebrewes telle þat Melchisedek was Sem, Noe his sone,

TREVISA.

firste amonge men in Caldea, goenge in to Egipte tawzhte theyme arismetrik and geometry, and also astrology, not knowen amonge theyme afore that tyme. *Genesis*. Abraham, made ryche, returnede to the place of the firste tabernacle; whiche taryenge þer, a debate was movede betwene his schepardes and the schepardes of Loth, wente from Loth vn to the vale of Mambra nye to Hebron. *Petrus, capitulo* 42°. Hebron other Chebron is a cite other wise callede Cariatarbe whiche is diriviede of *Cariat*, that is a cite, and *tarbe*, that is iiij.; for the iiij. grete patriarkes were beryede there, Adam, Abraham, Ysaac and Iacob. *Þ*. But Ioseph was buried in Sichimis, nye to the mownte of Efraym, as hit is schewede in libro Iosue, ultimo capitulo. *Genesis*. When Abraham hade returnede from the secte of iiij. kynges he ȝafe the x^{the} parte of his goodes to Melchisedech kyng of Salem, metenge hym, whiche offrede to hym brede and wyne. *Hieronymus in Epistola ad Evangelum; et Petrus, capitulo quadragesimo secundo*. Hit is redde that tithes were ȝiffen firste by Abraham, but firste gotten frutes were ȝiffen firste of Abel. Men of Hebrewē afferme Melchisedech to haue be the firste son of Sem, the firste son of Noe, and to haue lyvede vn to

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *arithmetryk, a.* (not Cx.)

þere is, MS. (not a. or Cx.)

³ Added from a. and Cx.⁴ *Melchisedech, a.; Mechysedech, Cx.*⁵ *Decimæ Melchisedek]* om. a.⁶ *Me, a.*⁷ *spekeþ and]* om. a.; *Me redeth that, Cx.*

Isaak ; et omnes primogenitos a Noe usque¹ ad Aaron² fuisse sacerdotes, qui in conviviis et oblationibus benedicebant populo, quibus et primogenita dabantur ;³ et hæc esse⁴ primogenita, quæ Esau vendidit Jacob fratri suo. Ab⁵ ista etiam victoria Abrahæ tradunt quidam annum Jubileum sumpsisse primordium⁶ pro hac remissione⁷ captivorum. *Jobel* enim dicitur remissio, vel⁸ initium. Unde *Jobeleus*⁹ vel *Jubileus* instituitur in quinquagesimo anno, eo quod Loth tunc fuerit¹⁰ quinquaginta annorum,¹¹ vel quod¹² Abraham astrorum peritus noverat quod intemperies, quæ proveniunt¹³ ex planetis elevatis seu depressis usque ad quinquagesimum annum ad temperiem redeunt. Et quod Abraham¹⁴ vidit in astris imitatus est in terris. *Petrus, quinquagesimo tertio.*¹⁵ Abrahæ natus est Ismael de ancilla Agar, qui¹⁶ tertidecimo ætatis suæ anno circumcisis est.¹⁷ Quem ritum adhuc sequuntur Arabes, quorum auctor Ismael fuit.¹⁸ *Genesis.* Hic postmodum vir sagittarius effectus progenuit ex sua uxore *Ægyptia*¹⁹ duodecim populorum duces, Saracenos,²⁰

Iubileus.

Ismael.

Circum-
cisio.¹ usque] om. C. (not D.)² So A.D. ; Aron, E.³ debebantur, B.⁴ et illa fuerunt, C.D.⁵ *Petrus*, c. 41, ins. C.D. (in marg.)⁶ initium, C.D.⁷ redemptione, C.D.⁸ et, C. (not D.)⁹ *Jobelius*, A.¹⁰ fuerat, B.¹¹ eo quod ... annorum] om. D.¹² quia, A.B.C.D.¹³ provenient, B.¹⁴ Adam, A.B. ; Abram, E.¹⁵ The true reference is to c. 50.¹⁶ in, ins. C.D. (omitting ætatis suæ).¹⁷ erat, D.¹⁸ auctor fuerat, D.¹⁹ ex . . . *Ægyptia*] om. C.D.²⁰ *Sarracenos videlicet*, C.D.

and telleþ þat he leuede anoon to Isaac. Þey telleþ also þat TREVISA.
 from Noe anon to Aron¹ alle þe eldest sones were preostes, and
 blessid þe peple in offrynges [and festes],² and fenge and hadde
 þe firste burþe of bestes, and me seiþ þat suche were þe
 firste burþes þat Esau solde to his broþer Iacob. Also
 som men menep þat annus Iubileus,³ þat is þe 3ere of grace
 as⁴ is i-ordeyned þe fifþe 3ere, took þe bygynnyng of
 þe victorie for þe delyueraunce of prisoneres. Iobel is⁵
 for3ifnes oþer bygynnyng; þerof comeþ Ioboleus oþer
 Iubileus, þe 3ere of grace, as is⁶ i-ordeyned þe fiftiþe⁷ 3ere;
 for Looth was þoo fifty 3ere olde. For Abraham, þat
 was konnyng in þe craft of knowleche of þe planetes
 and sterres, knewe þat þe temperure⁸ þat comeþ of hi3nesse
 and lownesse of sterres and planetes,⁹ comeþ a3en to tem-
 perure at þe fiftiþe 3ere; and so Abraham ordeyned som
 liknesse here in erþe þat he say in þe sterres and planetes.
Petrus 53. Abraham hadde a sone Ismael i-bore of his
 seruauant Agar, þe whiche Ismael was i-circumcised¹⁰ whan
 he was þrittene 3ere olde. Þe Arabes vseþ 3it þat manere
 of doynge. Ismael was hire auctor. *Genesis.* Þis Ismael
 was afterward an archer, and gat on his wif þat was of
 Egipt twelue dukes, lederes of peple, þat cleped hem self

Ysaac, and alle the firste geten childer from Noe vn to MS. HARL.
 Aaron to haue be prestes, whiche blessede the peple in 2261.
 festes, and in oblaciones; to whom the firste geten thynges
 were 3iffen, whom Esau solde to Iacob his brother. From
 whiche victory of Abraham, somme men say the yere of
 Iubile to haue taken originalle, for that remission of captif
 men; for Iobel is callede remission other begynnenge, where-
 fore the yere of Iubile is ordeynede in the 1^u yere. Other
 elles Abraham, experte in astronomy, knowenge by the
 planetes the intemperaunce of wedre eleuate and depres-
 sede to returne to temperaunce at the 1^u yere, folowede in
 erthe that he vnderstode by the disposicion of bodies supra-
 celestiale. *Petrus 53^o capitulo.* Abraham gate Ismael of
 Agar seruauante, whiche Ismael was circumsidede in the
 xiiijth yere of his age, whiche rite men of Araby kepe
 vn to this tyme, the auctor of whom Ismael was. *Genesis.*
 Whiche, made an archer, gate of his wife of Egipte xij.

¹ Aaron, a.

² Added from a. and Cx.

³ Iubilemus, a.

⁴ and, a. Cx. has omissions here.

⁵ So a.; his, MS.

⁶ and is, a.

⁷ L (i.e. 50), Cx.; fiftiþe, MS.

⁸ temperure of þe fiftiþe 3ere, MS.
 (not a. or Cx.)

⁹ planetes and sterres, a.

¹⁰ i-circumcided, a.

ex parte Saræ¹ se vocantes;² cum verius sint Agareni, ab Agar matre Ismaelis, sive Ismaelitæ ex patre sic dicti, seu³ Madianitæ. Indixit Deus Abrahæ* et semini * Anno Abr. 99. suo circumcisionem, quasi quodam caractere volens populum suum distinguere a cæteris nationibus.⁴ *Petrus, quadragesimo septimo.*⁵ Quia tempore circumcisionis mutatum est nomen Abrahæ, ideo Hebræi octavo die, quando circumcidunt⁶ pueros,⁷ nomina illis imponunt. In veteri⁸ testamento quatuor nomina leguntur prænuntiata, scilicet,⁹ Ismaelis, Isaak, Sampsonis, et Josiæ; et in novo¹⁰ solummodo¹¹ Johannis Baptistæ, et Christi. *Ranulphus.*¹² Quod quando fit, singularis meriti aut virtutis indicium est, sicut legitur in vita Remigii.¹³ *Genesis.* Hoc anno subversa¹⁴ est Sodoma, et Loth inde liberatus transiens in¹⁵ Segor, modicam urbem juxta montem, vinoque inebriatus genuit ex seniore filia Moab; de quo Moabitæ descenderunt. Et ex altera¹⁶ filia genuit Amon, de quo Amonitæ descenderunt. *Ranulphus.* De loco Sodomæ, qui nunc Mare Mortuum dicitur, vide¹⁷ supra, libro primo de provinciis Asiæ, capitulo Judæa.

Tempore circum-
cisionis
nomina
mutantur.

Sodoma
subversa.

¹ *Sarra*, B.

² *revocantes*, E.

³ *sive*, B.

⁴ C.D. add: *Promisitque ei filium, quem Ysaac vocaret.*

⁵ The true reference is to c. 50.

⁶ *circumciderunt*, D.

⁷ *pueros suos*, A.

⁸ *veteri quoque*, C.D.

⁹ *scilicet*] om. B.

¹⁰ *et in novo testamento duo tantum*, C.D.

¹¹ So A.; *solomodo*, E.

¹² Added from A.B.

¹³ C.D. have in the margin, *In vita Remigii*, omitting *sicut*, &c. from the text.

¹⁴ *submersa*, C.D.

¹⁵ *in*] om. E., which (with A.) has *modica urbe*; C.D. omit these words, and otherwise vary the sentence.

¹⁶ *alia*, E.

¹⁷ *quare*, C.D.

Saraceny, as pogh pey¹ were i-come of Sarra; but pey beep^{TREVISA.} verrailliche Agarenes, for pey come of Agar [Ismael his moder. Also pey beþ cleped]² Ismaelites, for pey come of Ismael; and beep Madianites³ also. R. Oure Lorde ʒaf Abraham and his children þe circumcisioun forto make and departe⁴ his peple from oper nacions. *Petrus* 47. For Abraham his name was i-chaunged whan he was circum-sised, perfore þe Hebrewes ʒeue hir children names þe eiʒtþe⁵ day whan pey beep circumcided. In þe olde testamēt me redeþ þat men were i-warned of foure men names to fore þe burþe: of Ismael, Isaac, Sampson, and Iosyas. In þe newe testamēt onliche of Iohn Baptiste and Crist. R. And whan þat [pat]⁶ was i-doo it bodid grete merite and vertue; so me redeþ in Remigius his lyf. *Genesis*. Þis ʒere Sodoma was destroyed, and Loth delyuered, and wente into Segor, a litel citee þere besides an hul; and was wyndronken; and in his sleep he gat Moab on his eldest douʒter and⁷ Amon on his oper douʒter. Of Moab come þe Moabites, and of Amon come⁸ Amonytes. R. Of þe place of Sodoma, þat hatte now þe dede see, loke above in þe firste booke, in þe prouince of Asia, in þe chapitre Iudea, þat is þe Iewerye.

dukes and gouernoures of peple, callenge theyme Saracenes, MS. HARL. 2261. as commenge of Sara, but in trawthe thei awe to be namede raper Agarenes, of Agar moder of Ismael, other elles Ismaelites after Ismael, as Madianites were namede of Madian. R. God commaundede to Abraham the vse of circumcision, and to his sede, wyllenge to make a distinccion, as by a carecte, betwene his peple and other naciones. *Petrus*, 47^o capitulo. And for cause that the name of Abraham was chaungede in the circumcision, perfore men of Hebrewē name theirē childer in the viij^{the} day, whan the childer be circumcisede. And iiij. names be pronunciate in the olde testamēte, that is to say, Ismael, Ysaac, Sampson, and Iosias, and ij. oonly in the newe testamēte, Iohn Baptiste and Criste. R. Whiche thyngē is a speciale schewenge of a singuler merite and vertu, as hit is redde in the life of Seynte Remigius. *Genesis*. Sodoma was destroyede that yere, and Loth delyuerede; and salvede, goenge in to Segor, a litel cite nye to the hille, drunke pro wyne gate of his elder doʒhter Moab, of whom Moabites come. Of Sodoma, whiche is callede the dedde see, loke in the firste boke, capitulo 14^o.

¹ þei beiz, a.² Added from a. and Cx.³ Madiamites, MS. and a.⁴ departed, MS. (not a. or Cx.)⁵ eiʒtþe, a.⁶ Added from a.; not in Cx.⁷ an, a.⁸ come] the, a. and Cx.

CAP. XI.

*De Isaac et ejus familia; et de mythica Græcorum historia.*¹Isaac
nascitur.

*Petrus quinquagesimo tertio.*² Natus est Isaak* de Sara nonagenaria;³ qui trimus effectus⁴ ablactatus est; et tunc factum est convivium eo quod tunc primo⁵ accesserit⁶ ad mensam patris. Cres cœpit regnare in Creta,†

Anno Abr. 160.
Anno Isaac, 30.

a quo et Creta insula⁷ dicta est; quem aiunt fuisse unum Curetarum⁸ qui Jovem abscondit et educavit.⁹ Moritur¹⁰ Sara,‡ cum centum et viginti septem esset †

Anno Abr. 136.
Anno Isaac 36.A filiis
Cethuræ
separatur.

annorum, sepultaque est¹¹ in Hebron.¹² Et cito post Eleezer,¹³ procurator Abrahæ, missus ad quærendum uxorem pro Isaak,¹⁴ adduxit Rebeccam. Duxit quoque¹⁵ Abraham Cethuram in¹⁶ uxorem, ex qua genuit sex liberos, quos omnes separavit a filio suo Isaak.¹⁷

*Petrus, quinquagesimo nono.*¹⁸ Dicunt Hebræi Cethuram esse¹⁹ nomen appellativum quod interpretatur *copulata*, quam dicunt etiam²⁰ fuisse Agar, quæ de concubina post mortem Sarai transivit in conjugem; ne, si senex aliam quam prius a se cognitam duceret,²¹

Isaac
Rebeccam
ducit in
uxorem.

lascivire videretur. Isaak quadraginta§ erat annorum, § quando duxit Rebeccam in uxorem; quæ mansit

Anno Abr. 140.
Anno Isaac 40.¹ Title wanting in MSS.² Reference added from A.C.D. The true reference is to c. 56.³ *vetula*, D.⁴ *effectus*] om. D.⁵ *postea*, B.⁶ *accessit*, D.⁷ *insula*] om. C.D., which have in margin *Dionisius*.⁸ *Curitarum*, A.⁹ *qui . . . educavit*] a quo Jupiter, ut ferunt, absconditus fuit et nutritus, C.D.¹⁰ *Petrus* 56, ins. C.D. in marg.¹¹ *et sepulta est*, B.¹² Sentence slightly varied in C.D., as also the following.¹³ *Eliezer*, A.; *Elcazar*, B.D.¹⁴ *Isaac*, A.; *Ysaac*, C.D.; and so usually.¹⁵ *que*, A.¹⁶ *in*] om. D.¹⁷ *quos separavit ab Ysaac*, C.D.¹⁸ The true reference is to c. 62.¹⁹ *fuisse*, C.D.²⁰ *etiam dicunt*, A.²¹ *novis imperitiis*, ins. C.D.

Capitulum undecimum.

TREVISA.

ISAAC was i-bore of his moder Sarra whan sche was foure skore 3ere olde and ten. *Petrus* 53. Isaac was i-wençd whan he was pre 3ere olde, and po¹ was i-made a grete feste; for po he wente firste to his fader bord. Crees bygan to regne in Creta; of hym pat ilond Creta hap pat name Creta. Som men tellep pat² Crees was oon of pe governours pat norsched and hidde Iupiter. Sarra deide whan sche was sixe score 3ere olde and seuene, and was i-buried in Hebron. And sone pere after Eleeser Abrahams seruauant was i-sent forto fecche³ a wyf for Isaac, and brou3te Rebekka.⁴ Also Abraham wedded Cethura to wyf, and gatt on hire sixe children, and departed hem alle from his sone Isaac. *Petrus* 59.⁵ Hebreus seiep⁶ pat Cethura is a comyn name, and is to menyng⁷ i-coupled; and seip pat pis Cethura was Agar, and of a lemman was i-made a wyf after pe deef of Sarra, anaunter⁸ leste pe olde man schulde be holde a lecchour, and he hadde i-take anoper pan he hadde i-lay by to fore honde. Isaac was fourty 3ere olde whan he wedded Rebekka, pat bare

*Capitulum undecimum.*MS. HARL.
2261.

YSAAC was borne of Sara beenge of xc. yere in age, whiche hauenge iij. yere in age, was weynede, and then a grete feste was made, in that Ysaac comme that tyme firste to the burde of his fader. Crees began to reigne in the yle callede Creta, of whom that yle tooke name, whom thei seye to be oon of theym whiche did hyde Iupiter and noryschede hym secretely. Sara beenge of a cxxvij. yere diede, and was beriede in Hebron: after that Heleeser, proctor of Abraham, was sende to gette a wife for Ysaac, whiche brou3hte Rebecca. Abraham did wedde Cethura in to his wife, of whom he gate vj. childer, whom he departede from Ysaac his son. *Petrus*, 59^o *capitulo*. Men of Hebrewe say Cethura to be a nowne appellatiue, as cowplede, by interpretacion, whom thei say Agar, whiche beenge his concubyne, was made his wife after the dethe of Sara. Ysaac was of xli^{ti} yere in age when he did wedde Rebecca,

¹ po, a.² say, Cx.³ fette, Cx.⁴ Rebecca, a.; Rebecka, Cx.⁵ 5, a. (not Cx.)⁶ siggeþ, a.⁷ vnderstandyng, Cx.⁸ lest perauenter, Cx., who varies the rest of the sentence.

sterilis¹ per viginti annos. *Augustinus de Civitate*,
 De Pallade. *libro octavodecimo*. *Apud lacum² Tritonidem appa-[†] Anno Abr. 154.
 ruit virgo³ Tritona⁴ nomine, quam Græci Miner-[†] Anno Isaac 51.
 vam dicunt, quæ etiam dicta est Pallas a Pallante,⁵
 insula Thraciæ, ubi nutrita fuit, sive a Pallante
 gigante, quem interfecit. *Ranulphus*. Hic nota quod
 iste Pallas gigas alius est ab illo Pallante gigante,
 filio Evandri, quem Turnus occidit sub tempore
 Æneæ.⁶ *Augustinus*.⁷ Hæc virgo Pallas sive Mi-
 nerva⁸ plures artes adinvenit, potissime lanificium;
 quæ tanto proclivius dea credita est, quanto minus
 innotuit ejus origo. *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo*.⁹
 Nati sunt Isaak† duo gemelli filii ex Rebecca,¹⁰ Esau † Anno Abr. 160.
 et Jacob. *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo*.[†] Anno Isaac 60.
 De regno
 Argivo-
 rum.
¹¹ Regnum
 Argivorum exortum est in Græcia sub Inacho patre
 Isidis, quæ¹² et Io dicebatur, et regnavit Inachus¹³
 quinquaginta annis. Duravitque hoc¹⁴ regnum quin-
 gentis quadraginta quatuor annis sub regibus qua-
 tuordecim usque ad ultimum Acrisium, quem occidit
 Perseus,¹⁵ licet non sponte, duodecimo scilicet anno
 Deeboræ¹⁶ judicis Israel; et inde timens sibi Perseus
 agros¹⁷ relinquens transtulit regnum ad Mycenæ.¹⁸

¹ *postmodum*, ins. C.D.

² *Apud lacum apud*, A.

³ *virgo*] om. A.E.

⁴ *Tritonia*, B.D.

⁵ *Pallene*, C.D.

⁶ *Hic nota . . . Æneæ*] om. C.D.

⁷ *Augustinus*] om. C.D.

⁸ *virgo . . . Minerva*] om. C.D.

⁹ A.B.C.D. omit reference.

¹⁰ *fili ex Rebecca*] om. C.D.

¹¹ *Hoc anno*, ins. C.D.

¹² *qui*, E.

¹³ *Inachus*] om. C.D.

¹⁴ *hoc*] Argivorum, C. (not D.)

¹⁵ So D.E.; but E. has *Persius*
below. *Percius* A., and *Persius*
below.

¹⁶ So MSS. and versions for *Deb-*
boræ.

¹⁷ *Argos*, A.C.; *Arguos*, B.

¹⁸ *Micenas*, MSS. C.D. add, *ubi*
Danaus postmodum regnavit.

no childe twenty ȝere after. *Augustinus, libro 18^o.* At þe lake Tritonides was i-seie a womman þat heet Tritona; þe Grees clepeþ hir Mynerua; and hatte Pallas also of Pallas þe ilond of Tracia, pere he¹ was i-norsched, oper of Pallas þe geant þat he² slowh. *R.* Here take hede þat þis geant Pallas was anoper geant þan þe geant Pallas, þat Turnus Euander is sone slowh in Eneas his tyme. *Augustinus, ut³ supra.* Þis mayde Pallas, þat heet Mynerua also, fonde vp meny craftes, and specialliche wolcraft,⁴ and was þe liȝtloker⁵ i-trowed a goddes. For me wiste wel litel whennes sche come.⁶ Isaac hade tweye twynnes i-bore of Rebecca, Esau and Iacob. *Augustinus, ubi supra.* Þe kyngdom of Argiues bygan in Grecia vnder Inachus Isis his fader. Isis heet [Io]⁷ also, and Inachus regnede fifty ȝere, and þat kyngdom durede fyue hondred ȝere and foure and forty vnder fourtene kynges anon to þe laste Acrisius: hym slow Persius, þeyȝ it were nouȝt wiþ⁸ his wille, þe twelfþe ȝere of Delbora iuge of Israel. And perfor Persius dradde ful sore, and

TREVISA.

whiche was bareyne by xx^{ti} yeres. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo.* A woman callede Tritona apperede at a water callede Tritonides,⁹ whom men of Grewe calle Minerua, whiche was callede also Pallas, of an yle in Tracia of that name, where sche was norishede, other elles of Pallas the gigante, whom sche did slee. *R.* Hit is to be attendede that this gigante, called Pallas, was an other then Pallas son of Euander, whom Turnus did sle in the tyme of Eneas. *Augustinus, ubi supra.* That virgyn callede Pallas other Minerua founde mony artes, and specially of makenge clothe, þe originalle of the byrthe of whom is not knowen, wherefore sche is callede a godesse. Ysaac gate ij. childer of Rebecca, Esau and Iacob. *Augustinus, ubi supra.* The realme of men callede Argyues, in Grece, began vnder Inachus fader of Ysides, otherwise callede Io, whiche Inachus reignede l^{di} yere; and that realme contynude by v^c. and xliij^{ti} yere, under xliij. kynges, vn to the laste, Acrisius, whom Persius did sle ageyne his wille, in the xij^{the} yere of Delbora iuge of Israel. Wherefore Persius dredenge

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ *heo, B.; a., γ.; she, Cx.*, quite rightly, who notwithstanding has *he slough*. The pronouns are so strangely employed by Trevisa or his scribes, that the concordant readings of MS. and *a.* have been rarely corrected.

² So MS., *a., β., Cx.*; *heo, γ.*

³ *ubi, a., Cx.*

⁴ *wolle craft, a., Cx.*

⁵ *lightyer, Cx.*

⁶ *cam, Cx.*

⁷ Added from *a.* and *Cx.*

⁸ *by, Cx.*

⁹ *Tratonides, Harl. MS.*

Moritur Abraham* centum septuaginta quinque an-
 norum existens, et¹ sepelitur² in³ Hebron.⁴ *Petrus*,
sexagesimo sexto. Idioma Hebræi sermonis et mos
 antiquæ Latinitatis est,⁵ ut prius⁶ supputetur minor
 numerus, deinde major sequatur;⁷ verbi gratia, nos
 dicimus juxta proprietatem linguæ nostræ: Vixit
 Abraham⁸ centum septuaginta quinque annis. Illi e
 contrario dicunt sic:⁹ Vixit Abraham quinque sep-
 tuaginta centum annis. ¹⁰*Augustinus*¹¹ *de Civitate*,
libro octavodecimo. Argivorum† secundus rex Foro-
 neus filius Inachi cœpit regnare, et regnavit sexa-
 ginta annis. Iste Foroneus Argolicus primus Græciæ
 leges dedit,¹² et sub iudice causas agi instituit, unde
 et locum judiciorum a nomine suo appellavit Forum;¹³
 cujus frater Fogous¹⁴ astrologus ad deos colendos
 invenit sacellos, ob quod deificatus est.¹⁵ Horum soror
 fuit Isis sive Io, quæ ad Ægyptum navigans literas
 et agriculturam eos docuit; unde et post mortem
 apud illos¹⁶ deificata est.¹⁷ *Isidorus*, *libro tertio*,
capitulo sexto.¹⁸ Isis primo sistrum invenit, unde et
 Amazones cum sistris exercitum vocabant ad bellum.

Anno Abr. 175.
Anno Isaac 75.

Phoroneus
et Phegeus.

Anno Abr. 211.
Anno Isaac 111.

De Iside.

¹ *et*] om. A.B.

² *sepultus est*, C.D.

³ *spelunca duplici in*, ins. C.D.

⁴ *Ebron*, A.

⁵ *est*] ita se habent, C.D.

⁶ *prior*, A.

⁷ *sequitur*, B. ; *ut*, ins. C.D.

⁸ *Abraham*] om. C. (not D.)

⁹ *Illi . . . sic*] Illi e contra, C.D.

¹⁰ *Item*, ins. A.

¹¹ C.D. omit reference here, and place it before *Iste Foroneus*.

¹² *edidit*, B.

¹³ *appellavit Forum*] dictum forum denominavit, C.D.

¹⁴ *Fegous*, D. August. (*C. D.* xviii, 3) has *Phegous*. The classical forms of the names are *Phoroneus* and *Phegeus*.

¹⁵ *est*] Added from B.C.D.

¹⁶ *eos*, C.D.

¹⁷ *honorum . . . est*] om. B.

¹⁸ *capitulo sexto*] om. A.B.C. ; libro 13, D. The true reference is to lib. iii. c. 22.

lefte þe Argus and tornede þe kyngdom to þe Mycenes.¹ TREVISA.
 Abraham lyuede fiftene þere þre skore and an hondred þere,
 and was i-buried in Ebron. *Petrus* 66. Þe longage of
 Hebreu² and þe vsage of olde Latyn is forto acounte the
 lasse nombre to fore þe more, contrarye to þe manere þat
 Latyn vseþ now, for now we seiþ in Latyn, Abraham lyuede
 an hondred þere þre skore and fiftene; but þe Hebrewes
 seiþ in þis³ manere, Abraham lyuede fiftene þere þre skore
 and an hondred þere. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro* 18^o.
 Feroneus, Inachus his sone, was þe secounde kyng of þe
 Argiues,⁴ and reignede sixtene⁵ þere. Þis Feroneus Argolicus
 ʒaf first lawes in Grees, and ordeynede þat causes schulde
 be i-pledged⁶ to fore iuges. Þerfore þey cleped þe places of
 domes Forum after his owne name. His broþer heet Fogous,⁷
 and kowþe⁸ moche astrologie, and ordeyned temples to
 worschip þe⁹ false goddes ynne; þerfore he was accounted a
 god amonge hem þat worschipped suche goddes. His suster
 heet Isus,¹⁰ and Io also: he¹¹ seilled into Egipt and tauʒte men
 here lettres and telynge of feeldes;¹² þerfore after her deth
 sche was i-made a goddessse among.¹³ *Isidorus, libro* 3. Isis
 ordeynede firste trompes, þerfore þe Amazones cleped hire

lefte the Argyues, and translate that realme to Micenas. MS. HARL.
2261.
 Abraham beenge of a clx. and xv. yere in age, diede and
 was beryede in Hebron. *Petrus, 66 capitulo*. The maner
 of men of Hebrewe is to accompte the lesse nowmbre afore
 the more nowmbre, as by grace of exemple we say, that
 Abraham lyvede an c. yere lxxv. Men of Hebrewe say,
 that Abraham lyvede v. xx. l. and a c. yere. *Augustinus de
 Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo*. Foroneus, the secunde
 kyng of the Argiues, began to reigne, continuenge by lx.
 yere. This Foroneus ordeynede firste lawes amonge the
 Grekes, whiche ordeinede also causes to be ventilate afore
 a iugge, callenge the seete and place of the iugge Forum,
 after his name; whiche hade a sustyr, callede Isis other Io,
 whiche saylunge to Egipte tauʒhte theyme firste letters,
 and to tulle the londe, wherefore sche was made a goodesse

¹ So a. and Cx.; *Mecenes*, MS., in which (as well as in a.) several words are wrongly inserted from below.

² So a. and Cx.; *Ebron*, MS.

³ So a. and Cx.; *his*, MS.

⁴ *armes*, MS.

⁵ *sixty*, Cx.

⁶ *pleted*, Cx.

⁷ So a.; *Fogronis*, MS.

⁸ *and the Fogons coude*, Cx., who varies the sentence.

⁹ *þe*] om. a.

¹⁰ *Ysis*, Cx.

¹¹ *she*, Cx. (not a.)

¹² *filde*, a.

¹³ Cx. adds *theym*.

De fabu-
loso Epa-
phi ortu.

Thessalus
in Thes-
salia reg-
nat.

Benedictio
Isaac a
Jacob.
surrepta.

De primo-
genitis.

Diluvium
sub
Ogyge.

Ranulphus. Quod legitur¹ Jovem rapuisse Io et Epaphum genuisse, fabula est et figmentum poeticum propter utriusque personæ² famosam excellentiam.³ Nam⁴ fingunt poetæ nonnullos illustres personas⁵ ex Jove progenitos, ut ex hoc genus illorum amplius illustretur.⁶ Io namque fuit sub diebus Isaak, et

Jupiter postmodum sub diebus⁷ Josuæ. Thessalus Græci filius regnavit in Thessalia. Jacob* post empta^{*} primogenita⁸ post benedictionem surreptam⁹ a patre, juxta matris suæ consilium descendit in Mesopotamiam.

Petrus, sexagesimo quarto. Primogenita dicuntur quædam dignitates et prærogativæ quas habebant filii primogeniti in suis cognationibus usque ad Aaron, videlicet quod induerentur veste¹⁰ speciali in sacrificiis offerendis, quod etiam paternam reciperent benedictionem, quod etiam¹¹ duplam reciperent portionem in conviviis et in divisione hæreditatis, et quod¹² suis minoribus benedicerent. Jacob genuit ex Lya¹³ Reuben¹⁴ primogenitum

suum.† Hoc anno¹⁶ factum est diluvium particulare in Achaia sive in Attica terra, sub Ogyge¹⁷ rege, qui urbem

* Anno Abr. 27.
Anno Isaac 17.

† Anno Abr. 265.
[Anno Isaac
165.]¹⁵

¹ *sequitur*, C. (not D.)
² *personam*, B.
³ *excellentiam*] om. A.B.
⁴ *Nam*] om. C.D.
⁵ *personas*] om. C.D.
⁶ *illustrarent*, D.
⁷ *diebus*] tempore, C.D.
⁸ *a fratre suo*, ins. C.D.
⁹ *susceptam*, A.
¹⁰ *veste*] om. A. ; speciali indumento, B.

¹¹ *etiam*] om. C.D.
¹² *et quod*] quod etiam, C. ; quod minoribus suis, D. (omitting *et*.)
¹³ *ex Lya* after *suum*, B.
¹⁴ *Reuben*] om. E. D. has in margin the dates 245, 145.
¹⁵ Supplied according to the mind of Higden. The date is wanting altogether in A. ; D. has 251 and 151.
¹⁶ *Hoc anno*] om. C.D.
¹⁷ *Ogege*, D.

ofte to batailleward¹ wip trompes. [R.]² Pat me redeþ þat TREVISIA.
 Iupiter ravesched Io and gat Epaphus, it is but a fable and
 feynynge of poetes for noble fame³ of eyper persone.⁴ For
 poetes feyneþ meny noble persones i-gete of Iupiter, for þe
 kyn schulde be⁵ þe more gentil and noble i-holde.⁶ But
 Io was in Ysaac his tyme, and Iupiter was afterward in
 Iosue his tyme. Thessalus, Grecus his sone, reignede in
 Thessalia. Iacob, after þat he hadde i-bouzt þe firste
 birþe, and slyliche i-gete his fader blessynge by his moder
 counsaile þey⁷ wente doun in to Mesopotamia. *Petrus* 64.
 Þe furste burþe⁸ of hem⁹ were special profyzt¹⁰ and
 worschippes¹¹ to the eldest sones,¹² hadde in hire kynrede
 anon to Aaron; for þey were cloped in special clopyng in
 offryng of sacrifice, and hadde hire fader blessynge, and
 double porcioun in festes and in delynge of heritage, and he¹³
 schulde blesse hire lasse.¹⁴ Iacob gat his firste sone Ruben
 on his wyfe Lya. Dis zere was a litel flood in Achaia, þat
 hatte Atthica þat lond, vnder¹⁵ Ogiges þe kyng, þat renewede

after here dethe. *Isidorus, libro 3º, et R.* That men say MS. HARL.
 Iupiter to have rauesched Io, and to haue geten Epaphus, 2261.
 is but a fable, and a feynynge of poetes, for the famosse
 excellence of bothe persones. For poetes feyne mony
 nowble men to haue ben geten by Iupiter, that the kynde
 of theyme myzhte be made more nowble þere by. For Io
 was in the tyme of Ysaac, and Iupiter was after the tyme
 of Iosue. Thessalus the son of Grecus reignede in Grece.
 Iacob wente in to Mesopotamy,¹⁶ after the counselle of his
 moder, after that he hade bouzhte the fyrste frutes of
 Esau, and after the blessenge of his fader. *Petrus, sexa-*
gesimo quarto capitulo. The firste geten thynges were
 callede certeyne dignites and prerogatifes, whom the firste
 childer hade in theirre cognaciones vn to Aaron; that is to
 say, they were induede with a specialle vesture, in sacrifices
 and oblaciones to be offrede, that thei scholde receyve also
 the benediccion of the fader, and thei scholde haue also a
 dowble portion in festes, and in the diuision of inheritaunce,
 and that thei scholde blesse the yongers of theyme. Iacob
 gate of Lia Ruben his firste son. A particuler floode was
 that yere in Achaia, vnder Ogiges¹⁷ kyng, whiche renewenge

¹ bataylward, a.

² Added from a.

³ ffame, MS. (not a.)

⁴ persoon, a.

⁵ holde, added in a.

⁶ i-holde] om. a.

⁷ he, Cx.

⁸ burþes, a., Cx.

⁹ of hem] om. a., Cx.

¹⁰ profyzt, a. (not Cx.)

¹¹ worschippe, a., Cx.

¹² oldest sonne, Cx.

¹³ they, Cx.

¹⁴ þe lasse, MS. (not a. or Cx.)

¹⁵ was vnder, Cx.

¹⁶ Egipte, Harl. MS. (first hand).

¹⁷ Ogides, Harl. MS.

Atthen innovans,¹ etiam² Eleusim condidit. Hoc anno^{*} Jacob xci. annorum existens genuit Joseph ex Rachel.³ Petrus, septuagesimo quarto. Finitis quatuordecim⁴ annis, quibus Jacob servivit pro uxoribus,⁵ pepigit Laban cum⁶ eo quod quicquid varium nasceretur de unicolore merces sua foret. Unde et⁷ tulit Jacob virgas virides populeas, amygdalinas, et plataninas, quas per loca decorticans⁸ posuit in canalibus aquarum ante⁹ conspectum ovium in¹⁰ ipso fervore coitus, ut¹¹ sic tales foetus conciperent quales umbras ascendentium arietum in aquarum speculo videbant. Et ne¹² omnes foetus varii coloris fierent et sic¹³ dolus deprehenderetur, in verno conceptu ponebat virgas, sed in serotina admissura non ponebat. ¹⁴Sicque novam naturæ stropham commentatus est Jacob, qua contra naturam arte naturali pugnaret. *Ranulphus.*¹⁵

¹ *innovatur*, B.

² *etiam*] om. C.D.

³ *Apparuit etiam virgo Minerva sive Pallas apud lacum Tritonidem*, C.D.

⁴ *novem*, A.

⁵ *suis*, ins. B.

⁶ *cum*] om. A.

⁷ *et*] om. C.D.

⁸ *decorticavit et*, B.

⁹ *in*, B.

¹⁰ *in*] om. B.

¹¹ *ut*] unde, C. (not D.)

¹² *Et ne*] Ne autem, C.D.

¹³ *sic*] om. D.

¹⁴ *Petrus*, ins. C.D. (The latter omits several words.)

¹⁵ *Ranulphus*] In the place of this next passage the following occurs in C.D.: "*Hugutio, capitulo Molo.* "Talem autem* ferunt foeminarum esse naturam, ut quales formas in extremo voluptatis aestu conspexerint dum concipiunt talem sobo-

* *etiam*, D.

lem procreant. Etenim anima in usu venereo formas extrinsecas intus transmittit, earumque satiatata typis species rapit in propriam qualitatem. Sic solent in Hispania objicere generosos equos obtutibus equarum concipientium, et etiam pulchras depingere columbas in locis ubi columbae conversantur. *Hieronymus.* Et Quintilianus matronam accusatam quod Æthiopem peperisset, ex imagine tempore conceptionis conspecta hoc contigisse argumentans defendebat.† *Petrus.* Et in libris Hippocratis reperitur scriptum quandam fore puniendam quia pulcherrimum puerum utriusque parenti dissimilem peperisset, nisi monuisset Hippocrates‡ quærere si talis forte pictura esset in cubiculo parentum tempore conceptionis." See above, p. 198.

† *defensabat*, D.

‡ *Ypocras*, MSS.

* Anno Abr. 251.
Anno Issac 151.

þe citee Atthen and bulde Eleusis. Þis 3ere Iacob foure score TREVISA.
 3ere olde and enleuene gat Ioseph on Rachel. *Petrus* 74. —
 Whanne þe fourtene 3ere were i-doo in þe whiche Iacob ser-
 uede for his wifes, Laban made couenant wip hym þat alle
 þe splekked lamberne¹ and keddes þat schulden be i-3ened²
 duryng his couenant schulde be Iacob his³ mede, and al þat
 were of oon colour whyte oþer blak, schulde be Laban his
 owne. Perfore Iacob took grene 3erdes of populers of almand
 trees and of platans,⁴ and pyled of þe rynde in som place of þe
 3erdes, and in som place pyled hem nou3t; and so he made þe
 3erdes splekked,⁵ and leyde hem in þe wateryng place to fore
 þe schepes ey3en, whan þey schulde conceyue⁶ lambren liche
 to þe schadewes þat þey seie of rammes in þe merrour of
 þe water in þe conceyuyng. And for þey schulde not al be
 splekked leste þe gyle were i-knowe, þerfore in þe firste
 conceyuyng tyme he leyde so 3erdes, but not in þe latter
 conceyuyng tyme, and so Iacob fonde a newe manere
 tornyng of kynde,⁷ wip kyndeliche craft to fi3te agenst kynde.
 R. Loke more of þis mater aboue, libro ejus, capitulo

the cite of Athenes made the cite of Eleusis. Iacob, beenge MS. HARL.
 that tyme of xcj. yere, gate Ioseph of Rachel. *Petrus*, 2261.
 74^o *capitulo*. The xiiij. yere ypaste in whom Iacob did
 seruyce for his wifes, he made a couenant with Laban that
 he scholde haue alle lambes of diuerse coloures that comme
 of ewes of oon coloure. Wherefore Iacob gate roddes of
 almonde trees, of populer, and of other trees, whiche takenge
 barke from þeim putte the roddes in the places of water,
 afore the si3hte of schepe when thei scholde be blissomede,
 that thei my3hte haue lambes of diuerse coloure, lyke to

¹ *lambren, a.; lammes, Cx.*

² *3ened, a.; ewed, Cx.*

³ *Iacobys, a.*

⁴ So Cx.; *plauntes, MS.*

⁵ *spekeld, Cx.*

⁶ *for they shold conceyue, added in Cx.*

⁷ *kyngye, MS.*

Vide residuum de materia ista¹ supra, primo² libro, capitulo primo. Reverso Jacob* cum uxoribus et liberis,⁴ priusquam ad patrem veniret, duodecimo anno ante mortem Isaak, Joseph, sexdecim annorum puer existens, venditus est in Ægyptum; ubi mansit viginti duobus annis, antequam pater suus Jacob ad eum veniret. Joseph itaque⁵ sic venditus a fratribus, denuo venditur a mercatoribus Ismaelitis⁶ in Ægyptum Putiphari eunuchio, magistro militum Pharaonis. *Augustinus super Genesim.* Iste Putiphar non erat de talibus eunuchis, qui parvuli castrantur; nam⁷ uxorem habuit et liberos; cujus etiam filiam Joseph desponsaverat;⁸ sed iste Putiphar videns Joseph fore elegantem emit eum, ut eo abuteretur more⁹ sodomitico; sed Deus¹⁰ ita in frigidavit eum, ut deinceps foret¹¹ impotens¹² ad coitum,¹³ ac si eunuchus castratus fuisset. Unde, tanquam ex hoc habitus¹⁴ est¹⁵ honorabilior, factus est pontifex Heliopoleos.¹⁶ *Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavodecimo, capitulo quarto.* Argivorum† tertius rex¹⁷ Apis, filius Foronei,¹⁸ cepit regnare, et regnavit viginti duobus annis. Moritur Isaak centum octoginta annorum¹⁹ existens,‡ et sepultus est²⁰ † in spelunca duplici in Hebron.²¹ Quo in anno Pharaeo vidit somnium de septem spicis et septem bobus.

Joseph in Ægyptum venditur.

De Putiphari eunuchio.

* Anno Abr. 288.
Anno Isaac 168.³

† Anno Abr. 271.
Anno Isaac 171.

‡ Anno Abr. 280.
Anno Isaac 180.

¹ ista] in materia, A.
² quarto, A.; eodem, B.
³ Date added from A.D. The dates in E. below are corrected from other MSS.
⁴ in itinere exeunte, ins. C.D. (existente, D.)
⁵ igitur, C.D.
⁶ a mercatoribus Ismaelitis] om. C.D.
⁷ quia, C.D.
⁸ desponsavit, C.D.
⁹ modo, C.; ut abuteretur eo (only) D.
¹⁰ Deus autem, C.D.

¹¹ esset, C.D.
¹² impotens] om. B.
¹³ vitium, B.
¹⁴ factus, B.
¹⁵ est] om. B.C.D., and the sentence slightly transposed.
¹⁶ Eliapoleos, B.
¹⁷ rex] om. A.D.E. (D. has secundus.)
¹⁸ Feronei, A.
¹⁹ annorum] so B.; annis, E.; an., A.D.
²⁰ cum patre suo Abraham, ins. C. D.
²¹ in Hebron] om. C.D.

primo. Whanne Iacob was i-come aze wip his wyfes and his children, or pey come to his fader, twelue¹ zere to fore Isaac his deep, Ioseph sextene zere olde was i-solde in to Egipte to oon pat heet Putyphar, pat was eunuchus,² and maister of Pharao his knyžtes. *Trevisa.* Eunuchus is he pat is i-gilded,³ and suche were somtyme i-made wardeynes of ladyes in Egipt. *Augustinus super Genesim.* Dis Putiphar was⁴ not so eunuchus as pey pat were i-gilded in hir childhode, for he hadde a⁵ wyf and children, and Ioseph hadde i-wedded his doužter. But pis Putiphar [say pat Ioseph was fayre,⁶ and boužte him forto mysuse hym, perfore God made pis Putyphar]⁷ so colde pat he myžte neuere after haue to doynge flescheliche wip his owne wyf na more þan pey. he were eunuchus⁸ i-gelded, and perfore, as he pat was most worschiphful, he was i-made bisshop of God Heliopoleos. Apis þe pridde kyng of Argiues was Foroneus his sone, and regned two and twenty zere. Isaac an hondred zere [olde]⁹ and four skore¹⁰ deyde, and was i-buryed in þe double graue of¹¹ Ebron. Pat zere Pharao sigh¹² þe sweuene of the seuene corn eres, and of þe seuene kuyne.

TREVISA.

the coloure of the water whom thei did beholde. Iacob returnede, or that he come to his fader in the xijth yere afore the dethe of Ysaac, Ioseph a childe of the age of xvj. yere, was solde in to Egipte, where he tariede xxijth yere or that his fader Iacob comme to hym. Ioseph solde of his breder to Ismaelites merchaundes, was solde ageyne in to Egipte to Putiphar maister of knyžhtes of Pharao. *Augustinus super Genesim.* This Putiphar was not of theyme whiche were geldede when thei were childer, for he hade a wife and childer, whose dožter Ioseph did wedde. But this Putiphar seenge the beawte of Ioseph, boužte hym, that he myžhte vse hym after the vse of sodomy. But Godde made hym so colde of nature that he myžte not fulletylle the luste of the flesche, whiche was made after that the bisshop of Heliopolis.¹³ Apis the son of Foroneus, the thrydde kyng of Argiues, began to reigne, contynunge hit by xxijth yere. Ysaac of clxxx. yere in age, diede and [was] beriede in the dowble denne in Hebron. In whiche yere Pharao hade the dreame of vij. eieres of corne, and of vij. oxen.

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ twelf, a.² eunuch-s, MS. (not a. or Cx.); sone after eunuches in MS. (not a. or Cx.)³ gelded, Cx.⁴ So Cx.; pat was, MS. and a.⁵ a] om. a., Cx.⁶ so fayre, a. (not Cx.)⁷ Added from a. and Cx.⁸ eunuches, a.⁹ Added from a. and Cx.¹⁰ zere olde, added in MS.¹¹ in, Cx.¹² syze, a.¹³ Oliopolis, Harl. MS.

CAP. XII.¹*De reliqua patriarcharum historia. Varia de Ægypto et Græcia.*

Jacob in Ægyptum descendit.

Apis, postea Serapis dictus, in Ægypto moritur.

Isto anno, qui fuit secundus annus famis, Jacob centum triginta annorum² existens descendit cum filiis suis in Ægyptum. *Augustinus, libro octavo-decimo, capitulo decimo.*³ Hòc anno Apis⁴ rex Argolicus navibus vectus in Ægyptum moritur, et Serapis dictus est. Cujus rationem reddit Varro sic dicens: Arca sive sarcophagus⁵ in quo Apis ponebatur Græce vocabatur⁶ *sonon*; inde dictus est *Soronapis*; postmodum,⁷ ut assolet, dempta⁸ una litera, dicebatur Serapis. Ille itaque bos maculis albis⁹ distinctus, quem colebat Ægyptus, quia vivus colebatur, Apis dicebatur. Quo mortuo quærebatur alius vitulus albus¹⁰ similibus maculis distinctus, delicate¹¹ nutritus et cultus. *Hugutio, capitulo Apes.* Apis dicebatur taurus ille, qui de Nilo solebat exire et gesticulatione sua¹² ventura prænotare.¹³ *Petrus.* Dicunt quidam quod in

¹ Not marked as a new chapter in B.C.D., indeed not even a new paragraph. No title in MSS.

² So B.; *annis*, E.

³ *capitulo x^o.*] om. A.C.D.; the whole reference omitted in B. It should be Lib. xviii. c. 5.

⁴ *Apis*] om. B.

⁵ *sarcophagum*, C.D.

⁶ *dicebatur*, C.D.

⁷ *postea*, D.

⁸ *commutata*, B.

⁹ *bos albus maculis*, D.

¹⁰ *albus*] om. B.

¹¹ *delicate*] om. B.

¹² *sua*] sui corporis, C.D.

¹³ *prædicere*, C.D.; *prænosticare*, B.; *provocare* (sic), A.

Capitulum duodecimum.

TREVISA.

THIS¹ zere, pat was þe secunde zere of hunger,² Iacob, an hondred zere olde and pritty, wente wip his children doun in to Egipte. *Augustinus, libro 18^o.* Þis zere Apis þe kyng Argolicus seiled in to Egipt and deyde, and was i-cleped Serapis. [Varro tellith why he was cleped Serapis,³ and seip þat þe chiste þat he was i-putte inne was i-cleped Seron⁴ in Grewe, and perfore Apis was i-cleped [Seronapys],⁵ and afterward by wip drawynge of lettres, as me vseþ, he was i-cleped Serapis. Þat whyte splekked oxe þat men of Egipt hadde,⁶ ffor it was [i-worschipped onlyve, hit was]⁷ i-cleped Apys; and whan þat oxe was deed, þey ordeyned hem anoþer oxe þat was also whyte splekked and tenderliche i-norsched and i-worschipped. *Hugutio, capitulo Apes.* Þat bole heet Apis, þat was i-woned to come out of þe ryuer Nylus, and warne by his pleyenge and startelynge⁸ what was to comynge. *Petrus.* Som men telleþ þat eueriche zere in Serapis feste come vp a bole out

*Capitulum duodecimum.*MS. HARL.
2261.

IACOB, beenge of a c. and xxxⁱⁱ yere in age, wente in to Egipte that yere, whiche was the secunde yere of the hungre. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo.* Apis, kyng Argolicus, cariede in to Egipte with schippes, diede that yere, otherwise callede Serapis. The poete Varro schewethe a cause and a reason as for that name. For Senaropis in Grewe sowndethe as a beryalle, in whom Apis was putte. And after hit was callede Serapis, ij. letters taken aweye. That oxe distincte with white spottes, whom Egipte worschippede, was callede Apis, in that Ninus⁹ was worschippede; whiche oxe other bulle dedde, an other calfe was inquirede that was like to hit, whiche founde thei norischede hit tenderly. *Hugutio, capitulo Apes.* That bulle was callede Apis, whiche was wonte to swymme ouer the floode callede Nilus, and to schewe thynges to comme thro his gesticulation. *Petrus.* Somme men say that bulle aperede above the water in the feste of Serapis, whiche

¹ *Yis, a.*² *Fanus, a., Cx.; Phanus, γ.*³ Added from γ., Cx.⁴ *Soron, γ.*⁵ Added from a. and Cx.⁶ *hadde*] om. a. β. γ., Cx. For*hadde* we should perhaps read *hadde in worschipped.*⁷ Added from a. and Cx.⁸ So a. β. γ. and Cx.; *stelynge*, MS.⁹ The Harleian translator has misread his MS.

Serapis festo annuatim¹ emergebat² ille de³ Nilo flumine,⁴ habens in humero dextro signum candidum instar lunæ corniculatum, ad quem cum Ægyptii statim confluerunt⁵ omni genere musicorum psallentes, taurus ille levabatur in aere tanquam psallens; ad cujus motum seu stationem Ægyptii in terra movebantur seu stabant, sed eadem die evanescebat. Igitur Ægyptii taurum pro Ape, vaccam pro Iside, ovem pro Hammone, id est Jove, adorabant. Unde et abominabile fuit apud eos hujusmodi⁶ animalia⁷ occidere aut edere.⁸

Argivorum quartus⁹ rex Argus cœpit regnare, et regnavit quadraginta sex annis; sub quo etiam¹⁰ Græcia, allatis aliunde seminibus, segetes habere cœpit.¹² Jacob¹³ centum quadraginta septem annorum existens,¹⁴ benedictis filiis suis ac filiis filiorum¹⁵ ¹⁶ singulis benedictionibus, moritur;¹⁷ servatusque est¹⁸ et conditus triginta diebus. Tandem delatus est¹⁹ ad²⁰ Hebron in spelunca duplici tumulandus. *Petrus, capitulo decimo.* Mos erat ethnicorum incondita servare corpora novem diebus, quibus deplangerent²¹ et corpora aqua calida foverent;²² ut sic sciretur an²³ anima esset egressa vel²⁴

Jacob
moritur.

Anno Abr. 293.

Anno Jacob 133.¹¹

Anno Abr. 307.

Anno Jacob. 147.

¹ *annuatim*] om. B.

² *taurus*, ins. C.D.

³ *sub*, A.

⁴ *flumine*] om. C.D.

⁵ *confluerent*, B.D.

⁶ So D.; *hujus*, A.E.

⁷ *aut*, ins. B.

⁸ *comedere*, C.D.

⁹ *tertius*, D.

¹⁰ *et*, A.

¹¹ In the Harleian MS. the years of Isaac (not Jacob) are computed; thus giving 193, &c. instead of 133, &c.

¹² *segetes habuit*, C.D.

¹³ *autem*, ins. C. (not D.)

¹⁴ *postquam mansisset in terra illa septemdecim annis*, ins. C.D.

¹⁵ *filiorum*] Joseph, C.D.

¹⁶ *suorum*, ins. B.

¹⁷ *mortuus est*, B.

¹⁸ *est*] om. B.D.

¹⁹ *defertur*, C.D.

²⁰ *ad*] in, C.D.; ab, B.

²¹ *quibus deplangerent*] et singulis diebus plangere, C.D.

²² *fovere*, C.D.

²³ *utrum*, C.D.

²⁴ *an*, C.D.

of þe ryuer Nilus, and hadde a whyte mark in þe riȝt schuldre i-schape as a newe mone, and whanne þe Egipcians come to hym wiþ alle manere musyk and merþe, þat bole was i left vp in to þe ayer as it were wiþ iolyte, and at þe meuyng and styntyng of þat boole þe Egipcians meued and stynte vp on þe erthe, but þat bole vanished out of hir siȝt þe¹ same day. Þerfore þe Egipcians worschipped þe² bole for þat man Apis, and a kowe in stede of Isis³ þat womman, and a bole also for Iupiter. Þerfore it was a grete abhomynacioun among þe Egipcians to sle reþeren⁴ or⁵ ete reþeren flesche. Argus þe fourþe kyng of Argiues bygan to regne, and regnede sixe and fourty ȝere. In his [tyme]⁶ Grece hadde seed i-brouȝt out of oþer londes, and gan to ere and sowe and haue corne i teled pere ynne. Iacob, an hondred ȝere olde and seuene and fourty, blessed his children, and ȝaf eueriche his blessyng, and deyde. and was anoynt, and i-kept pritty dayes, and at þe laste i-bore in to Ebron, and i-buried pere in þe double graue. *Petrus.* Hit was þe manere of mysbeleued men forto kepe a dede body nyne dayes wiþ oute oignement, and make sorwe for hym nyne dayes, and wasche þe body nyne daies, for to wete wheþer þe soule were apassed oþer no. Afterward þey

TREVISA.

water was callede Nilus, hauenge in the ryȝhte schulder a white signe other merke cornerede lyke to the moone; whom men of Egipte attendenge syngeunge with alle kyndes of musikes, that bulle was eleuate anon in to the aier, as makeunge a melody; at the mouenge or stondenge of whom men of Egipte were mouede other stode; whiche bulle euaneschede a weye the same day. Therefore men of Egipte worschippede a bulle for Apis, a kowe for Isis, and a schepe for Iupiter; wherefore to slee eny of those bestes was an abhominable thyng amonge theyme, other elles to eite eny of theyme. Argus, the iiijth kyng of Argyues, began to reigne, whiche reignede xlvj. yeres, in whiche tyme the londe of Grece began to sawe corne. Iacob beenge of a c.xlvijth yere in age, blessenge his childer with single benedicciones, and the childer of his childer, diede, whiche kepede xxxⁱ daies, was brouȝhte at the laste to Hebron, and beriede in a threfolde denne. *Petrus, decimo capitulo.* The maner and consuetude of Ethnikes was to kepe bodies dedde by ix. daies, in whom they myȝhte sorowe there dethe, and norische the body with hoothe water, that thei myȝhte haue perfecte knowlege wheder thei were

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ þat, Cx.² þat, a., Cx.³ Isus, MS.⁴ reþeren] neet, Cx.⁵ oþer, a.⁶ Added from a. and Cx.

sopita. Postmodum¹ corpora condita quadraginta diebus servabantur. Sed mos erat Judæis² septem diebus incondita corpora servare, et post triginta diebus servare condita. *Augustinus, libro octavo-decimo.*

Prome-
theus
homines
fecisse
fertur.

Prometheus filius Iapeti et frater Atlantis astrologi secundum Ovidium in Magno fertur fecisse homines, tum quia de rudibus doctos fecit³ (*Isidorus libro tertio-decimo*), tum quia legitur fecisse imagines hominum,⁴ quas arte quadam ambulare⁵ fecit. Et etiam iste⁶

Annulum
invenit.

invenit primus annulum ferreum, cui⁷ gemmam inclusit et unguum vocavit; quia sicut unguis carne sic gemma metallo circumdatur.⁸ *Hugutio, capitulo*

Annulus
derivatur.

*Annulus.*⁹ Item¹⁰ annulus dicitur ab ano, quia olim deprehensi in homicidio vel furto solebant portare¹¹ simiam in collo, ad cuius anum tenebant ora sua. Sed hac¹² consuetudine turpi cessante ferebant tales sic¹³ deprehensi annulum ferreum in digito, ad cuius¹⁴ rei distinctionem nobiles viri fecerunt¹⁵ sibi annulos

¹ *Postmodum*] om. C.D.

² *Hebræis*, C.D., and the passage transposed and abbreviated.

³ Slightly transposed in C.D.

⁴ *homines*, E.

⁵ *deambulare*, C.D.

⁶ *Et . . . iste*] Iste etiam, B.

⁷ *in quo*, B. ; *et*, D.

⁸ Slightly varied in C.D.

⁹ *Anulus*, MSS., here and everywhere.

¹⁰ *Item*] om. C.D.

¹¹ *deferre*, C.D.

¹² *hac*] om. C. (not D.)

¹³ *sic*] om. D.

¹⁴ *cujus*] om. B.

¹⁵ *fecerunt*] om. E.

kepte þe bodies fourty dayes anynt.¹ But it was þe manere of Iewes forto kepe dede bodyes seuene dayes wip oute oyne-mentis, and afterward þretty dayes anynt. *Augustinus, libro 18º.* Me seiþ þat Prometheus² Rapetus³ his sone, and Atlas⁴ þe astronomere, his broþer, made men; so seiþ Ouidius in Magno; nopeles þat is i-seide, for of men þat were vnkonnynge and boistous as bestes he made konnyng [men]⁵ and wise.⁶ *Isidorus 13º.* Also for me redeþ þat he made ymages of men goo and walke in⁷ þe grounde by a certeyn craft. Also þese fonde first a ryng of iren, and closed þerynne a precious stoon, and cleped it a nayle, for as þe nayle is i-closed in þe flesche, so is suche⁸ a stoon i-closed in þe metal. *Hugutio, capitulo Anulus.* Anulus is a ryng i-seide of anus an ers, for somtyme þeues and mansleers, whan þey were i-take, scholde bere an ape on hire nekke and holde hir mouþ to þe apes⁹ ers. But þis foule vsage cesed, and þeues and mansleers whan þey were i-take schulde bere rynges of iren on hire fyngres. And þerfore gentil men, for to haue dyuersite and distinccioun from

TREVISA.

dedde other nay. After that thei dressede the bodies with spices, and kepede theyme by xlⁱⁱ dayes, other elles thei kepede theyme after thei were beriede by xlⁱⁱ daies. But the consuetude of the Iewes was to kepe the bodies vnberiede by vij. dayes, and kepede theym by xxxⁱⁱ daies after their berienge. *Augustinus, libro octavo decimo.* Prometheus, the son of Iapetus,¹⁰ and brother to Atlas⁴ the astronomier, after Ouidius in Magno, is seide to haue made men, in that he made discrete men of rude peple. *Isidorus, libro tertio decimo.* And also for cause that he made the ymages of men to walke by craft. Also he founde firste a ryng of yrne, puttenge a gemme in hit, callenge hit vngulum, for like as the nayle of a fynger is cloosed with flesche, so he compassede that gemme with metalle. *Hugutio, capitulo Anulus.* Also anulus, whiche is callede a ryng, toke begynnege of this worde, anus; for somme tyme men taken in manslaughter other in thefte were wonte to bere an ape in their necke, holdenge their mowthes to the hynder⁷ partes of that ape. That vile consuetude y-ceasede, suche men taken in felony were wonte to bere a ryng of yrne in their fynger, vn to the distinccion of whom now-

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ enoynted, Cx.² So a.; *Prometheus*, Cx. (and so MSS. often); *Ptholomeus*, MS.³ So MSS. (including β. and γ.) and Cx., for *Iapetus*.⁴ *Atlas*, MSS. and Harl. MS., and so below.⁵ Added from a. and Cx.⁶ *wise men*, MS.⁷ *on*, Cx.⁸ *suche is*, MS.⁹ *ape his*, a.¹⁰ *Tapetus*, Harl. MS.

aureos et argenteos¹ quos ponebant in quarto digito, quem medicum² appellant, causa ornatus dignioris; eo quod in³ illo digito vena quædam a⁴ corde protenditur.⁵ Sed apud Romanos annuli quondam dabantur ex publico sed nobiles viris; cæteris autem dabantur solidi, unde et liberi utebantur annulo aureo, libertini argenteo, servi ferreo. Et quidem apud veteres ultra unum anulum uti⁶ infame fuit.⁷ *Isidorus, libro vice-*

Atlas.

*simo*⁸ *in fine*.⁹ Hujus Promethei frater¹⁰ Atlas astrologus¹¹ fuit; quapropter cælum portare fingebatur; unde et mons enormis¹² in Africa ab ejus¹³ nomine Atlas dicitur, et¹⁴ cælum portare a vulgo creditur.¹⁵

Triptolemus et Ceres.

Petrus. Eo in¹⁶ tempore dicitur Tri[p]tolemus¹⁷ in nave¹⁸ dracone¹⁹ depicta Græciam intrasse, et agri culturam ampliasset.²⁰ Tunc quoque Ceres, quæ a Græcis Demetra²¹ dicitur, præter instrumenta arandi etiam²² mensuras tritici adinvenit, cum tamen prius triticum²³ per acervos numeraretur.²⁴ *Ranulphus*.²⁵

¹ A.B.C.D. rightly introduce here the reference to *Isidore* below. See Lib. xix. c. 32.

² *medicus*, B.; *medium*, E.

³ *ab*, B.

⁴ *ad cor protendens*, A.

⁵ So B.; *pertingit*, D.; *præten-*
ditur, E.

⁶ *uti ultra uno anulo*, B.

⁷ *fuit*] erat, A. The whole extract considerably varied and transposed in C.D.

⁸ 19°, C.; 9, B.

⁹ *Augustinus de Civitate, libro 18*, A.B.C.D. correctly. See Lib. xviii. c. 8.

¹⁰ *frater*] originally *filius* in C.; but corrected in the margin in another ink.

¹¹ *quidam*, ins. C.D.

¹² *unde et mons enormis in Africa*] Mons etiam in Libia, C.D.

¹³ *hujus*, B.

¹⁴ *et*] quem propter enormem altitudinem, C.D.

¹⁵ *vulgus credit*, C.D.

¹⁶ *in*] om. B.D.

¹⁷ *Triptolemus*, B., and versions.

¹⁸ *nave sua*, A.B.

¹⁹ *draco*, A.

²⁰ Extract altered verbally and transposed in C.D.

²¹ So Higden writes for Demeter.

²² *etiam*] om. C.D.

²³ *triticum*] om. C.D.

²⁴ *numerabant*, B.; *numerarent*, D.

²⁵ *Ranulphus . . . habere*] om. C.D.

suche briboures, made hem rynges of gold other of siluer. TREVISA.
Isidorus, libro 19^o, in fine. Gentile men vsede here rynges of gold and of siluer¹ on þe fourþe fynger, þat is y-cleped þe leche by cause of þe more hiȝtyng and fairenesse, for in þat fynger is a veyne þat streechep to þe herte. But Romayns hadde rynges of þe common tresour²: gentil men hade rynges, and opere hadde solidy þat were hole and sownde. Fremen of blood vsede [rynges of gold; free men that came of bonde men vsed]³ rynges of siluer, but bonde men vsede rynges of iren. Somtyme it were a greet diffamacionn for a man to vse more rynges þan oon. *Augustinus de Civitate.* Þis Prometheus hadde a bropet þat het Atlas, and was an astronomer; þefore me feynede þat he bare heuene; also a greet hille in Affrica, þat⁴ hatte Atlas by þis man Atlas his name; and þe lewed peple wenep þat þat hylle bereþ vp heuene. *Petrus.* Me seiþ þat Tritholomus wente þat tyme in his schippe þat was i-peynt wip a dragoun into Grees, and made þere more craft of telienge of teeldes. Also þat tyme Ceres, þe womman þat þe Grees clepeþ Demetra, wip oute instrumentes þat sche fonde vp of erynge craft, sche fonde vp also mesures of whete; for to forehonde þey delede whete by hepes⁵ smal oper greet. R. After

ble men made rynges of golde and of syluyr. *Isidorus, MS. HARL. libro decimo nono, in fine.* Whom thei putte in the iiijth 2261. fynger, whiche is callede the fynger medicinable, for cause of more dignite, in that a veyne is protendede from that fynger to the herte. Also rynges were ȝiffen to nowble men in Rome, and schilenges were ȝiffen to other men. Wherefore free men vsede rynges of golde, libertynes rynges of syluyr, and seruauntez⁶ rynges of yrne. For hit was somme tyme as a thyng of grete infamy to haue werede moo rynges then oon amonge olde men. *Augustinus de civitate Dei, libro 18^{mo}.* Atlas, the astronomer, and broder to Prometheus, was seide to bere heuyn, wherefore there was a grete hille in Affrike callede Atlas after hys name, whiche hille by the estimacion of commune peple is supposede to bere heuyn. *Petrus.* Tritholomus, peyntenge a dragon in his schippe, is seide to haue entrede in to Grece, and to haue amplified the tyllenge of londe; and Ceres, whiche is callede Demetra of the Grekes, founde diuerse mesures of whete, for whete was nowmbrede afore that tyme by grete heepes. R. And after Isidorus, libro

¹ of seluer and of gold, a. B. γ., Cx.

² tresorye, a. B. γ., Cx.

³ Added from β. γ., Cx.

⁴ þat] om. a. B. γ., Cx.

⁵ huples, Cx.

⁶ So Harl. MS.

Et ex tunc,¹ secundum Isidorum libro quinto, Græcia
cœpit segetes habere.²

Joseph
moritur ;
item
fratres.

Joseph centum et decem annorum existens³ moritur
in Ægypto, et conditus aromatibus conservatus est
usque ad exitum Hebræorum de Ægypto per centum
quadriginta⁴ quatuor⁵ annos, quibus Hebræi servierunt
Ægyptiis. Fratres quoque Joseph, prout singillatim
moriebantur, sepeliebantur⁶ in Hebron; ossa tamen
eorum cum⁷ ossibus Joseph postmodum⁸ translata
sunt in Siche⁹, quæ modo dicitur Neapolis, urbs
Samaritanorum. Et sic a descensu Jacob in Ægyptum
usque ad exitum Hebræorum sunt anni ducenti
quindecim.¹⁰

Anno Abr. 361.
Anno Jacob. 110.

CAP. XIII.

*De Moyse.*¹¹

Moyse
nascitur.

Amram, filius Caath,¹² filii Levi,¹³ ex uxore sua
Jochabeth,¹⁴ cum esset quadraginta¹⁵ annorum, genuit
Moysem. *Petrus.* Pharao ille,¹⁶ sub quo fuit Joseph,
proprio nomine dictus est Nephros;¹⁷ post quem octavus
dictus est Amonophis, sub quo Moyses natus est.
Josephus, libro secundo. Iste Pharao¹⁸ odiebat¹⁹ Israel

Anno Abr. 424.
Anno Moysi 1.

¹ hoc, B.
² habere] om. E.
³ existens] om. C.D.
⁴ sexaginta, B.
⁵ quinque, C.D.
⁶ sepulti sunt, B.
⁷ postmodum cum, A.; cum, om. E.
⁸ postmodum] om. A.B.
⁹ Sichen, A.
¹⁰ Paragraph slightly transposed
in C.D.
¹¹ No title in MS.
¹² So A.B.C.D. (and Vulg. 1
Chron. vi. 2.); *Gath*, E.
¹³ Levy, E.
¹⁴ Jocabet, A.
¹⁵ sexaginta, C.D.
¹⁶ ille] om. B.
¹⁷ Nephres, B.D.
¹⁸ Iste Pharao] Hic rex, C.D.
¹⁹ So MSS.

þat tyme Grees by gan to haue tilþe and¹ corne; so seyþ TREVISIA. v
 Isidre, libro 5º. Ioseph, an hondred þere olde and ten, deyde
 in Egipte, and was anynt wip swete oynementis, and i-kepte
 anon to þe goynge of þe children of Israel out of Egipte, an
 hondred þere and foure and fourty, in þe which tyme þe
 Hebrewes seruede þe Egipcians; also as Ioseph his breþeren
 deide eueriche after oper, they² were i-buried in Hebron.
 Noþeles afterward hire bones were i-bore in to Sychem wip
 Ioseph his bones: þat place hatte now Neapolis, þe citee of
 Samaritans: and so from þat tyme þat Iacob come into Egipte
 anon to þat tyme þat þe Hebrewes þe children of Israel went
 out of Egipte were two hondred and fiftene þere.

Capitulum tertium-decimum.

Amram was Caath is sone, Caath was Leuy is sone. Þis
 Amram, sixty þere olde, gat Moyses on his wif Iocabeth.
Petrus,³ libro 2º. Pharao, vnder wom Ioseph was, heet
 Nephres by his owne propre name; þe eiþþe Pharao after
 hym heet Amonophis, in his tyme Moyses was i-bore. *Iose-*
phus,⁴ libro 2º. Þis Pharao hatede þe children of Israel for

quinto, from that tyme the londe of Grece began to haue MS. HARL.
 cornes. Ioseph, beenge of a cx. yere in age, dyede in 2261.
 Egipte, whiche dressede with spices, was kepede there vn to
 the goenge furthe of men of Ebrewe from Egipte, that was
 by c. and xliijⁱⁱ yere, in whom men of Hebrewe seruede
 men of Egipte. But the breder of Ioseph were beriede
 in Hebron, but the boones of them were translate with the
 boones of Ioseph in to Sicheim, now callede Neapolis, the
 cite of Samaritanes. And so hit was that cc. yere a pas-
 sede and xv. from the commenge of Iacob in to Egipte
 vn to the goenge furthe of men of Hebrewe from hit.

Capitulum tertium-decimum.

AMRAM, the son of Caat, the son of Leui, beenge of lxxⁱⁱ
 yere, gate of Iocabeth his wife Moyses. *Petrus*. The pro-
 pre name of Pharo, vnder whom Ioseph was, was Nemphers;
 the viijth Pharao after whom was callede Amonophis, vnder
 whom Moises was borne. *Iosephus*, libro secundo. This
 Pharao did hate moche the peple of Israel, for the vertu of

¹ and] of, Cx.

² So γ., Cx.; and were, MS. and
 a. (without sense); also Ioseph hys
 breþron(sic), as hy deyde, &c. were, β.

³ *Petrus*] So a., Cx.; *Iosephus*,
 MS.

⁴ *Iohannes*, Cx.

propter virtutem ingenii, laboris industriam, opum affluentiam, et sobolis elegantiam; unde et callide excogitavit filios¹ Israel opprimere, ne multiplicatus contra eum² insurgeret. Imposuitque eis angarias operum multimodorum, scilicet lateres³ coquendi, fossata circa rivulos Nili faciendi, lutum exportandi, sed paleas tantum ad victum præbens; quibus operibus populus⁴ confractus et fame confectus amplexibus non vacaret, et per consequens proles sic deficeret.⁵ Insuper et quidam scriba sacrorum præscius futurorum nunciavit Pharaoni unum quemdam de⁶ Hebræis nasciturum, qui principatum Ægypti⁷ humiliaret et genus Israel exaltaret. Qua⁸ de causa jussi sunt infantes necari. *Petrus*.⁹ Sed his non obstantibus, populo¹⁰ adhuc¹¹ multiplicato,¹² præcepit¹³ Pharaon obstetricibus Ægypti¹⁴ masculos infantes necare, fœminas¹⁵ vero reservare; tanquam sexum invalidum ad rebellandum,¹⁶ delicatum tamen ad libidinem Ægyptiorum. Sed cum

¹ *filios*] om. C.D.

² *eum*] om. E.

³ *lateris*, D.

⁴ *populus*] om. E.

⁵ Sentence slightly abbreviated in C.D.

⁶ *de*] om. E.

⁷ *Ægypti*] ejus, A.C. (not D.)

⁸ *Hac*, C.D.

⁹ *capitulo primo*, ins. C.D. In the Lyons edition of 1543 it is c. 3.

¹⁰ *populo*] *populoque*, A.C.D.

¹¹ *adhuc*, B.

¹² *multiplicante*, C.D.

¹³ *præcepit* after *necare*, B.

¹⁴ *Ægypti*] om. C.D.

¹⁵ *fœminasque*, B.

¹⁶ *bellandum*, B.

vertu of witte, ffor konnyng of trauaille, ffor plente of richesse¹ and for fairnesse of children; perfore he bypouzt hym felliche and gilefulliche to bere a doun þe children of Israel, and holde hem lowe, leste þey wolde multeplie to swiþe² and aryse azenst hym; also he putte vpon hem charges of many manere works forto make brend tyle forto digge diches aboute þe rennyng stremes of þe ryuer of Nilus, and for to bere fen and clay; and 3af hem nouzt to mete but smal chaf, for he wolde so ouercome hem wiþ trauaille and wiþ hunger, þat þey schulde haue no wille to ligge by here wyfes; and so it schulde folowe þat children schulde faile. Also oon, þat was a writere of holy lettres and wiste what was³ to comynge, warnede Pharao þe kyng of Egipt þat oon schulde [be i-bore of þe Hebrewes þat schulde]⁴ bere adoun þe principat of Egipt, and arere þe kynde of Israel, and make hem ful grete. Perfore it was i-hote þat⁵ þe knaue⁶ children of Israel schulde be i-slave whan þei were i-bore. *Petrus.* But 3it for al this þe peple multeplied wel faste, and Pharao heet þe mydwyfes of Egipte þat þey schulde kylle⁷ alle þe knaue children of Hebrewes, and kepe þe mayde children; ffor he heelde womman kynde ful feble to be rebel, and nopeles wel likynge to þe leccherye of⁸ þe Egipcians. And whan Pharao myzt nouzt so haue⁹ his wille, he heet þrowe þe children þat were

TREVISA

the witte of theyme, for the affluence of richesse, for the beaute of their childer; where fore he thouzhte to slee theyme priuely, that their multiplicacion and frute scholde not be able to resiste them. Where fore he putte to theyme diuersites of labores, to make tyle stones, diches abowte ryueres, and to make clay, 3iffenge to their fyndenge but chaffe, that peple oppressede with labore and hungre scholde refuse multiplicacion, and so their frute scholde decrease and faile. But a scribe, hauenge prenostication of thynges to come, schewede to kyng Pharao oon childe to come of men of Hebrewes, that scholde make Egipte meke and tame, and exalte the kynde of Israel. Where fore the infantes of theyme were commaundede to be sleyne. *Petrus.* This not withstondenge and the peple causenge multiplicacion, kyng Pharao commaundede the mydde wyfes of Egipte to slee the male childer and to kepe the childer female, as a kynde not apt to make batelle, and pleasaunte to the luste of men of Egipte, commaundenge the childer to be caste

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ *riches, a.*
² *fast, Cx.*
³ *was to done and*] MS. (not *a.*
B. γ., Cx.)
⁴ Added from *a.* and *Cx.*

⁵ *þat*] So *a.* and *Cx.*; þe, MS.
⁶ *men, Cx.*
⁷ *slee, Cx.*
⁸ *of lechery to, Cx.*
⁹ *haue so*] MS. (not *a.* or *Cx.*)

nec sic prævaleret, jussit recenter natos in flumine projici. Pro hoc peccato creditur Ægyptios in hunc errorem incidisse, ut Apim¹ pro deo colerent. *Genesis*.²

Filia Pharaonis
Moysen
adoptat.

Quapropter natus Moyses tribus mensibus absconditus est,³ sed tandem in fiscella scirpea bituminata conclusus projectus est in carecto fluminis; quem filia Pharaonis Thermut reperiens in filium adoptavit, Moysenque appellavit.⁴ *Josephus, libro secundo*. Quod Græce componitur a *moy*,⁵ quod est aqua, et *esis*, quod est salvatus; quasi per aquam salvatus.⁶ Hic quoque omnem mammam Ægyptiarum abhorrens a propria matre prudenter lactatus est; at cum trimus effectus esset,⁷ speciem ejus et⁸ staturam⁹ Deus auxit; ut, ubicunque per plateas efferretur,¹⁰ circumstantes relictis occupationibus suis, quantumcunque severi aut turbati essent animi,¹¹ in eum intenderent.¹² Die igitur quadam cum¹³ Thermuth¹⁴ eum Pharaoni inspiciendum offerret¹⁵ ut et ipse¹⁶ adoptaret in filium, admirans rex pueri venustatem coronam suam

Moyses
Pharaonis
coronam
conculcat.

¹ So B.; *Apum*, A.F.

² *Genesis*] om. E.

³ *est*] added from B.

⁴ Extract slightly varied in C.D.

⁵ *moy*s, B.D.

⁶ Sentence slightly abbreviated in C.D.; *quasi . . . salvatus*, om. B.

⁷ *esset*] om. E.

⁸ *in*, A.

⁹ *ita*, ins. C.D.

¹⁰ *deferretur*, C.D.

¹¹ *animi essent*, B. Probably we should read *animos*, placing the comma after *essent*.

¹² Sentence slightly varied in D.

¹³ So B.; *dum*, D.E.

¹⁴ *Theremuth*, B.

¹⁵ So B.; *obtulisset*, E., after *Thermuth*.

¹⁶ *Moysen*, ins. C.D.; *eum*, B.

knaue children¹ in to a ryuere anoon as pey were i-bore. Me trowep pat for pat synne þe Egipcians fille in to pat errour for to worschippe pat oxe² pat pey clepep Apis, instede of God. *Genesis*. Þerfore Moyses was i-hydde þre monþes whanne he was [i-bore, but at þe laste he was]³ i-doo in a scaf of risshes⁴ i-schape as a litel boot i-glewed wel a boutte, and i-prowe in þe ryuer. Þanne Thermit, Pharao his douzter, fond hym, and took hym up of þe water, and made hym as it were hire owne sone, and cleped hym Moyses. *Iosephus*,⁵ *libro* 2^o. Moyses is a name i-made of tweie names of Grewe, of *moy*, pat is water, and *esis*, pat is i-saued; and so Moyses is i-seide as he pat is i-saued by water. Also pis childe Moyses hatede alle þe wommen brestes of þe Egipcians, and wolde souke no woman breste of þe Egipcians, but he was silliche i-brouzt to his owne moder, and sche fed hym; and whan he was þre⁶ zere olde, God Almyzty made hym so fayre of schap and of stature, pat whanne they were i-bore⁷ by stretes al pat were aboute lefte [of]⁸ hire work and occupaciouns for to loke and byholde on pat childe, were pey neuere so sterne ne so angry. Þan in⁹ a day Thermuth, Pharao his douzter, brouzt þe childe to Pharao, for he schulde see þe childe and make hym as hit were his owne sone. Þanne the

TREVISA.

freschely or newly in to the water after their byrthe, leste that he scholde not preuayle in pat other wyse. For whiche synne hit is trawede men of Egipte to haue fallen in to that erreure that thei scholde worschippe Apis for Godde. *Genesis*. But Moyses borne was hidde iij. monethes, at the laste he was putte in a weele made of rishes dressede with picche, and caste in to the water, whom Thermuth, þe dozter of kynge Pharao, fyndenge, desirede hym in to here childe. *Iosephus*, *libro secundo*. That name Moyses is compoude of thys worde *moy*, that is, water, in Grewe, and *esis*, that is saluede, callede Moyses, as saluede by water. Whiche aborrenge the noryschenge of men of Egipte, was norischede of his awne moder, and when he was of iij. yere in age, God encreasede soe the beaute and stature of hit, that men movede thro labore, other in trowble, wolde refuse their occupacion to beholde pat childe. In a tyme when Thermuth offrede that childe to kynge Pharao here fader, vn to beholde hym, and that he scholde

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ the men childer, Cx.² an oxe, Cx.³ Added from a. β. γ. and Cx. (β. γ. Cx. have atte last.)⁴ resches, a.⁵ So a. and Cx.; *Isidorus*, MS.⁶ so þre, MS. (not a.)⁷ So MS. and a.; he was born, Cx.; he were y bore, β.; a wer y bore, γ.⁸ Added from a. β. γ. and Cx.⁹ on, Cx.

(in qua Hammonis, id est Jovis, imago insculpebatur)¹ capiti infantis apposuit; quam² statim puer pedibus conculcavit. Astansque³ sacerdos Heliopoleos exclamavit dicens:⁴ "Hic est puer, quem nobis occidendum Deus⁵ monstravit, ut de cetero timore careamus." Et sic in puerum irruisset, nisi persuasione cujusdam sapientis, qui hoc per insipientiam puerilem⁶ factum asseverabat, liberatus fuisset. *Petrus, libro secundo,*⁷ *capitulo xlvj.*⁸ In cujus rei argumentum allatæ sunt prunæ ardentes⁹ coram puero, qui statim eas¹⁰ ori apponens linguæ summitatem ardore corruptit. Unde et ipsum in antea impeditioris linguæ fuisse Hebræi autumant. Tantæ autem fuit pulchritudinis, ut¹¹ intuentes aspectui ejus hæerent, rigorem animi deponerent, occupationes¹² dimitterent. Circa hæc tempora¹³ Hercules fertur Antæum lucta vicisse. ¹⁴*Josephus libro secundo.*¹⁵ Æthiopicibus Ægyptum infestantibus,¹⁶ augures Ægyptii responsum acceperant,¹⁷ ut uterentur¹⁸ duce Hebræo; et vix obtinuerunt¹⁹ ut Moysen sibi²⁰ præficerent, qui tamen²¹ in

Contra
Æthiopes
Moysen
sibi præfi-
ciunt
Ægyptii.

Anno Moysi 26.
Anno Abr. 444.

¹ *fabrefacta fuerat*, C.D. (with other slight variations).

² *tamen*, ins. A.B.

³ *Astans quoque*, A.D.

⁴ *d'cens*] om. C.D.

⁵ *Deus* before *nobis*, B.

⁶ *puerilem*] om. C.D. (with other slight variations).

⁷ *libro . . . xlvj.*] om. C.D.

⁸ *xlvj.* A. See Pet. Com. *Lib. Exod.* c. 5. (fol. 36, b. Lugd. 1543).

⁹ *ardentes*] om. C.D.

¹⁰ *eas*] om. E.

¹¹ *cuncti*, ins. C.D.

¹² *si quas haberent*, ins. C.D.

¹³ *circa hæc tempora*] om. C.D.

¹⁴ *Capitulum tertium decimum*, A.

¹⁵ B. omits reference; *Cum adultus esset Moyses*, ins. C.D.

¹⁶ *vastantibus*, C.D.; *vastantibus vel infestantibus*, B.

¹⁷ *acceperunt*, B.

¹⁸ *verterentur*, B.

¹⁹ *obtinuerint*, B.

²⁰ *sibi*] om. C.D.

²¹ *tamen*] om. C.D.

kyng wondrede¹ of þe childes fairnesse, and took his owne crowne in þe whiche the ymage of Iupiter was i-graue, and sette it on þe childes heed; but þe childe anon prewe doun² þe crowne, and tradde þeron spitousliche wip his feet. And þere stood one þat was god Eleopoleos his preoste, and cride and seide: "Þis is þat childe þat oure god heet vs slec, þat we drede na³ more;" and wolde anon haue i-slawe þe childe; but þere was a wise man and seide þat þe childe hadde so i-doo by vnkonnynge of childhode, and so he saued þe child. *Petrus, libro 2º.* In euydence of þis excusacioun of þe childe were brennyng cooles i-brouzt to fore þe childe Moyses, and anon he putte hem in his mouþe and scaldede þe poynt of his tonge. Þe Hebrewes troweþ þat bycause þerof he hadde⁴ a lette of his tonge. Þis childe Moyses was so faire, þat men þat by helde hym took so great hede to þe fairnesse of hym⁵ þat þey putte away⁶ alle anger and tene,⁷ and toke hede to þe fairnesse of the childe.⁸ Me seiþ þat aboute þis tyme Hercules ouercome Anteus⁹ in wrastlyng. *Iosephus, libro 2º.* Þe Ethiopes, blewe men, werred vpon Egipt, and þe dyuy-nours of Egipt fenge answere þat þey schulde take a ledere of Hebrewes; and vnueþe þey gat Moyses, and made hym hire

TREVISA.

desire hym in to his son, Pharao meruellinge the beaute of þe childe, put the crowne on his heede, in whom an ymage of Iupiter was graven, whom that childe did trede with his feete. A preste stondenge þer by seide, "This ys the childe whom Godde willethe to be sleyne of vs, that we scholde not be in drede afterwarde." And so he wolde haue pereschede that childe, but that a discrete man was by and seide contrary, excusenge that thyng by the insolence of the childe. *Petrus, libro secundo.* For the probacion of whiche thyng hote cooles of fire were brouzhte a fore the childe, whiche takenge oon of theym, putte hit to his mowthe, and brente the extremite of his tonge. From whiche tyme men of Hebrewes suppose Moyses to haue hade an impedimente in his tonge. Hercules is seide to haue geten victories at Athenes abowte these tymes. *Iosephus, libro secundo.* Men of Ethioppe guerreng ageyn men of Egipte, their wicches safe answere that thei scholde take a man of Hebrewes in to theirre gouernoure, whiche hauenge grawnte made Moises theirre gouernoure. Whiche beenge

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ had wonder, Cx.² it doun, MS. (not a.)³ no, a., Cx.⁴ a. and Cx. add *afterward*.⁵ hym] so a. and Cx.; the childe, MS.⁶ away] of, a. β. γ., Cx.⁷ teone, β.⁸ Text as in a. and Cx.; MS. has several words repeated.⁹ Antheus, MSS.

bellicis rebus peritus, relicto itinere per aquam Nili, circumduxit exercitum per loca serpentibus plena; quibus tamen de nocte objecit ibices, id est, ciconias Ægyptias, quæ naturaliter infestæ sunt serpentibus, sed mites sunt hominibus.¹ Et sic improvisos conclusit Æthiopes in Saba civitate regia, quam postmodum Cambyses rex ex nomine sororis² Meroen nuncupavit. Est autem civitas illa ratione murorum, fossarum, et circumfluentium aquarum fortissima; poniturque in confinio Ægyptiorum et Æthiopum super Nilum fluvium.³ Tharbis vero filia regis Æthiopum, respiciens in elegantiam Moysi, tradidit ei ex conducto urbem, ita ut eam duceret in uxorem.⁴ *Petrus, libro secundo, capitulo quinto.* Hæc est illa Æthiopissa, pro qua jurgati sunt Maria et Aaron contra Moysen⁵ in deserto. Cum autem⁶ Moyses⁷ redire voluisset⁸ ad Ægyptum, non adquevit⁹ uxor. Proinde Moyses, tanquam vir astrorum peritus, duos annulos fecit; unum memoriæ, quem secum retinuit; alterum oblivionis, quem uxori tradidit, et sic¹⁰

Moyses
duos an-
nulos facit.

¹ Sentence slightly abbreviated in D.

² *sua*, ins. A.B.D.

³ *flumen*, B.

⁴ Sentence slightly varied in C.D.

⁵ *postmodum*, ins. C.D.

⁶ *vero*, C.D.

⁷ *Moyses* after *voluisset*, B.

⁸ *voluit*, A.D.

⁹ *quievit*, B.

¹⁰ *in Ægyptum*, ins. C.D. (omitting *ad Ægyptum* above).

ledere and cheueteyn.¹ Moyses was konnyng in dedes of batayle, and forsook þe wey by þe water Nilus, and ladde his oost by a wildernesse þat was ful of serpentis; nopeles he putte ciconias² by nyȝte aȝenst þe serpentis; ciconie³ beþ briddes⁴ of the lond of Egipt, þat hateþ and destroyeþ serpentis, þat⁵ beþ mylde i-now to mankynde; and so com vnwar vpon þe Ethiopes, and closed hem in a rial citee Saba. Afterward Cambyses⁶ þe kyng cleped þat citee Meroen after his owne [suster]⁷ name. Þat citee is ful strong by cause of walles of diches and wateres þat rennep aboute þat citee, þat⁸ is i-sette bytwene þe Ethiopes and þe Egipcians vpon þe ryuer Nilus. Tharbis,⁹ þe kynges douȝter of Ethiopes, sigh þe fairnesse of Moyses, and bytook hym¹⁰ þe citee vpon a couenant þat he schulde wedde hir to wif. *Petrus, libro 2^o.* Þis is þe¹¹ womman of Ethiopia for þe whiche Mary and Aaron stryue¹² with Moyses in desert. Whan Moyses wolde torne aȝen in to Egipte, his wif wolde not assente; perfore Moyses, as a man þat was konnyng in þe cours of¹³ worchyng of þe sterres and planetes, made tweie rynges, oon of mynde and anoper of forȝetyngnesse; and kepte þe ryng of mynde wip hym self, and took his wif þe ryng of forȝet-

TREVISA.

wise in batelle, lefte the iourney by water, and brouȝhte his hoste thro places fulle of serpentis, to whom he putte bryddes callede snypes, odious to serpentis and amiable to men. And so he concluded men of Ethioppe, as without deliberacion, in the regalle cite of Saba, whom kyng Cambyses⁶ callede Meron afterwarde, after the name of his sustyr. That is a stronge cite, by reason of the diches of waters rennege abowte hit, and of stronge walles, whiche is sette in the costes of Egipte, on that floode callede Nilus. Tharbis, the douȝter to the kyng of Ethioppe, seenge the beawte of Moyses, toke to hym that cite, that he scholde wedde here to his wife. *Petrus, libro secundo.* That is the woman of Ethioppe for whom Maria and Aaron were at debate, and stryvede ageyne Moises in deserte. And when Moyses wolde haue goen in to Egipte, his wife wolde not condescende; wherefore Moises causede ij. rynges to be made, reteynenge with hym a ryng of memory, [and] ȝafe to his

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *capitayne*, Cx.² *ciconyas*, MS.³ So *a.*; *cicoine*, MS.⁴ So *a. β. γ.*; *brydde*, MS.⁵ *þat*] and, Cx.⁶ *Cambises*, MS. and Harl. MS.⁷ Added from *a.*, &c.⁸ *and, a.*, Cx.⁹ *Tharhys*, Cx.¹⁰ *delyuered him*, Cx.¹¹ *that*, Cx.¹² So *a. β. γ.*; *stryueþ*, MS.; *stroof*, Cx.¹³ *and*, Cx.

rediiit.¹ *Genesis*. Quo in tempore dum Moyses visitaret fratres suos in terra Gessen, occidit virum Ægyptium, qui percusserat virum Hebræum,² abscondens eum³ sub sabulo.⁴ Quod cum⁵ die sequenti⁶ sibi improperaretur a viro Hebræo,⁷ tremens⁸ fugit in terram Madian, ubi desponsavit Sephoram,⁹ filiam sacerdotis; ex qua genuit Gersan et Eliezer.¹⁰ *Petrus, libro secundo. capitulo sexto.*¹¹ Sacerdos iste primas fuit in terra Madian circa¹² Mare Rubrum, cujus nomen proprium fuit¹³ Raguel, agnomen¹⁴ Jethro,¹⁵ cognomen Cineus; habuitque¹⁶ septem filias pastrices; nam¹⁷ officium alendorum gregum tunc erat mulieribus commendatum,¹⁸ maxime in regione Trogloditarum.¹⁹

Cecrops. Regnum Atheniensium incepit sub Cecrope, ex cujus uxore Latona et²⁰ Jove ferunt fabulæ Apollinem deum sapientiæ²¹ progenitum fuisse.

Deucalion. Deucalion cepit regnare in Thessalia,²² cujus anno duodecimo²³ factum est tertium²⁴ diluvium particulare²⁵ in Thessalia, et incendium²⁶ sub Phaethonte.²⁷ *Augus-*

¹ *quievit*, B.

² *occisum*, ins. B.

³ *eum*] om. B.

⁴ *abscondens . . . sabulo*] om. C.D.

⁵ *dum*, A.E.

⁶ *dum*, ins. B. (omitting *cum*).

⁷ *a viro Hebræo*] om. C.D.

⁸ *timens*, A.B.

⁹ *Zephoram*, A.

¹⁰ *Eliesar*, A.; *Eliezar*, D.

¹¹ *capitulo sexto*] om. C.

¹² *contra*, C. (not D.)

¹³ *dictus nomine proprio*, C.D.

¹⁴ *agnomine*, C.D.

¹⁵ So A.; *Getro*, E.

¹⁶ *habens*, C.D.

¹⁷ *enim*, C.D.

¹⁸ *commendatum*] om. C.D.

¹⁹ *Trogoditarum*, MSS.

²⁰ *ex*, C. (not D.)

²¹ *deum sapientiæ*] om. C.D.

²² *in*, ins. C.D.

²³ *Moysi* 42^o, ins. C.D.

²⁴ *tertium*] om. C.D.

²⁵ *particulare*] om. C.D.

²⁶ *incendia*, D.

²⁷ This and other classical proper names in this chapter are variously corrupted in MSS.

nesse;¹ and so sche² tornede home aȝen. *Genesis*. Þat tyme, whanne Moyses visited his breperen in þe lond of Iessen, he slowȝ a man of þe Egipcians, and hydde hym in þe sonde; for he hadde i-smyte a man of þe Hebrewes. A morwe³ a man of Hebrewes putte þat aȝen Moyses berd, and Moyses dradde sore, and fliȝe⁴ into þe lond of Madian, and wedded Zephora a preostes douȝter of þat lond, and gat on hire Gersan⁵ and Eliezer. *Petrus, libro 2º*. Þis preost was primat in þat⁶ lond of Madyan aboute þe Rede See; his propre name [was]⁷ Raguel; and hadde tweie surnames, Jethro and Cineus; and hadde seuene douȝters þat were herdes and kepte bestes. For þe office of kepyng of bestes was þat tyme i-ordeyned to⁸ wommen, and specialliche in þe lond of Trog-[I]oditees.

TREVISA.

The kyngdom of Athenes bygan under Cecrops.⁹ Fables telleþ þat on his wife Latona¹⁰ Apolyn lord of witt and of wisdom was i-gete of¹¹ Iupiter. Deucalion bygan to reigne in Thessalia; in his twelfþe ȝere was þe þridde particuler flood in Thessalia,¹² and þe brynnyng vnder Fetton.¹³ *Augus-*

wife that other ryng of obliuion and forgetenge. *Genesis*. MS. HARL. 2261. In whiche tyme, when Moyses visitte his brether in the londe of Gessen, he did sle a man of Egipte, whiche hade smyten a man of Hebrewes, hidenge hym vnder sonde. Whiche dredenge in the day folowenge, when that thyng was seide to hym by a man of Egipte, fledde in to the londe of Madian, where he did wedde Zephora, of whom he gate Gersan and Eliezer. *Petrus, libro secundo*. That priste, fader to Zephora, was the moste nowble man in the londe of Madian, abowte the Redde See; the propur name of whom was Raguel, by an other name Ietro, hauenge vij. doȝhters, and kepers of bestes. For that office of kepenge and norischange bestes was commendede to women, and specially in the region of Trog-[I]odites. The realme of men of Athenes began vnder Cecrops,⁹ of Latona the wife of whom, and of Iupiter, fables reherse Apollo to haue be geten. Deucalion began to reigne in Thessalia; in the xijth yere of the reigne of whom the thrydde particuler floode was made in Thessalia, and a brennenge under Pheton. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo*.

¹ oblyuyon, Cx. (who has however forgetyngnesse above).

² he, a. B. Cx.; a, γ.

³ On the morue, Cx.

⁴ auoyded for drede in to, Cx.

⁵ So a. and Cx.; Tersan, MS.

⁶ þe, a., Cx.

⁷ Added from a. and Cx.

⁸ for, Cx.

⁹ Cicrops, MS. and Harl. MS., and so below.

¹⁰ Lathona, MS.

¹¹ by, Cx.

¹² in Thessalia] om. Cx.

¹³ Pheton, Cx.; but Fetton below.

*tinus, libro octavodecimo.*¹ Istud diluvium magnam partem Græciæ absumpsit; unde² qui ad regem Thesaliæ Deucalionem, tunc temporis Parnassum montem occupantem, ratibus advecti confugerant, salvabantur. *Ranulphus.*³ Ex isto eventu finxerunt poetæ quod Deucalion et Pyrrha uxor sua jactis lapidibus homines renovaverint.⁴ *Isidorus, libro tertiodécimo.*⁵ Cum flumina supra modum inundant,⁶ non solum præsentia damna inferre, sed⁷ aliqua futura significare consueverunt. *Orosius, libro primo.* Eo quoque tempore sol fervescens non solum Æthiopiam, sed et⁸ Scythiam¹⁰ intolerabiliter exussit. Qua de causa gentiles fabulam Phaetontis confinxerunt.

Phaeton.

CAP. XIV.

*Historia Moysi concluditur. Varia de Ægypto et Græcia.*¹¹

Moyses et Aaron Pharaonem alloquuntur.

MOYSES octoginta annorum existens,¹² una cum Aaron fratre suo octoginta trium annorum tunc¹³ existente, Pharaonem alloquitur, ut populum Dei dimittat; quo indurato percussa est Ægyptus decem plagis. *Augustinus, libro xvij.* Ea tempestate quidam Ægyptiorum,

Anno Moysi 50.
Anno. Abr. 504.

¹ B. omits reference.

² et, C.D.

³ *Ranulphus renovaverint]*
om. C.D.

⁴ *renovaverunt*, A.

⁵ *capitulo ultimo*, ins. A.B. (correctly).

⁶ *habundant*, D., which omits *supra modum*.

⁷ *sed etiam*, D.

⁸ Instead of this next passage C.D. have, *Corinthus condita est, quæ prius Epira dicebatur.*

⁹ et] om. B.

¹⁰ *Cicium*, B.

¹¹ No title in MSS.

¹² *post visionem rubi flammei in monte Oreb*, ins. C.D.

¹³ *tunc]* om. E.

tinus, libro 18°. Þis flood destroyed a greet deel¹ of Grees, TREVISA.
 pere meny men fleiþ in² schippes to Deucalion, kyng of Thes-
 salia, and were i-saued. Deucalion occupied þat tyme þe hil
 Parnas[s]us. For þis happe poetes feynede þat Deucalion and
 his wyf Pyrrha³ prewe doun stoues and arered men. *Isi-*
dorus, libro 13°, *capitulo 61*°. Whan reueres wexep⁴ ouer
 mesures⁵ þey doop not harme onliche in þe arisyng, but þey
 bodeþ⁶ also harme þat schal come afterward. *Orosius, libro*
2°. Also þe sonne þat tyme brende nouzt onliche Ethiopia
 blewe men lond, bote he brende also the lond of Scythia⁷ so
 greuouliche, þat men myzte nouzt endure. Bycause þerof
 mysbeleued men feynede þe fable of Feton.⁸

Capitulum quartumdecimum.

MOYSES foure skore þere olde, wip his broþer Aaron foure
 skore þere olde and þre, spak to Pharao kyng of Egipt, for he
 schulde delyuere God Allemyþty his peple and lete⁹ hem goo
 to¹⁰ doo sacrifice to God. But Pharao was harde and faste in
 his malice,¹¹ and wolde nouzt lete goo þe peple. And Egipte

This floode destroyede a grete part of Grece, in whiche tyme MS. HARL.
2261.
 men fleenge to Deucalion in schippes, to that grete mownte
 callede Parnassus,¹² occupyenge hit were saluede. R. Thro
 whiche chaunce poetes feyne that Deucalion and Pyrrha³ his
 wife renewede men of stoues caste vp with the water. *Isi-*
dorus, libro tertio, capitulo sexto. Where and when floodes
 be more habundante then thei were wonte, thei be wonte to
 signifie not oonly hurtes presente but also to come. *Orosius,*
libro primo. In whiche tyme the son beenge of feruente heete,
 brente not oonly Ethioppe, but also Scyttica⁷; for whiche
 thynges the fable of Feton is feynede of the Gentiles.

Capitulum quartumdecimum.

MOYSES beenge of lxxx. yere in age, and Aaron his
 brother of lxxxij. yere in age, spake to Pharao that he
 scholde suffre the peple of God to goe and to do sacrifice;
 whose herte was made harde, wherefore Egipte was smyten

<p>¹ <i>partye</i>, Cx. ² <i>fledde into</i>, Cx. ³ <i>Pirra</i>, MSS. Similar slight errors in this chapter have been tacitly corrected. ⁴ <i>waxen</i>, Cx. ⁵ <i>measure</i>, Cx. ⁶ <i>bode and bitoken</i>, Cx. ⁷ <i>Scicia</i>, MSS.</p>	<p>⁸ This form, though unclassical, has been allowed to stand, as being in a manner anglicised. ⁹ So <i>a. β.</i>, Cx.; <i>hete</i>, MS. ¹⁰ <i>goo to</i>] om. Cx., who has other slight variations. ¹¹ <i>malys</i>, a. ¹² <i>Parnasus</i>, Harl. MS.</p>
---	---

timentes Ægyptum perituram, egressi sunt, ut Cecrops, qui¹ navigans Græciam urbem Atthen condidit, quæ postmodum dicta est Athenæ. *Ranulphus*. De qua vide² supra libro primo,³ capitulo Græcia,⁴ scilicet Helladia.⁵ Veruntamen⁶ Corinthus, quæ prius Ephyra⁷ vocabatur, quinque annis ante Atthen condita est. *Petrus*, libro secundo, capitulo vicesimo⁸ tertio.⁹ Multæ aliæ fuerunt Ægypti plagæ præter illas decem famosas plagas;¹⁰ unde et quidam dies in kalendario Ægyptiaci vocantur, quia in illis diebus¹¹ passa est¹² Ægyptus aliquas plagas. Ex quibus duos solummodo dies¹³ singulis mensibus annotamus ad memoriam; quamvis¹⁴ fortassis plures fuerint.¹⁵ Nec est credendum quod Ægyptii, quamvis¹⁶ astrorum periti, deprehenderent hos dies¹⁷ nefastos in inchoatione operis vel¹⁸ itineris seu munitionis.¹⁹ *Genesis*.²⁰ Igitur²¹ Moyses, cum²² octoginta esset²³ annorum, quo die²⁴ Israel in Ægyptum²⁵ ingressus est, eo die eduxit eum de²⁶ Ægypto, luna existente quintadecima, post quadringentos triginta annos egressionis Abrahæ de Carra²⁷ Mesopotamiæ in

Ægypti
plagæ.

Exodus
Israel.

¹ qui] om. B.

² vide] urbe quære, C.D.

³ libro primo] de provinciis, C.D.

⁴ Græcia . . . Helladia] vicesimo secundo, B. See vol. i. p. 190, where for *Atthen* we have *Acten*, which is probably right. The similarity of of *c* and *t* in MSS. is a source of great confusion.

⁵ Elladia, MSS. ('s' usually stands for *scilicet*, but *sive* would be better. The standard MS. of Trevisa has *scilicet* at length.)

⁶ C.D. transpose this passage to the end of previous chapter.

⁷ Epira, MSS.

⁸ decimo, B.

⁹ libro . . . tertio] om. C.D.

¹⁰ et ideo forte tacentur, ins. C.D.

¹¹ diebus] om. C.D. (with other slight variations.)

¹² patiebatur, B.

¹³ dies] om. C.D.

¹⁴ licet, C.D.

¹⁵ fuerant, B.

¹⁶ licet, C.D.; om. A.

¹⁷ duos, A.

¹⁸ vel] om. B.

¹⁹ immissionis, B.

²⁰ A.B.C.D. omit reference.

²¹ Igitur] om. C.D.

²² cum] om. B.

²³ esset] om. B.

²⁴ die quo, B.

²⁵ in Ægyptum] om. B.

²⁶ ex, C.

²⁷ Charram, B.; Carram, D. *Carrhis* would be more classical, if Haran or Charran is identical with Carrhæ.

was i-smyte wip ten grete wreches.¹ *Augustinus, libro 18°.* TREVISA.
 Pat tyme pat God took wreche in Egipte, som of þe Egipcians dradde leste Egipte schulde be lost for euere more, and fleyze² into oper londes. And so oon Cecrops scillede in to Grees, and bulde þe citee Athen, þat heet afterward Athene.³ Loke more of Athen in þe firste book, capitulo Grecia, scilicet Alladia.⁴ Nopeles Corinthus þe firste heet Epira, and was i-bulde fyue zere to fore Athen.⁵ *Petrus, libro 2°.* Þere were meny wreches in Egipt wip oute þe ten grete wreches. Þerfore some dayes in þe kalender beep i-cleped dayes of Egipt, [for þilke dayes fil wreches in Egipt.]⁶ Of þe whiche dayes we setteþ in þe kalender but in eueriche monthe tweyne in mynde of þe wreches þat God took of Egipt.⁷ Neuerþeles þere were meny moo wreches i-take of Egipt. Hit is nouzt to trowynge,⁸ þey þe Egipcians were konnyng in knowleche of sterres and planetes, þat þei founde þat þese dayes beep perilous and forbode in þe bygynnyng of werkes and of weyes and in blood letyng. Þanne whanne Moyses was foure skore zere olde, he ladde the folk of [Israel out of]⁹ Egipt þe same day of þe zere þat Iacob and his children entrede in to Egipt. Whan Israel wente out of Egipte þe mone was fiftene dayes olde, and was foure hundred zere and þretty after þat Abraham wente out of Charran,¹⁰ þat was in Mesopotamia,¹¹ in þe lond of

with x. plages and diseases. *Augustinus; libro 18°.* In MS. HARL. 2261.
 whiche tyme somme men of Egipte dredenge hit to peresche, wente furthe with Cecrops; whiche sailenge in to Grece made a cite callede Atthen, and after that Athenes. R. Of whom hit is declarede afore, libro j°, capitulo 22°. Elladia other Corinthus, callede afore Epira, was edifiede v. yere afore the cite of Athenes. *Petrus, libro secundo.* There were many other plages of Egipte, those x. famose plages excepte, wherfore somme daies be callede in the kalendary, the daies of men of Egipte, in whom Egipte was smyten with somme plages; for whiche cause ij. daies of theyme be annotede in the kalendary in euery monethe, thauzhe þer were moo. Moyses ledde furthe the peple of Israel from Egipte in the xvth day of the moone, after cccc.xxxⁱⁱ yere of the goenge furthe of Abraham from Carra Mesopotamie in to the londe of promission. As vj°.

¹ *wreches and pynsshmentes, Cx.*

² *fley, a.*; sentence varied in Cx.

³ *Athenes, Cx.*

⁴ So MS. for *Helladia*, the barbarous form in the Latin text.

⁵ Sentence varied in Cx.

⁶ Added from *a. β.* and Cx.

⁷ *in Egipt, Cx.*, and so below.

⁸ *to be demed ne trowed, Cx.*

⁹ Added from *a.* and Cx.

¹⁰ *Carram, MSS.*

¹¹ *Mesopotanea, MSS. and Cx.*

Mare
Rubrum
diffinditur.

Israel in
deserto.

terram promissionis. Egressi autem de Ægypto¹ quasi DC. milia² viri portaverunt secum ossa Joseph et ossa³ undecim fratrum ejus, qui vocantur patriarchæ. Et condiderunt ea in Sichem,⁴ prout dicit Hieronymus. Tulerunt etiam secum⁵ farinam conspersam, qua usi sunt triginta diebus.⁶ Columna⁷ nubis præcessit eos de die, et columna ignis de nocte. Ad introitum quoque Hebræorum divisum est Mare Rubrum, quod quidem submersit Ægyptios sequentes.⁸ *Josephus, libro septimo.*⁹ Hujus maris divisio non est¹⁰ discredenda, cum mare Pamphylicum legatur divisum fuisse coram Alexandro Macedone et etiam coram¹¹ ejus exercitu in persequendo¹² Darium. *Petrus, libro secundo,*¹³ *capitulo tricesimo.* Aqua maris hujus non est rubea, sed ex terra rubra circumjacente gurges ipse et quod ex¹⁴ eo sumitur inficitur. Ob hoc¹⁵ gemmæ ibidem sunt rubræ,¹⁶ et minium acutissimum inde¹⁷ sumitur. Dividiturque¹⁸ in duos sinus, Persicum et Arabicum. *Josephus, libro tertio.* Post triginta dies egressionis deficiente annona, dedit eis Dominus coturnices, manna, et aquam de petra

¹ *autem de Ægypto]* sunt, C.D.

² *milia]* om. A.E. and versions. Added from C.D. and Cx. See Ex. xii. 37. The Latinity is awkward, but is given as in D.

³ *ossa . . . secum]* om. C.D.

⁴ *Sichen,* A.

⁵ *secum]* om. E.

⁶ *diebus]* om. B.

⁷ *vero,* ins. C.D.

⁸ *insequentes,* A.B.; *prosequentes,* C.D. (placing *submersit* last).

⁹ *libro septimo]* om. A.B.C.D. The reference is to *Ant. Jud.* ii. 16.

¹⁰ *est]* om. E.

¹¹ *etiam coram]* om. B.; *etiam,* om. C.D.

¹² *in persequendo]* *prosequente,* C.; *persequente,* D.

¹³ *libro secundo]* om. C.D.

¹⁴ *de,* B.

¹⁵ E. places the point after *hoc.*

¹⁶ *rubie,* B.

¹⁷ *inde]* om. E.

¹⁸ *Dividitur autem,* C.D.

byheste. Whanne Israel wente out of Egipt, aboute sixe¹ hondred [powsand]² men bare³ wip hem Ioseph his bones and his enleuene breperen bones, that beep i-cleped patriarkes, and buried hem in Sychem, so seip Jerom. Israel toke wip hem mele and floure i-spronge wip oyle, and vsed pat pritty dayes. A pyler of a cloude wente to fore Israel, and ladde hem by day; and a pyler of fuyre by nyz^{te}. Whanne Israel wente out of Egipt, pe Reede See openede and lete hem passe, and drenche⁴ alle pe Egipcians pat took pe same weye in pe openyng of pis⁵ see forto pursewe. *Iosephus*. Pe openyng of his see schal not ben vntrowed, for me redeth pat pe see Pamphylicum openede to fore kyng Alexander Macedo and also to fore his oost whan he pursewed Darius. *Petrus, libro 2^o*. Pe water of pis see is nouzt rede of kynde, but is i-dyzed⁶ of reed clyues and erthe pat liep pere aboute. Perfore also pere beep i-founde reed precious stoones, and pere is i-founde scharpe fermyloun.⁷ Pis see is i-deled atweyne; pat oon is cleped pe see Persicus and [pat oper]⁸ pe see Arabicus. *Isidorus, libro 2^o*.⁹ Pritty dayes after pat Israel wente out of Egipt, hem faillede corn;¹⁰ and oure Lorde 3af hem corlewes and¹¹ manna and water of

TREVISA.

men goenge furthe from Egipte bare the boones of Ioseph with theyme, and also the boones of his xj. brether, whiche ar callede patriarkes, and beriede theyme in Siche, as Seynte Jerom seythe. They toke floure with theyme, whiche thei did vse; and a pyloure off a clowde wente a fore theyme xxx^{ti} daies in the day, and a pillore of fire in the nyz^{te}. And the Redde See was diuidede at the entreng of men of Hebrewe, and drownede the men of Egipte folowenge theyme. *Iosephus*. The diuision of that see is not be ziffen to diffidence, sythe hit is redde the see Pamphylyke to haue bene diuidede afore grete Alexander the Conqueroure, and afore his hoste, in the persecucion of Darius. *Petrus, libro secundo*. The water of that see is not redde, but that water is infecte of the redde grownde beenge abowte hit, where gemmes be founde of redde coloure; whiche water is diuidede in to partes, as in to Persia and in to Arabia. *Iosephus, libro tertio*. The corne of the childer of Israel faylunge after the xxx^{ti} day of the goenge furthe of theyme from Egipte, God sende to them certeyne bryddes, angelles foode, and water from the ston of Oreb.

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ an sixe, a. β.² Added from Cx.³ hy (i.e. they) bar, γ., which is better.⁴ drenched, a., Cx.⁵ the, a., Cx.⁶ dyed, a.⁷ vermyloun, a.⁸ Added from Cx.; but absent from MS., a. β. γ.⁹ *Johannes, libro tercio*, Cx. The true reference is to Joseph. *Ant. Jud. iii. 1.*¹⁰ they faylled corne, Cx.¹¹ and] om. a.

Oreb. Adhuc autem sic¹ rigatur locus ille imbribus, sicut tunc per Moysen Deus ministravit.² Post tres menses egressionis eorum³ ascendit Moyses in montem,⁴ ubi jejunando quadraginta diebus et quadraginta noctibus legem accepit,⁵ et tabernaculum secundum quod sibi ostensum fuerat⁶ in monte⁷ septem mensibus construxit. Et sic⁸ secundo anno egressionis, prima die mensis Aprilis, erectum est tabernaculum. *Ranulphus.*⁹ Ab hoc¹⁰ loco usque ad ædificationem templi¹¹ numerantur anni quadringenti octoginta. Sub hoc etiam tempore secundum quosdam¹² Io profecta est ab Argivis¹³ usque¹⁴ Ægyptum, ubi et¹⁵ Isis appellata est; quæ et nupsit Telegono¹⁶ et Epaphum genuit.¹⁷ *Petrus, libro quarto, capitulo sextodecimo.* Post secundum annum egressionis missis duodecim exploratoribus ad terram promissionis et reversis ob murmur populi et desperationem, prohibiti sunt filii Israel ulterius procedere. Unde et¹⁸ reversi ad solitudinem, per quadraginta annos¹⁹ afflicti; ex quibus nullus ingressus est²⁰ terram promissionis, exceptis Caleph et Josue. Hoc²¹

Io vel Isis
Ægyptum
venit.

¹ sic] om. C. (not D.); si, A.

² Slightly transposed in C.D.

³ eorum] om. C.D.

⁴ Synay, ins. C.D.

⁵ accepit] So A.B.D.; suscepit, E.

⁶ fuerat] om. B.

⁷ secundum . . . monte] om. C.D.

⁸ Et sic] om. C.D.

⁹ Dionysius, C.D.

¹⁰ isto, B.

¹¹ templi] om. B.

¹² Argivorum, ins. C.D.

¹³ Arivis, B.

¹⁴ ab . . . usque] ad, C.D.

¹⁵ ibi quoque, B.

¹⁶ Thelegoni, MSS.

¹⁷ Slightly abbreviated in C.D.

¹⁸ et] om. C.D.

¹⁹ jugiter, ins. C.D.

²⁰ ad, ins. B.

²¹ Hoc] om. C.D. (having *Dionysius* in margin).

þe stone in Oreb. **3**it þat place is i-watered wip reyn, as God TREVISA.
 3af water þat tyme by Moyses hond. [Pre monthes]¹ after
 þat² Israel went out of Egipt, Moyses wente vp in to the
 hille, and fasted fourty dayes and fourty ny3tes, and fenge þe
 lawe ; and seuene monþes he made þe tabernacle [by ensample
 þat was i-schewed hym on þe hille ; and so þe tabernacle]³ was
 arered þe firste day of Auerel in þe secounde 3ere of here out
 goynge of Egipt. From þis tyme to þe buldyng of the temple in
 Ierusalem is acounted foure hondred 3ere and foure skore. Also
 þis tyme, as some men telleþ, Io that womman wente from þe
 Argiues in to Egipt, and pere sche was i-cleped Isis,⁴ and
 was i-wedded to Telegon,⁵ and hadde a childe þat heet
 Epaphus. *Petrus, libro 4^o, [capitulo 16^o.]*⁶ After þe sec-
 ounde 3ere of þe out goynge of Egipte twelue spyes were
 i-sente to the londe of byheste, and come a3en ; and for
 grucchyng of þe peple and despeyre and wanhope þe chil-
 dren of Israel were forbode to goo forþere. Þefore þey
 tornede a3en in to wildernesse, and were pere i-punished
 fourty 3ere ; and noon of hem entrede into þe lond of byheste
 outake Caleph and Iosue.

Whiche place is habundaunte with water vn to this tyme, MS. HARL.
 as God ministrede hit in that tyme by Moyses. Whiche 2261.
 Moyses ascendede in to the mownte of Syna, after iij.
 monethes of the egression of the peple of Israel from
 Egipte, fastenge by xl^{ti} daies afore and xl^{ti} ny3htes, toke
 a lawe of God, settenge his tabernacle pere by vij. monethes,
 as he was commaundede to do ; and so the tabernacle was
 erecte in the secunde yere of the goenge furthe of the
 peple of Israel from Egipte, in the firste day of Aprile.
 From whiche tyme cccc.lxxx. yere be annumerate other
 nowmbrede vn to the edificacion of the temple. In whiche
 tyme, after somme men, Io goenge furthe from the Argyues
 vn to Egipte, callede there Isis, and mariede to Theolo-
 genes,⁷ gate Epaphus. *Petrus, libro quarto, capitulo decimo*
sexto. After the secunde yere of þe egression of the peple
 of Israel from Egipte, xij. meassyngers sende to the londe
 of promission, and returnede ageyne ; for þe murmur and
 desperation off the peple, the childer of Israel hade in com-
 maundemente that thei scholde returne, whiche returnenge
 were afflicte in deserte by xl^{ti} yere, of whom eny entrede
 not in to the londe of promission, Iosue and Caleph ex-

¹ Added from a. β. γ. and Cx.

² þat tyme, MS. (only).

³ Added from a. and Cx.

⁴ So a. ; *Isus*, MS.

⁵ *Thelegon*, MS.

⁶ Added from a. and Cx.

⁷ Here and below the proper names, which are considerably corrupt, have been left unaltered.

Varia de
Græcia.

sexto anno egressionis templum Apollinis Delphici ab Aristone¹ ædificatur. Quo etiam anno Atheniensium secundus Cranaus cœpit regnare, et regnavit novem annis; ex cujus filia Athis² Attica terra³ nuncupatur.⁴ *Ranulphus*. Vide supra libro primo,⁵ capitulo Græcia, scilicet⁶ Helladia. Quo in tempore⁷ Hebræi receperunt⁸ literas, et Græcia vites.⁹ ¹⁰Lacedæmonia quoque¹¹ a Lacedæmone filio Semelis condita est. Et Atheniensium quartus Erichonius regnavit quinquaginta annis. Et Argivorum nonus Sthenelus. Et Sicyoniorum Erichonius. Argivorum rex Arcas Arcadiam a nomine suo¹² nominavit, quæ prius Sicyonia dicebatur.¹³ Ægyptus, quæ prius¹⁴ Aerea¹⁵ dicebatur, ab Ægypto¹⁶

Anno Moysi 86.
Anno Abr. 510.

Anno Moysi 98.
Anno Abr. 522.
Anno Moysi 102.
Anno Abr. 526.

Danaus et
Ægyptus.

tunc regnante,¹⁷ Ægyptus dicta est.¹⁸ Argivorum decimus Danaus regnavit quinquaginta annis. *Orosius, libro primo*. Danaus et Ægyptus¹⁹ fratres fuerunt; Danaus autem per quinquaginta filias suas quinquaginta filios Ægypti una nocte interfecit, uno²⁰ filio solummodo relicto, qui post illum regnaret.²¹ Inde ipse Danaus tot malorum fabricator Argos conscendit; ubi per fraudem expulso Sthenelo, qui eum exulem et inopem

Anno Moysi 111.
Anno Abr. 535.

¹ So A.; *Eristone*, D.E. (and 7ersions). There is, however, no doubt that *Erysichthone* is the true reading. See Eusebius *Chron.* (*Vers. Armen.*), vol. ii. p. 61. (*Vers.* 1818.)

² *nomine terra*, ins. C.D. Higden should have written *Atthide*.

³ *terra*] om. E.

⁴ *nominatur*, C.D.

⁵ *Vide . . . primo*] Quære supra de provinciis, C.D. See vol. i. p. 190.

⁶ *scilicet*] om. E.; *capitulo 22*, B.

⁷ *Tempore ducatus Moysi*, C.D.

⁸ So A.B.; *ceperunt*, C.D.E.; *habere*, ins. C.D.

⁹ *vitem*, D.

¹⁰ *Dionisius*, ins. C.D. (in marg.)

¹¹ *quoque*] om. B.C.D.

¹² *a nomine suo*] om. C.D.

¹³ *quæ . . . dicebatur*] so B.; om. C.D.; *dicitur*, E.

¹⁴ *prius*] om. B.

¹⁵ *Aera*, B.

¹⁶ *rege*, ins. C.D.

¹⁷ *in ea*, ins. B.

¹⁸ *vocabatur*, C.D.

¹⁹ *Egistus*, A.B.; and so E. below.

²⁰ *unico*, B.

²¹ *regnavit*, B.

Dis sixe 3ere after þe out goynge of Egipt Eriston bulde þe temple of Appolyn Delphicus. Also þat 3ere Cranaus þe secounde of Athenes bygan to reigne, and reigned nyne 3ere. His douzter heet A[t]this; of hir Attica¹ þat lond hap þat name. Looke to fore in þe firste book, capitulo Grecia, scilicet El[l]adia. Þat tyme þe Hebrewes feng lettres, and Grecia vynes. Also Lacedemon Semelis sone bulde Lacedemonia þat citee, and þe ferþe Erichonius of Atthene reignede fifty 3ere olde, and þe² nynþe St[h]enelus of þe Argyues and Erict[h]onius³ of Sciciones. Arcas⁴ kyng of þe Argyues, 3af his name to þat lond Arcadia,⁴ and cleped it so after his owne name; but þat lond Arcadia heet raper Scicionia. Egipt heet rather Aerea, and hadde þat name Egipt of oon Egiptus þat reigned þerynne. Danaus þe tenþe of Argyues reigned fifty 3ere. *Orosius, libro primo.* Danaus and Egiptus⁵ were tweye breþeren; and Danaus by his fifty douzters slow 3 Egiptes fifty sones in oon ny3ht, outake oon þat schulde reigne after hym. Danaus doere of meny euel dedes wente vp to þe Argyues, and by gile putte out St[h]enelus, þat hadde ofte i-saued hym whiles he was nedy

TREVISA.

cepte. The temple of Apollo Delphicus was edifiede of MS. HARL. Heristones in the vjth yere of the egression of the childer 2261. of Israel. In whiche yere also Cranaus, the secunde kyng of men of Athenes, began to reigne, and reigned ix. yere. Of Athis, the dozhter of whom, that londe callede Athica was namede, as hit is schewede afore, libro j., capitulo 22^o, Elladia. In whiche tyme men of Hebrewc receyvede letters, and men of Grece vynes. Lacedemonia was edifiede oones of Lacedemon. Eructonius, the iiijth kyng of men of Athenes, reignede lth yere. Archas, kyng of Argyues, namede Archadia after his name, whiche was callede afore Scicionia. Egiptus toke the name of hit of a man callede Egiptus reignenge in hit, for hit was callede afore Aeria. Danaus, the xth kyng of Argyues, reignede lth yere. *Orosius, libro primo; et Petrus, li. 2, 6^o capitulo.* Danaus and Egistus were brether, but Danaus, by his lth dozhters, did slee in oon ny3hte lth sonnes of Egistus, oon childe lefte oonly, whiche scholde reigne after hym; wherefore Danaus, the causer of that mischefe, wente to the Argyues, expellede S[th]enelus by fraude, whiche norischede

¹ *Attica*, MSS.² in þe MS. (not a.): Cx. has some omissions here.³ So a.; *Erictorius*, MS.⁴ *Archas* and *Archadia*, MSS.⁵ Here and below MSS. and Cx. have *Egistus*.

foverat, ipse quoque regnavit.¹ ²Sub ea tempestate egressus creditur Liber pater, qui et Dionysus Bacchus; qui Argos condidit, et usum vineæ Græcis dedit.

*Augustinus de Civitate, libro 18^o.*³ His temporibus Mercurius. major ille Mercurius⁴ fuisse perhibetur⁵ nepos Atlantis, ex Maia filia Atlantis progenitus,⁶ multarum artium peritus; unde et⁷ deificatus est. Posterior illo⁸ quodammodo fuit Hercules ille major,⁹ qui cognominatus est Dasaneus secundum¹⁰ Marianum, libro primo, capitulo xlv.¹¹ Iste etiam est Hercules ille (*Ranulphus*)¹² qui¹³ secundum Ovidium occidit Busirim¹⁴ tyrannum. *Josephus*. Iste Hercules desponsavit Etheam,¹⁵ filiam Afer, filii Madian; qua de¹⁶ causa profectus est cum eo ad subjugandum Libyam, quæ ex Afer conquæstore dicta est Africa.¹⁷ Quadragesimo anno egressionis¹⁸ Israel de Ægypto¹⁹ Aaron centum viginti trium annorum existens obiit in Oreb;²⁰ eodemque anno Moyses, cum quadraginta annis in Ægypto, quadraginta annis in Madian, et quadraginta annis, triginta diebus minus, in eremo²¹ præfuisset, centesimo vicesimo ætatis suæ anno²² obiit in monte Abarim contra Jherico. Sepultus²³ est a Domino in valle Moab.

Anno Moysi 130.
Anno Abr. 544.

¹ *Orosius* . . . regnavit] om. C.D.; regnavit, om. B.

² *Petrus*, ins. C.D. (in margin; varying also the sentence).

³ *Alfridus xvij^o*, A.E. The reference is to Aug. *de Civ.* xviii. 8.

⁴ *qui*, ins. B.

⁵ *prohibetur*, A.

⁶ *ex . . . progenitus*] om. C.D.

⁷ *et*] om. C.D.

⁸ *eo*, C.D.

⁹ *ꝑ*, ins. B.

¹⁰ *sicut dicit*, B.

¹¹ 45] added from B.

¹² *ꝑ*] om. B.

¹³ *qui . . . qui*] om. A.C.D.

¹⁴ *Busirim*, MSS.

¹⁵ *Ethiam*, A.; *Ethinam*, B.; *Otheam*, D.

¹⁶ *de*] om. A.

¹⁷ Sentence altered verbally and transposed in C.D.

¹⁸ *filiorum*, ins. B.

¹⁹ *Israel de Ægypto*] om. C.D.

²⁰ *Oreb*] in Arabia in monte Asini (for Sinai?; D. has Asi.) qui nunc Oreb dicitur, C.D.

²¹ *populo*, ins. C.D.

²² *anno*] om. A.

²³ *sepultusque*, A.B.D. In this chapter several slight errors of MSS. in the spelling of proper names have been tacitly corrected.

and outlawe, and reigned hym self. Me trowep þat in þat tempest went out þat man þat heet Liber pater and heet Dionysus¹ [Bacchus]² also; he made vp Argiues, and ʒaf þe Grees vse of vynes. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei*. Me seiþ þat þe grete Mercurius was in þat tyme; þis Mercurius was Maia Atlas³ is douʒter sone. Þis Mercurius was connynge in meny craftes, and pere he was i-made among hem as it were a god. But þe grete Hercules⁴ was somdel lattre þan he. R. Þis grete Hercules hadde a surname Dasaneus, so seiþ Marianus, libro primo, capitulo fyue hondred fourty and fyue. Also þis is þat Hercules þat slowh Busiris⁵ þe tyraunt, so seiþ Ouyde. *Iosephus*. Þis Hercules weddede Ethea Affer⁶ his douʒter. Affer was Madian his sone. Þerfore Hercules wente wip Affer to wyne Libya, and þat lond was þanne i-cleped Affrica by Affer þe conquerour his name. Þe fourty ʒere after þe out goynge of Egipt Aaron an hondred ʒere olde and þre and twenty deyde in Oreb. Also þe same ʒere Moyses whan he hadde i-lyued fourty ʒere in Madian, and fourty ʒere saue pritty dayes in desert, sex score ʒere old almost, he deide in þe hil Mont Abarim, aʒenst Ierico þat town, and was i-buried of oure Lord in þe valey of Moab.

TREVISA.

Danaus when he was in exile and pouerte, that he myʒhte reigne þer. Dionysus Bacchus is trawede to haue bene that tyme, whiche made feldes, and began the vse of vynes, amonge men of Grece. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo*. The nowble Mercury is seide to haue bene in this tyme son to the doʒter of Atlas, geten of Maia, wise in mony artes, wherefore he was callede a godde after his dethe. After whom grete Hercules was. R. Whiche was otherwise callede Dasaneus, as Marianus rehersethe, libro j^o, capitulo cxlv^{to}. Also that is Hercules, whiche did slee Busiris⁵ the tyraunte, as Ouidius the poete dothe reherse. *Iosephus*. This Hercules did mary Stea, the doʒter of Affer, son of Madian; wherefore he wente furthe with Affer to make Libya subiecte to hym, whiche was callede after Affrica, after the name of Affer. Aaron hauenge a cxxiiij^{ti} [yere] in age, in the xl^{ti} yere of the egression of the childer of Israel from Egipte, diede in Oreb; and Moises the same yere, in the c. and xx^{ti} yere of his age, diede in Abarim, ageynes Iherico, and was beriede of oure Lorde in the vale of Moab.

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *Dyonisius*, MSS.² Added from a. and Cx. (*Bacchus*).³ *Athlas* a.; *Athalas*, MS.⁴ Text as in a. and Cx.; MS. has words repeated from below.⁵ *Busirus*, MSS. and Cx.⁶ So β. γ., Cx.; *after*, MS., a.

CAP. XV.

*De gestis et morte Josue ; varia de Jove et Saturno aliisque.*¹

Josue populum in Chanaan introducit.

Isidorus, Etym., libro quinto. Josue, minister Moysi, per viginti sex annos rexit populum secundum Josephum² ; Scriptura tamen de annis tacet ; qui³ primo anno ducatus sui, patefacto Jordane, populum ad terram promissionis introduxit, Phase, id est Pascha, immolavit, circumcisionem per quadraginta annos intermissam innovavit ; ac comedentibus illis de fructu⁴ terræ illius⁵ manna, quod per quadraginta annos duraverat, tunc defecit. *Petrus.* Secundum Euse-

De Jubileo.

bium in chronica sua annus ille erat Jubileus, et erat quinquagesimus primus⁶ inter Jubileos annos ; ac si⁷ fluxissent ab initio mundi usque ad tunc⁸ duo milia quingenti quinquaginta anni, singulis Jubileis⁹ per annos quinquagenos computatis ; sed secundum LXX. interpretes¹⁰ longe plures anni fluxerant.¹¹ Beda vero sequens Hebraicam veritatem probat a¹² prædicta summa annorum septem annos deficere.¹³

Anno Abr. 545.
Anno Josue 1.

Erichthonius.

Anno primo Josue Erichthonius,¹⁴ quartus¹⁵ rex Athe-

¹ No title in MSS.

² Most MSS. of Josephus give 25 years. See *Ant. Jud.*, v. 1.

³ *Hic*, C.D.

⁴ *fructibus*, C.D.

⁵ *illius*] om. C.D.

⁶ *annus*, ins. B.

⁷ *annos ; ac si*] quasi, C.D.

⁸ *usque ad tunc*] om. C.D.

⁹ *annis*, ins. B.

¹⁰ *interpretes*] om. C.D.

¹¹ *fluxerunt*, A.

¹² *de*, B.

¹³ *defuisse*, C.D.

¹⁴ *Erichthonius*, MSS.

¹⁵ *quartus*] om. C.D.

Capitulum quintumdecimum. Iosue.

TREVISA.

IOSUE, Moyses seruauant, rulede þe peple sixe and twenty ðere, so seiþ Iosephus. Neuerþeles þe Scripture rekenep not þe ðeres. Iosue,¹ þe firste ðere of his ledynges² ladde þe peple into þe londe of byheste; and þe ryuer flom³ Iordan oponede, and lete hem passe, and Iosue offrede þe Ester offrynge, and renewede þe circumsicioun þat was forbode fourty ðere in wyldernesse. And whanne þey ete of fruyt of þat londe, þanne manna faillede þat hadde i-dured fourty wynter. *Petrus.* Eusebius in his book⁴ seiþ þat⁵ ðere was Iubileus, þe ðere of grace, and was þat oon and fyfty ðere of grace, as þey ðoo were apassed from þe bygynnyng of þe world two þowsand þere fyue hondred and fifty, þat is oon and fifty [sipes fifty]⁶ ðere. Ðan forto take of eueriche fifty ðere oon ðere of grace it comeþ to oon and fifty ðeres of grace; but by þe Seuenty þere were apassed meny mo ðeres. And Beda folweþ þe Hebrewes, and preueþ⁷ þat þere lakkede seuene ðere of two þowsand fyue hondred and fifty. Þe firste ðere of Iosue Erichthonius,⁸ þe fourþe kyng of Athene, was þe firste þat

Capitulum quintumdecimum.

IOSUE, the minister of Moyses, rewlede the peple of Israel, MS. HARL. 2261. after Iosephus, xxvjth yere; neuertheles Scripture expressethe not the yeres. Whiche ledenge the peple þro the water of Iordan, in the firste yere of his gouernayle, vn to the londe y-promysede, offrede Ester, and renewede circumcison, refusede by xlth yere; and then the noryschenge that was ðiffen of God to theyme faillede, after xlth yere. *Petrus.* That yere was the yere of iubile, after Eusebius in his cronicle, and hit was the firste lth yere amonge other yeres, as if ij. m^l yere v^c. and lth hade bene from the begynnenge of the worlde, alle the yeres of the iubile acomptede by lth yere: but after the lxxth interpretatores, there were mony moo yeres from the begynnenge of þe worlde vn to that tyme. Bede, folowenge the trawthe and the trewe acompte of men of Hebrewes, provethe vij. yere to faile from the nowmbre rehersed. Erichthonius⁹ the iiijth kyng of men of Athenes, in the firste yere of Iosue,

¹ of Iosue, MS. (not Cx.)² ledyng, a., Cx.³ flom, a., Cx.⁴ cronike, a., Cx.⁵ that that, a., Cx.⁶ Added from a. and Cx.⁷ proued, Cx.⁸ Eructonius, MSS.⁹ Erutonius, Harl. MS., twice.

niensis, primus in Græcia quadrigam junxisse creditur.¹ Erat tamen quadriga prius apud alias nationes. *Augustinus, libro xviii^o*. Hic primus instituit ludos Apollini et Minervæ.² Eoque³ tempore Busiris⁴ tyrannus, rex Ægypti, tyrannidem exercuit in hospites suos. Nam diis suis homines immolavit, quem ferunt fuisse filium Neptuni ex Libya, filia Epaphi. ⁵Josue⁶ distribuit Anno Abr. 555. Anno Josue 19. genti Judææ terram Palæstinorum. Eo tempore⁷ Phœnix Anno Abr. 563. Anno Josue 18. et Cadmus fratres de Thebis Ægyptiorum Syriam profecti, apud Tyrum et Sidonem regnaverunt.⁸ Jupiter Anno Abr. 567. Anno Josue 22. rex Cretæ rapuit Europam, filiam Agenoris regis Libyæ, quam postmodum Asterius⁹ rex Cretensium uxorem sibi fecit.¹⁰ *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo*. Jupiter ex Europa quam rapuit genuit Radamanthum, Sarpedon,¹¹ Minois, qui post eum regnavit in Creta. *Ranulphus*. Veruntamen Marianus, libro primo, capitulo dcx^o, dicit quod Asterius¹² genuit ex Europa hos tres filios.¹³ *Isidorus, libro quartodecimo*. Agenor, rex Libyæ, *genuit tres filios, Cilicem,¹⁴ Phœnicem et Cadmum, et unam¹⁵ filiam nomine Europam; quam cum Jupiter¹⁶ rapuisset, navi suæ,¹⁷ quæ taurum

¹ fertur, B.C.D.

² primusque currum junxisse fertur, ins. C.D.

³ Eo quoque, B.

⁴ Busirus, MSS. and versions.

⁵ Dionysius (marg.). Anno decimo, ins. C.D.

⁶ Joseph, E.

⁷ Eoque tempore, A.; Eo quoque tempore, B.; Anno 18^o C.D.

⁸ Anno 22 Josuæ, ins. C.D.

⁹ Astinus, B.; Astrius, E.D.

¹⁰ duxit in uxorem, C.D.

¹¹ et, ins. C.D. Higden's inflections have been left unchanged.

¹² Astinus, B.

¹³ Ranulphus . . . filios] om. C.D.

¹⁴ Silicem, MSS.

¹⁵ unamque, B.

¹⁶ rex Cretæ, ins. C.D.

¹⁷ suæ] om. B.

brouz̄te charioth¹ in to Grees, as me seip. Nopeles to fore honde were chariottes in oper londes. *Augustinus, libro 18^o*. Dis ordeyned first playes to Appolyn, and to Minerua. Also pat tyme Busiris þe tyraunt, kyng of Egipt, he kydde² his tyrauntyse³ on his gastes; for he slowh men, and offred hem to goddes. Me seip þat he was Neptunus his sone i-gete on Libya, Epaphus his douz̄ter. Iosue departed þe lond of Palestines to þe Iewes. Also pat tyme Fenix and Cadmus,⁴ tweyne breþeren of Thebe, pat is in Egipt, wente into Syria,⁵ and reigned at Tyrus and at Sidon, tweie citees pat so hatte. Iupiter, kyng of Creta, rauesched Europa, þe douz̄ter of Agenor,⁶ kyng of Libya. Afterward Asterius, kyng of Creta, wedded⁷ Europa to his⁸ wyf. *Augustinus, libro 18^o*. Iupiter on Europa pat he rauesched he gat Radamanthus, Sarpedon, and Minos,⁹ pat reigned after hym in Creta. Nopeles, Marianus, libro primo, capitulo 610,¹⁰ seip pat Asterius on Europa gat pese þre sones. *Isidorus, libro 14^o*. Agenor, kyng of Libya, gat þre sones, Silex,¹¹ Phenix, Cadmus, and oon douz̄ter pat heet Europa. Whan Iupiter hadde i-rauesched hire, he dede hire in

TREVISA.

ordeinede firste a carte with iiij. wheles in Grece; neuerthelesse thei were afore in other places. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo*. The seide Erichthonius ordeynede plaies to Apollo and to Minerua. In whiche tyme Busiris, the tyraunte and kyng of Egipte, exercisede cruellenesse, for he offrede men to his goddes, whom men say to haue bene the son of Neptunus of Libya the doz̄hter of Epaphus. Iosue distribute to the peple of Iewes the londe of Palestines. In whiche tyme Fenix and Cadmus brether, goenge from Egipte to Syria, reignede at Tyrus and Sidon. Iupiter kyng of Creta toke a weye Europa the doz̄hter of Agenor kyng of Libya, whom Asterius kyng of men of Creta did wedde. Iupiter gate of Europa, whom he toke aweye, Radamanthus, Sarpedon, and Minos,⁹ whiche reignede after hym in Creta. R. Neuertheles Marianus rehersethe, libro i^o. capitulo vj^o x^o, that Asterius gate those iiij. childer of Europa. *Isidorus, libro quarto decimo*. Agenor kyng of Libya gate thre sonnes, Cilix,¹² Fenix and Cadmus, and oon doz̄ter, Europa by name. But when Iupiter hade taken

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ chariot, a. β. γ. ; charyote, Cx.² So a. ; hidde, MS. ; used, Cx.³ tyrannye, Cx.⁴ Candmus, MS. (not a.)⁵ Sciria, MS.⁶ Agenore, MS.⁷ wedde, a.⁸ his] om. a., Cx.⁹ Minois, MS.; Minoys, Harl. MS.¹⁰ 61, Cx.¹¹ So MSS. for Cilix.¹² Silix, Harl. MS.

habebat depictum eam imposuit. Qua de causa¹ fingunt poetæ Jovem in taurum² fuisse³ transmutatum. Præcepit itaque⁴ Agenor tribus filiis suis sororem suam sic raptam quærere, sub interminatione redeundi nisi eam reducerent. Sed cum eam non invenissent,⁵ patris iram formidantes, Cilix in loco resedit⁶ quem a suo nomine Ciliciam⁷ nominavit. Phoenix quoque apud Phœniciam, Cadmus vero apud Græciam exilium elegit, ubi sequens vestigium bovis conspectæ⁸ sedem posuit, et Bœotiam⁹ nominavit; ubi et postmodum Thebas construxit.¹⁰ *Ranulphus*. De quo vide supra libro primo, capitulo Græcia.¹¹ ¹² *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo.*¹³ Eo tempore apud Cretam insulam¹⁴ regnavit Jupiter, patre suo Saturno expulso ad Italiam. *Henricus*. Hic cum esset scelestissimus et bellicosissimus¹⁵ Græciam conquisivit,¹⁶ ubi post mortem a Græcis semper mendacissimis dominus¹⁷ cœli putatus est, et Deus deorum ob magnitudinem potentiæ nominatus.¹⁸ Cretenses vero, apud quos sepultus est, quando de sepultura ejus loquuntur¹⁹ a Græcis dicuntur²⁰ mendaces.²¹ *Alexander*

Cilix,
Phœnix et
Cadmus
Ciliciam,
Phœniciam
et Bœotiam
conduunt.

Varia de
Jove et
Saturno.

¹ *Quamobrem*, C.D.

² *habebat . . . taurum*] om. B.

³ *fuisse*] om. C.D.

⁴ *Recessitque*, B.; *igitur*, C.D.

⁵ *fili*, ins. C.D.

⁶ *recedit*, B.

⁷ *Ciliciam*] om. B.

⁸ *conspetti*, C.D.

⁹ *Boetiam*, MSS.

¹⁰ Slightly transposed in C.D.

¹¹ *De . . . Græcia*] Quære supra de provinciis, capitulo Boetia, C.D.

¹² C.D. here introduce the following passage:—" *Petrus*. Eoque tempore Danaus decimus Argivorum

" per quinquaginta filias suas quinquaginta filios Egisti fratris sui interfecit, uno solummodo superstite relicto, qui post eum regnavit."

¹³ B. omits reference.

¹⁴ *Asiæ*, ins. C.D.

¹⁵ *et bellicosissimus*] om. B.

¹⁶ *acquisivit*, C.D.

¹⁷ *Deus*, A.B.

¹⁸ *nominatus*] om. C.D.

¹⁹ *loquitur*, B.

²⁰ *dicunt*, E.

²¹ *apud Græcos mendaces putantur*, C.D.

his schippe pat was i-peynt wip a bole; and perfore poetes feyneþ pat Iupiter was i-torned in to a boole. Agenor heet¹ his pre sones pat they schulde goo and seche her suster pat was so i-rauissed and i-lad away, and forbede hem forto come aȝen, but ȝif þey brouȝte hir suster wip hem. And for² þey myȝte not fynde hir, þey dredde þe wreppe of here³ fader. Silex abood in a contray and cleped hit Scilicia⁴ after his owne name, and Phenix⁵ abood in Phenicia. But Cadmus chees his exilynge in Grecia. Pere he folowede þe fore⁶ of an oxe, and come to a contray, and aboode pere, and cleped it Boecia, Oxelond. Afterward he bulde pere þe citee of Thebe. R. Loke more here in þe firste book, capitulo Grecia. *Augustinus, libro 18º*. Iupiter regned in þe ilond Creta, and his fader Saturnus was i-put out, and wente to Itali. *Henricus*. Dis was a wicked man and a greet werriour, and conquered Grees. Pere after his deth, þe Grees pat were ful of lesynges hilde hym god of heuene, and nempned hym god of goddes for his grete power and myȝt. Þe men of Creta, fore he was i-buried among hem, wolde speke of his buriels. Perfore þe Grees cleped hem lyȝers. *Alexander in Myth.*⁷

TREVISA.

here away, he putte her in a schippe in whom he hade a bulle depicte, wherefore poetes feyne Iupiter to be transmutate in to the similitude of a bulle. Wherefore Agenor commaundede his thre sonnes that thei scholde inquire for their sustyr, and not to comye to hym in eny wyse with owte here. Whiche childer not fyndenge here and dredenge the wraþe of their fader, Cilix returnede to Cilicia, namenge that cuntre after his awne name, and Fenix to Fenicea, and Cadmus to the londe of Grece, where he desirede exile; whiche folowenge the stappes of an oxe made a place, namenge hit Boetia, where he made Thebas afterwarde. R. Beholde more of this mater afore, libro jº, capitulo 22º, Boetia. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo*. Iupiter reigned that tyme in the yle called Creta, Saturnus his fader expulsede to Ytaly. *Henricus*. Whiche beenge wyckede and bellicose gate the londe of Grece by conqueste; wherefore he was callede of men of Grece, that be and were the greteste lyers, a god, after his death, and namede as godde of alle goddes for the magnitude of his power. *Alexander in Mythologia*. The trewe story hathe

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ bad, Cx.² by cause, Cx.³ So a. and Cx.; the, MS.⁴ So a. and Cx. (for Cilicia); Scilicia, MS.⁵ So a.; Fenix, MS.; and Fenicea below.⁶ steppe, Cx.⁷ So Cx. (Myth.); Math., a.; *Mythologem*, MS.

in Mythologia. Vera historia habet Saturnum patrem et Jovem filium regna contigua in Creta habuisse; inter quos bello pro¹ finibus agrorum exorto² prævaluit³ Jupiter; Saturnusque fugatus Italiam petiit, ubi⁴ a Jano⁵ regnante ob usum vinearum, falcis, et agriculturæ in partem imperii admissus est, dictusque⁶ Saturnus a saturitate, quam ibidem promovit.⁷ *Eutropius.* Hic Saturnus⁸ fugiens filium suum Jovem e Græcia,⁹ in finibus Tusciæ¹⁰ non procul a loco¹¹ Romæ latuit, in loco quem Saturniam a nomine suo, et postmodum Latium¹² a latebra sua denominavit, ubi rudes populos ædificare, colere, et¹³ plantare docuit, cum tamen¹⁴ antea glandibus sustentarentur et sub frondibus contextis habitarent. Hic etiam nummos æreos instituit, quamobrem a multitudine rustica¹⁵ deus putatus est. *Ranulphus.* Et quamvis poetæ¹⁶ contendunt Jovem¹⁷ castrasse Saturnum,¹⁸ ne in sui supplantationem¹⁹ filios generaret; tamen historia Romana dicit²⁰ Saturnum²¹ genuisse Picum in Italia. *Alex-*

<p>¹ <i>de</i>, C.D. ² <i>orto</i>, C.D. ³ <i>cum prævaluisset</i>, C.D. ⁴ <i>ubique</i>, C.D. ⁵ <i>tunc</i>, ins. D. ⁶ <i>est</i>, ins. B.D. ⁷ Sentence slightly varied in C.D., which omit <i>quam . . . promovit</i>. ⁸ <i>Saturnus</i>] quoque, C.D. ⁹ <i>Creta</i>, B. ¹⁰ <i>Thussia</i>, A. ; <i>Thusia</i>, B. ¹¹ <i>a loco</i>] ab urbe, C.D.</p>	<p>¹² <i>Lacia</i>, E. ¹³ <i>et</i>] om. D.E. ¹⁴ <i>tamen</i>] om. C.D. ¹⁵ <i>rusticana</i>, C. (not D.) ¹⁶ <i>aliqui</i> C.D. ¹⁷ <i>eunuchasse sive</i>, ins. C.D. ¹⁸ <i>patrem suum</i>, ins. C.D. ¹⁹ <i>alios</i>, ins. C.D. ²⁰ <i>narrat</i>, C.D. ²¹ <i>post fugam suam</i>, ins. C.D. (with slight transpositions).</p>
--	--

Verrey storie seiþ þat Saturnus þe fader [and Iupiter]¹ þe sone hadde tweie kyngdoms ioynunge to gidres in Creta, and for endes and bondes of feeldes was a bataile bytwene hem; and Iupiter hadde þe maistrie, and Saturnus was i-chased out and wente into Ytaly; and þere Ianus þe kyng feng hym to a part of þe empere, by cause þat he koupe skile of vynes² and³ in repynge and in telyenge of feeldes. And he was i-cleped Saturnus of *saturitas*, þat is plente; for he made a⁴ grete plente in þat lond. *Eutropius*. Þis Saturnus fly⁵ his sone Iupiter out of Grees to þe endes of Tuscia nouzt fer from þe place of Rome; he hidde hym þere in a place, and cleped þe place Saturnia after his owne name; and afterward he cleped hit Latium, þat is his hydyng place. Þere he tauzte boistous men to bulde and to erye and sowe, and to sette vynes. For to forehonde þey lyued by acres,⁶ and wonede vnder bowes and twigges i-wounde⁷ to gidres. Also þis ordeyned pannes of bras; þerfore þe vplondische men hilde hym a god. R̄. And þey poetes mene þat Iupiter gildede⁸ Saturnus, for he schulde not gete children to supplante hym, neuerþeles þe storie of Rome seiþ þat Saturnus gat Picus in Itali.

TREVISA.

Saturnus to the fader, and Iupiter to the son, and to haue had realmes contiguate in Creta; but at the laste a batelle movede betwene theyme for certeyn londe, Iupiter hade the victory, and Saturnus fleenge wente to Ytaly, whiche was receyvede of Ianus, reignenge there in to parte of thempyre, for the vse of vynes and off tillenge of londe, that he brouzhte in to Ytaly, where he was callede Saturnus, for the plentuosenesse that he brouzhte in to that cuntre. *Eutropius*. This Saturnus fleenge Iupiter his son lay priuely in a parte of Tuscia not ferre from Rome, whiche place he callede Saturnia, after his name, where he tauzhte rude peple to edifye, to tulle felde, and to sette vynes, whiche peple lyffede afore with akornes, and inhabite places made with bowzes of trees. Also he institute penyes of brasse, wherefore he was trowede to haue bene a godde of the rusticalle peple. R̄. And thauzhe poetes feyne Iupiter to haue geldede Saturnus leste that he scholde gette eny childer to his supplantacion, neuertheless the story of the Romanes seithe that Saturnus gate

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ Added from a. β. γ., Cx.² So a. β. γ., Cx.; wyne, MS.³ and] om. a.⁴ a] om. a. and Cx.⁵ So a.; fleep, MS.; flemed, Cx.⁶ akres, a.; akornes, β., Cx.; akkarns, γ.⁷ i-weue, a.; wouen, β., Cx.⁸ geldede, a.

*ander in Mythol.*¹ Hunc² Jovem post patris expulsionem pacem quoque³ perturbantem alii potentes tyranni expellere sunt conati; quos quia bellicis machinis superavit, gigantes fingitur fulminasse. *Genesis.*⁴

Josue ante mortem suam fœdus renovat.

Josue, antequam⁵ moreretur, effudit aquam in terram coram populo⁶ in signum fœderis initi inter⁷ Deum et populum;⁷ quod⁸ scilicet⁹ populus¹⁰ verum Deum

Anno Abr. 570.
Anno Josue 45.

De fœderibus veterum.

elegisset. *Petrus.* Mos erat gentibus in signum fœderis contracti¹¹ sanguinem suillum effundere. *Hugutio, capitulo Fœdus.* Inde dicitur fœdus a fœda, porca scilicet¹² mactata, quasi diceretur: sic effundatur sanguis ejus,¹³ qui violaverit hoc fœdus. *Petrus, capitulo sextodecimo.*¹⁴ Sed Hebræi aquam fuderunt¹⁵ in signum quod, sicut aqua effunditur totaliter absque vestigio sui relicto, ita violator fœderis pereat cum tota progenie sua. Solebant etiam veteres¹⁶ aliqua durabilia erigere, utpote¹⁷ lapides aut cumulos, ut diuturnitate sui initum fœdus posteris memorarent.¹⁸

¹ *in Mythol.*] om. C.D.

² *Hinc*, B.

³ *etiam*, C.D.

⁴ C.D. omit reference.

⁵ *priusquam*, C.D.

⁶ *coram populo*] om. C.D.

⁷ *inter . . . populum*] om. C.D.

⁸ *quia*, A.

⁹ *scilicet*] om. C.D.

¹⁰ *populus*] om. B.

¹¹ *initi*, C.D.

¹² *sic*, A.D.

¹³ *illius*, C.D.

¹⁴ *capitulo sextodecimo*] om. C.D.

¹⁵ *effuderunt aquam*, B.

¹⁶ *veteres*] om. D.

¹⁷ *ut*, C.D.

¹⁸ Slightly transposed in C.D.

Alexander in Mythologia. Opere myzty tyrauntis fondede to putte out þis Iupiter, þat¹ was ful cruel and desturbed þe pees, after þat his fader was i-put out, and ouercome þe geantes wip gynnes of werre. Me feyneþ þat he liʒtnede out geantes. *Petrus.* Iosue, or he deide,² helte³ water on þe erpe to fore þe peple in tokene of þe couenante þat was i-made bytwene God and þe peple; [þat was, þat þe peple]⁴ hadde i-chose þe soopfaste God. *Petrus.* Mysbyleued men vsede to helde out,⁵ and schede out⁶ þe blood of a sowe þat is i-slawe⁷ in tokene of couenant i-made. *Hugutio, capitulo Fedus.* Fedus, þat is a couenant, is i-seide of *feda*,⁸ a sowe þat is so⁹ i-slawe, as it were to mene, þat is blood þat brekeþ þe couenant schulde in þat manere be i-sched. *Petrus.* But þe Hebrewes hilde out water in token þat as þe water is al i-schad and nouʒt i-left, so he þat brekeþ þe couenant schulde be ded, and al his kyn.¹⁰ Also men in olde tyme vsede to arere signes and tokenes þat myʒte longe dure in mynde of couenant to¹¹ hem þat come afterward; and so somme arered¹² stones and hepes of stones in mynde of couenantes.

TREVISIA.

Picus in Italy. *Alexander in Mythologia.* Other myzhty tyrrauntes trowblenge peace were abowte to expelle Iupiter, whom he ouercome, wherefore hit is feynede of poetes Iupiter to haue sleyn diuerse gigantes. *Petrus.* Iosue afore that he diede schedde water in to the erthe, in to a signe of luffe begunne betwene God and the peple, that the peple hade chosen a trewe Godde. But the gentiles vsede to caste downe the bloode of a sowe in to a signe of luffe. *Hugutio, capitulo Fedus.* Fedus is callede so of a fowle swyne sleyn per, as if hit scholde be seide, his bloode be schedde in lyke wyse that dothe violate and breke this bonde of luffe. *Petrus, capitulo decimo sexto.* But men of Hebrewe schedde water in to a signe, for like as water is schedde holly with owte eny signe or stappe apperenge afterwarde, soe in lyke wise the breker of that bonde scholde peresche with alle his progeny. Also olde men were wonte to electe thynges durable in to the signe of luffe, as stones and beryelles, that men succedenge myʒhte remembre the seide token of luffe.

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ þat] þis Iupiter, a, Cx.² Some words repeated in a.³ hyeld, Cx.⁴ Added from a, and Cx.⁵ out water, MS. (not a. or Cx.)⁶ out] om. a. β. γ.⁷ þat is i-slawe] om. a. β. γ., Cx.⁸ So a., Cx.; pheda, MS.⁹ So a. β. γ.; is i-slawe, MS., Cx.¹⁰ So a. and Cx. (MS. has repetitions from above).¹¹ to] of, Cx.¹² arered and enhaunced, Cx. Slight corrections of orthography in the proper names have been tacitly made in this chapter for both versions.

CAP. XVI.

*De Chusan, rege Mesopotamiæ, et Othoniel. De nati-
vitate Apollinis et Bacchi. Varia de Cadmo et
litteris Græcis.*¹

- Chusan. Post mortem Josue filii Israel servierunt Chusan regi Mesopotamiæ octo annis, qui tamen anni junguntur temporibus² Othoniel, fratris Caleph, secundum Hebræos. *Petrus*. Nisi anni quietis et servitutis simul comprehenderentur sub diebus judicum, non staret veritas computationis in historia. *Augustinus, libro xviii*^o. Circa istud³ tempus Latona peperit Apollinem apud insulam Delos. *Ranulphus*.⁴ Non autem⁵ illum Apollinem Delphicum, qui diu ante extiterat, sed illum Apollinem qui cum Hercule posteriore⁶ servivit Admeto⁷ regi. Hanc Latonam dicunt esse Isidem.⁸
- Othoniel. Igitur Othoniel annumeratis octo annis servitutis præcedentis dux fuit super Hebræos quadraginta annis.⁹ Anno Abr. 571.
Anno Othoniel 1.
- Bacchus nascitur. Atheniensium rex quintus regnavit nomine¹⁰ Neptunus. Cadmus regnavit Thebis, ex cujus filia Semele¹¹ natus est Dionysus Bacchus,¹² qui etiam¹³ dicitur Liber Pater, cujus tempore Linus Thebæus musicus claruit. Bithynia condita est a Phœnice, quæ prius Marianodyna¹⁴ vocabatur.¹⁵ *Isidorus, libro secundo et quinto.*¹⁶ Anno Abr. 581.
Anno Othoniel 11.
Anno Abr. 583.
Anno Othoniel 13.
Anno Abr. 591.
Anno Othoniel 21.

¹ No title in MSS.

² *junguntur temporibus*] annis, B.

³ *idem*, C.D.

⁴ *Ranulphus*] om. A.C.D.

⁵ *autem*] om. C.D.; *tamen*, B.

⁶ *cum posteriore*] Hercule posterior, C. (not D.)

⁷ *servierat Meoto*, B.

⁸ *Hanc . . . Isidem*] om. C.D.

⁹ Sentence varied in C.D.

¹⁰ *nomine*] om. A.B.C.D., placing *Neptunus* before *regnavit*.

¹¹ *Semela*, MSS., and so below.

¹² *Dionisius Bachus*, MSS., and so below; similarly the versions.

¹³ *Latine*, ins. B.

¹⁴ *Marandina*, B.

¹⁵ The whole sentence slightly varied in C.D.

¹⁶ In vol. i. p. 128, the same passage is quoted from "*Isido, us, libro secundo, capitulo quinto*," but the reference is false. Cf lib. i. c. 3., but this does not contain all here quoted.

Capitulum sextumdecimum. Othoniel.

TREVISA.

AFTER Iosue his deth Israel seruede Chusan,¹ kyng of Mesopotamia, eiȝte ȝere. Neuerpeles pese eiȝte ȝere beep accounted wip Othoniel his tyme, Caleph his broȝer, by þe Hebrewes; but þe ȝeres of reste and of þraldom were accounted to gidres vnder iuges of Israel þe sothnesse of accountes wolde not stonde in þe storie. [*Augustinus, libro 18^o.*]² Aboute this tyme þat womman Latona baar Appolyn in þe ilond Delos.³ R. But nouȝt þat oȝer Appolyn Delphicus, þat hadde i-þe longe to forehonde, but þat Appolyn þat seruede þe kyng Admetus⁴ wip þe lattre Hercules. Me seiþ þat þis Latona⁵ was þe same womman [that heet]⁶ Isis. Þanne Othoniel was ledere of Israel fourty ȝere forto rekene þe forseide eiȝte ȝere of þraldom. Neptunus regnede and was þe fite kyng of Athene. Cadmus⁷ regnede in þe citee Thebes; of his douȝter Semela was i-bore Denys Bacchus, þat heet also Liber Pater, þat is þe Fre Fader. In his tyme was Linus⁸ of Thebe in Egipt, þe grete chauntour, in his floures. Fenix bulde Bithynia, þat heet somtyme Mariandyna.

*Capitulum sextumdecimum.*MS. HARL.
2261.

The childer of Israel did seruyce to Chusan, kyng of Mesopotamia, viij. yere after the death of Iosue, whiche yeres be ioynede to the yeres¹⁰ of Othoniel the brother of Caleph, after men of Hebrewes. *Petrus*. But if the yeres of the quietnes and seruitwe be comprehended to geder vnder the daies of the iugges, the trawthe of computacion scholde not be in the storye. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo*. Latona childedde Apollo abowte this tyme at the yle of Delos, whiche was not Apollo Delphicus, for he was longe afore, but this Apollo seruede kyng Admetus, with the later Hercules. The viijth yere of the seruitute of men of Israel annumerate, Othoniel was gouernoure of men of Hebrewes xlth yere. Neptunus the vth kyng of men of Athenes reignede. Cadmus did reigne in Thebis, of þe doȝhter of whom, Semela by name, Dionysus Bacchus was geten, other Liber pater. In þe tyme of whom Thebeus the musicion was. Bithynia was made of Phenix, callede afore

¹ So a. and Cx.; *Chasan*, MS.² Added from a. and Cx.³ So Cx.; *Dolos*, MS.⁴ So a. and Cx.; *Admetrius*, MS.⁵ *Lathona*, MS., and so below.⁶ Added from a. and Cx.⁷ So a.; *Cadynus*, MS., Cx.⁸ *Lynus*, MS. Similar slight errors have been tacitly corrected in this chapter and the following.⁹ *yereses*, MS.

Litteræ
Græcæ.

Et sicut Cadmus litteras septemdecim Græcis tradidit,¹ ita Phœnix frater suus quasdam litteras vermiculatas tradidit Phœnicibus.² *Ranulphus*.³ De quo vide supra libro primo, capitulo quintodecimo, scilicet Phœnicia.⁴ *Isidorus, libro secundo*. Græcorum litteræ, quas Cadmus tradidit, et verba componunt et numeros efficiunt. *Ranulphus*.⁵ In quoto enim⁶ numero alphabeti a⁷ prima usque⁸ decimam littera ponitur, talem numerum apud Græcos designat;⁹ quia prima littera Græca signat unum, secunda duo,¹⁰ tertia tria, et sic deinceps usque ad decem; quia decima littera signat decem, sed undecima littera signat viginti, duodecima triginta, tertiadecima quadraginta; et ita deinceps usque ad centum, quod designatur¹¹ per nonamdecimam litteram. Inde vicesima littera designat¹² ducenta; vicesima prima trecenta; vicesima secunda quadringenta;¹³ et sic deinceps.⁷

Varia de
Ægypto et
Græcia.

Usus ferri¹⁴ apud Ægyptios repertus est.¹⁵ Et¹⁶ ea, quæ de Demetra¹⁷ et Danae, matre¹⁸ Persei, dicuntur, contigerunt.¹⁹ Civitas Corinthi condita est.²⁰

Anno Abr. 535.
Anno Othoniel 23.

¹ *tradidit*] primo dedit, C.D.
² Transposed in C.D., which add —
 “ unde et color ille Feniceus dictus
 “ est qui postea litera mutata puni-
 “ ceus dicitur. *Hugutio, capitulo*
 “ *Fenix*. Et quia Fenices fuerunt
 “ primi literarum inventores, adhuc
 “ literas capitales rubeo colore
 “ scribimus, ut sic repræsentemus
 “ eos fuisse literarum repertores.”
³ *Ran. . . Phœnicia*] om. C.
⁴ *ubi Fenicia*, B. See vol. i. p.
 128.
⁵ *Ranulphus*] om. C.
⁶ *enim*] om. B.
⁷ *a . . . deinceps*] ponitur, litera
 Græca talem numerum significat,

C.D., omitting the rest of the extract.
⁸ *ad*, ins. A.
⁹ *designant*, A.
¹⁰ *duo*] om. B.
¹¹ *denotatur*, B.
¹² *signat*, A.
¹³ *vicesima secunda quadringenta*]
 om. A.
¹⁴ *designat . . . ferri*] *deferri*, B.
¹⁵ *reperta est*, B.; *reperitur*, C.D.
¹⁶ *Et*] om. C.D.
¹⁷ So Higden, for *Demetre*, who
 has also *Dane*.
¹⁸ *de Metra Dianæ matre*, B.
¹⁹ *facta fuerunt*, C.D.
²⁰ *conditur secundum quosdam*, C.D.

Isidorus, libro 2º, capitulo 5º. And as Fenix ʒaf þe Fenices TREVISA.
 some reed lettres. R̄. Þerof loke more in þe firste book,
 capitulo quintodecimo,¹ in Fenicia. *Isidorus, libro 2º.* Þe
 lettres of Grees þat Cadmus ʒaf hem speleþ wordes, and
 stondeþ for nombres. [R̄.]² Þe lettres of Grees from þe firste to
 þe tenþe as þey stondeþ in ordre [in þe A.B.C., so þey stondeþ]³
 for nombre among þe Grees; for þe firste stondeþ for
 oon; þe secounde for tweyne, [and]³ þe þridde for þre, and so
 forþ⁴ anon to þe tenþe. But þe eleueþe lettre stondeþ for
 twenty, þe twelfþe for þritty, þe þrittene⁵ for fourty, and so
 anon to an hondred. For an hondred stondeþ þe nyntenþe⁶
 lettre; þanne þe twentyþe lettre stondeþ for two hondred;
 þe oon and twenty for þre⁷ hondred,⁸ and so forþ. *Petrus.*
 Craft and vse of iren was i-founde in Egipte. Þe dedes þat
 me telleþ of Demetra⁹ and of Dan, Persius his moder, byfel
 þat tyme. And þe citee Corinthi was i-bulde þat tyme.

Mariandyna.¹⁰ *Isidorus, libris 2º et quinto.* And lyke as MS. HARL.
2261.
 Cadmus toke to men of Grece xvij. letters so in like
 maner, Phenix, brother to hym, toke certeyne letters of a
 redde coloure to the Pheniceanes. R̄. Attende to this pro-
 cesse afore, capitulo 15º; Phenicia. *Isidorus, libro 2º.* The
 letters of men of Grece, whom Cadmus toke to þeim, com-
 pounde wordes and make nowmbres. R̄. And in what
 nowmbre a letter is putte from the firste letter to the x^{the},
 hit signifieth a like nowmbre amonge men of Grewe, for the
 firste letter signifieth oon, the secounde tweyne, and so vn
 to x., for the x^{the} letter signifieth x. and the xj^{the} letter
 xx^{ti}, the xij^{the} xxx^{ti}, the xiiij^{the} letter xl^{ti}, and so on to
 a c., whiche is signifiede by the xix^{the} letter. The xx^{ti} letter
 signifieth cc., xxj^{ti} ccc., and so furthe. *Petrus.* The vse of
 yrne was founde this tyme amonge men of Egipte, and
 also those thinges happede whiche be seyde of Metria and
 Dana,¹¹ the moder of Perseus. The cite of Corinthus was
 made, whom thei say to be Isis.

¹ So Cx., rightly; 5, MS. Trevisa's version is evidently mutilated here.

² Reference added from a. and Cx.

³ Added from a. and Cx.

⁴ the fourth, Cx.; badly.

⁵ þrittenþe, a.

⁶ So a.; nynþe, MS.

⁷ So Cx.; foure, MS.

⁸ Cx. adds: the xxij. for four hundred.

⁹ So a. and Cx.; Dometra, MS.

¹⁰ Morienduna, Harl. MS.

¹¹ So Harl. MS. for Demeter and Danae.

CAP. XVII.

*Ayoth.*Aod vel
Ehud.

Ayoth¹ annumeratis octodecim annis, quibus servivit Israel Eglon pingui regi Moab, et etiam cennumerato uno anno² ducis Sangar, qui occidit sexcentos viros vomere suo,³ fuit dux super Israel octoginta annis.⁴ Iste Ayoth, filius Jhera⁵ filii⁶ Gemini, fuit ambidexter, utraque scilicet⁷ manu utens pro dextra. *Petrus.* Geminum aliqui dicunt fuisse unam vilem personam in⁸ tribu Benjamin; qui posteris suis legitur sæpe impropertus ob ignominiam. Hebræi tamen tradunt hunc fuisse Benjamin, et quasi per aphæresim⁹ sic dictum. Nam¹⁰ ubi nos ponimus Geminum,¹¹ ipsi ponunt Jamyn,¹² quod sonat dextrarium seu dextralem; qui Latine geminus dici posset.

Anno Abr. 611.
Anno Ayoth 1.Triptole-
mus.

Triptolemus¹³ longa navi¹⁴ Eleusim veniens frumenta distribuit; et rex Molos[s]orum atque Thraciæ, Orcus nomine,¹⁵ Proserpinam rapuit, cujus canis ingens Cerberus Pirithoum¹⁶ devoravit,¹⁷ qui cum Theseo¹⁸ venerat ad raptum Proserpinæ; sed et Theseum devorasset, nisi Hercules superveniens eum liberasset. Et ob hoc¹⁹ ab inferis receptus est.²⁰ Achaia ab Achæo fundata²¹ est;

Anno Abr. 613.
Anno Ayoth 3.Pirithous
et Theseus.Anno Abr. 620.
Anno Ayoth 11.

¹ *Aioth*, A.
² *et anno*] cennumerato etiam uno, B.
³ *uno*, B.D.
⁴ Slightly abbreviated and varied in C.D.
⁵ *Jera*, A.D.
⁶ *filius*, C. (not D.) om. B.
⁷ *scilicet*] om. C.D.
⁸ *de*, B.
⁹ Various barbarized in MSS.
¹⁰ *sic dictum*. *Nam*] om. C.D., with other slight variations.

¹¹ *Jeminum*, A.E.
¹² *Jamin*, A.
¹³ *Tritholomus*, A.; *Tritolomus*, B.D.; *Tritolemus*, E.
¹⁴ *navigatione*, B.
¹⁵ *nomine*] cm. C.D.
¹⁶ *Pirithoum*, A.E.; *Pirotonem*, B.; *Pirithoum*, C.D.
¹⁷ *devoraverat*, B.
¹⁸ *cum*] om. E.
¹⁹ *hoc*] id quoque, C.D.
²⁰ *dicitur*, C.D.
²¹ *condita*, C.D.

Capitulum septimumdecimum. Aioth.

TREVISA.

AYOTH was ledere of Israel foure score þere, forto acounte eiþetene þere in þe whiche Israel seruede Eglon þe fatte king of Moab; also forto rekene oon þere of Sangar, þe duke and ledere¹ þat slow sixe hondred men wip a plowh schare. Þis Aioth vsede eiper hond for his riþt hond, and was Ihera his sone; Ihera was Geminus² his sone. *Petrus.* Som telleþ þat Geminus was a vile persone of þe lynage of Beniamyn, and was ofte i-nempned in reprofe to al his ofspringe, for he was so fyle³ and so vnworþy. Nopeles þe Hebrewes meneþ þat þis Geminus was Beniamyn, as þey he were⁴ so i-nempned by chaungynge oþer wipdrawing of somewhat of þe begynnynge of þe name. For þey we setteþ Geminum þe Hebrewes setteþ Iamyn, þat is a ryngþe þat longeþ to þe riþt side, and may be side⁵ Geminus in⁶ Latyn. Ritholomus⁷ com yn a longe schippe to Eleusis, and delede pere whete; and Orcus, kyng of Molos and of Thracia, rauesched Proserpina; hire hound, þat heet Cerberus, swelowede vp a man, þat heet Piritoun, þat come with Theseus to rauysshe Proserpina; and þe same hound Cerberus wolde have i-ete Theseus also, but Hercules hadde i-come þe mene tyme and i-saued hym, and þerfore he was i-fonge in to helle. Acheus

*Capitulum decimum septimum.*MS. HARL.
2261.

Then xviii. yere annumerate in whom the peple of Israel ministrede to Eglon the fatte kyng of Moab, and also oon yere of Sangar the duke, which did sle vij. men with the cultur of a plowe, Aioth reignede on the peple of Israel lxxx^d yere. This Aioth, son of Ihera, the son of Geminus, vsede either honde as the ryþte honde. *Petrus.* Somme men say Geminus to haue bene a vile person in the tribe of Beniamyn, callede so as by effresis; for þei putte Iamyn where we putte Geminus, whiche sowndethe as pertenge to the ryþte parte, whiche may be called welle in Latyn Geminus. Tritholomus commenge to Eleusis in a longe schippe, and the kyng of Thracia, raueschede and toke away Proserpina, whose dogge callede Cerberus deuoured Pirotonus, which come with Theseus to the takenge awaye of Proserpina; whiche hade deuouered Theseus also, but that Hercules delyuerede hym, for whiche thyng he was receyvede of helle. Achaia was foundede of Acheus,

¹ þe ledere, MS. (not a. or Cx.)² So a. and Cx.; *Gominus*, MS., which has *sometimes Gemynus* below.³ vyle, Cx.⁴ So a. β. γ.; and þey were, MS.⁵ seid, a.⁶ in] a, β. γ.⁷ Here and elsewhere in this chapter the orthography of the versions has been left unaltered; to correct them in such cases is to re-write them. The MSS. of Trevisa agree.

et Atheniensium dux, Dionysus, qui et Liber Pater dicitur, secundum quosdam, nascitur ex Semele; et mysteria de Perseo ceperunt, qui occidit Gorgonem meretricem quæ ob nimiam pulchritudinem obstupescit¹ aspicientes in eam.² Sub³ qua etiam ætate Phrixus⁴ et Helle⁵ soror⁶ sua fugientes insidias nocercales submersi sunt in mari, quod usque hodie a nomine sororis vocatur Hellespontus; at quia⁷ insigne navis eorum fuit aries, ideo finguntur per aerem vehi ariete⁸ velleris aurei.⁹ Laomedon, Sicyoniorum¹⁰ rex octavus decimus,¹¹ regnavit¹² quinquaginta annis. Amphion et¹³ Zethus¹⁴ regnabant¹⁵ apud Thebas¹⁶ Græcorum expulso Cadmo.¹⁷ Tros, a quo dicuntur Trojani, regnavit in Dardania, quæ est Phrygia,¹⁸ et postmodum indixit bellum Tantalò, regi Atheniensium, propter raptum Ganymedis filii sui. *Ranulphus*.¹⁹ Frustra ergo Jovis fabula et raptrix aquila confingitur.²⁰ Perseus, frater Erechthei,²¹ dimicavit adversus Persas capite Gorgonis²² desecto. Pegasus equus velocissimus cujusdam mulieris seu Bellerophontis²³ navis fuit. Ion vir fortis ex suo vocabulo appellavit²⁴ Athenienses Iones. Dionysus, qui et Liber Pater, debellando Indos²⁵ urbem Nysam²⁶ construxit. Iste Dionysus Nysam condidit.

Anno Abr. 646.
Anno Ayoth 16.

Anno Ayoth 47.
Anno Abr. 657.
Anno Ayoth 54.
Anno Abr. 664.

Anno Ayoth 62.
Anno Abr. 672.

¹ *obstupefaciebat*, C.D.
² *in eam*] om. C.D.
³ *Sub*] om. C.D.
⁴ *Fixus* or *Frixus*, MSS.
⁵ *Elles*, MSS.
⁶ *cum Helle sorore*, C.D.
⁷ *atque*, B.
⁸ *ab ariete*, A.
⁹ Slightly varied in C.D.
¹⁰ *Scicionorum*, MSS.
¹¹ *finguntur . . . xvij.*] om. B.
¹² *regnare cepit*, C.D.
¹³ *et*] om. B.
¹⁴ *Zephus* or *Zepus*, MSS. and versions.

¹⁵ *regnaverunt*, C.D.
¹⁶ *apud Thebas*] Thebis, A.B.
¹⁷ Transposed in C.D.
¹⁸ *Frigia*, MSS.
¹⁹ Added from B.
²⁰ *Tros . . . confingitur*] Varied in C.D.
²¹ *Erethei*, MSS.
²² *meretricis*, ins. C.D.
²³ *bellofrontis*, A.
²⁴ *vocavit*, A.
²⁵ *debellando Indos*] adversus Indos dimicans, C.D.
²⁶ *juxta Indum fluvium*, ins. C.D.

bulde Achaia. Denys Liber Pater, duke of Athene, was i-bore of Semela, as som men telleþ, and took misteria of Perseus, þat slowþ þat hore Gorgon, þat was so faire, [that she]¹ astonyed men þat byhelde hire wip hir fairnesse. Also þat tyme Frixus and his suster Elles flyþe þe malice and þe pursute of here stepdame, and were adraynt² in þe see þat heet Ellespontus. And for a weþer was i-peynt in þe signe of here schippe, þerfore me feynede þat a wether wip gildene flees bare hem forþ by þe ayer. Laomedon, þe eiþtþe kyng of Sciciones, regnede fifty þere. Amphion and Zethus regned in Thebe, þe³ citee of Grees, and put⁴ out Cadmus. Tros⁴ regnede in Dardania, þis is Frigia,⁵ and werred afterward aþenst Tantalus, kyng of Athene, for þe rauyschyng of Ganymedes. Of þis Tros þe Troians haueþ þat name, and hatte Troians. [B.]⁶ þan þe fable of Iupiter is i-feyned; and so þe rauyschyng of an egle is i-feyned and⁷ ydul. Perseus, Erictus his broþer, fauþt aþenst þe Perses, and⁸ smoot of þe heed of þat hoor Gorgon. Pegasus was a ful swift hors of a womman, oþer⁹ heet Bellefrontys his schip. Ion¹⁰ þe strong man cleped þe men of Athenes Iones by his owne name. Denys, that hatte Liber Pater also, werred wip þe Indes, and bulde þe

TRÉVISA.

and Dionysus¹² Bacchus, other Liber Pater, gouernoure of men of Athenes, was borne abowte this tyme of Semela. And the misterys of Perseus began, whiche did slee a strumpette other hore, Gorgones by name, makenge men beholdenge to meruayle the excellent beaute of here. In whiche tyme Frixus, and Elle his sustyr, dredenge the watches of there steppemoder, were drownede in the see whiche is callede vn to this tyme Ellespontus,¹¹ after the name of his sustyr. Laomedon, the kyng of men of Scitia, the xvijth kyng, reignede 1^u yere. Amphion and Zethus reignede at Thebas in Grece, Cadmus expulsede. Tros, of whom the Troianes toke name, reignede in Dardania, otherwise called Frigia, after that þiffenge batayle to Tantalus kyng of Athenes, for the rape of Ganymedes his son. Perseus, the brother of Eruteus,¹³ þafe batelle ageyne men of Persia for the sleenge of Gorgones. That stronge man called Ion namede men of Athenes Iones after his name. Dionysus,¹² other Liber

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ Added from Cx. ; þat (only), B. ; heo, γ.

² drowned, Cx.

³ in þe, MS. (not a. β. γ.)

⁴ So a. β. γ. ; Troos, MS.

⁵ Frisia, MS.

⁶ Added from a. and Cx.

⁷ an, a. γ. ; in, Cx. ; on, β.

⁸ he, Cx.

⁹ oþer] that, Cx.

¹⁰ So a. and Cx. ; Ione, MS.

¹¹ Elespontus, Harl. MS.

¹² Dionisius, Harl. MS. Similar slight errors have been tacitly corrected in both versions.

¹³ Clerical error for *Erictus* (Erechtheus).

Pelops, nysus¹ fœminas cum viris primus in exercitu habuit.² Pelops, primus Peloponnesensibus³ regnans, Olympiis quoque præfuit; qui tamen postmodum⁴ adversus Ilium⁵ rebellans⁶ a Dardano superatur.⁷ *Augustinus*, *libro octavodecimo*. Temporibus Ayoth, ducis Israel,⁸ floruit Hercules posterior; plane [diversus] ab illo Hercule superius memorato. *Trogus*.⁹ Iste Hercules¹⁰ fortis fuit,¹¹ orbis domitor, Amazonum contritor,¹² Indiæ penetrator, Trojanorum expugnator, Libyæ invasor, Hispaniæ dominator. *Ranulphus*.¹³ Iste Hercules¹⁴ secundum Ovidium in Magno, libro octavo, Antæum¹⁵ gigantem¹⁶ Libyæ¹⁷ devicit, Geryonem¹⁸ gigantem regem Hispaniæ occidit, armenta ejus in signum victoriæ per Italiam duxit; ex filia Fauni Latinum regem procreavit; leonem¹⁹ interfecit; hydram serpentem in Lerna palude extinxit; stadium itineris uno²⁰ anhelitu percurrit; agonem²¹ Olympicum instauravit; Centauros contrivit; apud Gades insulas columnas posuit; duodecim immensos labores consummavit. *Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavo decimo*. Et cum post insignes virtutes

¹ *pariter in armis*, C.D. (*ad arma*, D.)

² *primus . . . habuit*] sociavit, C.D.

³ *Peloponensibus*, MSS.

⁴ *tamen postmodum*] postea, C.D.

⁵ *illum*, C. (not D.)

⁶ *rebellando*, B.

⁷ *superantur*, C. (not D.)

⁸ *ducis Israel*] om. C.D.

⁹ So A.B.C.D.; *Titus*, E.

¹⁰ *Iste Hercules*] om. C.D.

¹¹ *fuit*] om. C.D.

¹² *Hercules*, ins. C. (not D.)

¹³ *Ranulphus*] om. B.

¹⁴ *Hic*, C.D.

¹⁵ *Antheum*, A.; *Atheum*, E.

¹⁶ *regem*, ins. A.

¹⁷ *Libyæ*] om. B; *Libiæ*, MSS., as usual.

¹⁸ *Cerionem*, A.

¹⁹ *leonem*] om. B.

²⁰ *unico*, B.

²¹ *Aganum*, A.B.; *Aganem*, E.

citee Nisan.¹ Þis Denys ordeyned first wommen in his oost wip² men. Pelops,³ þe firste kyng of Peloponens, was heed of þe Olimpies; ^{TREVISIA.}⁴ neuerþeles afterward he was aʒenst Troye, and ouercome of Dardanus. In Aiioth his tyme, duke of Israel, þe latter Hercules, anoþer þan we spak of raper, was in his floures. *Trogus.* Þis Hercules was strong, and temede þe world, and ouercome þe Amazones, and passed in to Inde and werred þere, and ouercome þe Troians, and werred in Libya, and was lord of⁵ Spayne. *R.* Þis Hercules ouercome Anteus,⁶ þe geant of Libya, so seiþ Ouyde, in Magno, libro octavo; and slowʒ Geryon þe geaunt, kyng of Spayne, and ladde his catel and his bestes þorw Italy in tokyn of þe maistrye; and he gat þe kyng Latyn on þe douzter of Faunus;⁷ and he slowʒ a leon; he slowʒ þe serpent Ydra in þe water Lerna; and he ran a furlong at oon breeþ; and he restored þe tornementis and ioustes of Mont Olymp; he ouercome þe Centaures; and piʒte his pilers in þe see at þe Ilondes Gades; and he dede twelue grete dedes. *Trevisa.* Þe Centaures were men of Thessalia; þey were þe firste þat chastede⁸ hors, and ladde hem wip brydels, and ride⁹ on hors bakkes. *Augustinus, libro 18°.* And after his grete dedes he fille in a

Pater, fiʒhtenge ageyne men of Ynde, made that cite callede *MS. HARL. 2261.* Nisan. This Dionysus hade firste women mixte with men in his hoste. Pelopos reignede firste amonge men of Peloponens, and also at Olympus, whiche rebellenge ageyne Troianes was ouercommen by Dardanus. The later Hercules was in the tymes of Aiioth, duke and governoure of Israel. This myʒhty Hercules was the tamer of the worlde, the victor of þe Amazones, the perescher of Ynde, the expugnator of Troianes, the entrer of Libya, the lorde of Speyne. *R.* This Hercules, after Ouidius, in Methamorphoseon libro octauo, ouercome the gigaunte of Libia at Athenes, and did sle Geryon the gigaunte and kyng of Speyne, causenge his bestes to be brouʒhte thro Ytaly in a signe of victory, gettenge of the doʒhter of Faunus¹⁰ Latinus the kyng; whiche did slee also a lyon and a grete serpente in a marras callede Lerna, rennenge the space of a forelonge with oon brethe, settenge pillores at the yle of Gades; whiche finischede xij. huge labores. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo.* Whiche hauenge as a disease intollerable after his grete labores, commaundede hym selfe to be caste

¹ So all the MSS.² *her men*, MS. (not *a.* or *Cx.*)³ *Pelops*, MS. (not *a.*)⁴ So *a.*, *Cx.*; *Olimpus*, MS.⁵ of] in, MS. (only).⁶ *Antheus*, MSS., and so below.⁷ So *γ.*; *Fanus*, MS., *a. β.*⁸ *chastised*, *Cx.*⁹ *rode*, *Cx.*¹⁰ *Fannius*, Harl. MS.

Hercules
seipsum
comburit.

morbum, quo vehementer languebat, ferre non posset, seipsum in Oeta¹ monte Hispaniæ² cremandum flammis tradidit. *Ranulphus*. Qui sunt isti duodecim³ im-
mensi sive inhumani labores, quos⁴ consummavit, patet per Claudianum libro sexto de raptu Proserpinæ, et⁵ per Virgilium *Æneidos*⁶ octavo, et per Ovidium *Met.* nono libro. Quorum primus labor fuit de Centauris quos devicit; secundus fuit⁷ interfectio et exco-
riatio leonis in Nemeæa⁸ silva; tertius⁹ effugatio Harpyiarum;¹⁰ quartus tangitur in Lucano, libro nono, scilicet¹¹ ab-
latio pomorum aureorum de horto septem filiarum Atlantis,¹² sopito dracone custode; quintus catenatio Cerberi devorantis Pirithoum¹³ in raptu Proserpinæ; sextus oppressio Diomedis regis Thraciæ, qui pavit equos suos carne humana; septimus extinctio hydræ serpentis in Lerna palude; octavus devictio Acheloi¹⁴ in varias formas se mutantis;¹⁵ nonus prostratio Antæi¹⁶ gigantis Libyæ, qui terram tangendo semper¹⁷ vires resumebat; decimus occisio Caci,¹⁸ qui dicebatur¹⁹ ig-

¹ *Ceta*, A.B.D.; *Creta*, E.

² So MSS. for *Thessaliæ*; but the error may be due to Higden.

³ *xii.*] om. C.D.

⁴ *Hercules*, ins. B.D.

⁵ *et*] om. C.D.

⁶ *Æneidos*] om. C.D.

⁷ *fuit*] om. C.D.

⁸ *Menæa*, MSS.

⁹ *est*, ins. A.

¹⁰ *Erpiarum*, A.; *Arpiarum*, D.E.

¹¹ *scilicet*] om. C.D.

¹² *Atthlantis* or *Athlantis*, MSS., and similarly elsewhere.

¹³ *Pirotheum*, B.; *Pritonem*, C.; *Pirithoum*, D.E.

¹⁴ *Achiloi*, A.; *Archeloi*, D.

¹⁵ *mutans*, E. (clerical error.)

¹⁶ *Anthei*, MSS., and so below.

¹⁷ *super*, B.

¹⁸ *Casi*, A.; *Eaci*, B.

¹⁹ *dicitur*, C.D.

grete siknesse pat was so hard¹ and sore pat he myȝte not endure. Perfore he prewe hym self in to a fuyre, and brend hym self. [R].² Claudianus, libro 6^o, de raptu Proserpinæ, and Virgil, Æneidos 8^o, and Ouide, Methamorphoses, libro 9^o, rekenep þe grete dedes pat Hercules dede. Of þe whiche dedes þe firste was þe victorie pat he hadde of þe Centaures. Þe secounde þe sleynge and þe hildynge of a leon in a wode pat hatte Nemea.³ Þe þridde þe chasyng of þe foules pat hatte Arpies. Þe ferþe þe takynge of goldene apples out of þe orcheȝerd of þe seuene douȝters of Atlas⁴ þe geant, and þe sleynge of the dragon pat kepte þe place.⁵ Þe fifte þe chaynyng and teienge of þe grete hound Cerberus pat deuoured Piri-thous⁶ in þe rauischynge of Proserpina. Þe sixte þe berynge doun of Diomedede, þe kyng of Thracia, pat fedde his hors wiȝ manis⁷ flesche. The seuene þe destroyenge of Ydra þe serpent in þe water Lerna.⁸ Þe eiȝþe⁹ þe ouercommynge of Achelous, pat chaunged ofte tyme in to dyuers liknes and schappes. Þe nynþe þe prowynge doun of Anteus, þe geant of Libya, pat took aȝen myȝte and strengþe as ofte as he touched þe erþe. Þe tenþe þe sleynge¹⁰ of the cat pat cast out fuyre of his mouȝ,

TREVISA.

in to a grete fire, in Ceta an hille of Speyne. R. Whiche MS. HARL. labores were not like to be the labores of man, as hit is 2261. schewede by the poete Claudianus, libro vj^{to} de raptu Proserpinæ, and by Virgilius, Eneyd, libro viij^o, and by Ouidius in Metamorphoseon libro nono. The firste was takenge aweye of apples of golde from the gardyn of þe vii. doȝhters of Atlas,⁴ the dragon and keper of theyme beenge in slepe. The secounde was of the grete bestes callede Centauri, whom he ouercome. The thridde was the sleenge of a lyon, in a woode callede Menena. The iiij^{the} was the chasenge of Arpines. The v^{the} was the chenenge of the grete dogge callede Cerberus, whiche did sle Pirithous⁶ in the takenge aweye of Proserpina. The vj^{the} was the oppression of Diomedes kyng of Thracia, whiche fedde his horse with the flesche of man. The vij^{the} was the sleenge of the serpente in that marras callede Lerna. The viij^{the} was the victory of Achelo[u]s, chaungenge hym in to diuerse formes. The ix^{the} was the victory of Anteus the gigaunte of Libya, whiche encreasede in strenghte as he towchede the erthe. The x^{the} labore was the sleenge of Cacus, whom men seide to euomette fire. The xj^{the} was the sleenge of

Hoc Lucanus affirmat libro suo nono.

¹ *hard*] payneful, Cx.² Added from a. and Cx.³ *Nenia*, Cx.; *Menia*, MSS.⁴ *Athlas*, MSS., as usual; which conversely have *Tracia* below.⁵ *palce*, Cx.⁶ *Pirytheus*, and *Peritheus*, MSS.⁷ So a.; *maris*, MS.; *mennis*, Cx.⁸ So a.; *Berna*, MS.⁹ *echt*, Cx.¹⁰ *slynge*, MS. (clerical error.)

Quid de
ejus labo-
ribus sta-
tuendum.

Hercules
varii.

nem evomere;¹ undecimus interfectio apri Arcadiæ; duodecimus supportatio cœli, donec Atlas fatigatus respiraret. Sed² in tertiodecimo labore, videlicet³ induendo se⁴ interulam⁵ Dejaniræ,⁶ extinctus est. In quo notandum⁷ est quod isti labores Herculi attributi vel solam⁸ sonant historiam, ut secundus de leone et undecimus de apro; vel solummodo spectant ad integumentum morum,⁹ et tunc fabulosum est quod explicant, quamvis¹⁰ veritatem implicant, quales sunt tertius de fuga Harpyiarum, et quartus de raptu pomorum; vel etiam¹¹ sonant historiam mixtam cum fabula, ut cæteri omnes labores. Est etiam hic¹² advertendum quod non videtur unus et idem Hercules fuisse, cui¹³ isti duodecim labores¹⁴ attribuuntur; tum¹⁵ quia Augustinus de Civitate, libro octavodecimo, capitulo quartodecimo,¹⁶ dicit¹⁷ quod alius fuit Hercules cui ista duodecim attribuuntur et alius qui¹⁸ Antæum in palæstra¹⁹ devicit, et tamen Boethius²⁰ in fine quarti libri de consolatione narrat istud²¹ de Antæo²² inter duodecim labores²³ Herculis; tum etiam quia Augustinus²⁴ ubi supra et etiam²⁵ in capitulo xix^o. dicit multos fuisse Hercules; et etiam²⁵ dicit quod Sampson propter mirabilem fortitudinem putatus est Hercules.

¹ *evomuisse*, C. (not D.)

² *Sed*] om. C.D.

³ *videlicet*] om. C.D.

⁴ *se*] om. C.D.

⁵ *interulam*, A.

⁶ *Dejaniris*, B.; *Dianiræ*, D.

⁷ *sciendum*, C.D.

⁸ *solam*] om. B.

⁹ *moralem*, B.

¹⁰ *licet*, C.D.

¹¹ *etiam*] om. B.

¹² *hic*] om. C.D.

¹³ *omnes*, ins. B.

¹⁴ *ingentia facta*, C.D.

¹⁵ *etiam*, ins. C.D.

¹⁶ 9^o, A.B.C.D. The true reference is to c. 12.

¹⁷ *dicit*] om. B.

¹⁸ *qui*] om. E.

¹⁹ *palustra*, B.

²⁰ *Boecius* or *Boetius*, MSS.

²¹ *illud*, B.D.

²² *de Antæo*] om. C.D.

²³ *labores*] om. B.

²⁴ *alius*, A.

²⁵ *etiam*] m. C.D.

as me seide. Þe enleueneþ þe sleyng of þe boor in Arcadia.¹ Þe twelfþe þe berynge and þe holdyng vp of heuene, while Atlas þe geant reste hym, whan he was wery. But in þe þrittenþe he dede on a corsette of Ianyr,² and deide. Here take hede þat þis³ twelfe dedes þat beþ accounted to Hercules sowneþ þe storie as it is i-tolde; soo doop the secounde of þe leon, and þe enleueneþ of þe boor; oper he perteyneþ onliche þe couerynge of þewes; and þanne þe tale is a fable, but þe menyng is ful of trowþe and of soþnesse. So is þe þridde of þe arpies, and þe fourþe of þe takyng and rauyschyng of þe goldene apples. Other he tokeneþ and sowneþ the storye medled wip a fable; so doop alle his oper dedes of pese twelue.⁴ Also here take hede, it semeþ þat it is nouzt al oon Hercules þat pese twelfe dedes beþ accounted to; fore⁵ Seint Austyn, de Civitate, libro 18, capitulo 14^o, seip þat it was an oper Hercules þat [pese dedes beþ accounted⁶ to, and anoper Hercules þat]⁷ ouercome Anteus þe geant in wrastlyng. And also Boecius, in fine quarti libri de Consolatione telleþ þe⁸ same of Anteus among þe twelue dedes of Hercules. Also Seint Austyn, ubi supra, et capitulo 19^o, seip þat þere were meny Hercules; and also Sampson for his wonder strengþe was accounted Hercules.

TREVISA.

the boore of Arcadia.¹ The xijth labore was the suppor- MS. HARL.
tation of heuyn while that Atlas beenge wery did reste; 2261.
whiche diede or that he hade fullefyllede the xijth labore. — —
Of whom hit is to be attendede, þat these labores attribute
to Hercules sounde other a story, as that of the lyon, and
the xjth of the boore; other elles thei longe oonly to the
couerenge of maneres, and then hit is a fable that thei
expresse, þauzhe thei do implicate trawthe, as the thrydde
and iiijth labore were of the takenge aweye of the apples;
other elles thei sownde a story mixte with a fable, as alle
other labores. Also hit is to be attendede, that pese xij.
labores be not to be attribute to oon Hercules, for as Seynte
Austyn seythe, De Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo,
capitulo quarto decimo,⁹ that there was an other Hercules
to whom these xij. labores were attribute, then that
Hercules whiche ouercome Antheus the gigaunte of Pales-
tria.¹⁰ And Boecius, quarto libro de Consolatione Philo-
sophiæ, rehersethe that of Antheus among the xij. labores of
Hercules. Also Seynte Austyn seithe that þer were mony
Hercules, and also Sampson was trawede to haue be namede

¹ *Archadia*, MSS., as usual.

² So MSS.; *Dianier*, Cx. (i.e.,
Dejanira.)

³ *these*, Cx.

⁴ So *a.* and Cx.; *twelue dedes*, MS.

⁵ *too, for, a.*

⁶ *aretted*, Cx.

⁷ Added from *a.* and Cx.

⁸ *þe*] *that*, Cx.

⁹ The numbers are so written at
length.

¹⁰ It is possible that the translator's
Latin text was corrupt.

Et in libello¹ Phrygii Daretis de bello Trojano Jason ipse qui quæsit pellem² auream apud Colchos³ cognominatus est Hercules. Unde illud Ovidii tertio-decimo Metamorphoseon :

Mœnia sub furti Trojana⁴ sub Hercule,⁵

et cætera. Et⁶ Ovidius octavo Met. attribuit interfectionem⁷ apri Arcadiæ Meleandro,⁸ et etiam Met. septimo attribuit fugam Harpyiarum filiis Boreæ, scilicet⁹ Zoe et Calai.¹⁰ Unde dicitur a nonnullis sciolis¹¹ quod Hercules sit potius cognomen virorum illustrium, qui virtute et audacia singulares apparuerunt,¹² quod etiam nominis hujus interpretatio sonare videtur. Dicitur enim¹³ Hercules ab *heros*, quod est vir, et *cleos*, gloria; quasi vir gloriosus.

Hercules
quid
significet.

CAP. XVIII.

*De Græcorum fabulis, tempore potissimum Aod inventis.*¹⁴

Fabularum inventor Æsopus. *Eusebius in Chronicis.* Tempore Ayoth potissime in Græcia inventæ sunt fabulæ; et dicitur quod Æsopus primus¹⁵ eas invenerit ad exornandum¹⁶ veritatem

¹ bello, E.; libro, D.

² vellus, B.

³ apud Colchos] om. C.D.

⁴ Trojana] So D.; Trojani, A.E.

⁵ The true reading is :

“Mœnia qui forti Trojana
sub Hercule cepit.”

Ov. *Met.* xiii. 23.

⁶ Similiter, C.D.

⁷ illud, B.

⁸ So MSS. for *Meleagro*. See Ovid. *Met.* viii. 270.

⁹ scilicet] om. C.D.

¹⁰ Zethes and Calais, sons of Boreas, are mentioned by Ovid, *Met.* vi. 716; but Higden's statement is a mere blunder.

¹¹ dicitur . . . sciolis] videtur plerisque, C.D.

¹² videbantur, the rest of the chapter being omitted, in C.D.

¹³ autem, A.

¹⁴ No title in MSS.

¹⁵ primus] om. E.

¹⁶ exorandum, B.

And Frigius Dares,¹ in his book of bataille of Troye, seip pat Iason pat gat² þe weper wip the³ goldene flees at Colchos had a surname, and was i-cleped Hercules. Þerfore Ouid, Methamorphoses 13^o, seip : Menia vnder furt⁴ and þe Troians vnder Hercules. And Ouidius, 8^o Methamorphoses, acountep⁵ the sleynge of þe boor of Arcadia to Meleandrus ;⁶ and also 7^o 7^o Methamorphoses acountep þe chasyng of þe arpies to Boreas his sones, pat heet Zoas and Calaius.⁸ Þerfore meny wise men telleþ þat Hercules is þe surname of noble men and stalworþe, pat passed oper men hugely⁹ in boldenesse and in strengþe. And so hit semeþ al by kyndeliche menyng of þat name ; for Hercules is i-seide of heros,¹⁰ þat is *a man*, and of cleos, þat is *blisse* ; as þey Hercules were to menyng a blisful man and glorious.

TREVISA.

Capitulum octavumdecimum.

Eusebius in Cronica. In Aioth his tyme, nameliche in Grees ffables were i-founde, and¹¹ me seip þat Esopus fonde first fables for to hiȝte¹² kyndeliche soopnesse ;¹³ ffor þe

Hercules, for his meruellous strenȝhte. Also hit is ex-MS. HARL. 2261. pressede in the boke of Frigius Daretis, of the batelle of Troy, that Iason, whiche did feche the fleece of golde at Colchos, was callede Hercules. Also Ouidius, in libro octavo Metamorphoseon, ȝiffethe that labore of the sleenge of the boore of Arcadia to Melandrus other Melander. For that name of Hercules was ȝiffen to nowble men for a singuler vertu and audacite, whiche thyng semethe to appere by interpretation of that name. For this worde, Hercules, is seide of this worde, eros, whiche is *a man*, and cleos, that is *joy*, as a glorious man.

Capitulum decimum octavum.

Eusebius in Cronica. Fables were founde specially in Grece in the tyme of Aioth, and hit is seide that Ysopus founde them firste to onorne trawthe naturalle, leste the secrete

¹ So Cx. ; Daret, MS. a. β. γ.

² wan, Cx.

³ the] om. a.

⁴ So a. and Cx. ; fruit, MS. Trevisa cannot be blamed for making no sense of a corrupt text ; nor the Harleian translator for leaving it out.

⁵ arreteth, Cx.

⁶ Meleandris, MS. (only).

⁷ So a. β. γ., Cx. ; 17, MS.

⁸ So a. β. γ., Cx. ; Calcanis, MS.

⁹ greetely, Cx.

¹⁰ So Cx. ; eros, MS.

¹¹ as, MS. (only.)

¹² So a. β. γ. ; hiȝte wip, MS.

¹³ Sentence varied in Cx.

De varia
fabularum
ratione.

naturalem, ne scilicet vilescerent secreta naturæ. Unde secundum diversas rerum naturas et qualitates confinxerunt deorum nomina et actiones. *Alexander in Mythol.* Utpote quod post diluvium homines de saxis et de arboribus¹ nasci dicuntur, ab antiquissima² hominum cohabitatione confictum est. Nam ante factas domos homines aut in cavis arboribus aut saxeis³ speluncis manebant; vel certe, dum deerat usus casarum, ipsi homines more pecorum vagabantur.⁴ *Augustinus de Civitate, libro xviii^o, capitulo xiii^o.* Post mortem⁵ Josue usque ad bellum Trojanum confictæ sunt fabulæ in Græcia; ut quod ex impetuosa libidine Vulcani cum Minerva Erichthonius⁶ cum pedibus dracontinis fuerit progenitus,⁷ fabulosum est et poeticum. Re autem vera in templo Vulcani et Minervæ, quod ambo Athenis commune habebant,⁸ inventus est puer expositus, dracone involutus, qui eum significabat⁹ magnum futurum. Et sic¹⁰ propter commune amborum templum dicebatur utriusque filius; cum tamen ejus parentes fuissent¹¹ ignoti. Item de Triptolemo,¹² quod jubente Cerere anguibus portatus alitibus indigentibus terris frumenta volando contulerit. Item de Minotauro, quod fuit bestia inclusa labyrintho,¹³ quo cum intrassent¹⁴ homines,

Expositio
fabulæ de
Erich-
thonio ;

et de Trip-
tolema ;

et de Mino-
tauro et
Centauris.

¹ Transposed in B.

² *antiqua*, C.D.

³ *in saxeis*, C.D.

⁴ Slightly varied in C.D.

⁵ *Post mortem*] A diebus, C.D.

⁶ *Ericktonius*, MSS.

⁷ *esse progenitum*, C.D.

⁸ *habeant*, A.

⁹ *signavit*, C.D.

¹⁰ *sic*] om. C.D.

¹¹ *essent*, C.D.

¹² *Tritolomo*, MSS.

¹³ *laberinto* or *laborinto*, MSS.

¹⁴ *transissent*, D.

priuite of kynde schulde nouzt be despised: perfore [by]¹ kynde of pinges and by dyuerse manere of doynge pey feyned names and worchyng of goddes. *Alcyn.*² in *Mythologia*. And so he³ feyned pat after pe flood men come of stoones and of trees; bote pat was i-feyned for pe manere wonynge of men in olde tyme; for, ere⁴ housynge were i-made, men wonede in holownesse of treen oþer in dennes of erpe and of stonnes, and som wente aboute as it were bestes. *Augustinus, libro 18º, capitulo 13º*. After Iosue his deep anon to pe bataille of Troye fables were i-feyned in Grecia. As pat Vulcanus⁵ in grete hete and brennyng of leccherie wip Minerua gat Eructonius⁶ i-foted as a dragon, pat is a fable and a poetes feynynge and sawe. But pe soop menyng is pat in pe citee Athene was oo temple of Vlcanus and of Minerua; in pat temple was a childe i-founde byclipped aboute wip a dragoun. Dat bytokened pat pe childe schulde be greet; and for pe childe was i-founde in here bope temple, perfore pe childe was i-cleped hir bope sone. Also Tritholomus, pat was i-bore of fleyngge addres in to nedy londes at pe heste of Cereres⁷ and brouzt hem whete, it is a fable. Also of Minotaurus,⁸ pat was a best i-closed in laborintus, Dedalus his hous; and

TREVISA.

thynges of nature scholde wexe vile. Wherefore thei feynede diuerse names and actiones of goddes after diuerse natures and qualites of thynges. *Alexander in Mythologia*. As thei seide men to haue bene made of stonnes after the grete floode; whiche was a thyng feynede of olde men, for men inhabite other in dennes made of ston, other in holo trees, afore that they hade howses made; other elles, if thei hade not suche habitaciones, thei wente abowte in the maner of bestes. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo, capitulo 13º*. Fables were made in the londe of Grece after the dethe of Iosue vn to the batelle of Troy, as Vulcanus to haue tariede with Minerva, and that Erutonius was geten with the feete of a dragon, whiche is but a fable and a feynede thyng of poetes. Neuerthelesse there was a childe founde in the temple of Vulcanus and of Minerua at Athenes, sette per compassede and wrappede abowte with the taylor of a dragon, whiche signifiede the childe to be a grete man in tyme to comme, whiche childe was callede the childe of Vulcanus and of Minerva, the faders of whom were not knowen in trawthe. Also hit is seide off Tritho-

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ Added from conjecture only.² So also *a. β. γ.*, Cx. Read *Alexander*.³ *he*] om. MS.⁴ So *a.*; *here*, MS.; Cx. omits twenty words.⁵ *Vlcanus*, MS.. *a. β.*; and so below (not *γ.*).⁶ So *a. β. γ.* (for *Erichthonius*); *Eructorius*, MS.; *Eruconius*, Cx.⁷ So all MSS. (or *Cereres*.) The error is certainly due to Trevisa.⁸ So *β.*; *Mynataurus*, MS., *a. γ.*

inextricabili errore non possent¹ exire. Item de Centauris, quod equorum hominumque natura fuerint commixta.² Item de Cerbero, quod sit triceps inferorum canis. Item de Phrixo et Helle sorore,³ quod vecti ariete volaverint.⁴ Item de Gorgone meretrice,⁵ quod fuit crinita serpentibus et aspicientes vertebat⁶ in lapides. ⁷De Bellerophonte, quod equo pennis volante vectus sit,⁸ cujus equus dicitur⁹ Pegasus. ¹⁰De Amphione,¹¹ quod¹² citharæ suavitate lapides mulserit et attraxerit. ¹³De fabro Dædalo et ejus filio Icaro¹⁴ quod pennis coaptatis volaverint.¹⁵ ¹⁶De Antæo quem necavit Hercules, quod sit¹⁷ filius Terræ propter¹⁸ quod cadens fortior surrexit.¹⁹ *Isidorus Etymologiarum, libro undecimo.*²⁰ Item quod Geryon gigas, rex Hispaniæ ab Hercule occisus, triplici forma constare describitur, fabula²¹ est. Nam fuerunt ibi tres fratres tantæ concordiæ, ut in illis quasi unus animus videretur.²² Quod Gorgones meretrices, crinitæ ut serpentes, unumque oculum habentes, convertebant aspicientes in lapides, fabula est. Sed fuerunt tres sorores unius pulchritu-

Etiam de Cerbero, Phrixo, Bellerophonte, aliisque.

Vera Geryonis historia explicatur;

ut et Gorgonum meretricum.

¹ poterant, C.D.

² conjuncta, C.D.

³ ejus, ins. B.C.D.

⁴ volaverunt, A.

⁵ meretrice] om. C.D.

⁶ convertebat, C.D.

⁷ Item, ins. C.D.

⁸ volante pennis vectus est, B. dictus est, C.D.

¹⁰ Item, ins. C.D.

¹¹ Orpheone, C. (not D.)

¹² et, B.

¹³ Item, ins. C.D.

¹⁴ Ychario, B.; Ycaro, E.

¹⁵ volaverunt, A.

¹⁶ Item, ins. C.D.

¹⁷ fuit, C.; fuerit, D.

¹⁸ hoc, ins. C. (not D.)

¹⁹ cadens in terram fortior surrexit, C.D.

²⁰ undecimo] 12^o, capitulo 3, C.; li. 13. D. The true reference is to lib. xi. c. 3.

²¹ So B.; fabulata, E., and so below, twice.

²² Nam . . . videretur] om. C.D.

whan men wente into þat hous, þey were so i-briged¹ þat þey TREVISIA.
coupe nouzt come out. Also of Centaures, þat were i-medled
of mankynde and of hors kynde. Also of² Cerberus þe
hound of helle, þat þadde þre heedes. Also of Frixus and
his suster Elle, þat were i-bore of a wether by þe ayer and fli³
as foules. Also of Gorgon þe hore,⁴ þat sche was i-hered wip
adres and torned in to stones men þat byhelde her. Also of
Bellifront, þat he was i-bore of a fleyng hors wip feperes and
wynges; his hors heet Pegasus. Also of Amphion, þat he
plesed stoones, and drew hem to hym wip swetnesse of his⁵ har-
pyng. Also of Dedalus þe carpunter and his sone Icarus,
þat made hem wynges of feperes and fli³e as foules. Also of
Anteus; hym slow³ Hercules. Anteus was þe sone of þe
erþe; þerfore, whan he fel doun, he roos anon a³en in wel more
strengþe. *Isidorus, libro 11^o*. Also Geryon, þe geant kyng of
Spayne, þat was i-slave of Hercules, and was descreued in þre
liknesses and schappes, it is a fable. For þere were þre
breperen so wel acordyng to gedres þat it semed þat þey hadde
oon soule, oon witte, and oon wil. Also þe hoores⁶ Gorgons,
i-hered as serpentes, hadde oon y³e, and tornede in to stones
men þat byhelde hem, it is a fable. But þere were þre sustres

lomis, that corne beenge skarse, he was brouzhte in to the MS. HARL.
aier with bryddes, whiche flyenge brouzhte cornes to londes 2261.
hauenge necessite þer of. Also that Cerberus scholde be
a dogge of helle. Also that Frixus and Elle hys sustyr
cariede with a weder did flye. Also that the ylle dis-
posede woman, Gorgones by name, chaungede men be-
holdenge here into stones. Also of Bellofrons, that he was
cariede with an horse flyenge with wynges, þe horse of whom
was callede Pegasus. Also of Amphion, that he attracte
stones to hym thro the swetenesse off an harpe. Also of
Dedalus, and Icarus his son, that they did flye. Also
that Anteus was the son of the erthe, whom Hercules did
sle, in that he fallenge and towchenge þe erthe was more
stronge when he did aryse. *Isidorus, libro undecimo*. Also
hit is but a fable that Geryon the gigaunte and kyng of
Speyne, sleyne by Hercules, was of thre similitudes. For
there were thre breper of suche concorde that thei were
alle as of oon sawle. That the commune women, Gorgones
by their names, turnede men beholdenge them in to stones,
is but a fable. But there were iij. sustyrs as of oon pul-

¹ begyled, Cx.² of] om. MS.³ flewen, Cx.⁴ strompet, Cx.⁵ his] om. MS.⁶ strompettes, Cx.

dinis, quasi unius oculi;¹ quæ spectatores suos, ac si² lapides essent, obstupeciebant. Item quod fingunt³ tres Sirenes⁴ fuisse ex parte virgines et ex parte volucres, habentes alas et unguas; quarum una voce, altera tuba,⁵ tertia lyra canebat, quæ navigantes trahebant ad naufragia,⁶ fabula est. Sed fuerunt meretrices, quæ quia adhærentes sibi⁷ ducebant ad inopiam, ideo naufragium ingerere dicuntur.⁸ Item quod fingunt Scyllam⁹ fuisse¹⁰ fœminam succinctam capitibus caninis cum latratibus magnis, hoc dicitur¹¹ propter fretum¹² maris Siculi, ubi¹³ navigantes, verticibus¹⁴ concurrentium undarum¹⁵ exterriti, undas latrare putabant.¹⁶ Sic fingunt Hydram serpentem cum novem capitibus, ita¹⁷ quod uno abscisso tria succrescant.¹⁸ Constat Hydram fuisse locum quemdam aquas evoventem,¹⁹ ubi uno meatu clauso multi erumpebant; quod videns²⁰ Hercules locum exussit,²¹ et sic meatus

Sirenes
meretrices
fuerunt.

Quid de
Scylla judi-
candum;

et de
Hydra.

¹ *quasi unius oculi*] om. C.D.

² *ac si*] velut, C.D.

³ *finguntur*, C.D.

⁴ *Sirenes*] om. E.; before *fingunt* in C.D.

⁵ *tibia*, A.C.D.

⁶ *naufragium*, C.D.

⁷ *sibi*] om. B.

⁸ So A. B. C. D.; *ingererebant*, (*ingerere* being followed by *bant* in another hand) E.; perhaps for *ingerere dicebant*.

⁹ *Cillam*, B.

¹⁰ *esse*, C.D.

¹¹ *fit*, C.D.

¹² *sevictum*, B. (*i.e. savitum.*)

¹³ *ubi*] in quo, C.D.

¹⁴ *virtutibus*, C.D.

¹⁵ *aquarum*, C.D.

¹⁶ *astimant*, C.D.

¹⁷ *ita*] om. C.D.

¹⁸ *succrescunt*, C.D.

¹⁹ *vomentem*, B.

²⁰ *quod videns*] quem, B.

²¹ *excussit*, B.

all of oon fairnesse ; men þat byhelde hem [þei]¹ made hem as stille and as stedfast as stones. Also þe þre Sirenes, þat were half maydens, half foules, and hadde wynges and clawes² as haukes ; and oon of hem songe, þat oper pipede, and þe pridde harpede, and drowȝ to hemward schipmen þat seilled in þe see in to shipbruche ;³ it is a fable. But þere were þre hoeres⁴ þat brouȝte men þat vsede hem in to meschief ; and perfore me seide þat þey brouȝte hem to shipbreche. Also [þat]⁵ me feyneþ þat Scylla⁶ was a womman byclipped aboute wiþ hedes of houndes and wiþ grete berkynges of houndes, þat is i-seide for þe⁷ wawes of þe⁸ see Siculus, þat flascheþ and wascheþ vppon a⁹ rokke þat hatte Scylla, makeþ suche manere noyse þat men þat seilleþ þerby beep so aferd þat þey wenep þat þe wawes berkeþ þat wascheþ on þat rokke.¹⁰ So þey feyneþ þat þe serpent Ydra wiþ¹¹ nyne hedes ; and if oon hede were i-smyte of, þanne grewe vp þre for þat oon. Þe soop tale is þat Ydra was somtyme a place þat wonderliche and perilousliche caste vp water ; and ȝif oo water wey were i-stopped, þe water brak vp in meny places and weyes. Hercules seigh þat, and destroyed the swolwe and closede alle þe weies ; þer-

TREVISIA.

critude, whiche meruaylede theire beholders, as if thei were stones. Also that poetes feyne ij. meremaydes to be in parte virgines and in parte bryddes, hauenge wynges and talandes, of whom oon songe with here voyce, an other with a trumpe, þat other with an harpe, whiche drawede men in the see to grete perelles, hit is but a fable. But there were ij. commune women, whiche inducede men drawenge to theym to grete pouerte, wherefore thei were seide to induce men in to grete perelle. Also that thei feyne Scylla⁶ to be a woman succincte with the hedes of dogges, with grete berkenges ; that is seide for the see of Scicille, where in men saylenges and dredenge the turnenges of water þer trawede the water to berke like a dogge. Soe in like wise men feyne Idra, þe serpente, to haue hade ix. hedes, so that oon kytte awei ij. increasede, whiche Idra was a place conteynenge water, and euometenge hit, where of oon place stoppede other broste vp in meny places, whiche thynges Hercules perceyvenge schutte those goenges furthe ; wherefore hit is seyde that Hercules

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ Added from β . and Cx. ; γ . has and.

² *talentes*, Cx.

³ So α . and Cx. (*shipwreke*) ; þe *shippe to breke*, MS.

⁴ So α . and Cx. ; *hors*, MS.

⁵ Added from α . β . γ . and Cx.

⁶ *Scilla*, MS., and *Silla* below.

⁷ þe] om. MS.

⁸ þat, α . β . γ . and Cx.

⁹ a] that, α . β . γ . and Cx.

¹⁰ So α . and Cx. ; *rokkes*, MS.

¹¹ Probably we should read *was wiþ*, or if not, cancel *þat*.

illos ¹ clausit; ² unde et Hydram serpentem extinxisse fingitur. *Isidorus, libro primo, capitulo tricesimo.* ³

De variis
fabularum
generibus.

Fabulæ dicuntur a fando, non quia sunt ⁴ res factæ, sed loquendo fictæ; quas poetæ primo induxerunt triplici de causa. Aut enim causa delectandi, quales sunt apud Plautum et Terentium, et illæ quæ vulgo narrantur; aut etiam ad naturam rerum velandam ⁵ seu exornandam, ⁶ ut quod Vulcanus sit claudus, quia per naturam nunquam rectus est ignis; et quod Chimæra, hominis ætatem exprimens, sit bestia ⁷ triformis; cujus prima pars, adolescentia, est ferox, ut leo; secunda, juvenus, acute videt, ut caprea, seu per luxuriam fervida fœtet, ⁸ ut capra; tertia, senectus, casibus est inflexus, ut ⁹ draco. Sic fabula Hippocentauri, ¹⁰ ex homine et equo mixti, humanæ vitæ velocitatem exprimit. Tertio, fabulæ confinguntur ad mores componendos; ut cum res finguntur ad se loquentes, ut per narrationem fictam ad quod agitur vera significatio referatur; ut apud Horatium de mure et mustela, apud Æsopum ¹¹ et Avianum de vulpe et lupo, et in libro

¹ *illos*] om. C.D.

² *clausit*] om. E.

³ *capitulo 27^o, C.; 32, D.; capitulo 31, A.B.* The true reference is to lib. i. c. 40.

⁴ *sunt*] om. D.

⁵ *velando*, B.

⁶ *exornandum*, B.

⁷ *et*, ins. C. (not D.)

⁸ *fervida fœtet*] fœtida, D.

⁹ *ut caprea . . . inflexus ut*] om. E.

¹⁰ *ypocentauri*, MSS.

¹¹ Various corrupted in MSS.

fore me feynede¹ þat he destroyed Ydra þe serpent. *Isidorus*, TREVISIA.
libro primo, capitulo 13°. Fables beep i-seide of *fando*, þat is
spekyng; nouzt for þei beþ soop indede, but i-feyned in
spekyng. Poetes brouzte in fables for þre skiles; for likyng
of² talkyng and of fayre spekyng; suche beep þe fables
[of Plautus and of Terentius and fables]³ þat beep comoun-
liche i-tolde. Also for helyng and hiþtinge⁴ of kynde; so
me seiþ þat Vulcanus⁵ halteþ, for⁶ þe fuyre is neuere euene;
Vulcanus is i-feyned god of fuyr. So Chimera is i-feyned
a beest of þre manere schappe and kynde, and bytokeneþ þe
ages of mankynde; þe firste þowþe of manhede⁷ is cruel
as a lyoun; þe secounde age of manhede is scharp of siþt as
a goot, oþer stynkeþ by leccherie as a goot; þe þridde age is
elde and boweþ as a dragoun, and wastep alle away. And so
þe fable of Ypocentaurus,⁸ þat was feyned i-medled of hors
kynde and of mankynde, bytokeneþ þe swift passyng of manis
lyf. Also fables beep i-feyned for derke and faire manere
spekyng of þewes; as whan me feyneþ þat þinges þat konneþ no
resoun spekeþ hem self, þat by þe tale þat is i-feyned þe soop
by tokenyng may be remeued [to þat]⁹ þat is soperliche i-doo
in dede. So Oras¹⁰ spekeþ of þe Mous and þe Wesel, and Esopus
and Avenet of þe Fox and of þe Wolf, and in libro Iudicum

did slee Idra the serpente. *Isidorus, libro primo, capitulo* MS. HARL.
tricesimo primo. Hit is to be attended that poetes in- 2261.
ducede fables for iij. especialle causes. Oon was for cause
of pleasure and delectacion, as Plautus¹¹ and Terentius do
reherse, and also the fables that be rehersed of commune
peple. An other cause was for nature to be couerede and
onornede that as a figmente callede chimera, expressenge
the age of a man, scholde be of a triplicate nature. The
firste parte of whom, that is adolescency, is cruelle as a
lyon. The secounde is youthe, scharpe of siþhte, or elles
ille sauoreng like to a goote. The thrydde is age, de-
clynenge to febleness like to a dragon. Therefore hit
may be schewede that fables were ordeinede to the com-
posicion and cause of vertuous exercise, that thauþhe
thynges be feynede the significacion of theyme is profit-
able, as in Oratius of the mowse and wesylle, in Ysope
and Arrian of the fox and of the wulfe, and Demosthenes¹²

¹ *feyneþ*, a. β. γ.

² So a. β. γ. Cx.; and, MS.

³ Added from a. β. γ. and Cx.

⁴ *helthe and enhauncing*, Cx.

⁵ *Vlcanus*, MS., here and below.

⁶ for me seiþ, MS., a. (not β. γ.)

⁷ *manhod*, a.

⁸ Read *Hippocentaurus*, but the

barbarous form indicates the false
derivation; cf. *Ypocras*, *Ypolita*,
&c.

⁹ Added from a. β. γ. Cx.

¹⁰ *Orace*, Cx.

¹¹ *Plautus*, or *Plauttus*, Harl.
MS., and so below.

¹² *Demostines*, Harl. MS.

Judicium de lignis Libani, et apud Demosthenem de lupis et canibus ad liberationem oratorum confictis.¹ *Ranulphus*.² Et hoc est quod dicit Augustinus libro De Mendacio: "Fabulæ," inquit, "licet³ veritatem in se "non⁴ habeant, faciunt tamen in re significata."⁵ *Augustinus, libro tertio, capitulo tertio*.⁶ Auctoritate etiam Romana firmatum est quod Æneas ex matre dea Venere sit genitus; quod Romulus ex patre deo Marte⁷ sit genitus. Sed ego non credo, sicut nec Varro Romanus historiographus doctus credidit; dicens latenter utile esse civibus,⁸ ut viri fortes, etiam si falsum sit, se credant ex diis progenitos, ut eo modo animus humanus, velut divinæ stirpis⁹ fiduciam gerens, res majores aggrediendas præsumat audacius, agat vehementius, consummet¹⁰ felicius. *Alexander in Mythol. Fabularum*, teste Macrobio super somnium Scipionis, aliæ causa¹¹ delectationis¹² confinguntur, quales¹³ sunt¹⁴ comœdiæ¹⁵ Menandri et Terentii,¹⁶ et hæ ad philosophos non pertinent. Aliæ vero utilitatis causa ad exhortationem confinguntur, in quibus aut ipsa materia aut¹⁷ narra-

¹ Varied verbally and slightly transposed in C.D.

² Reference added from B.

³ *quod licet fabulæ*, A.

⁴ *non*] om. E.

⁵ This passage is omitted in C.D. The words are the same but much transposed in B.

⁶ 30, B. The text is correct.

⁷ *Marte sit genitus*] et matre deo generetur, C.; ex patre deo Marte generetur, D.

⁸ *civitatibus*, C.D.

⁹ *divina stirpe*, C.D.

¹⁰ *consummat*, E.

¹¹ *causa*] om. A.

¹² *tantum*, ins. C.D.

¹³ *cujusmodi*, C.D.

¹⁴ *sunt*] om. B.

¹⁵ *quales*, ins. C.D.

¹⁶ *Menander seu Terentius conscripserunt*, C.D.

¹⁷ *et*, C.D.

of þe treen of Libanus ; and so spekeþ Demosthenes¹ of wolfes and houndes i-feyned for þe delyueraunce of þe advoketes and ditoures.² **RE.** And þat is þat Seynt Austyn seiþ in his book De Mendacio. Fables, as seiþ Seynt Austyn, þeyʒ þey haue no sopenesse in ham self, nopeles þey makeþ sopenesse in þing þat þei³ betokeneþ.⁴ *Augustinus, libro 3^o, capitulo 3^o.* By auctorite of þe Romayns it was affermed þat þe goddes Venus was Enyas his moder, and þat god Mars was Romulus his fader. But I trowe not so ; Varro⁵ troweþ it nouʒt, þe writere of stories of Rome, þat seiþ priueliche, it were profitable to citeseyns þat stronge men and orpede trowe⁶ þat þey ben i-gete⁷ of goddes, þeyʒ it be false ; þat in þat manere þe men hertes schulde be þe boldere, and haue trust in þe lynage⁸ of goddes, and auntre⁹ hem to þe grettere dedes, and doon¹⁰ grete dedes wip þe more boldenesse and myʒt in trist of gracious ende by cause þat þey holdeþ hem self of þe kynde of goddes.¹¹ *Alexander in Mythologia.* Macrobius super somnium Scipionis seiþ þat som fables beþ i-feyned by cause of likynge ; suche beþ of Menander and Terentius, and suche longeþ nouʒt to filosofres. And som fables beþ i-feyned by cause of profiʒt in excitynge and conforte ; in þe whiche fables þe matiere, þat me spekeþ of, oþer þe

TREVISA.

of wulfes and dogges, made to the deliuerance of poetes. Seynte Austyn acordethe to this, libro De Mendacio, seyenge, thauʒhe fables be not trewe, neuertheles thei cause trawthe in the thyngge significate by theyme. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro tertio, capitulo tertio.* Also hit is confirmate by the auctorite of the Romanes that Eneas was geten of that goddesse callede Venus, and that Romulus was gotten of that godde callede Mars ; but y ʒiffe not credence to that seienge, neither Varro the writer of stories of the Romanes ʒaffe credence þerto, seyenge, Hit is profitable that men of nobilite ʒiffe to credence þeim to be geten of goddes, and also to citesynnes, that the herte of man bolde thro hit scholde presume and be more bolde to go to grete thynges. *Alexander, in Mythologia.* As Macrobius rehersethe of the dreames of Scipio, somme fables be feynede for cause of delectation, as the fables of Menander and of Terentius ; and thei do not perteyne to filosofres. Somme be feynede for cause of vtillite to the exhortacion of peple, in whom other þat mater, other

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ Demostenes, MSS.² lawers, Cx.³ hit, a. ; a., γ.⁴ nethes they represente and enduce to mannes mynde sothnesse that they bitokene and signefye, Cx.⁵ So Cx. ; Farro, MS.⁶ trowed, Cx.⁷ were bigeten, Cx.⁸ lignage, Cx.⁹ auenture, Cx.¹⁰ do, a. β. γ. and Cx.¹¹ Clause slightly varied in Cx.

tionis ordo de re ficta et¹ fecte,² (hoc est³ falsum per falsum) narratur, ut patet in fabulis Æsopi et Aviani. Et nec istæ ad philosophos⁴ spectant. Aut etiam res vera per ficta narratur, quales sunt fictitiæ Hesiodi et Orphei de deorum actu et progenie; et hujusmodi⁵ non est fabula sed fabulosa narratio, quæ si fiat per obscena, turpia, vel monstruosa, non spectat ad philosophos⁴ nec ad theologos; sed illa quæ narrantur per pia et honesta ad philosophos pertinent. Sic Plato finxit quendam militem Er⁶ nomine surrexisse a mortuis,⁷ et multa de animæ immortalitate narraſſe; sic⁸ finxit Tullius Scipionem somniasse de animæ immortalitate.⁹ *Ranulphus*.¹⁰ Et Boethius finxit Philosophiam in specie puellæ sibi¹¹ apparuisse. ¹² His modis¹³ poterit theologus uti temperate, excepto penultimo¹⁴ modo. *Petrus*.¹⁵ Tempore Ayoth Apollo ille posterior,¹⁶ filius Latonæ secundum traditionem Græcorum, artem medicinæ invenit, et lyram condidit.

Apollo
medicinæ
et lyræ
inventor.

Alii lyræ
conditorem
Mercurium
asserunt.

Ranulphus.¹⁷ Veruntamen, secundum Isidorum libro tertio Etym., Mercurius postmodum sub diebus¹⁸ Ge-

¹ *aut*, B.

² *et*, ins. B.

³ *quando*, ins. B.

⁴ *spectant . . . philosophos*] om. C.D.

⁵ So A.; *hujus*, E.

⁶ *Eer*, B.

⁷ *a mortuis*] om. B.

⁸ *sicut*, C. (not D.)

⁹ *sic . . . immortalitate*] om. B.

¹⁰ *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.

¹¹ *sibi*] om. C.D.

¹² *Omnibus*, ins. C.D.

¹³ *prædictis*, ins. C.D.

¹⁴ *ultimo*, B.

¹⁵ *Petrus*] om. C.D.

¹⁶ *Mercurius*, ins. C.D.

¹⁷ *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.

¹⁸ *tempore*, C.D.

ordre of tellynge of þe þing þat is i-feyned is feynyngliche. **TREVISA.**
 i-tolde; þat is to menyng, oo fals is tolde by a noþer false. —
 So it fareþ in Esopus his fables and in Auian his fables also; .
 and þese fables longeþ nouȝt to filosofres.¹ Also somtyme
 a sop sawe is i-tolde by a feynyng² tale; and soche were þe
 feynynges of Hesiodus³ and of Orpheus, whan he spekeþ⁴ of
 dyuers dedes and kynde of goodes;⁵ and such a tale is no fable,
 but a tale liche a fable. And if suche a tale is i-tolde by lik-
 nesse of foule þing and harlotrie, þan it longeþ nouȝt too phi-
 losofres [neþer to dyuynes; but siche as beþ tolde by liknesse
 of feirnesse and of honeste perteyneþ to filosofris].⁶ So
 Plato feynede þat a knyȝt, þat heet Er, aros from⁷ deþ to
 lyue, and tolde meny þinges of þe euerlastyng lyf of manis
 soule. **R.** And Boys⁸ feynede þat Filosofye appered to
 hym in þe lyknesse of a mayde; in þis manere may a deyn⁹
 vse ensamples manerliche in his talkyng and spekyng.
Petrus. In Aioth his tyme þe lattre Apollo,¹⁰ þat was Latona
 his¹¹ sone, as þe Grees telleþ, fond vþ þe art of phisik and made
 harpe.¹² **R.** Noþeles Isidorus, libro 3^o, Etym., seiþ þat Mercu-

the ordre of the narracion of the thyng y-feynede, that **MS. HARL.**
 is feynede falsely, and tellede by a fals thyng; and these **2261.**
 fables perteyne not to a philosophre; as the fables of Isope
 and Auian. Other elles a trewe thyng is rehersed by a
 feynede thyng, as the seyenges of Esiodus and of Orpheus
 of the acte and progeny of goddes; and that is not a
 fable, but a fabulous narracion; whiche perteyne not to
 filosofres and to diuines. But fables whiche be re-
 hersed by meke thynges and honeste, as Plato feynede a
 knyȝhte, Er by name, to haue risen from dethe, and to
 haue schewede mony thynges of the immortalite of the
 sawle. Soe in lyke wise Tullius feynede Scipio to haue
 dreamede of the immortalite of the sawle. **R.** Also Boe-
 tius, the grete clerke, feynede philosophy to haue appered
 to hym. A diuine may vse these maneres, the laste
 maner excepte but oon. *Petrus.* The latere Apollo, son
 of Latona, after the wrytunge of men of Grewe, founde
 the arte of medicines, and made an harpe, in the tyme of
 Aioth. **R.** And, after Isidorus, Ethymol., libro 3^o, that man

¹ Clause varied in Cx.

² *feyned*, Cx.

³ *Esiodus*, MS.

⁴ *they spak*, Cx.

⁵ *Goddes*, Cx.; the more usual
 orm in MS. also.

⁶ Added from *β. γ.*

⁷ *som*, MS.

⁸ *Boece*, *β. Cx.*

⁹ *dyuine*, Cx.

¹⁰ *Appollo*, MSS.

¹¹ *Latonaes*, Cx.; both forms are
 instructive.

¹² *harpes*, Cx.

deonis ad lyram sic¹ inventam septem chordas addidit, et in² nervos sonum strinxit in hunc modum: Cum Nilus post suam inundationem regrederetur in³ proprios meatus, variaque in campis animalia reliquisset⁴ mortua, relictæ est et⁵ testudo; qua⁶ putrefacta nervi extendebantur infra corium⁷ conchæ, qui ad tenuem auram sonum⁸ reddebant. Quod comperiens Mercurius ad ejus similitudinem⁹ lyram condidit, et¹⁰ Orpheo citharcedo tradidit. *Petrus.* Illis etiam temporibus præfatus Mercurius syringas¹¹ invenit, quæ sunt musica instrumenta de fistulis seu calamis composita; quorum nomen tractum¹² est¹³ a Syringe¹⁴ uxore Cadmi,¹⁵ quæ propter zelum harmoniæ a viro suo recessit.¹⁶ Incertum est autem quis fuit iste Mercurius, an Hermes, an Trimegistus philosophus, an Mercurius ille major;¹⁷ nam¹⁸ apud Josephum tres leguntur Mercurii. *Isidorus, libro quinto, capitulo vijº.*¹⁹ Eo

De sy-
ringe.

¹ sic] om. B.

² in] om. B.

³ ad, C.D.

⁴ relictæ essent, C.; relictæ fuis-
sent, D.

⁵ etiam] om. B.; etiam et, D.

⁶ quæ, B.; de qua, A.

⁷ So D.E.; cornu, A.B., which is
perhaps right.

⁸ sibilum, A.B.C.D.

⁹ speciem, C.D.

¹⁰ et] om. E.

¹¹ syringas, B.

¹² tractatum, B.

¹³ trahitur, C.D.

¹⁴ Seringa, B.; Siringa, A.D.E.

¹⁵ Cadene, B.

¹⁶ recesserat, C.D.

¹⁷ minor, C.D.

¹⁸ nam . . . Mercurii] qui fuit
nepos majoris Mercurii apud Jose-
phum, C.D.

¹⁹ capitulo vijº] om. B.C.D. The
true reference is lib. v. c. 39.

rius afterward in Gedeon¹ his tyme putte seuene strenges to þe harpe, þat was to fore honde i-founde; and þey putte to þe strenges and streyned hem in þis manere. Þe ryuer Nilus² had be vppe and byflowe þe lond and was a falle³ into þe chanel aȝen, þan lay many beestes dede on þe feeldes, and among opere lay a dede snayle. Whan þis snayl was i-roted, þe senewes⁴ were i-streyned with ynne þe skyn of þe snayles hous, and sownede as þe wynde blewe þerynne⁵ esiliche and softeliche. Ðan Mercurius took hede⁶ þerto and made an harpe to þe liknesse þerof, and took hit to Orpheus þe harpoure. *Trevisa*. I rede among þe wondres of Ynde, þat snayles beþ þere so grete and so huge þat a man may be herborwed in a snayles hous. *Petrus*.⁷ Also þat tyme þe forseide Mercurius fonde vp an instrument of musyk þat hatte Syringa [by the name of that woman Syringa]⁸ þat was Cadmus⁹ his wif. She¹⁰ wente away from hire housbonde for loue of musyk and melodie. It is vn-certeunte whiche Mercurius þis was; wheþer Mercurius Hermes, oper Mercurius Trimegistus þe filosofre, oper þe [grete]¹¹ Mercurius; for Iosephus spekeþ of þe, of þe whiche eueriche heet Mercurius. *Isidorus, libro quinto*.¹² Also þat tyme in Gres

TREVISA.

Mercurius did adde to the harpe vij. cordes, in the tyme of Gedeon, and streynede þeim in to a sownde in this maner folowenge. When that grete floode callede of Nilus after the flooenge of hit returnede ageyne, levenge diuerse bestes in the feldes, a schelle fische was lefte also, whiche putrefiede, the senowes of hit were extente within the couerenge of that fische, whiche ȝafe a lytelle sownde; Mercurius perceyvenge that, made an harpe vn to the similitude of hit, and toke hit to Orpheus the nowble harper. *Petrus*. The seide Mercurius founde in that tyme siringas, whiche be musicalle instrumentes made of pipes other reedes, whiche name was taken of Siringa, wife to Cadmus, whiche departede from here howsebonde for the luffe of armony. But hit is not hade in certitude what Mercury this was, wheder hit was Hermes, other Trimegistus the philosopher, other elles grete Mercurius. For Iosephus rehersethe that there were thre nowble men callede by that name Mercurius. *Isidorus, Ethym., libro 5^{to}, et*

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ So γ . Cx.; *Gedion*, MSS.² *Salus*, MS.³ *was ebbed*, Cx.⁴ *senwes*, α .⁵ *þeron*, α . β . γ . and Cx.⁶ *hede*] om. MS.⁷ Reference added from Cx.⁸ Added from β . γ . Cx.⁹ *Cadynus*, MS. (not Cx.) Various slight errors in spelling proper names have been tacitly corrected in this and the following chapters.¹⁰ *he*, α .; *heo*, β . γ .¹¹ Added from β . γ .¹² So α . and Cx. (who has *serto*); *Petrus*, MS.

quoque¹ tempore chorus in Græcia repertus est.²
Petrus, vj^o.³ Quod quidem instrumentum Strabus⁴
 dicit esse pellem cum duabus cicutis, per quarum⁵
 alteram inspiratur⁶ et⁷ per⁸ alteram⁹ sonus redditur.

CAP. XIX.

*De Delbora, et de ultimis Argivorum, et de primis
 Laurentinorum regibus.*¹⁰

Delbora
 vel
 Debora.

*Augustinus de Civitate, libro xvij^o., capitulo xiiij^o.*¹¹
 Delbora prophetissa de tribu Ephraim simul cum
 Barak de tribu Neptalim, connumeratis viginti annis
 quibus Jabyn¹² rex Chanaan afflixit¹³ Israel, rexit
 populum¹⁴ quadraginta annis. In ejus diebus reges
 Argivorum defecerunt, qui quingentis quadraginta annis
 regnaverunt a primo¹⁵ Inacho usque ad tempora Pe-
 lopis primi Peloponnesensium regis. Et tunc translatum
 est regnum ad¹⁶ Mycenam.¹⁷ Eo¹⁸ tempore cœpit reg-
 num Laurentinorum in Italia, ubi post mortem Jani
 et Saturni, qui diu ibidem regnaverant, Picus filius
 Saturni¹⁹ cœpit regnare. *Augustinus de Civitate, libro
 octavodecimo, capitulo tertiodecimo.* Circa illud tempus
 obiit Dionysus,²⁰ qui et Liber pater dicitur, qui ali-

Anno Del. 1.
 Anno Abr. 691.

Dionysus
 moritur ;
 ejus sepul-
 chrum
 adhuc
 ostenditur.

¹ *etiam*, C.D.

² *adinventus est*, C.D.

³ *vj*^o] om. A.D.

⁴ So A.B.C.D. ; *Strabus*, E.

⁵ *aquarum*, B.

⁶ *inspirator*, B.

⁷ *et*] om. C.D.

⁸ *per*] om. B.

⁹ *aliam*, C.D.

¹⁰ No title in MSS.

¹¹ A.B.C.D. omit reference. It should be lib. xviii. c. 15.

¹² *Jabin*, A.D.

¹³ *oppressit*, C.D.

¹⁴ *rexit populum*] So A.D. ; om. E. ; *regens populum Israel*, B.

¹⁵ *scilicet*, ins. B.C.D.

¹⁶ So A.B., om. E. ; *usque ad*, C. ; *usque*, D.

¹⁷ *Mecenas*, A.B. ; *Micenas*, D.

¹⁸ *quoque*, ins. C.D.

¹⁹ *jan*, ins. D.

²⁰ *Dionisius*, MSS. and Harl. MS. as usual.

was i-founde vp an instrument of musyk þat hatte chorus. TREVISA.
Petrus. Strabus seip þat þat instrument is a skynne¹ wip tweie
 pipes ; by oon pipe þe ayer goop yn, and by þe oper þe soun
 goop out.

Capitulum nonum decimum.

Augustinus, de Civitate, libro 18º, capitulo 13º. Delbora þat womman was a prophetes of the lynage of Effraym. Þis Delbora wip Barach of þe lynage of Neptalym rulede þe peple of Israel fourty 3ere, for to rekene twenty 3ere in þe whiche Iabyn kyng of Canaan pursued Israel. In hir tyme kynges of Argyues faillede þat hadde i-regned fyue hondred 3ere and fourty, þat was from þe firste Inachus to þe firste Pelops his tyme, kyng of þe Peloponenses ; and þanne þe kyngdom tornede to þe Mecenes.² Þat tyme bygan þe kyngdom of Laurentynes in Italy. After þe deth of Ianus and Saturnus þat hadde longe i-regned þere, þere regned Picus Saturnus his sone. *Augustinus de Civitate, ubi supra.* Aboute þat tyme deyde Denys þat heet also Liber Pater, þat werred in

Petrus. A instrumente callede chorus, other a chore, was MS. HARL.
 founde in Grece, of fewe cordes and strynges, whiche is 2261.
 callede nowe a crowthe or a crowde.

Capitulum decimum nonum.

Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo, capitulo decimo tertio. The xx^{ti} yere of Barach annumerate, whiche was of the tribe of Neptalym, in whom Iabyn, kyng of Canaan, trowblede þe peple of Israel, Delbora, the prophetisse of the tribe of Effraym, gouernede the peple of Israel xl^{ti} yere. In the dayes of whom the kynges of men callede Argyues began to fayle, whiche reignede v^c. and xl^{ti} yere from Inachus to Pelopis firste kyng of men of Peloponense ; and then the realme of Argyues was translate to Micenas. In whiche tyme the realme of Laurentines began in Ytaly, where Picus the son of Saturnus began to reigne after the dethe of his fader and of Ianus, whiche reignede there longe. *Augustinus de Civitate Dei, libro decimo octavo, capitulo tertio decimo.* Dionysus other Liber pater diede abowte thys tyme, whiche 3iffenge batelle to

¹ is a skynne] om. Cx.

| ² So a. and Cx. ; *Macenes*, MS.

quando Indiam debellans habuit feminas cum viris mixtas in suo exercitu; tandem tamen devincebatur¹ a Perseo. Ejus sepulchrum² aureum adhuc ostenditur in Thessalia juxta Apollinem Delphicum in³ Parnasso. Rex Mida. Mida⁴ rex dives sub hoc tempore regnavit in Phrygia, de quo poetæ multa confixerunt, sicut patet in Mythologia et⁵ Fulgentii et Alexandri.⁶ Et Ilium ab Ili⁷ filio Apollinis condita est in⁸ Troja.

CAP. XX.

De Gedeon, Minoe, et Dædalo.

Gedeon. Gedeon sive Jheroboal, connumeratis⁹ octo annis Anno Ged. l. Anno Abr. 731. quibus Israel servivit Madianitis et Amalechitis, rexit populum¹⁰ Israel quadraginta annis; in cujus diebus, secundum Josephum, Tyrus civitas condita est ducentesimo quadragesimo circiter anno¹¹ ante templum Salamonis. *Petrus, quarto.*¹² Minos, rex Cretæ, filius Jovis, tunc temporis mare obtinuit, et legem Creten-sibus dedit.¹³ Quo in tempore Theseus, filius Ægei regis Athenarum,¹⁴ vir strenuus, Minotaurum in agone

¹ *vincebatur*, C.D., which trans-
pose other words.

² *sepulchrum*] om. B.

³ *monte*, ins. C.D.

⁴ *Midas*, C. (not D.)

⁵ *et*] om. A.

⁶ *de . . . Alexandri*] om. C.D.

⁷ *Ilio*, MSS.

⁸ *in*] om. E.

⁹ *annumeratis*, C.D.

¹⁰ *populum*] om. B.

¹¹ *in . . . anno*] om. C.D.

¹² *Petrus, quarto*] om. C.D.;
quarto, om. A.B.

¹³ *Petrus*, ins. C.D.

¹⁴ *regis Athenarum*] om. C.D.

Inde, and hadde in his oost men and wommen i-medled to gedres. Nopeles at þe laste Perseus slowþ hym. His goldene buriels is 3it i-seyn¹ in Thessalia bysides Appolyn Delphicus in mount Parnassus. Mida þe riche kyng regnede þat tyme in Frigia; of hym poetes feynede meny þinges, as it is i-write in Mythologia Fulgentii and Alexandri. And Ilus,² Appolyn his sone, bulde Ilium in Troye. TREVISA.

Capitulum vicesimum.

GEDEON, þat heet Iheroboal, was ledere of Israel fourty 3ere, forto rekene³ ei3te 3ere þat Israel seruede Midianites and Amalachites. Iosephus seiþ þat þe citee Tyrus was i-bulde in Gedeon his tyme, aboute an⁴ two hondred 3ere and fourty to fore Salomon his temple. *Petrus.* Minos, kyng of Creta, Iupiter his sone, occupied þe see þat [tyme and 3af lawe to þe men of Creta. þat tyme]⁵ þe strong man Theseus, Egeus þe kynges sone of Athene, slowþ Minotaurus in þe torneunte. Þerfore

men of Ynde, hade women mixte with men in his hoste. MS. HARL. 2261.
But at the laste he was deuicte of Perseus, whose sepulcre of golde is schewed 3itte in Thessalia, nye to Apollo Delphicus in Parnassus.⁶ Mida, the riche kyng, reignede abowte this tyme in Frigia, of whom poetes feynede mony thynges, as hit is schewede in Methologe of Fulgentius and of Alexander. And also a cite callede Ilium was edifiede and made in Troy by Ilus the son of Apollo.

Capitulum vicesimum.

THE viij. yere connumerate in whom the peple of Israel seruede the Madianites, Gedeon other Iherobal gouernede the peple of Israel xl^{vi} yere. In the thyme of whom, after Iosephus, that cite callede Tirus was made, abowte cc. and xl^{vi} yere afore the makenge of the temple of Salomon. *Petrus.* Minos kyng of Creta, son of Iupiter, obteynede that tyme the see, and 3afe lawe to men of Creta. In whiche tyme Theseus, the son of Egeus, kyng of Athenes, a my3hty man, whiche ouercome a beste

¹ *seie, a.*

² *Ilius, Cx.; Iulius, MS. and a.*

³ *So a. and Cx.; reigne, MS.*

⁴ *So MS. a. β. γ.*

⁵ *Added from a. and Cx.*

⁶ *Pernasus, Harl. MS.*

interemit; quam ob causam Athenienses qui prius tributarii fuerant a præstatione vectigalis liberabantur.¹ Fuit autem Minotaurus vir quidam inhumanus multum valens in lucta palæstræ. Et etiam fuit carnifex regis Minois; qui ideo sic dictus est, quasi Minois³ taurus, id est, Carnifex. Circa illud⁴ tempus Theseus Helenam rapuit, quam rursus fratres sui Castor et Pollux reduxerunt, capta matre⁵ Theseoque peregre profugato.⁶ Dædalus. Eo quoque⁷ tempore Dædalus⁸ fertur floruisse. Hic fecit aves metallinas volare artificioso spiritu incluso. Dicitur etiam fecisse simulacra sese moventia. Primus enim omnium pedes statuarum a se invicem divisit,⁹ cum¹⁰ cæteri eos conjungerent.¹¹ *Isidorus*,¹² *libro nono*.¹³ Hic Dædalus habuit nepotem, Perdicem nomine, quem erudiendum susceperat; qui factus ingeniosus, dum materiæ dividendæ compendium quæreret, spinam piscis imitatus¹⁴ laminam ferri exasperavit, quam¹⁵ dentium¹⁶ mordacitate armavit, quam modo¹⁷ serram¹⁸ nominamus. Hic quoque puer excogitavit primus usum circini; quamobrem Dædalus magister suus invidia

¹ So B.; *liberantur*, A.D.E.

² Transposed in C.D.

³ *Minois*, A.E. (not D.); but *Minoyis* or *Minois* above.

⁴ *idem*, C.D.

⁵ *Thesei*, ins. A.C.D.

⁶ *profecto*, C.D.

⁷ *eoque*, C.D.

⁸ *faber*, ins. C.D.

⁹ *separavit*, C.D.

¹⁰ *tamen*, ins. C.D.

¹¹ *conjunctos eos facerent*, C.D.

¹² *Petrus*, B.

¹³ 19^o, A. correctly. See lib. xix.

c. 19.

¹⁴ *imitando*, B.

¹⁵ *quam*] *quia*, E.

¹⁶ *dentium*] om. B.

¹⁷ *et*, C.D.

¹⁸ *sarram*, A.D.

men of Athene pat were tributarii to forhonde¹ were quyrt and free of al tribute. Minotaurus was a grete man and huge, myzty and strong, and a wiȝt wrastlere,² and was kyng Minois his bocher. Perfore he was i-cleped as it were Minois taurus, pat is a bocher. Aboute pat tyme Theseus rauesched Eleyne;³ and here tweye breperen Castor and Pollux fette hir, and brouzt hir aȝen, and took Theseus moder and chasede Theseus out of contray. Also me seiþ pat Dedalus was pat tyme in his floures. Þis Dedalus made briddes⁴ of metal by craft of⁵ spirit enclosed⁶ for to flee aboute. Me seiþ also pat he made ymages pat meued hem self. He was þe firste pat departede feet of ymages atwynne; ffor oþer men ioyned hem to gidres. *Isidorus, libro nono.* Þis Dedalus hadde a newep pat heet Perdix,⁷ and fenge hym to his lore. Þis Perdix wax sotil and connyng of craft, and bypouzt hym⁸ for to haue som spedful manere cleuyng of tymber, and took a plate of iren, and fyled it, and made it i-toped⁹ as a rugge¹⁰ boon of a fische, and panne it was a sawe. Also þis childe bypouzt hym and made þe firste compas, and wrouzt perwip. Perfore his mayster Dedalus took greet envie to þe childe, and þrewe hym doun of an hiȝe toure,

TREVISA.

callede Minotaurus; for whiche acte men of Athenes, whiche were tributaries afore, were delyuerede from that seruitute. Minotaurus was a myȝhty man, and as a gigante hauenge grete strenȝhte, whiche was the bocheor of kyng Minois, callede Minotaurus, as the bocheor of kyng Minois. Theseus toke away Helena abowte this tyme, whom Castor and Pollux, breper to here, broughte ageyne with the moder of Theseus, Theseus fleenge in to other cuntres for helpe. In whiche tyme Dedalus is seide to haue bene, whiche made bryddes of metalle to flye thro spirittes includede in theyme. Also hit is seide that he made simi-lacres mouenge theym selfe. Whiche diuidede firste the feete of ymages a sundre, for other men ioynede theyme to gedre. *Isidorus, libro nono.* This Dedalus hade with hym the son of his doȝhter, Perdix by name, whiche founde firste an instrumente whom men calle a sae. Also this childe founde firste the vse of a compasse, wherefore Dedalus his maister caste hym downe from a towre. Therefore Deda-

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *byfore*, Cx.² *and ful delyure in wrastling*, Cx., who otherwise varies the sentence.³ *Eleyne*, Cx.; *Helen*, a.⁴ *byrdes*, Cx.⁵ *of*] and, a. β. γ. Cx.⁶ *i-closed*, a.; *closed*, Cx.⁷ So Cx.; *Pardix*, MS., here and below.⁸ Cx. adds, *in his ymagynacion*.⁹ *I toped*, a.¹⁰ *rigge*, Cx.

ductus præcipitavit eum de quadam arce.¹ Inde² Dædalus cum Icaro filio suo apud Cretam fugiens devenit Siciliam; ubi et³ primo fecit labyrinthum.⁴ *Petrus, sexto.*⁵ Idcirco propter celerem⁶ et investigabilem fugam ejus post homicidium perpetratum fingitur pennis volasse.⁷ *Isidorus libro quintodecimo.* Labyrinthus⁸ est ædificium quoddam ex perplexis parietibus compositum, ubi fuit Minotaurus inclusus; quo siquis sine glomere fili ingrederetur, exitum facile⁹ non reperiret. Aperientibusque¹⁰ in ea fores tonitrus terribilis audiebatur. *Hugutio, capitulo Labyrinthus.* Descenditur¹¹ quasi gradibus centum; transitus ibi sunt quasi innumeri¹² per tenebras. Et sunt quatuor tales domus in orbe: ¹³ una¹⁴ Ægyptia,¹⁵ secunda Cretica,¹⁶ tertia in Lemno¹⁷ insula, quarta in Italia. Omnes quidem ita constructæ¹⁸ ut vix per sæcula dissolvi¹⁹ queant. *Hugutio, capitulo Cilleo.*²⁰ Denique cum Athenienses laborarent pestilentia pro morte Icaro et Erigones²¹ filiæ suæ, et virgines Athenienses quasi ad laqueum compellerentur, responsum est ab²² Apolline

Laby-
rinthus.

Quatuor
Labyrinthi.

Mors Icaro;
peste la-
borant
Athenienses.

¹ *arce*] om. B.
² *Unde*, C. (not D.)
³ *et*] om. B.
⁴ *labyrinthum*, MSS. Various-ly written below.
⁵ *sexto*] om. A.B.D.
⁶ So A.B.; *celebrem*, E.
⁷ The two preceding sentences are varied and transposed in C.D.
⁸ *Laberintum*, C.D.
⁹ *facile*] om. C.D.
¹⁰ *apparentibusque*, B.; *a parietibus quæ*, C. (not D.)
¹¹ *in illo*, ins. C.D.
¹² *centum . . . innumeri*] innumeri, C.D.
¹³ *in orbe*] om. C.D.
¹⁴ *una, &c.*] unus, &c., all masculine in MSS. It is harsh to understand *labyrinthus*; and Higden could hardly intend *domus* to be masculine. (See vol. I. p. 216, &c.)
¹⁵ *apud Ægyptios*, B.
¹⁶ *in Creta*, B.
¹⁷ *Lempo*, B.
¹⁸ *constructi*, MSS.
¹⁹ *solvi*, B.
²⁰ 2540, C. (not D.)
²¹ *Erigonis*, MSS., and so below.
²² *ab*] om. A.

and brak his nekke. Þerfore Dedalus wip his sone Icarus¹ at TREVISIA.
 Creta fliþe and come in to Sicilia,² and þere he made first labo-
 rinthus.³ *Petrus.* For Dedalus fliþ away so swiftliche after þe
 manslauþt,⁴ me feyneþ þat he fleiþ wip wynges as a bryd by þe
 ayer. *Isidorus, libro quintodecimo.* Laborinthus is a manere
 buldyng wonderliche i-bulde wip daungers⁵ walles; þerynne
 Minotaurus was i-closed. 3if eny man wente pider yn wip
 oute a clewe of prede, it were ful harde to fynde a way out.
 Þey þat oponed þe 3ates schulde here dredful þondringe.
Hugutio, capitulo Labor. Me goop adoun [as hit were]⁶ by
 an hondred grees:⁷ þere beþ also in derkenesse wonder
 meny dyuers wyndynges and tornynges; and suche foure
 beþ in þis worlde of suche hous;⁸ oon in Egipt, anoþer
 in Creta, þe þridde in þe ylond Lemno,⁹ and þe ferþe in Italy;
 and beþ so i-made þat vnneþe þey mowe be destroyed, while
 þe worlde dureþ. *Hugutio, capitulo Cilleo.* Whanne þere fel
 a pestilence among men of Athene¹⁰ for þe deth of Icarus
 and his douþter Erigon, and maydens of Athene were com-
 pelled as it were to snarles and greues, þanne þei hadde

lus fleenge with Icarus¹ his son to that yle callede Creta, MS. HARL.
 come afterwarde to Sicilia,² and made a mase þere firste. 2261.
Petrus. Whom men feyne to haue flyede, for the swifte
 fliþhte of hym after that he hade doen that offense. *Isi-*
dorus, libro quintodecimo. A turnenge, other elles a mase,
 is a thyng made with mony turnenges, and a man en-
 trenge in to hit with owte a clewe of threde, can not
 comme furthe from hit ageyne liþhtely, and also a thundre
 dothe appere to men openenge the durres of hit. *Hugutio,*
capitulo Labor. To whom men goe downe as by a c.
 grees, the weies þer be as innumerable by derkenesse, and
 þer be iiij. suche places in the worlde; oon is in Egipte,
 an other is in Creta, the thrydde is in the yle callede
 Lemnus,⁹ the iiij^{the} is in Italy; whiche be made soe
 that thei can not be destroyed vn to the ende of the
 worlde. *Hugutio, capitulo Cilleo.* When men of Athenes
 laborede in þe pestilence for the dethe of Icarus, and of
 Erigon his douþter, and virgynes were compellede as vn
 to hongenge, hit was answerede to theyme by Apollo Del-

¹ *Icarus*, MSS., and so below.
² *Scicilia*, MSS.; *Scilicia*, Harl.
 MS.

³ Cx. adds, *otherwyse callyd a mase.*

⁴ *after he had slayn his newew*, Cx.

⁵ *daungerous*, Cx.

⁶ Added from *a.* and Cx.

⁷ *grees or steppes*, Cx.

⁸ *houses*, Cx.

⁹ *Lempno*, MS. Similarly Harl.
 MS.

¹⁰ MS. has some words repeated.

Pestis
remedium.

Delphico illam pestem¹ sedari non posse² nisi³ Icarum
et Erigones cadavera requirerentur. Quæ cum⁴ diu
quæsitæ reperiri non possent, ad ostendendum devo-
tionem quam ad inquirendum habuerant,⁵ ut in alio
elemento viderentur quærere quod in terra reperire
non possent, Athenienses suspendebant funes in aëre,
ad quos homines innexi huc et illuc agitabantur, ut
sic viderentur quærere in aëre cadavera prædicta. At
dum⁶ inde⁷ caderent homines et læderentur, sta-
tutum fuit apud illos⁸ ut statuæ illis cadaveribus⁹

Oscillum
unde
derivatur.

similes imponerentur et sic moverentur. Ludus autem
ille apud Latinos vocatur *Oscillum*, quod componitur a
cilleo -les, quod est moveo, et *os, oris*, quia sic agi-
tati¹⁰ in ora hominum¹¹ movebantur.

¹ *pestem*] So A.B.C.D. ; om. E.

² *non posse*] om. E. ; *posse*, A.

³ *nisi*] so B.C.D. ; *si*, A.E.

⁴ *dum*, B.D.

⁵ *quam . . . habuerant*] suam, C.D.

⁶ *cum*, C.D.

⁷ *Ac dummodo*, B.

⁸ *eos*, C.D.

⁹ *cadaveribus*] om. C.D., which
is better.

¹⁰ *innexi*, C.D.

¹¹ *trahentium*, C.D., which trans-
pose various words in this extract.

answere of Appolyn Delphicus þat þe pestilence myȝt cese, TREVISA.
 ȝif þey souȝte besiliche þe bodyes of Icarus and his douȝter
 Erigon. Ðan þey souȝte besiliche, and whanne þey hadde
 longe i-souȝt and myȝte nouȝt¹ fynde,² for to schewe þe
 deuocion and wil þat þey hadde forto seche [and]³ forto be
 seie seche besiliche in anoper element þat þey myȝte nouȝt
 fynde in erþe, men of Athene heng⁴ vp ropes in þe ayer and
 men totrede þeron and meued hider and pider; for þey wolde
 be seie seche þe bodies in þe aier aboue þe erþe. And whan
 men [fel]⁵ of þe totres and were i-herte sore,⁶ it was i-ordeyned
 among hem þat images i-liche to þe bodies schulde be sette
 in þe totros,⁷ and meue and totery in stede of hem þat were
 a-falle. Ðat game is cleped ocillum in Latyn, and is com-
 powned and i-mayde of tweyne, of cilleo cilles þat is forto
 mene⁸ *toterynge*,⁹ and os oris þat is *a mouþ*; for þey þat
 totered so mouede aȝenst men mouþes.

picus that pestilence to be mitigate if thei wolde inquire MS. HARL.
 the cariones and bodies of Icarus and of Erigon his 2261.
 doȝhter. Whiche inquirede longe cowthe not be founde,
 men of Athenes schewenge a deuocion to the inquisicion
 of theyme, as to make inquisicion to fynde in an oper ele-
 mente that thei cowthe not fynde in the erthe, honged
 ropes in the aier, to whom men fixede were seen to move
 in the aier. And when that men felle downe and were
 hurte, yimages were made lyke to theyme, and movede þer
 in the ropes. And men of Latyn calle that play ocillum,
 whiche worde takethe composicion of this worde *cilleo es*,
 that is, to move, and of this worde *os oris* for a mowthe;
 for men steryde in that wyse were mouede towarde the
 mowthes of men.

¹ *nowther*, Cx.; *nowhar*, B. γ.

² *fynde in erþe*, MS. (not a. B. γ. or Cx.)

³ Added from conjecture; but perhaps the five words following should be cancelled.

⁴ *hyng*, a.

⁵ Added from a. and Cx.

⁶ *i-hurt*, a.

⁷ *totres*, a., Cx.

⁸ *meoue*, a.

⁹ *toterynge*] om. a. and Cx.

CAP. XXI.

*Abimelech et Thola judicant Israel. De Fauno; item de Amazonibus.*¹

De Abimelech. ABIMELECH, filius Gedeon² sive Jeroboal,³ ex concubina natus, dux fuit⁴ in Sichem⁵ tribus annis post¹ patrem, et occidit septuaginta fratres suos ex variis uxoribus progenitos excepto uno.⁶ Eoque⁷ tempore Atheniense⁸ bellum fuit inter Lapithas⁹ et Centauros, quos Palæphatus libro De Incredibilibus dicit fuisse¹⁰ nobiles equites Thessalorum, qui pugnabant contra¹¹ Tholam. Thola de tribu Isachar¹³ judicavit Israel viginti tribus annis, cujus anno quarto Medea discessit¹⁴ a viro suo Ægeō, Atheniensium¹⁵ rege, usque ad Colchos insulam unde fuit oriunda. *Trogus, libro quadragésimo tertio.* Circa hos dies Faunus filius Pici regnavit in Italia, sub quo Evander de finibus Arcadiæ¹⁶ veniens agros¹⁷ et montem Palatinum accepit. Huic Fauno fuit¹⁸ uxor nomine Fatua, spiritu vaticinatio frequenter¹⁹ repleta, unde et²⁰ adhuc qui inspirari solent fatuari²¹ dicuntur. Ex filia²² hujus²³ Fauni et Hercule,²⁴ qui tunc extincto Geryone gigante²⁵ rege

¹ No title in MSS.

² So A.B.E.; *Gedeonis*, C.D.;

³ *sive Jeroboal*] om. A.B.C.D.

⁴ *regnavit*, C.D.

⁵ *Sichen*, A.

⁶ *solo*, ins. C.D.

⁷ *Eo quoque*, B.

⁸ *apud Athenienses*, B.

⁹ *Lahitas*, B.; *Laphitas*, D.F.

¹⁰ *centum*, ins. C.D.

¹¹ *adversus*, C.D.

¹² *Thebas*, C.; *Thebes*, D.

¹³ *Isacar*, A.

¹⁴ *descendit*, C.D. (first hand.)

¹⁵ *Atheniensium*] *Atheniensi*, D.

¹⁶ *Arcadiæ*] om. B.

¹⁷ *aros*, B.

¹⁸ *præfuit*, B.

¹⁹ *assidue*, C.D.

²⁰ *et*] om. C. (not D.)

²¹ *fatuati*, C.D. (first hand.)

²² *quoque*, ins. C.D.

²³ *hujus*] om. B.

²⁴ *Herculis*, A.

²⁵ *gigante*] om. C.D.

Capitulum vicesimum primum.

TREVISA.

ABYMALECH, Gedeon¹ his son i-bore of a concubyn, was ledere in Sichem after his fader pre zere, and slow his owne bropern pre score and ten, outake oon, þat were i-bore of diuers wifes.² Þat tyme was þe batayle of Athene bytwene þe Laphites and Centaures. Palefatus, libro De Incredibilibus, seiþ þat þe Centaures³ were noble hors men of Thessalia, þat fauþt azenst þe Thebes men of Thebe in Egipt. Thola of þe lynage of Isachar was iuge in Israel pre and twenty zere. In his fourþe zere Medea⁴ wente from hire housbonde Egeus, kyng of Athene, in to þe ilonde Colchos, pere sche was i-bore. *Trogus*, 43. Aboute þat tyme Faunus [Picus his sone regnede in Italy. In his tyme Euander come out of Arcadia and feng fildes⁵ and þe hil mount Palatyn. Þis Faunus]⁶ had a wyf þat heet Fatua, and hadde ofte a spirit of prophecie. Þerfore þit ofte þey þat haueþ a spirit of prophecie beþ i-cleped Fatui. Þoo Hercules hadde i-slawe Geryon þe geant, kyng of Spayne, and ladde .

*Capitulum vicesimum primum.*MS. HARL.
2261.

ABIMALECH, the son of Gedeon, geten of a concubyne, was gouernoure in Sichem iij. yere after his fader, whiche did slee lxx^{ti} brether to hym, geten of diuerse women, oon excepte. In whiche tyme the batelle of Athenes betwene Laphites and Centaures, whom Palefatus, libro De Incredibilibus, seithe to haue ben nowble horse men of Thessalia whiche did fizhte ageyne the Thebes. Thola, of the tribe of Ysachar, reignede on Israel xxiiij^{ti} yere. In the iiij^{the} yere of whom Medea wente from here howsebonde Egeus, kyng of Athenes, vn to that yle callede Colchos, where sche was borne. *Trogus, capitulo quadragesimo tertio.* Fanus, the son off Picus, reignede abowte this tyme in Ytaly, vnder whom Euander, of the costes of Archadia, commenge to those costes, toke the feldes and the mownte Palatyne. This Fanus hade a wife, Fatua by name, whiche was vexede moche with a spiritte, whereof puple so vexede now in this tyme bene seide to be fatuate, after the name

¹ So a.; *Geon*, MS.² So a and Cx.; *a concubyn*, MS.³ So a.; *Sentaures*, MS.⁴ *Meda*, MS., and so below. A few similar slight errors have beentacitly corrected in this chapter; as *Gereon*, *Synope*, *Archadia*.⁵ *receyued and toke feldes*, Cx.⁶ Added from a. and Cx.

Hispaniæ armenta ejus in signum victoriæ per Italiam
duxerat, stupro conceptus est Latinus ; qui postmodum

Vesores,
rex
Ægypti, a
Scythis
invaditur.

regnavit ibidem. *Orosius*,¹ *libro primo*. Circa hunc
annum *Vezoses*² rex Ægypti *Scythis*³ bellum primo⁴
indixit,⁵ missis tamen prius legatis qui hostibus legem
parendi indicerent.⁶ Ad quod *Scythæ* sic⁷ responde-
runt : “ *Stolide* rex opulentissimus adversus inopes
“ bellum movet, præsertim cum dubius sit belli eventus,
“ præmia nulla, sed damna manifesta.” Nec mora⁸ quin
dictis facta⁹ subsequuntur. Nam regem ad regnum
Ægypti redire compellunt, exercitum ejus spoliant et
invadunt, totamque Ægyptum spoliassent, nisi Nili
paludibus impediti fuissent. Inde¹⁰ redeundo per quin-
decim annos Asiam conterentes vectigalem fecerunt ;
quibus denunciatum est ab uxoribus quod, nisi redi-
rent, sobolem sibi a finitimis locis quærerent. Medio
tempore apud *Scythas* duo regii juvenes per factionem
optimatum domo¹¹ pulsî, contracta secum ingenti mul-

Anno Abr. 790.
Anno Tholæ 17.

¹ *Orosius*] The rest of this chapter is omitted in C.D.

² *Vezoses*, A ; *Vezores*, B. The MSS. of *Orosius* (lib. i. c. 14) similarly vary. *Sesostris* is presumed to be intended.

³ *Scitis*, A ; *Schitis*, B ; *Shitis*, E., and similarly below.

⁴ *primus*, A.

⁵ *induxit*, B.

⁶ *inducerent*, A.

⁷ *sic*] om. A.

⁸ *moris*, B.

⁹ *acta*, B.

¹⁰ *in*, B.

¹¹ *domo*] *denuo*, A ; *viatorum denuo*, B.

his bestes poruþ Italy in token of þe victorie; he lay by þis TREVISA.
 Faunus his douzter vnlawfulliche and gat Latinus,¹ þat regnede
 afterward in Itali. *Orosius, libro primo.* Aboute þis zere
 Vesores, kyng of Egipt, werred first azenst þe Scites; nopeles²
 firste he sente messagers and heet [his]³ enemyes be soget to
 his lawe; and þe Scites answerede: "A dul kyng and most riche
 " meueþ bataile azenst pore men and nedy, nameliche while it
 " douteþ what ende þe batayle schal haue; profite comeþ þerof
 " noon, but grete and opoun harme and damage." And nouzt
 longe after the dede acordede⁴ wip þe answeere; for þey com-
 pelled þe kyng of Egipt forto flee azen, and chasede and spoyle-
 dede his oost, [and wolde have i-spoyled]⁵ al Egipt, hadde þey
 nouzt be lette by watres of þe ryuer Nilus. Þanne in þe torn-
 ynge azen þey werred fiftene zere in Asia, and made Asia
 tributarie; and here wifes sent hem worde, þat but þei wolde
 come home þey wolde haue children by men of þe contrayes
 aboute. Þe mene tyme among þe Scites tweye real zonge-
 lynes by fraude and deceyt of þe grete werre⁶ i-putte

of þat woman. Of the dozhter of whom Hercules gate a MS. HARL.
 son, Latynus by name, whiche reignede after hym, not 2261.
 geten in trewe matrimony. *Orosius, libro primo.* Abowte
 whiche yere Vesores, kyng of Egipte, zafe⁷ intendede to
 ziffe batelle to men of Scitia, sendenge to theyme messen-
 geres afore commaundede theyme to obey him. To whiche
 messangeres the men of Scithia ansuerede, seyng, that the
 plentuous kyng of Egipte intendede a symple thyng to
 move batelle ageyne poore men, sythe the chaunce of
 victory in batelle is in dowte, where he knowthe to haue
 noon avayle but grete hurtes and losse. Whiche thyng
 happede accordenge to the seyenge of theyme; for they
 compellede the kyng off Egipte to returne, and peresch-
 enge a grete parte of his hoste hade spoilede a grete parte
 of Egipte, but that þe water of Nilus was an impedimente
 to theyme. That peple of Scitia, returnenge towarde their
 cuntre, fauzhte myzhtely ageyne men of Asia, and made
 theym their tributaries. The wifes of whom sende worde
 to them that thei wolde take men to theym of oþer
 cuntres to cause multiplication, withowte thei wolde comme
 home. Wherefore ij. nowble men were electe amonge theyme,

¹ So *a.* and *Cx.*; *Lathinius*, MS.

² *yet*, *Cx.*

³ Added from *Cx.* (only), who varies the clause.

⁴ *acord*, *Cx.*

⁵ Added from *a.* and *Cx.*

⁶ So MS.; *were*, *Cx.*

⁷ Sic Harl. MS. Probably the word should be cancelled; if not, or must be added: *which* seems to be omitted after *afore*.

titudine, oram¹ Ponti et Cappadociæ occuparunt,² ubi post multam depopulationem factam a finitimis viris trucidabantur. Quorum uxores exilio ac viduitate permotæ arma sumunt, ultionem pro maritis faciunt.

Amazones. Tunc pace armis quæsitâ externos³ concubitus⁴ ineunt, editos mares enecant, fœminas inustis dextris mammis reservant. Harum tandem duæ fuerunt reginæ Marcepia et Lapeto;⁵ quæ agmine diviso vicissim curam belli et domus custodiam sortiebantur. Igitur cum Europam magna ex parte perdomuissent, captis aliquibus Asiæ urbibus præcipuam exercitus sui partem spoliis onustam domi remisissent, reliquæ fœminæ ad tuendam Asiam relictæ cum regina sua⁶ Marcepia ab hostibus trucidantur. Cujus filia Sinope post matrem regnum tenuit, singularem virtutis gloriam perpetua virginitate cumulavit. Hujus nempe tanta⁷ admiratio gentes invaserat, ut cum Hercules juberetur a domino

¹ *coram*, A.

² *occupaverunt*, A.B.

³ *exterios*, B.

⁴ So A. ; *cubitus*, E.

⁵ *Lampeto*, B.

⁶ *sua*] om. B.

⁷ *tam*, B.

from home, and took wip hem a grete multitude of peple and strengþe, and werred in þe contrayes of Pontus and Cappadocia.¹ And whanne þey hadde i-doo greet destruccioun, þan þey were i-kilde of men of þe contrays aboute. Þanne hire wifes exilede and wydewes armed hem, and toke wreche of hire housbondes deþ; and whanne þey hadde i-made pees by strengþe and by dedes of armes þey took men of oþer londes to ligge² by hem forto haue children, and slow hire owne knaue children,³ and kepte here mayde children, and brende of þe⁴ riȝt brest. At þe laste tweyne of þese women were queenes, Marsepia and Lampeto, and departed hire oost, and kepte and mayntenede hem, and batailled⁵ eiper by hir cours. Þan whanne þey hadde ouercome a grete dele of Europa and many citees of Asia, þey sent home þe bettre part of here oost wip prayes þat þey hadde i-take. Þan enemyes slow Marsepia þe queene and⁶ þe oþere women þat were i-left pere forto kepe Asia. And here douȝter Sinope regned after hir moder deþ, and gadered a singuler ioye of vertue by euerlastyng chastite. Men wondrede so hugeliche of this woman, þat whanne Hercules hadde heste of his lorde for to werre

TREVISA.

whiche, takenge with theyme a grete hoste, occupiede the londes of Pontus and Capodocia, whiche were destroyede at the laste by oþer peple of ferre cuntrees. The wifes of whom movede there with toke armoure, inquirenge vengeance for their howsebondes. So at the laste, peace made by grete batelles and conflictes, thei toke to theyme straunge men for cause of multiplicacion, sleenge the male childer, reseruede the childer female, brennenge the ryȝhte pappe of here. Of whiche women were ij. qwenes at the laste, Marsepia and Lampeto, whiche kepede batelles by course. And when thei hade made that londe of Asia tame, and taken the principalle cites in hit, thei sende the chiefe parte of their hoste to their cuntre with grete richesse and goodes. That other parte of women lefte with Marsepia to be the defence of Asia were sleyne. The doȝhter of whom, Synope by name, kepede the realme after the dethe of here moder, in kepenge the glory of vertu with virginite perpetu- alle. Also thei were of so grete myȝhte, that when Hercules was commaundede of his lorde that he scholde brynge

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *Capadocie*, Cx.² *lye*, Cx.³ *men childer*, Cx.; who, however, has *childer* above.⁴ *her*, Cx.⁵ *hem in batel*, Cx.; *bataille*, a. γ.; *batel*, β.⁶ So a. and Cx.; *of*, MS.

suo arma reginæ inferre,¹ universam² Græciæ electam juventutem contraxit, novemque longas naves præparavit,³ insperatas mulieres circumvenit, malens insidiando quam palam bellando congregari. Oppressis igitur subito duabus sororibus reginis,⁴ Hercules Melanippen⁵ sorori suæ Antiopæ⁶ reddidit.⁷ Hippolytam vero sororem ejusdem Theseo militi suo copulavit; arma reginæ pretio redemptionis accepit. Tandem post Orthiam reginam Penthesilea⁸ regina Trojano bello interfuit, magnaque insignia suæ virtutis⁹ contra Græcos dedit.

CAP. XXII.

*De Jair; item de Carmente Nympha, litterarum Latinarum inventrice.*¹⁰

De Jair. JAYR¹¹ Galadites de tribu Manasse judicavit Israel Anno Abr. 797 Anno Jair I. viginti duobus¹² annis, habuitque triginta filios, quos fecit principes¹³ supra¹⁴ triginta civitates, quas denominavit a nomine suo Anat Jayr,¹⁵ id est, oppida Jair. *Ranulphus.* Hujus Jayr¹⁶ anno tertio secundum quosdam Carthago condita est; sed de hoc vide supra

¹ So A.; *afferre*, E.

² So A.; *universitati*, E.

³ *reparavit*, B.

⁴ *reginis*] om. B.

⁵ *Monalippam*, MSS.

⁶ *Antrope*, B.

⁷ *reddit*, B.

⁸ *Penthesilea*, MSS.

⁹ *sue virtutis*] Added from A.B.

¹⁰ No title in MSS.

¹¹ *Jair*, A.C.D.

¹² *uno*, C.D.

¹³ *principales*, B.

¹⁴ *super*, C.D.

¹⁵ *Anat jair*, A.; *Anathe jair*, B.; *Anot jair*, D.

¹⁶ *Ranulphus. Hujus Jayr*] om. C. (D. omits *Ranulphus*.)

aʒenst þis¹ queene, he gadrede al þe grete strengþe of þe ʒong
 men of Grees, and ordeyned hym nyne longe schippes, and fil
 vppon þe wommen þat were vnarmed. For hym was leuere
 stele² vppon hem þan come vppon hem wip a bataile opoun-
 liche. Ðan, whanne þe tweie queenes þat were sustres were
 sodeynliche ouercome, Hercules ʒaf Menalippa to his suster
 Antiopa, and wedded hir suster Hippolyta³ to his knyʒt
 Theseus, and fenge þe armure of þe queene in prys of redemp-
 cioun. At the laste after Orthia þe queene, Penthesilea⁴ þe
 queene was in þe batayle of Troye, and ʒaf and⁵ dede meny
 grete dedes aʒenst the Grees. TREVISA.

Capitulum vicesimum secundum.

IAIR⁶ of Galaad, of þe lynage of Manasse, was iuge of Israel
 two and twenty ʒere, and hadde þrittey sones, and made hem
 princes vppon þritty citees, and cleped þe citees by his owne
 name, Anot Iair, þat is to mene, Iair is townes. R̄. Som
 tellep þat Carthago⁷ was i-bulde þe þridde ʒere of þis Iaire, but

to hym the armure of the qwene of theym, he toke with
 hym the nowble men of the londe of Grece in ix. schippes,
 whiche compassede the women as with owte deliberacion; hau-
 enge more pleasure to do soe then to make an open batelle
 ageyne theyme. The seide Hercules, those women oppressede,
 ʒafe Menalippa to his sustyr Antiopa, and mariede Ypolita,
 sustyr to the same Menalippa, to Theseus his knyʒhte, tak-
 enge to hym the armure of the qwene as for a price of here
 redempcion. After that qwene callede Orthia, the qwene
 Penthesilea⁸ was at the battelle of Troye, and schewede mony
 grete actes ageyne men of Grece. MS. HARL.
2261.

Capitulum vicesimum secundum.

IAIR GALATIDES, of the tribe of Manasses, reignede on the
 peple of Israel xxij^{ti} yere, whiche hade xxx^{ti} sonnes, whom
 he made princes of xxx^{ti} cites, whom he callede, after his
 name, Anot Iair, that is to say, þe cites of Iair. R̄. In the
 thrydde yere of whom, after diuerse men, that cite callede
 Carthago was edifiede, of whiche mater hit is rehersede afore,

¹ the, Cx.

² to stele, Cx.

³ Ypolita, MS., a.; Ipolita, β. γ.

⁴ Pentasilea, a.; Pentafiles, MS.

⁵ ʒaf and] om. Cx.

⁶ Lair, MS.

⁷ Cartago, MSS.; Cartuge, Cx.

⁸ Pentisilia, Harl. MS.

Minos
moritur.

Lingua
Latina
quadru-
plex.

libro primo, capitulo *Africa*.¹ Anno Jayr sextodecimo Ægyptiorum [rex]² Minois³ adversus Dædalum in⁴ Sicilia arma corripiens⁵ a filiis Cocali⁶ occiditur. *Isidorus, libro primo, capitulo decimo*.⁷ ⁸ Carmentis nympha, quæ et Nicostrata, mater Latini regis, Latinas literas reperit.⁹ *Isidorus, libro nono, capitulo vi*.¹⁰ Latina autem lingua in quatuor fuit dispartita; nam¹¹ Prisca fuit¹² sub Jano et Saturno; Latina sub rege Latino et cæteris regibus Tusciæ, ex qua lingua¹³ fuerunt duodecim tabulæ legum conscriptæ; item¹⁴ Romana, quæ post exactos reges cœpit; qua usi sunt Plautus, Tullius, Virgilius, Cato; sed mixta lingua post dilatam imperium crevit.¹⁵ Post¹⁶ mortem Jair,¹⁷ Israel servivit Philistiim et Ammonitis xvij. annis; qui deputantur annis Jepte subsequentibus.¹⁸

¹ *sed . . . Africa*] *Isidorus, libro primo, C.D.*; *Africa, scilicet Numidia, A.* (See vol. i. p. 164.)

² The text has manifestly suffered. The Harl. tr. seems to have had *rex*.

³ *Minoyis, E.* Read *Minos*.

⁴ *in*] om. A.

⁵ So A.E.; *arripiens, B.C.D.*

⁶ *filiis Dedali, B.*; *filiabus Dedali, C.*; *filiabus Cocali, D.*

⁷ *capitulo decimo*] om. A.B.C.D.

⁸ *Anno Jair vicesimo secundum quosdam, ins. C.D.*

⁹ Slightly varied in C.D.

¹⁰ *capitulo septimo*] om. C.D.; *libro quarto decimo, A.B.* Read lib. ix. c. 1.

¹¹ *nam*] om. C.D.

¹² *fuit*] om. C.D.

¹³ *lingua*] om. B.C.D.

¹⁴ *item*] om. C.D.

¹⁵ Slightly varied in C.D.

¹⁶ *Post . . . subsequentibus*] om C.D.

¹⁷ *Jair*] om. E.

¹⁸ *sequentibus, A.*

look in þe firste book, capitulo Affrica, scilicet Numidia.¹ Þe TREVISA.
 sextenþe ʒere of Iaire, Mynois of Egipt amendede armure
 aʒenst Dedalus in Sicilia, and was i-kyld of Cocalus his sones.
Isidorus, libro primo. Carmentis Nympha, þat heet also
 Nicostrata,² kyng³ Latyn his moder, fond and brouʒt vp⁴
 Latyn lettres. *Isidorus, libro nono.* Þe longage of Latyn was
 departed in foure: for þe firste was vnder Ianus and Saturnus,
 and was i-cleped Prisk; and Latyn vnder þe⁵ kyng Latyn and
 oþer kynges of Thuscayn;⁶ in þat longage were þe twelue
 tables of lawe i-write; also Romayn þat bygan after kynges
 were i-made suget; and þat longage vsede Plautus and Tullius,
 Virgilius and Caton; but medled⁷ longage encreased after þat
 þe Emperere encresede and was huge. After þe deeth of Iaire
 Israel seruede þe Philistinis and Ammonitys eiʒtene ʒere, þat
 beþ accounted to þe ʒeres of Iepte þat was duke afterward of
 Israel.

libro jº. Minois, kyng of Egipte, movenge batelle ageyne MS. HARL.
 Dedalus, was sleyn of the sonnes of Cocalus in the xvjth 2261.
 yere of the reigne of Iair. *Isidorus, libro primo.* Nicos-
 trata, the moder of Latinus kyng, founde letters of Latyne.
Isidorus, libro nono. The langage of Latyn was departede
 in to iiij. For the olde tonge or langage of Latyn was in
 the tyme of Ianus and of Saturnus. And in the tyme of
 that kyng callede Latinus, and of other kynges of Tuschia,
 of whiche langage xij. tables were wryten of the lawes of
 theyme. Also the Romanes vsede that langage whom Plau-
 tus, Tullius, Virgilius, and Cato vsede; but langage that
 was mixte encresede after the increase of thEmpyre.
 Israel, other the peple of hit, seruede the Philistes xvij.
 yere after the dethe of Iair, whiche be deputed to the
 yeres of Iepte folowenge.

¹ So β.; *Munidia*, a. γ., Cx.;
Mundia, MS.

² *Nichostrata*, MSS.

³ *kyng of*, MS., and so below.

⁴ *vp*] om. Cx.

⁵ *þe*] om. a., Cx.

⁶ *Tuscayn*, a.

⁷ *melled*, a.; *myxt*, Cx.

CAP. XXIII.

*De Jepte; item de Sibyllis, et de rebus Trojanis.*¹

Jepte. JEPTE Galatides de tribu Gad, filius meretricis, judi- Anno Abr. 819.
Anno Jepte 1.
cavit Israel sex annis; cujus anno primo Latinus
Rex Latinus. filius Fauni cœpit regnare in Italia, in qua regnavit
triginta duobus annis, a quo regnum Latinorum sump-
sit initium, cessante ex tunc vocabulo Laurentinorum.
De decem Sibyllis. *Isidorus, libro octavo.* Tempore hujus Latini floruit
Sibylla Erythræa,² nomine Herophila,³ de Babylone
oriunda, quæ Græcis Ilium petentibus⁴ prædixit Tro-
jam evertendam et Homerum mendacia postmodum
scripturum. Et cum decem fuerunt⁵ Sibyllæ, hæc
ponitur quinta in numero, et cæteris antefertur;
quarum⁶ prima⁷ fuit Persica, secunda Libyca, tertia
Delphica, in templo Apollinis⁸ progenita ante bellum
Trojanum, cujus plurimos versus Homerus inseruit in
suis opusculis.⁹ Quarta fuit Cimmerica¹⁰ de Italia;
quinta¹¹ Erythræa,¹² de qua nunc agitur;¹³ sexta fuit
Samia, in Samos insula nata; septima Cumana, de

¹ No title in MSS.

² *Eritrea*, MSS.

³ *Erosiba*, B.; *Erofila*, E.

⁴ *potentibus*, B.

⁵ *fuerint*, B.

⁶ *et . . . quarum*] om. C.D.

⁷ *enim*, ins. C.D.

⁸ *Delphici*, ins. C.D.

⁹ *suo opusculo*, C.D.

¹⁰ *Cimerica*, B.

¹¹ *fuit*, ins. B.

¹² *Eritrea*, MSS.

¹³ *dictum est*, C.D.

Capitulum vicesimum tertium. Iepte.

TREVISA.

IEPTE of Galaad, of the lynage of Gad, an hoore¹ sone, was iuge of Israel sixe zere. Kyng Latyn, Faunus is sone, bygan to regne in Ytaly; and regned pere two and pritty zere. Of hym pe kynges of² Itali hadde þat name, and were i-cleped kynges of Latyns, and þan cesed þe name of Laurentines, and torned into þe name of Latyns.³ *Isidorus, libro octavo.* In pis kyng Latyn his tyme was Sibil Eritrea in hir floures, þat heet Erofila, and was i-bore in Babilon. Sche warnede þe Grees þat wente to Troye þat Troye schulde be destroyed, and þat Homerus schulde write lesynges afterward. Þere were ten Sibilis, and pis is þe fifte in nombre, and is i-putte tofore opere. Þe firste Sibile was of Pers, þe⁴ secounde of Libya, þe pridde was Delphica yn Appolyn his temple to fore þe bataile of Troye. Homerus wroot meny of hir vers in his bookes. Þe fourþe was Cimeria of Italy. Þe fifte was Eritrea, of hire is now oure speche. Þe sixte was Samia, i-bore in þe ylond⁵ of Samos.

*Capitulum vicesimum tertium.*MS. HARL.
2261.

IEPTE GALATIDES, son of an hoore of the tribe of Gad, was iugge in Israel vj. yere. In the firste yere off whom, Latinus the son of Fanus began to reigne in Ytaly, in whom he reignede xxxij^{ti} yere, from whiche tyme the realme of Latines toke begynnege, and the name off the Laurentynes decreasede and faylede. *Isidorus, libro octavo.* Sibilla Eritria, Erifola by name, borne in Babilon, was in the tyme of Latinus, whiche seide to the Grekes Troy to be destroyede, and that the poete Omerus scholde write mony lesenges afterward. But þer were x. Sibilles, amonge whom sche was putte the vthe in ordre, and is preferredde afore other. The firste of whom was callede Sibilla Persica. The secounde Sibilla Libica. The thrydde Sibilla Delphica, whiche was geten in the temple of Apollo afore the batelle of Troy, of the versus of whom Omerus toke mony and putte theyme in his werkes. The iijthe was Sibilla Temeria,⁶ of Ytaly. The vthe was Sibilla Eritria, of whom we spake of afore. The vjthe was callede Sibilla Samia, of that yle callede Samos.

¹ a comyn womans, Cx.² of] om. MS. (only.)³ and þan . . . of Latyns] om. Cx. |⁴ Pierse, a.⁵ lond, MS. (only.)⁶ Sic Harl. MS. for Cimmeria.

Campania oriunda, quæ novem libros attulit Tarquinio Prisco, Romano regi,¹ Romanis decretis conscriptos;² octava fuit³ Hellespontia,⁴ in agro Trojano nata, quæ legitur Cyri regis⁵ et Solonis⁶ temporibus extitisse; nona fuit Phrygia, quæ legitur vaticinata Anchisæ; decima Tiburtina, dicta Albunea.⁷ Quarum⁸ omnium carmina extolluntur, eo quod de Deo, de Christo, de gentibus multa scripsisse comprobantur.⁹ *Ranulphus*. Veruntamen Augustinus octavo¹⁰ libro De Civitate capitulo sextodecimo videtur velle, quod Sibylla Erythræa floruerit¹¹ tempore Romuli; de qua etiam dicit quod multa de Christo manifeste scripsit, sicut patet in illis ejus¹² versibus:¹³—

Judicii signum tellus sudore madescet;¹⁴

E cœlo rex adveniet per sæcla futurus.

Scilicet in carne præsens ut judicet orbem,¹⁵

et cætera.¹⁶ Quorum versuum capitales litteræ hunc reddunt sensum: JESUS CHRISTUS DEI FILIUS SALVATOR. *Isidorus, libro quarto, capitulo sexto.*¹⁷ Sibylla nomen est officii, non personæ. Dicitur enim a *Syos*,¹⁸ quod est deus, et *Bele*, quod est mens, quasi¹⁹ habens

¹ *Romano regi*] om. C.D.

² *inscripto*, D.

³ *oriunda . . . fuit*] om. B.

⁴ *Ellesponteia*, C.D.

⁵ *regis*] om. C.D.

⁶ *Salonis*, A.; *Salamonis*, B.D.; *Salonis*, E.

⁷ *Albunia*, E.

⁸ *Quorum*, E.

⁹ Extract slightly varied in C.D.

¹⁰ *decimo octavo*, A. The true reference is to lib. xviii. c. 23.

¹¹ *floruit*, A.

¹² *ejus*] om. B.

¹³ *qui sic incipiunt*, ins. C.D.

¹⁴ *madescit*, B.

¹⁵ *E . . . orbem*] om. C.D. (D. having instead: sicut Augustinus illos ponit seriatim in omelia quadam de adventu.)

¹⁶ *Scilicet . . . cætera*] om. B.

¹⁷ *capitulo sexto*] om. A.B.

¹⁸ *Scios*, A.; *Sios*, D.

¹⁹ *quasi*] om. A.

De seuenpe [was]¹ Cumana, i-bore in Campania; sche² brouz^{te} TREVISA.
 nyne bookes to Torquynus Priscus, kyng of Romayns, in þe
 whiche were i-write þe domes of Rome. De eiȝpe was Elles-
 pontia, i-bore in a feeld of Troye. Me redeþ þat sche³ was in
 kyng Cyrus and [in]⁴ Solon⁵ his tyme. De nynpe was Frigia.
 Me redeþ þat he⁶ prophecied in Anchisa. De tenpe was Tybur-
 tina, and heet also Albymea.⁷ Þe bookes of hem alle beep
 i-preysed, for þey writen moche of God, of Crist, and also of
 Payenis.⁸ R. Noþeles it semep þat Seynt Austyn, 18^o libro,
 capitulo 16^o, wil mene þat Sibille Eritria was in Romulus his
 tyme, and sche wroot moche of Criste, and þat openliche, as in
 pis vers of heroes :

“Token of doome þe erpe schal wiþ swoot⁹ by come weet,

“Out of heuene þe kyng endeles schal come to siȝte.

“And þat in flesche present forto deme þe world.”

And so forþ Sibil hap many mo vers. Þe heed lettres of þese
 pre vers, and of þe opere as þey beep i-write in Latyn, spelep
 pis menyng: ¹⁰ Ihesus Crist, Goddes sone, Sauyour. *Isidorus*,
libro 14^o.¹¹ Sibille is a name of offys, and nouȝt of persone, and
 is i-seide of *syos*, þat is God, and of *beele*, þat is pouȝt; and so

where sche was borne. The vij^{the} was callede Sibilla Cu- MS. HARL.
 mana, borne in Campania, whiche brouzhte to olde Tarqui- 2261.
 nius, kyng of the Romanes, ix. bokes of the decretes of the
 Romanes. The viij^{the} was callede Sibilla Ellespontia, borne
 in the cuntre of Troye, whiche was seide to haue bene in
 the tyme of kyng Cyrus and Salomon. The ix^{the} was callede
 Sibilla Frigia. The x^{the} was callede Sibilla Tiburtina, the
 wrytenges of whom be extolled in that thei didde wryte
 mony thynges of God, of Criste, and of other peple. R.
 Neuerthelesse Seynte Austyn semethe to expresse, De Civi-
 tate Dei, libro decimo octavo, capitulo sexto decimo, that
 Sibilla Eritria was in the time of Romulus, of whom he
 seithe that sche did write mony thinges of Criste. *Isidorus*,
libro octavo. That name Sibilla is a name of an office, not
 of a person, for hit is seide of this worde, *scios*, þat is, God,
 and *bele*, that is a mynde, and perfore Sibilla is seide, a

¹ Added from a. and Cx.

² he, a.

³ he, a.

⁴ Added from a. and Cx.

⁵ Salon, MSS.

⁶ she, Cx.

⁷ *Albumea*, Cx. Some proper

names in this chapter being very
 corrupt, have been left unaltered.

⁸ *Paynes*, Cx. (who varies the
 sentence.)

⁹ of swete, Cx.

¹⁰ speketh thus, Cx.

¹¹ 9, a.; *quarto*, Cx. The true
 reference is to lib. viii. c. 8.

mentem Dei ; unde sicut vir prophetans dicitur vates seu¹ propheta, sic fœmina prophetans Sibylla vocatur.² Sub his diebus tempore regis Latini³ facta est Argonautarum navigatio, quæ⁴ fuit occasio belli Trojani, quod sic introducitur. *Trogus, libro secundo.*

Ægeus et
Medea.

Post Neptunum successorem Ericthonii regnum Atheniensium ad Ægeum descenderat, qui ex priore uxore filium Theseum genuerat ; tandem, uxore illa mortua, desponsavit Medeam filiam regis Colchorum, ex qua genuit filium suum Medum. Medea tandem sibi⁵ timens⁶ propter adultam Thesei privigni sui ætatem, ad patrem suum cum filio⁷ Medo Colchos rediit.⁸

Theseus.

Post⁹ Ægeum apud Athenas regnavit filius suus Theseus, qui aliquando cum Hercule profectus Amazonas contrivit.

Demophon.

Post Theseum Demophon¹⁰ filius ejus successit, qui adversus Trojanos Græcis opem tulit

Pelias.

*Phrygius.*¹¹ Igitur Pelias rex Peloponnesensis¹² seu Thessaliæ,¹³ timens sibi ne Jason illustris filius Æsonis fratris sui regnum¹⁴ invaderet, se expulso, suadet

¹ vel, C.D.

² dicitur, C.D. B. adds *quia habens mentem Dei.*

³ regis Latini] Latini prædicti, C.D.

⁴ et, C.D.

⁵ sibi] om. B.

⁶ metuens, C.D.

⁷ suo, ins. B.

⁸ Slightly transposed in C.D.

⁹ Post . . . *Phrygius*] om. C.D. ;

for *Phrygius*, B. has *Trogus libro xj^o* ; A. has *Trogus 42.*

¹⁰ Demefon, B.

¹¹ *Frigius*, E. The text is correct. See *Dar. Phryg.* § 1, which explains the absurd gloss, *seu Thessaliæ* ; but Higden has also borrowed from Justin, lib. xlii. c. 2.

¹² *Peloponensis*, MSS., as usual.

¹³ *seu Thessaliæ*] om. C. D.

¹⁴ *suum*, ins. B.

Sibil is i-seide as it were a womman þat hap Goddes¹ pouzt. Perfore as a man þat prophecies is i-cleped a prophete, so a womman þat prophecies is i-cleped Sibil. Vnder þis dayes in kyng Latyns tyme was þe seylynge i-made þat is i-cleped þe seylynge of Argonautes. Þat seylynge was cause and occasioun of þe bataille of Troye, and bygan in þis manere. *Trogus, libro 2º*. After Neptunus, þe successour of Erictonius,² þe kyngdom of Athene fil to Egeus, þat hadde i-gete his sone Theseus on his firste wif; and at þe laste whanne þat wyf was deed, he wedded Medea, þe kynges douzter of Colchos, and gat on hire Medus. At þe laste Medea dredde hir step sone³ Theseus, whan he come to age, and took wip here hir sone Medus, and wente hoom to hire fader in to Colchos. After Egeus his sone Theseus reignede in Athene; he wente somtyme wip Hercules and werred, and ouercome þe Amazones. After Theseus his sone Demophon regned; he halp⁴ þe Grees azenst þe Troians. *Trogus, libro 42º*. Þanne Pelias, kyng of Peloponens, þat is of Thessalia, dredde leste Iason þe noble werriour⁵ wolde werre in his londes⁶ and putte hym out. Iason was Eson his sone; Eson was Pelias his owne broþer. Pelias brouzte

TREVISA.

woman hauenge the mynde of God. Wherefore like as a man prophecyenge is callede Vates, soe in lyke wise a woman prophecienge is callede Sibilla. In this tyme of Latinus the kyng, the Organautes seyde and keped the see, whiche was an occasion of the batelle of Troy, whiche was inducede in þis maner. *Trogus, libro secundo*. The realme of men of Athenes descendede to Egeus, after Neptunus, the successor of Erictonius, whiche gate of his firste wife a son callede Theseus. That wife dedde, he did wedde Medea, the dozhter of the kyng of Colchos, of whom he gate a son callede Medus. Medea, dredenge Theseus when that he was comen to age, turnede ageyne to Colchos to here fader, with Medus here sonne. Theseus reignede at Athenes after Egeus his fader, whiche, goenge furthe with Hercules, hadde the victory of the Amazones. Demophon, the son of Theseus, succedede in that realme, whiche zafe helpe to þe Grekes ageyne the Troianes. *Trogus, libro 42º*. Pelias,⁷ kyng of Peloponense other of Thessalia, dredenge leste that the nowble man, Iason by name, son of Eson his brother, scholde entre in to his realme, movede Iason

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ God his, a.² So a.; *Erictorius*, MS. Read *Ericthtonius*.³ So a. β. γ., Cx.; *sonne*, MS.⁴ *halp and assisted*, Cx.⁵ *werriour*] om. a. β. γ. and Cx.⁶ *lond*, Cx.⁷ *Peleas*, Harl. MS. here and below.

Argo-
nautæ.

Jasoni quærere pellem auream apud Colchos insulam ; sperans per hoc juvenis interitum provenire aut ex longa navigatione aut ex bello barbariei.¹ *Trogus, libro quadragesimo secundo.*² Insuper et Pelias fecit³ Argum parare navem pulcherrimam huic profectioni congruentem. *Petrus.* Ab hoc nomine, Argon, Argonautæ descenderunt, qui fuerunt juvenes validi ad profectionem Jasonis undecumque⁴ collecti, cum quibus Phrygiam primo applicuit,⁵ regnante tunc ibidem Laomedonte. *Trogus, libro quadragesimo secundo.*⁶ Sed et Jason de finibus Phrygiæ repulsus cum suis sodalibus⁷ Colchos venit, regem devicit, filium regis Ægealium occidit, pellem auream abstulit, Medeam regis filiam abduxit, et uxorem sibi fecit, quam tamen postmodum repudiavit. Sed cum postea⁸ a Pelia⁹ regis filii esset pulsus¹⁰ e¹¹ Thessalia, reconciliata sibi Medea cum privigno¹² suo Medo de Ægeo rege Atheniensium suscepto,¹³ ingentem juvenum multitudinem recollegit, Colchos repetiit, ubi socerum¹⁴ suum regem regno¹⁵ pulsum¹⁶ viriliter restituit, nonnullas etiam civitates in recompensationem prioris injuriæ regno ejus adjecit. *Phrygius Dares.* Igitur Jason,¹⁷

¹ *barbari*, A.B.; *barbaria*, Just. xlii. 2.

² *Frigius Dares*, A.B.C.D., which is better. See § 1.

³ *et . . . fecit*] fecit Pelleas, B.

⁴ *ubicumque*, C. (not D.)

⁵ *applicavit*, C. (not D.)

⁶ *primo*, C. *libro quarto*, D. The text is correct. See lib. xlii. c. 2. and c. 3.

⁷ *juvenibus*, C.D.

⁸ *postea*] om. B.

⁹ *Pellee*, B.

¹⁰ *expulsus*, B.

¹¹ *e*] a, C. (not D.)

¹² *primogenito*, B.; *filio*, C.D.

¹³ *de . . . suscepto*] om. C.D.

¹⁴ *socium*, B.

¹⁵ *suo quodam*, ins. C.D.

¹⁶ *expulsum*, B.

¹⁷ *Jason*] om. B.

Iason in witte forto fette¹ þe goldene flees at Colchos and hopede þerby þat þe ʒong man schulde be deed oper for long seillynge in þe see oper in bataile aʒenst straunge naciouns. *Phrygius*² *Dares*. Þerfore Pelias made Argus ordeyne a wel faire schippe couenable to þis seillynge and passage. *Petrus*. Of þis name Argon comeþ þis name Argonaute. Argonaute were stalworpe ʒonge men i-gadred al aboute for Iason his viage; þanne Iason seillede forþ wip þese men and londede first in Frigia. Þo Laomedon³ reignede þere. *Trogus*. But Iason was put out of Frigia and come in to Colchos, and ouercome þe kyng and slowʒ his sone Egealius and took þe goldene flees, and had wip hym Medea⁴ þe kynges douʒter, and made hire his wyf. Noþeles aftirward he forsook hire and putte hir away. But afterward whan kyng Pelias his sone was put out of Thessalia, Iason reconsiledede⁵ and took aʒen his wif Medea wip his stepsone Medus, and gaderede a stronge multitude of ʒonge men and wente in to Colchos and restored orpedliche⁶ his wifes fader, þat was putte out of his kyngdom, and ʒaf hym meny citees to his kyngdom in⁷ recompensacioun and amendement of þe olde wrong. *Phrygius*

to goe to the yle of Colchos to seche the skynne of golde, MS. HARL. 2261. supposenge that by that laboure he scholde be pereschede other in the see other þro batelle on londe. *Phrygius Dares*,² xxxij^{ti}. Wherefore Pelias made Argus to ordeyne ryalle schippes apte and pleasaunt to theyme. *Petrus*. The peple that were calledede Argonautes, toke name of Argon, whiche were myʒhty men, gedrede of alle costes to go with Iason. Whiche londede firste in Frigia, Laomedon reignenge there in that tyme. *Trogus*. But Iason, expulsede from Frigia, come with his felowschippe to Colchos, and ouercome the kyng of hit, sleenge Egealius his son, and toke with hym the skynne of golde, and also Medea, the doʒhter of that kyng, and toke here to his wife, whom he refusede afterwarde. But when that Iason was expulsede from Thessalia by the sonnes of Pelias, and Medea his wyfe reconsiledede to hym, with Medus here son, getten by Egeus kyng of Athenes, he gedrede a grete hoste and wente to that yle calledede Colchos, and restored his fader in lawe vn to his realme, whiche was expulsede from hit, and brouʒhte to his realme mony oper cites, in recompensation of the wronge doen afore. *Phrygius Dares*. After that Iason hade

¹ *setche*, Cx.

² *Frigius*, MSS. and Cx.

³ So Cx.; *Laomedon*, MS.

⁴ So Cx.; *Meda*, MS.

⁵ *recountseyllled*, Cx.

⁶ *orpedly*, Cx.

⁷ So a. β. γ., Cx.; and, MS.

Jason Tro- postquam Colchos subjugaverat, invitatis secum Castore
 jam invadit et Hesio- et Pollucē, Peleo¹ de Phthia,² Telamone de Sala-
 nam rapit. mine,³ paratis quindecim navibus Phrygiam⁴ nocte
 appulit, Laomedontem regem occidit, Ilium in⁵ Troja⁶
 vastavit, Hesionam regis filiam rapuit, quam Telamoni,
 militi⁷ suo, uxorem⁸ dedit; eo quod primus Trojam
 intraverat.⁹ Præda quoque¹⁰ facta, Jason ad sua cum
 suis¹¹ rediit. Quo¹² audito Priamus Laomedontis pri-
 mogenitus Ilium portis et muris firmavit et regnare
 cœpit.

CAP. XXIV.

*De Abessa; reliquæ de bello Trojano narrantur.*¹³

Abessa. ABESSA Bedlemita¹⁴ judicavit Israel septem annis; Anno Abr. 825.
 Anno Abessa 1.
 cujus¹⁵ anno secundo Priamus rex Phrygiæ seu
 Priamus Trojæ¹⁶ misit Antenorem¹⁷ ad Græcos, dicens se
 Hesionam requirit. omnes injurias præteritas æquanimiter passurum, si

¹ Pelleo de, B.

² Scythia, D.; Scitia, MSS. The emendation is certain. See Dar. Phryg. § 3.

³ Salmania, B.; Salomonía, D. Salamina, E.

⁴ de, ins. C.D.

⁵ in] de, E.

⁶ Troya, MSS., and similarly below.

⁷ militi] om. C.D.

⁸ in uxorem, D.

⁹ introierit, C.D.

¹⁰ Prædaque, C.D.

¹¹ Transposed in A.B.

¹² Hoc, C.D.

¹³ No title in MSS.

¹⁴ Beethlemita, A.; Bethlemita, B.; Bethlemita, D.; mortuo Jepte, ins. C.D.

¹⁵ cujus] om. B.

¹⁶ Trogæ, B.

¹⁷ Anthenorem, MSS.

Dares. Whan Iason hadde¹ sodued Colchos, he hadde wip TREV ISA.
 hym at his prayenge² Castor, Pollux, Peleus of³ Scitia,
 Telamon⁴ of Salomina,⁵ and come yn wip fyue schippes by
 nyzte into Frigia and slow Laomedon þe kyng and destroyed
 Ilium in Troye. He rauysched Hesiona þe kynges douzter
 and zaf hire to his knizt Telamon of Salamina to wife;⁶
 for he was þe firste þat entrede in to Troye and⁷ pere took⁸
 a grete pray. And Iason tornede azen wip his men. Whan
 Priamus⁹ Laomedon his eldest sone herde and wiste of al
 þis, he strengpede Ilium þat is Troye wip zates and wip
 walles and bygan for to reigne.

Capitulum vicesimum quartum. Abessa.

ABESSA of Bethleem was iuge in Israel seuene zere. In his
 secounde zere Priamus kyng of Frigia, þat is kyng of Troye,
 sente Antenor to þe Grees,¹⁰ and seide þat he wolde gladliche
 forzeue al trespas þat was doo to forehonde,¹¹ zif þey wolde

made subiecte that yle of Colchos, desirede with hym Castor MS. HARL.
 and Pollux, and Peleus of Scitia, and Thelamon of Sala- 2261.
 mina, with v. schippes entrede in to Frigia in the nyzhte,
 and did sle Laomedon the kyng of hit, and wastede Troy,
 and toke away Hesion the kynges dozhter, whom he toke
 to Telamon⁴ his knyghte, to be his wife, in that he entrede
 in to the cite of Troy firste. And when thei hade taken
 preyes at there pleasure, Iason returnede with his felow-
 schippe towarde his cuntre. Priamus the son of Laome-
 don, herenge of that treason, made that city of Troy
 stronge, dressenge hit with zates and walles, and began to
 reigne in hit.

Capitulum vicesimum quartum.

ABESSA, of the cuntre of Bethleem, was iugge in Israel
 vij. yeres, and reignede þer. In the firste yere of whom
 Priamus, the kyng of Frigia other elles Troy, sende An-
 thenor vn to the Grekes, seyenge that he wolde suffre alle

¹ Thanne Iason whanne he hadde,
 a. β. γ.

² Cx. ins. *Hercules*.

³ and of, MS., a. (not β. γ. Cx.)
 For *Scitia* read *Phthia*. See above.

⁴ *Thelamon*, MSS. and Cx.

⁵ So β. γ.; *Salomina*, MS., a. Read
Salamis.

⁶ *wyve*, a.

⁷ and] om. a.

⁸ was i-take, a. β. γ.; was taken,
 Cx.

⁹ *Pryamus*, MS. A few similar
 corrections have been made tacitly
 in this chapter.

¹⁰ *Grekes*, Cx.; and so below.

¹¹ *trespasses that they had doo*
bifore, Cx.

Hesiona soror sua dudum rapta sibi¹ redderetur. Negantibus² Græcis Priamus bellum instaurat, Hectorem primogenitum suum cæteris præficit. Id idem Alexander, qui et Paris,³ frater Hectoris hortatur. Asserit enim,⁴ dum quondam in Ida silva⁵ venatum iret, vidisse se in somnis Mercurium⁶ adduxisse Junonem, Venerem, et Minervam, ut inter illas de specie judicaret; tuncque Minervam sibi⁷ promississe sapientiam,⁸ si ejus speciem præferret.⁹ Helenus alter frater vaticinatur in contrarium, dicens, si Alexander uxorem de Græcia acciperet, Graios¹⁰ venturos et Ilium vastaturos.

Paris cum Antenore ad Græcos mittitur.

Id idem vaticinata est Cassandra. Nihilominus naves parantur, et¹¹ Alexander cum Antenore¹² Græciam mittuntur. Ubi dum ad¹³ insulam Cytheram¹⁴ ad festum Junonis mulieres convenirent, Helenam regis Menelai uxorem ad videndum Alexandri formam ibi occurrentem Paris¹⁵ rapuit, domumque rediit. Ad hæc Priamus¹⁶ applaudit,¹⁷ quasi Hesionam sororem suam

Helenam rapit.

¹ *sibi*] om. D.

² *de gentilibus*, B.

³ *Paris qui et frater*, B.

⁴ *Nam asseruit*, C.D.

⁵ *Idam silvam*, C.D.

⁶ *sibi*, ins. C.D.

⁷ *sibi*] om. B.

⁸ *sapientiam*] om. C.D.

⁹ *daturam se ei uxorem quæ in Græcia pulchrior foret*, ins. C.D.; *et Venerem sibi promississe uxorem de mundo pulchriorem si ejus speciem*

præferret, A.B. and Harl. tr. The text is evidently incomplete. See Trevisa.

¹⁰ *Græcos*, A.D.; om. B.

¹¹ *et*] om. C.D.

¹² *cæterisque pluribus*, ins. C.D.

¹³ *in*, C.D.

¹⁴ *Cithaream*, MSS. (and versions).

¹⁵ *Paris*] om. C.D., with other slight variations.

¹⁶ *Priamus quoque*, C.D.

¹⁷ *appellandi*, B.

sende aȝen his suster Hesiona, pat pey hadde i-rauesched. Þe Grees wolde nouȝt. Priamus arrayed for þe bataille and made his eldest sone Hector¹ ledere of opere men. Alisaundre, pat heet Paris also, Hector his broþer, assenteþ her to, and seip þat whanne he hontede some tyme in þe woode pat hatte Ida,² he sleep³ and mette⁴ þat Mercurius brouȝte abowe to fore hym Iuno, Venus, and Minerua, for he schulde deme whiche of hem was fairest; and Minerua by heet hym wisdom, [Iuno worship, and Venus behete him]⁵ þe fairest wif of þe worlde, ȝif he wolde deme pat⁶ sche were þe fairest. Helenus þe oper broþer prophecied þe contrarie; and seide þat ȝif Alisaundre, pat heet Paris, took a wyf of Grees,⁷ [þe Grees]⁸ wolde come and destroye Ilium, pat is Troye. Pat womman Cassandra propheciede þe same. Nopeles schippes were arrayed, and Alisaundre, pat heet Paris, wiþ Antenor⁹ sent¹⁰ into Grecia, and whenne wommen come¹¹ into þe ilond Cythera to þe feste of Iuno, Helena kyng Menelaus his wif come forto see þe fairnesse of Paris, [and Paris]¹² rauesched hire and took hir wiþ hym and torned home aȝen.¹³ Þan was Priamus glad i-now,

TREVISIA.

iniuryes a-paste if that Hesiona his sustyr, taken awaye by theyme, myȝhte be restorede. The men of Grece denyenge that, Priamus made redy to make batelle ageyne theyme, makenge Hector, his firste son, gouernoure and rewlere of hit, whiche thyng Alexander other Paris exhortede to be fullefillede, seyenge that as he wente to hunte in a woode callede Ida, he see in his slepe Mercury to haue brouȝhte to hym Venus and Minerua to iugge of the beawte of theyme. Then Minerua promisede to hym sapience, if that he wolde preferre here beaute; and Venus promisede to hym oon of the feireste women of þe worlde to his wife, if pat he wolde preferre here beawte. Neuerthelesse schippes were made redy, and Alexander with Antenor were sende to the londe of Grece, whiche, commenge to an yle callede Cythera, where women were gedrede to the feste of Iuno, Paris toke awaye Helena, the wife of kynge Menelaus, commenge to mete Paris to beholde his beawte, and broȝhte here to Priamus. At whiche acte Priamus ioyede moche,

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ So *β*, Cx.; *Ector*, MS., here and below.

² So *α*, Cx.; *Yda*, MS.

³ *slept*, Cx.

⁴ *dremed*, Cx.

⁵ Added from Cx. (only); *wyt and wysdom and the fayreste wyf*; *γ*.

⁶ So *α* and Cx.; *yf*, MS.

⁷ *Grece*, Cx.

⁸ Added from *α* and Cx.

⁹ *Anthenore*, MS., but *Antenor* above.

¹⁰ *and Paris with Anthenor were sente*, Cx.

¹¹ *tho men came*, Cx.

¹² Added from *α. β. γ.*, Cx.; MSS. sometimes have *Parys*.

¹³ *and toke hir with hym in to Troy*, Cx. (omitting the rest.)

Græci
classem
parant,

per hoc recuperaturus. Igitur Menelao rege Lacedæ-
moniaë fratri suo Agamemnoni regi Mycenarum
de raptu uxoris suæ² gravius³ conquerenti adu-
nantur⁴ robusti⁵ quinque; ⁶ Achilles, Patroclus, Ulixes,
Ajax, Nestor, cum cæteris validis numero quadra-
ginta septem, habentes naves paratas in portu Athe-
narum⁷ numero mille ducentas. Deinde responso⁸

et Phry-
giam vas-
tant.

Ilium foret subvertendum, Græci mare sulcant, classem
navium⁹ solvunt, in Phrygia prædas agunt, et re-

Agamem-
non ad
Priamum
legatos
mittit.

deunt. Interea mittit Agammenon legatos Ulixem et
Diomedem ad regem Priamum, si vellet Helenam
reddere. Priamus illico commemorat Argonautarum

Bellum
indicitur.

injuriam, patris interitum, sororis raptum,¹⁰ Antenoris
legati sui contemptum; idcirco¹¹ pacem repudiat, et¹²
bellum indicit.¹³ Igitur exercitu hinc inde congregato
Hector occidit Protesilaum, Patroclum et Merionem,¹⁴
multosque sauciat; usque dum Ajax Telamonius, con-

¹ *Mccenorum*, MSS.

² *de . . . suæ*] om. C.D.

³ *graviter*, B.

⁴ *congregantur*, C.D.

⁵ *fortes*, C.D.

⁶ *quique*, MSS. See Harl. trans-
lation.

⁷ *Atheniensi*, C.D.

⁸ *Responsoque*, C.D.

⁹ *navium*] om. C.D.

¹⁰ *et*, ins. C.D.

¹¹ *ideoque*, C.D.

¹² *et*] om. C.D.

¹³ So A.B.; *inducit*, E.

¹⁴ *Menonem*, E.

as þey he schulde rekke neuere and haue aʒen his suster Hesionona.¹ Ðan Menelaus kyng of Lacedemonia made a greuouse² playnt to his broþer Agamemnon,³ kyng of Messenes,⁴ of þe rauyschinge of his wif, and gadrede passyng strong men, Achille, Patroclus, Vlixes,⁵ Ajax, Nestor, wif opere stalworþe men, seuen and fourty; and hadde schippes redy in þe hauene of Athene⁶ in nombre of a þowsand and two hondred, and hadde answeere of Appolyn Delphicus, þat Ilium, þat is Troye, schulde be destroyed in þe tenþe ʒere. Þe Grees took vp here ances and seilled on þe see, and took grete prayes, and tornede home aʒe. In þe mene tyme Agamemnon sende messangers Vlixes and Diomedes to kyng Priamus, ʒif he wolde ʒelde vp Helene, and sende hir home aʒen. Ðanne Priamus bypouʒt hym, and hadde anon in mynde þe wrong of þe Argonautes,⁷ þe deth of his fader, þe rauyschyng of his suster, þe displesyng of his messenger Antenor. Þerfore he forsook pees, and heet array⁸ for þe werre. Ðan whan þe oost was i-gadred in eiper side, Hector slow Protesilaus⁹ and Menon,¹⁰ and slow and felde to þe¹¹ grounde meny men

thenkenge to recure Hesionona his sustyr by that. Wherefore Menelaus, kyng of Lacedemonia, makenge compleynte to Agamemnon,³ kyng of Mecesnas, v. myʒhty men condescende to there helpe, whiche were Achilles, Patroclus, Vlixes, Ajax, and Nestor, with mony other stronge men, xlvij. m^l in nowmbre, hauenge a m^l and cc. schippes redy at Athenes in the haven or porte. After that Apollo Delphicus ʒafe an answeere to theyme that Troye scholde be destroyede after the xthe yere; wherefore the Grekes goenge to the see londede in Frigia, and robbenge there, returnede after that thei hade taken þeire pray. Then Agamemnon³ sende Vlixes and Diomedes as messyngeres to kyng Priamus that he scholde delyuere Helena. Then Priamus remembrede the iniurye doen to hym by the Argonautes, the dethe of his fader, and the takenge away of his sustyr, and the contempte off Antenor his messyngere, refusethe peace, desirenge batelle. Wherefore an¹² grete hoste gedrede and metenge to gedre, Hector did sle Protesilaus⁹ and Menon, and woundede soore mony other, vn til that Ajax, son of

MS. HARL.
2261.

¹ as þey . . . Hesionona] wenyng therby recouer his sister Hesionona, Cx.

² greet and greuouse, Cx.

³ Agamemnon and Agamymon, MSS., and so below.

⁴ Mescenes, β. γ.

⁵ So β. γ., Cx.; Flives, MS., α., and so below.

⁶ of Athene] om. Cx.

⁷ Argonautes, MS.

⁸ heet array] ordeyned, Cx.

⁹ Prothesilaus, MS.; Prothesalaus, Harl. MS.

¹⁰ So MSS. here and below. The translators had Memnonem (i.e. Memnon) in their text.

¹¹ þe] om. α. β.

¹² So the MS.

sobrinus ejus de Hesiona natus, recognita¹ inter eos consanguinitate, eum impediret. Interim² conceduntur induciæ biennales, ut quisque³ mortuum suum⁴ sepeliat; sed⁵ post biennium bellum repetitur, in quo Hector decem fortes duces occidit. Econtra Achilles quatuor illustres viros interimit; ac⁶ per octoginta dies acriter pugnatum est continue. Et post dantur induciæ triennales.⁷ Post quas, inito certamine, plures utriusque⁸ corruunt. Et quamvis Hector per somnium Andromachæ uxoris suæ, ne in bellum prodiret eo die admonitus fuisset,⁹ in bellum tamen properat et ab Achille occiditur.¹⁰ Quo sepulto induciæ dantur ad¹¹ annum. Dumque dies anniversarius¹² Hectoris ageretur, adest Achilles amore Polyxenæ filiæ Priami nimium¹³ succensus, cujus nuptias dum petit et consequitur¹⁴ a bello se¹⁵ subtrahit, asserens iniquum fore propter raptum Helenæ totam Europam conturbari.

Post inducias biennales bellum repetitur.

Hectoris mors.

¹ *cognita*, C.D.
² *Ideo*, C. (not D.)
³ *quilibet*, C. (not D.)
⁴ *mortuos suos*, C.D.
⁵ *sed*] om. C.D.
⁶ *ac*] om. C.D.
⁷ Altered verbally and slightly transposed in C.D.
⁸ *utrimque*, C.D.
⁹ *eo . . . fuisset*] moveretur, C.D.
¹⁰ *interficitur*, C.D.
¹¹ *per*, A.D.
¹² So B.; *anniversaria*, A.C.D.E.
¹³ *nimum*] om. C.D.
¹⁴ *et consequitur*] quibus concessis, C.D., with other slight variations.
¹⁵ *se*] om. B.

forto¹ þat his cosyn Hesiona sone, Ajax Telamoni²us, TREVISIA.
 knowleched kynrede bytwene hem, and so lette hym of his
 rees. Þe mene tyme were truyse i-take for two ȝere, þat
 þey myȝte burye hir men þat were i-slawe.³ But after two
 ȝere þey fenge in a strong bataille. Hector slowȝ ten stal-
 worpe dukes, and Achilles in þe oþer side slow foure stalworpe
 men and noble; and þe bataile durede foure score dayes
 contynueliche in harde fyȝtinge and stronge. And after
 þat were⁴ trewes i-take for þre ȝere, and after þe trewes þey
 fenge on forto fiȝte and slowȝ ful meny men in eiper side,⁵
 and Andromach, Hector his wif, warned Hector by here
 sweuene⁶ þat he schulde⁷ þat day nouȝt⁸ wende in to batayle.⁹
 Nopeles Hector wente in to bataile and was i-slawe of Achilles.
 And whan Hector was i-buried, were trewes i-take for a ȝere.
 Whan Hector his mynde day was i-holde, Achilles was
 þerat, and loued hugeliche Polyxena,¹⁰ kyng Priamus his
 douȝter, and axede and had¹¹ hir to his wif, and wiþdrowe
 hym from þe bataille, and seide þat it was euel i-doo¹² forto
 destourbe¹³ al Europa for þe raueschyng of Helen. But at

Hesiona, sustir to Priamus, did lette hym knowenge con- MS. HARL.
 sanguinite betwene theyme. After that batelle doen, respite 2261.
 of ij. yere was grawntede, that men sleyn myȝhte be beryede.
 But that space a-paste, the batelle began, contynunge by
 lxxx. daies, in whiche batelle Hector did sle x. nowble
 dukes, and Achilles did sle iiij. stronge men. After whiche
 batelle doen, space and respite of ij. yere were grawntede.
 The batelle begunne ageyne, mony nowble men were sleyn,
 where Hector, warnede by Andromacha his wife, that he
 scholde not goe to batelle in that day, was sleyn by
 Achilles, whiche beryede, respite was ȝiffen by a yere.
 And at the ende of the yere, in the anniuersary day of
 Hector, Achilles, movede to the luffe of Polixena, douȝter
 of kyng Priamus, wente to theyme. Whiche desirenge of
 Priamus to haue Polyxena,¹⁰ his douȝter, to his wif, and
 hauenge grawnte, come not to þe batelle, seyenge that hit
 was a wickede thyng alle Europe to be trowblede for
 takenge aweye of Helena. Whiche, goenge to batelle at

¹ forto] til, Cx.

² Thelamoni²us, MS.

³ slayn, Cx.

⁴ was, Cx.; but were (trewes) just below.

⁵ Sentence slightly varied in Cx.

⁶ dreame, Cx.

⁷ not þat, a. and Cx.

⁸ nouȝt] om. a. and Cx.

⁹ þe batayle, a., here and below.

¹⁰ Polixena, MSS.; Policena, Cx.

¹¹ and had] to have, Cx.

¹² done, Cx.

¹³ destrouble, Cx.

Tandem rogatu Græcorum procedens, a Troilo, qui multos Græcos¹ occiderat, vulneratur.² Quo jam³ exasperatus ipsum Troilum et Memnonem occidit. Exinde amaricata Hecuba, uxor Priami, dolum cogitat,⁴ diem Achilli statuit,⁵ qua filiam suam Polyxenam⁶ ducat; qua tandem adveniente Alexander, qui et Paris, Achillem dolose occidit. Inde responso a diis accepto quod per progeniem Achillis Græci forent victuri, Neoptolemus, filius Achillis, in bellum prodit; in quo Ajax et Alexander alter ab altero letaliter vulnerantur.⁷ Septimo igitur certaminis anno supervenit⁸ Penthesilea,⁹ regina Amazonum, in auxilium Trojanorum; quæ Græcorum obsidionem dissolvit, et multas de navibus Græcorum cremavit; veruntamen a Neoptolemo, quem vulneraverat, occiditur.¹⁰ Post hoc exhortantibus Antenore et Ænea, ut Helena redderetur et pax peteretur, indignatur

Achillis mors.

Ajax et Paris alter alterum trucidant. Amazones Trojanos adjuvant.

¹ *jam*, ins. C.D.

² *vulnerat*, B.

³ *Quo jam*] qui jam, B.; unde, C.D.

⁴ *excogitat*, A.B.C.D.

⁵ *constituit*, C. (not D.)

⁶ *Polyxenam*] om. C.D.

⁷ *vulneratur*, D.

⁸ *venit*, B.

⁹ *Penthesilea*, MSS.

¹⁰ Sentence slightly varied in C.D.

pe laste he wente forþ at pe prayere of pe Grees, and was i-wounded of Troilus,¹ þat hadde i-slawe meny Grees. Perfore he was angrī and wroop, and slow Troilus and Menon also. Þan was Hecuba wonder wroop, Priamus his wif, and by pouzte [here of gyle],² and sette Achilles a day whan he schulde come and fecche home his wyf Polyxena, þat was hir owne douzter. And whanne pe day was i-come,³ Alisaundre, þat het Paris, slow Achilles gilefulliche. Perfore þey hadde answere of goddes, þat pe Grees schulde haue pe victorie by Achilles his lynage. Neoptolemus,⁴ Achilles his sone, wente forþ into bataille; in pe whiche bataile Alisaundre⁵ and Ajax were i-wounded to pe deth eiper of oper. Þanne pe seuene þere of pe bataille⁶ come Penthesilea,⁷ queene of Amazones,⁸ in help and socour of pe Troians, and brak pe sege of pe Grees, and brende meny of hir schippes. Nopeles sche was i-slawe of Neoptolemus þat sche hade i-wounded. After þat Antenor⁹ and Eneas counsaillde forto delyuere hoom Eleyne, and forto axe¹⁰ pees. Priamus took grete indignacioun [of here

TREVISA.

the laste thro the supplication of the Grekes, was woundede soore of Troilus, whiche hade sleyn and woundede mony Grekes. Achilles seenge that, and vexede soore, did sle Troilus and Meno. Then Hecuba, the wife of Priamus, hauenge hym in despecte, intendede decepcion, thenkenge to ordeyne a day to Achilles in whom he scholde wedde Polyxena here dozter. Achilles, comenge to theyme that tyme assignede, was sleyn by disseite of Paris other Alexander. Where off an answere was ziffen of goddes that men of Grece scholde be victores thro the bloode of Achilles. Then Neoptolemus,⁴ the son of Achilles, wente furthe to batelle, in whom Ajax and Alexander woundede either other dedely. Penthesilea,⁷ the qwene of the Amazones, come to helpe the Troianes in the vijthe yere of their batelles and fize, whiche dissoluede the sege of the Grekes and brende mony of their schippes. Neuerthelesse that qwene Penthesilea⁷ was sleyn of the son of Achilles, Neoptolemus⁴ by name, whom sche hade woundede soore. After that, Antenor⁹ and Eneas movenge Priamus that Helena, wife to Menelaus, scholde be restorede, he hade indignacion,

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *Troilus*, MS. and Cx.² Added from a. β. and Cx.³ *comen*, Cx.⁴ *Neopholomus*, MSS., and so below; *Neopholomeus*, Harl. MS.⁵ *Paris*, Cx.⁶ *siege*, Cx.⁷ *Pentasilia*, or *Pentisilia*, MSS.⁸ *Amosons*, Cx.⁹ So Cx.; *Anthenore*, MS., as often; *Anthenor*, Harl. MS.]¹⁰ *desire*, Cx.

Priamus; mortem eis intentans, si ultra id persuaderent.¹ Quamobrem ipsi indignati² mittunt Polydamantem ad Græcos, urbis traditionem pro salute sua³ offerentes. Concessa⁴ igitur pace illis tribus et omnibus suis, scilicet Antenori, Æneæ, et⁵ Polydamanti, Troja traditur.

Mors Priami, urbs de nocte hostibus aperitur; ubi Priamus a Neoptolemo etiam ad aras deorum confugiens occiditur.⁶

et Polyxenæ. Æneas Polyxenam apud patrem suum Anchisen⁷ abscondit ad instantiam Helenæ; libertas Andromachæ conceditur. Polyxena diu quæsita et tandem inventa a Neoptolemo ad patris sui⁸ tumulum jugulatur.

Finis belli Trojani. Æneas propter absconsionem Polyxenæ discedere jubetur; Antenori terra illa relinquitur; Helena cum suo Menelao domum redit.⁹ Igitur pugnatum fuerat¹⁰ apud Trojam decem annis sex mensibus, ceciderunt ex Trojanis ante urbem proditam dclxxvi.,¹¹ sed urbe prodata cclxxvii.¹² Æneas ergo cum viginti quatuor navibus a patria discessit, comitantibus eum tribus

¹ *si . . . persuaderent*] om. C.D.

² *indignati*] om. C.D.

³ *sua*] om. B.

⁴ *Promissa*, C.D.

⁵ So B.D.; om. A.E.

⁶ Altered verbally in C.D.

⁷ *Enchisen*, B.

⁸ *sui*] om. A.D.

⁹ *rediit*, C.D.; with other slight variations.

¹⁰ *fuit*, B.; *pugnatum est itaque*, D.

¹¹ *milia*, ins. B.C.D.

¹² *milia*, ins. B.C.D. (D. has 296.)

counsail, and seide he schulde dey 3if euere he were so wood •TREVISA.
 to counsail þat eftsones. Þerfore þey took greet indignacioun,] ¹
 and sente Polydamas to þe Grees forto betraye þe citee for hire
 owne sauacioun. The Grees grauntede pees to pese þre, [to] ²
 Antenor, to Eneas, to Polydamas, and to alle hires, ³ and þe
 citee was i-poned by ny3te to þe enemyes. ⁴ Þanne Priamus
 fli3 to auters of goddes, and Neoptolemus pursued hym and
 slow hym stan deed. ⁵ Eneas hidde Polyxena at his fader
 Anchises at þe prayer of Helene. Andromache hadde fredom
 i-graunted. Polyxena was longe i-sou3t, and at þe laste i-founde
 and i-slawe of Neoptolemus at here fader tombe. Eneas, for he
 hadde hidde Polyxena, was i-hote be agoo. Þe londe was
 i-lefte to Antenor. Helen wente home a3en wip Menelaus.
 Me hadde i-fou3te at Troye ten 3ere and sixe monþes,
 and were i-slawe of þe Troians, or þe citee was bytrayed,
 sixe hondred þousand þre skore and sixtene; and whan
 þe citee was betrayed, þre score þowsand and ei3ten
 þowsand. ⁶ Þanne Eneas wente out of þe contray wip foure
 and twenty schippes, and wip hym þre þowsend men and þre

seyenge þei scholde loose there lyfes, if thei movede to MS. HARL.
 hym eny more of þat mater. Wherefore thei, hauenge in- 2261.
 dignacion, sende Polydamas to þe Grekes, offerenge to
 theym the delyueraunce of the cite, the lifes of theym
 grauntede and of there men. Whiche grauntenge to theyme
 peace, and to alle there men, that is to saye, vn to An-
 tenor, Eneas, and to Polydamas, and to alle there men,
 the 3ates of the cite were sette open to the Grekes in þe
 ny3hte. Where Priamus was sleyne of Neoptolomus.
 Eneas takenge Polyxena, hidde here at a place of Anchisen
 his fader, in the temple of goddes. Also liberte was
 grauntede to Andromacha at the instaunce of Helena.
 Polyxena, do3hter to Priamus, founde at the laste, was
 throtelede at the beryalle of here fader. Wherefore Eneas
 was commaundede to departe from that cuntre, for the
 hidenge off Polyxena. That londe was lefte to Antenor,
 and Helena was restorede to Menelaus her howsebonde,
 kynge of Athenes. Where thei did fi3hte by x. yere and
 vj. monethes, and there were sleyne of the Troianes, afore
 the treason of hit, vjc. lxxvj. m^l, and after the treason of
 that cite cc. lxxvij. m^l. Eneas departede from that cuntre,
 takenge with hym xx^{iiij} schippes, with iij. m^l. men and ccc.;

¹ Added from a. and Cx. (β. has
 þei for he twice.)

² Added from a. β. and Cx.

³ to alle theyr retinue, Cx.

⁴ Grekes, Cx.

⁵ stan deed] om. Cx.

⁶ Sentence recast by Cx.

milibus et trecentis, Antenorem quoque¹ secuti sunt duo milia, Andromacham et Helenum² duo milia.³

CAP. XXV.

*De Aylon et Abdon, iudicibus Israel. Græci post Trojam eversam domum redeunt; socii Diomedis in aves conversi. De hujusmodi transmutationibus quid iudicandum.*⁴

Aylon. ⁵AYLON de tribu Zabulon iudicavit Israel decem Anno Abr. 832.
Anno Aylon 1. annis; quos⁶ tamen Septuaginta interpretes non annumerant, et ideo Eusebius annumerat ejus annos temporibus Josuæ, Samuelis, et Saulis, quorum annos Scriptura tacet, plus annorum ponens quam in Josepho reperitur. Ita ut ab egressu de Ægypto usque ad templum⁷ Salomonis sunt anni quadringenti octoginta.⁸

Abdon. Abdon sive Labdon⁹ iudicavit Israel octo annis, cujus Anno Abr. 862.
Anno Abdon 1. anno tertio capta est Troja, anno scilicet a nativitate Abrahamæ octingentesimo xliij^o,¹⁰ ab egressu¹¹ Israel de Ægypto cccxl^o,¹² anno regni regis Latini in Italia xxv^o, anno ante urbem Roman conditam circiter quadringentesimo xxxii^o.¹³ *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo sextodecimo.*¹⁴ Post Trojam eversam,¹⁵

¹ vero, C.D.

² Helenam, B., badly. See Dar. Phryg. § 44.

³ Andromacham . . . milia] om. C.D.

⁴ No title in MSS.

⁵ Post Abessam, ins. C.D.

⁶ So D.; quem, A.E.

⁷ tempus, B.

⁸ Paragraph slightly varied in C.D.

⁹ Lapdon, B.

¹⁰ lxiii., A.

¹¹ ingressu, B.

¹² anno, ins. E.; it would be better before ab.

¹³ Numbers slightly varied in C.D.

¹⁴ C.D. omit reference.

¹⁵ Troja eversa, C.D.

hondred, and wip Antenor two¹ powsand, wip Andromache² TREVISA.
and Helenus two powsand.

Capitulum vicesimum quintum. Aylon. Abdon.

AYLON, of þe lynage of Zabulon, was iuge of Israel ten zere. Nopeles þe Seuenty acounteþ hem nouzt, and þefore Eusebius acounteþ his zeres of Iosue, of Samuel, and of Saul; for þe Scripture spekeþ nouzt of here zeres. Nopeles þey setteþ moo zeres þan beþ i-founde by Iosephus. So þat from þe goynge out of Egipte anon to Salaman his temple were foure hondred zere and foure score. Abdon, þat heet Lapdon, was also iuge of Israel eihte zere. In his þridde zere Troye was i-take, eihte hondred zere and foure and fourty after Abraham his burþe, þre hondred zere and fourty after þe goynge out of Egipt, þe zere of kyng Latyn in Italy fyue and twenty, to fore þe buldyng of Rome aboute an³ foure hondred zere and two and þritty.⁴ *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo sexto-decimo.* After þat Troye was destroyed, 3it while kyng Latyn reigned in Itali, þe Grees þat tornede azen and⁵ hadde in þe

and also ij. m^l. folowede Antenor, and ij. m^l. Helena and MS. HARL.
2261.
Andromacha.

Capitulum vicesimum quintum.

AYLON, of the tribe of Zabulon, was gouernoure in Israel x. yere, whom the lxx^{ti} interpretatores do not annumerate; þefore Eusebius 3iffethe that tyme to the yeres of Iosue, Samuel, and of Saul, the yeres of whom Scripture dothe not reherse. Abdon, other Labdon, was gouernoure in Israel xl^{ti}ij. yere, in the ccc. and fowrty yere of the egression of the childer of Israel from Egipte, in the xx^{ti}v. yere off the reigne of kynge Latinus in Ytaly, and cccc. xxx^{ti}ij. yere afore the edifienge of the cite of Rome. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo, capitulo decimo sexto.* After the destruction of Troye, Latinus the kynge reignenge that tyme in Ytaly, the Grekes were afflicte and trowblede soore in

¹ *thre, Cx.*

² *Adromache, MS.* A few similar trivial errors of orthography have been tacitly corrected in this chapter.

³ *an]* So MS., *a. β. γ.*; om. Cx.

⁴ *twenty, Cx.*

⁵ This word should be cancelled apparently, though found in all the four MSS.

Græci post regnante adhuc in Italia rege Latino, reversi Græci
Trojam
eversam
domum
revertun-
tur. multipliciter in itinere sunt afflicti. Nam, teste Var-
rone libro tertio de historiis, socii Diomedes in volu-

Diomedis cres sunt conversi, ipseque Diomedes in itinere dispa-
templum ;
ejus socii ruit, ita ut pro deo sit habitus, templumque ejus¹
in volucres conversi. celebre sit apud insulam Diomediam non longe a monte
Gargano in Apulia ; et hoc templum circumvolare
atque incolere aves perhibentur tam mirabili obsequio
ut aquam rostris² spargant. Ubi si venerint Græci
aut Græcorum stirpe nati³ eis adulantur ;⁴ si autem
alienigenas viderint, grandibus rostris eos vulnerant.⁵

Et ad id astruendum narrat Varro non fabuloso men-
dacio sed historica veritate de illa maga famosissima
Circe, quæ socios Ulixis mutavit in bestias ; et de
Arcadibus qui sorte ducti transnatabant quoddam stag-
num atque ibi convertebantur⁶ in lupos, et cum feris⁷
vivebant. Si autem non vescerentur ibi⁸ carne hu-
mana, rursum post novem annos renatato⁹ stagno re-
formabantur in homines. Dicit etiam¹⁰ Demænetum

¹ *ejus*] om. E

² *rostris*, om. A B.

³ *progeniti*, C.D.

⁴ So D., which has *et illic si* above;
adulentur, A.E.

⁵ *verberant*, B.

⁶ *vertebantur*, B.

⁷ *ibidem*, ins. C.D.

⁸ *ibi*] om. B.

⁹ *denatato*, C. (not D.)

¹⁰ *denique*, C.D.

weie many myshappes. For Varro,¹ libro tertio de historia, TREVISA.
 seiþ þat Diomed his felawes were i-torned in to foules, and
 Diomedes hym self was na more i-seie ; so þat he was i-holde
 a god. His temple is solempne in þe ilond Diomedia, nouzt
 fer from Mont Gargan in Apulia.² Me seiþ þat foules
 woneþ and fleep about þis temple, and serueþ wonderliche, and
 springeþ water. 3if þe Grees or³ eny oper of þe kynde of [þe]⁴
 Grees comeþ peder, þe bryddes makeþ⁵ hem good semblaunce;⁶
 and 3if eny oper comeþ, þey woundeþ hem wiþ hire grete
 beeles. And forto conferme þe same Varro⁷ telleþ nouzt a
 fable lesynge, but sopenesse of storie of þat famous wicche⁸
 Circe, þat torneþ⁹ and chaungede Vlixes his felawes into
 bestes ; and of þe Arcades¹⁰ þat by lot swam ouer a pool and
 þan were i-torned into wolves and leuede wiþ wyld bestes,
 and 3if he¹¹ ete þere no manis flesche, þey schulde after nyne
 3ere swymme home ouer þe pool and torne a3en in to schap
 of mankynde. [He sayth also that Demenetus, whan he had

theire returnenge home. For as the poete Varro rehersethe, MS. HARL.
 libro iij^o, de Historia, the felowes of Dionedes were 2261.
 turnede in to bryddes, and the same Diomedes euaneschede
 away sodenly in that journey, in so moche that he is wor-
 schippede for a god, whose temple is an yle callede Dio-
 media, not ferre from the hille callede Garganus, in that
 londe callede Apulia. In whiche temple bryddes be of so
 grete diligence that thei caste water with their billes,
 and if men of Greece comme thider, other elles eny of the
 kynde of theyme, thei schewe pleasure to theym. And if
 thei fynde other straungeoures there, thei hurte theyme with
 their grete billes. To the whiche affirmacion Varro re-
 hersethe, not as in fabulose lesynge, but as in a trawthe
 historicalle, of the moste famose Circes, whiche chaungede
 the felowes of Vlixes in to bestes ; and of men of Arcadia,
 or of Arcades,¹⁰ whiche after chaunce did swymme ouer a
 water, and were turnede in to wulfes, lyvenge in deserte
 amonge wilde bestes ; and if thei did not eite the flesche
 of man, thei scholde returne after ix. yere y-paste vn to their
 propre similitude and kynde, that water y-swymmede ouer
 ageyne. Also he seythe, that when Demenetus hade tastede

¹ So β. γ., Cx. ; *Farro*, MS., a.

² So a. and Cx. ; *Ampula*, MS.

³ So also Cx. ; *oper*, a. (or is very frequently *oper* in a.)

⁴ Added from a. and Cx.

⁵ *make*, a.

⁶ *semblaunt*, a., Cx.

⁷ So a. and Cx. ; *Farro*, MS.

⁸ *dyuynresse*, *sorceresse*, and *wytche*, Cx.

⁹ *transfourmede*, Cx.

¹⁰ *Archades*, MSS. and Cx.

¹¹ *they*, Cx. (a frequent variation.)

cum gustasset de sacrificio Arcadis, in lupum fuisse conversum; et post novem annos in propriam¹ formam restitutum; pugillatu quoque sese exercuisse, et Olympico postmodum vicisse² certamine. *Plinius, libro xvj^o,³ capitulo xxij^o.*⁴ Homines in lupos verti rursusque⁵ restitui falsum existimamus.⁶ Auctores tamen Græciæ tradunt Arcades ad stagnum quoddam ejusdem regionis duci, ac vestitu eorundem in quercu suspenso tranare,⁷ et in deserto in lupos transfigurari,⁸ et cum eisdem lupis per novem annos conversari. Quo in tempore, si humana carne abstinerint, rursus renatato stagno ad proprium habitum et effigiem redire, addito tamen novem⁹ annorum senio; sed nullum est tam impudens mendacium quod omnino teste careat.¹⁰

Similia
etiam nar-
rat Augus-
tinus,

*Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo sextodecimo.*¹¹

Quid igitur ad hæc dicemus? Certe cum nos in Italia constituti essemus, satis audiebamus de quibusdam

¹ *pristinam*, C. (not D.)

² *virisse*, B.

³ 18^o, C.D. The true reference is to lib. viii. c. 34. (c. 22 of some.)

⁴ 2^o, A.

⁵ *rursusque*, C.D.

⁶ *æstimamus*, C.D.

⁷ *transnatate*, B.

⁸ *transformari*, B.

⁹ *novem*] om. E.

¹⁰ *careat*] om. E.

¹¹ The true reference is to lib. xviii. c. 18.

tasted of the sacrifice of Archad,¹ was torned in to a wolf; TREVISA.
 and after nyne yere he was restored ayene to his owne shappe
 of mankynde,]² and vsede afterward geauntes dedes, and
 hadde þe maistrye in a tornement³ of Olympus.⁴ *Plinius,*
libro sextodecimo, capitulo vicesimo secundo. Þat men
 torneþ in to⁵ wolfes and eft⁶ in to hire owne schap, we
 troweþ it be false. Nopeles auctoures of Grees telleþ þat⁷
 Arcades were i-lad to a pool in þe same lond, and heng hire
 clopes on an ook, and swam ouer þe pool, and in wildernesse
 tornede into wolues, and nyne 3ere wonede among wolfes; and
 3if þey kepte hem al þat tyme and ete no manis flesche, þey
 schulde swymme home a3e, and take here owne clopes and
 hire owne schap, and be nyne 3ere eldere⁸ þan þey were
 whan they wente out: but þere is no lesynges so grete þat is
 wip oute witnesse.⁹ *Augustinus, libro 18^o, capitulo 16.*¹¹ Þan
 what schal we saye to alle þese sawes? ¹² Certeynliche whanne
 we were in Italy we herde i-now of wommen hostelers of þat
 lond, þat vsede to 3eue chese þat was bywicched to men þat

of the sacrifice of Archades¹ he was turnede in to a wulfe, MS. HARL.
 and restorede in to his proprur forme after ix. yere y-paste, 2261.
 and to haue hade the victorye after that at the actes Olim-
 picalle. *Plinius, libro sexto decimo, capitulo 22^o.* We
 suppose, in oure estimacion, that thynges to be false, as men
 to be chaungede in to wulfes, and to be restorede to their
 propre forme ageyn. Neuerthelesse, auctoures of the londe
 of Grece reherse that men of Arcadia be ledde to a certeyne
 watere in that cuntre, levenge their vesture in an holo oke,
 swymme ouer that water, and be transfigurate in deserte
 in to wulfes, and to be conuersaunte with wulfes by ix. yere.
 And if they absteyne from the flesche of man by this sea-
 son, that tyme y-paste, and þe water passede ouer, thei
 schalle be returnede in to their propre forme. But truly
 there is noo lesenge, thau3he hit be of euidente apparicion
 of falsehenedes, but hit hathe somme testimony and wittnesse.
Augustinus, libro decimo octavo, capitulo 16^o. What schalle
 we saye to these thynges? Truly when we were in Ytaly we
 herde of diuerse women of that cuntre whiche were wonte

¹ Read *Arcas*; but the error may safely be ascribed to the translators themselves.

² Added from *β. γ.*, Cx. (*γ.* omits of *mankynde*).

³ *tornyng*, Cx.

⁴ *Olymp*, *a. β.*

⁵ *be transformed into*, Cx.

⁶ *oft*, Cx.

⁷ *þat þe*, *a.* (not Cx.)

⁸ *older*, Cx.

⁹ *þat ... wittnesse*] but it may be conformed, Cx.

¹⁰ So *a.* and Cx.; 16, MS.

¹¹ So *a.* and Cx.; 22, MS.

¹² *sayngys*, Cx.

illarum partium mulieribus stabulariis, quæ dare solebant caseum veneficum viatoribus; unde et¹ in jumenta illico verterentur, et onera portarent, manente in eis mente rationali; iterumque perfuncto² officio³ ad se redire. Sic quoque de se fatetur Apuleius in libro suo et Apuleius, sibi contigisse, quod veneno hujusmodi⁴ sumpto,⁵ et humano manente animo,⁶ asinus fieret. *Ranulphus.*⁷

et Willelmus Malmesburiensis. Simile narrat Willelmus de Regibus libro secundo de duabus incantatricibus, quæ in strata publica Romam ducente⁸ habitantes, hospitem, si quando solus veniebat, in aliquod animal vertebant. Unde et quemdam⁹ histri- nem sic hospitatum in asinum verterunt mirabilibus gesticulationibus insignitum, quem et pro¹⁰ ingenti summa pecuniæ cuidam diviti¹¹ vendiderunt; sub tali tamen admonitione, quod aquam nunquam transiret.¹² Custos itaque illi appositus aliquandiu mandatum rigide observabat, veruntamen temporis lapsu sub laxiori custodia asinus evadens¹³ in proximum lacum se projecit, et sic pristinam formam humanam recepit. Custos insequens de asino amisso a quocumque occurrente¹⁴ sciscitatur. Refert ille sic reformatus se asinum fuisse,

¹ et] om. A.B.C.D.

² perfuncto, A.; perfecto, C.D.

³ officio] om. A.

⁴ hujusmodi] om. C.D.

⁵ in eo] ins. C.D.

⁶ animo] om. E.

⁷ *Ranulphus . . . xvj.*] om. C.D.

⁸ So A.B.; ducentes, E.

⁹ quemdam] om. B.

¹⁰ si, B.

¹¹ diviti] om. A.

¹² quod non in aquam transiret, A.; nunquam solus ad aquam, B.

¹³ vadens, B.

¹⁴ Transposed in B.

trauailled by þe weie, and anon¹ þe men tornede into bestes and bar heuy charges, and hadde kyndeliche witte and resoun ; and whan þey hadde i-doo hir seruice þey tornede aʒen into² hir owne schap. Also Apule[i]us in his booke knowlechede³ þat so hit happed hym self, þat he toke suche venym, and hadde his witte and resoun, and was i-made an asse.⁴ R̄. Willelmus de Regibus, libro secundo, telleþ suche⁵ doynge of tweyne wicches þat wonede in þe hiʒe weye þat ledeþ to Rome ;⁶ and ʒif eny gest come allone, þey torneþ⁷ hym in to a beest ; and so come by ham a mynstral þat coupe moche merþe, and þey tornede hem in to an asse, and solde hym to a riche man for a grete somme of monay. Nopeles wiþ suche warnynge þat he schulde neuere passe water, and his wardeyn kepte hym besiliche longe tyme. Nopeles in passynge of tyme he took lasse hede to his asse ; and þe asse scaped to water, and torned aʒen in to þe schappe of mankynde. Þe wardeyn of þe asse folowede after, and asked⁸ his asse of euerich man þat he mette ; and he, þat hadde ben an asse [and]⁹ was torned to

TREVISA.

to ʒiffe chese to trauellenge men thro the whiche thei were chaungede in to other similitudes and did bere burthones, the mynde of man remanente in theyme. And to returne to theire propre forme, that office and labore docn. Also Apule[i]us rehersethe in his boke that same thyng to haue happede to hym thro the recepcion of suche venome, and to haue been made an asse, hauenge the mynde of a man. R̄. Willelmus, de Regibus et Pontificibus, libro 2^o, rehersethe, acordenge to the confirmacion of this mater, of ij. wicches dwellenge at Rome, wonte to change a man in to an other similitude, if that he come to theire place sole. Whiche women turnede in a season a iocular other mynstrelle in to the similitude of a ryalle asse, whom thei solde for a grete summe of money, vnder this condicion and monicion to the byer, that the asse scholde not goe ouer the water in eny wise. The byer kepede that commaundemente streytely a longe season, neuerthelesse he hade more liberte in kepenge by processe of tyme, whiche goenge ouer a water was restorede in to his propre forme. The byer of the asse folowenge, inquirede of euerich man with whom he did mete of his asse. That man restorede to his propre forme seide that he was that asse, and to be restorede to

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ to þe, MS. (not a. or Cx.)² to, a.³ knowlecheþ, a. β. ; sayth, Cx.⁴ Some words erroneously repeated in MS. (which omits R̄), and a. ; (text as β. γ. and Cx.)⁵ þat suche, MS. (not Cx.)⁶ wey to Romeward, Cx.⁷ torned, a. β.⁸ axed after, Cx.⁹ Added from a. and Cx.

et modo hominem induisse. Famulus custos ad dominum suum hunc adducit. Dominus autem ad Leonem papam utrumque ducit.¹ Incantatrices aniculæ coram papa convictæ id idem fatentur. Dubitantem papam super hac re confirmat Petrus Damianus, litteraturæ peritus, exemplo Simonis Magi, qui Faustinianum in Simonis figura videri et² a filiis propriis horreri fecerat. *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo sextodecimo.* Tenendum est igitur dæmones, nisi Deo permittente, nihil³ posse; nec etiam naturam aliquam creare, neque animum neque⁴ corpus mutare.⁵ Quæ tamen a vero Deo conditore creata⁶ sunt specie tenus videntur⁷ aliquando commutare, ita videlicet ut illud hominis fantasticum, quod cogitando sive somniando variat,⁸ per rerum genera, etiam cum corpus non sit, corporum⁹ tamen similes formas mira¹⁰ celeritate capit, sopitis corporeis sensibus;¹¹ fantasticum autem illud velut corporatum in alicujus animalis effigie appareat sensibus¹² alienis, talisque homo sibi videatur esse, qualis sibi videri posset in somnis, et portare onera.¹³ Quæ si vera

Talia per
dæmonum
præstigias
fieri cre-
dibile est.

¹ adducit, B.

² So A.; om. E.

³ nec, A.

⁴ aliquid, ins. C.D.

⁵ permutare, B.

⁶ creatore condita, C. (not D.)

⁷ demones, ins. C.D.

⁸ variatur, A.D.

⁹ corporium, A.

¹⁰ inita, C.D.

¹¹ fantasticum . . . sensibus] om. A.B.

¹² Sentence slightly varied in C.D.

man aȝen, seide þat he hadde ben an asse and was by come^xTREVISA.
 a man. And his wardeyn ladde¹ hym to his lorde, and þe
 lorde ladde hem boþe to Leon þe pope, and þe olde wicches
 were conuycte tofore þe pope, and knowleched þe dede. Þe
 pope dowted² of pis þing, and Petrus Damianus,³ a connyng
 man of lettrure,⁴ confermede þe manere doyng by ensample
 of Simon Magus, þat tornede Faustinus in to his owne
 schappe, and made his owne children⁵ drede hym ful sore.
Augustinus ubi supra. Hit is to trowyng,⁶ þat fendes mowe
 nouȝt doo but at Goddis suffraunce; and so þei mowe make
 no manere kynde, noþer body chaunge.⁷ Noþeles it semeþ
 somtyme þat þey changeþ liknes and schappe of þinges, þat
 God made and wrouȝte; so þat þe ffantasie of man⁸ þat
 changeþ in pouȝt and in metyng of sweuenes by dyuers
 manere þinges, and takeþ þe lyknesse of bodyes wip a wonder
 swiftnesse, þey no body be present. Whan þe wittes of þe body
 beþ absent⁹ and i-lette¹⁰ of here worchyng, and þe ymage
 and¹¹ lyknesse, þat is in pouȝt and in fantasie, is as it were
 i-peynted¹² in þe lyknesse of som beest, and semeþ to¹³ oþer
 men wittes in þe¹⁴ same lyknesse. And so a man may seme to
 hym self suche as he semeþ in metyng of sweuenes; and so

his propre similitude. The seruaunte and keper of that MS. HARL.
 asse brouȝhte the man to his lorde. Then the lorde and 2261.
 byer of that asse brouȝhte bothe the wicches to Leo the
 pope, whiche conuicte afore the pope grauntede that thyng.
 The pope dowtunge of that thyng, Damianus, a man ex-
 cellente in sapience, affermede Faustinianus to be seen in
 the similitude of Simon Magus, and to be dredde soore
 of his awne childer. *Augustinus, ubi supra.* Hit is to be
 holden that the deuelles may not do eny thyng but by
 the permission and sufferaunce of God, neither to create
 eny nature, neither to chaunge the body or sawle of
 those thynges which be create of Allemyȝhty God. Ne-
 uerthelesse thei appere to chaunge thynges to the siȝhte,
 as the vertu fantasticalle, when a man is in slepe, causethe
 a man as to apparence to be chaungede in to an other simi-
 litude, and soe that thyng fantasticalle apperethe to theyme

¹ led, a., Cx.

² doute, a.

³ Damyanus, MS.; also Symon and Fastinus below. Other MSS. read as in text, but Faustinus is the mistake of Trevisa.

⁴ letture, Cx.

⁵ childer, Cx.

⁶ It is to be bileuyd, Cx.

⁷ ne chaunge bodyes, Cx.

⁸ a man, Cx.

⁹ astent, a. (not Cx.)

¹⁰ i-sette, MS. (not a. or Cx.)

¹¹ So a. and Cx.; in, MS.

¹² i-prented, a. B. γ. and Cx.

¹³ to] þat, MS. (not a.)

¹⁴ in þe] so B. γ., Cx.; þe, MS., a.

Mira de Præstantio. sunt¹ onera, portantur a dæmonibus; ut sic illusio fiat² hominibus. Nam quidam nomine Præstantius patri suo hoc³ contigisse narravit, ut venenum illud⁴ per caseum in domo sua sumeret, et jaceret in lecto quasi dormiens, nec posset aliquatenus excitari. Post aliquot vero⁵ dies evigilans quasi somnia narrabat, quæ passus fuerat; se videlicet caballum effectum, et annonam inter alia animalia militibus apud Rheticam bajulasse; quod ita ut narravit factum fuisse comper- tum est. Dixit etiam se domi per noctem vidisse quendam philosophum sibi notum, sibique⁶ exposuisse nonnulla Platonica, quæ antea rogatus exponere noluerat.⁷ Et cum ab eodem philosopho quæsitum fuisset cur in domo ejus fecerit quod in domo propria petenti⁸ negaverat, "Nec feci," inquit, "sed me sic⁹ fecissem somniavi."¹⁰ Ac per hoc alteri¹¹ per imaginem fantasticam exhibitum est vigilantibus, quod alter vidit in somnis. Proinde quod Arcades vertuntur in lupos; quod carminibus Circes¹² socii Ulixidis vertuntur in volucres¹³ secundum istum modum videtur mihi posse fieri, si tamen factum est. Socii vero Diomedis, quia cito disparuerunt et nusquam comparuerunt, perdentibus¹⁴ eos ultoribus¹⁵ angelis malis, creduntur in alias aves conversi; quæ arte dæ-

¹ *sint*, A.² *fit*, C.D. (having *et for ut*.)³ *hoc*] om. B.⁴ *illud*] om. B.⁵ *vero*] om. C.D.⁶ *que*] om. B.⁷ *nolebat*, B.⁸ *petenti*] om. B.⁹ *sic*] om. C.D.¹⁰ *somniavi*] om. E.¹¹ *aliquando*, C.D.¹² *Circe* (for *Circæ*), MSS.¹³ *bestias*, B.¹⁴ *portantibus*, C.D. (not Aug.)¹⁵ *ulterioribus*, C.D. (not Aug.)

hym may seme þat he bereþ burþenes and charges; [but TREVISIA. if þey beþ verrey burþens and charges],¹ fendes bereþ hem, þat men mowe so be bygiled. For oon Prestantius tolde þat suche an happe byfel his owne fader, þat he took suche venym by chese in his owne hous, and lay in a bed, as he were slep-ynge; and no man myȝte hym awake, but after many dayes he wook,² and tolde as it were a sweuene how hym was byfalle; for hym pouȝte þat he was i-made an hors, and bare corne among oper bestes to knyȝtes þat were at Retica;³ and it was i-founde, þat riȝt as he tolde it was i-doo in dede. He seide also þat he say a filosofre at home in his hous; þe whiche filosofre⁴ expowned hym⁵ many pinges⁶ of Plato his bookes, þe whiche pinges he hadde i-bede hym expowne to fore honde, and he wolde not. And whan me axed of þe filosofre, why he wolde expowne in anoper manis hous þat [he]⁷ hadde denyed in his owne, "Nay," quod he, "I dede nouȝt so, but I mette þat I dede." And in þat manere by þe ymage and liknes of fantasie it was schewed to þat oon waking what þat oper mette in his slepe. Perfore þat þe Arcades torned in to wolves by wicchecraft of Circa,⁸ me semeþ it myȝte bee in þis manere, nopeles yf it were soop. But for Diomedes his felawes vanschede sodeynliche away, and were neuere after i-founde, me troweþ þat wicked aungels took wreche of hem, and torned hem in to anoper foules liknesse,⁹ þat were i-made and i-brouȝt

as thyng corporealle in a straunge similitude, and to bere MS. HARL. 2261. burdones, whiche be borne of deuelles and if the trawthe myȝhte be knowen. A nowble man, Prestantius by name, rehersethe suche a thyng to haue happede to his fader by the eytenge of chese, lyenge in his bedde that he myȝhte not move. Whiche man awakede rehersede meruellous thynges whiche he hade suffrede, and how that he was made in the similitude of an horse, and how he bare corne amonge other bestes to Retica,³ whiche thyng was provede to haue bene after his narracion. Also that men of Arcadia be chaungede in to wulfes, and that þe felawes of Vlixes were chaungede in to bryddes thro Circe,⁸ y thenke that hit may be doen by this maner rehersede afore. The felawes of Diomedes be supposede to haue bene chaungede in to bryddes, whiche were pereschede as sodenly of myȝhty bryddes, callede Gripes, but to be trawede raper that thei were deuelles, whiche bryddes were brouȝhte thro the

¹ Added from *a. B.* and *Cx.*

² So *a.*; *awoke*, *Cx.*; *toke*, *MS.*

³ *Rethica*, *MSS.*

⁴ Words erroneously repeated in *MS.* and *a.*; text as *β. γ.*, *Cx.*

⁵ to *him*, *Cx.*

⁶ *secretes*, *Cx.*

⁷ Added from *a.* and *Cx.*

⁸ So *MSS.* and *Cx.*, for *Circe*; but correctly above; *Sirces*, *Harl. MS.*

⁹ *torned hem in to oper foules*, *a. β. γ.*

monum aliunde deductæ¹ sunt, et in loco illorum hominum subrogatæ, sicut cerva pro² Iphigenia Agamemnonis³ filia supposita fuisse cognoscitur. Quod autem Diomedis templo aves rostratæ aquam spargunt et Græcigenis blandiuntur, dæmonum⁴ fit instinctu; quorum interest persuadere hominibus Diomedem deum factum esse, ut sic decipiantur homines in cultura deorum⁵ falsorum.⁶ *Ranulphus*. De ista materia vide plus supra, primo libro, capitulo⁷ *Hibernia*.⁸ *Giraldus in Topographia*. Dæmones seu⁹ mali homines naturas mutare non possunt;¹⁰ sed species, Deo permittente, transmutant seu transfigurant. Ita ut sensibus humanis illusionem sopitis res non videantur sicut sunt, sed vi phantasmatis aut magicæ artis¹¹ fictitiæ formæ appareant; sed Deum¹² sicut res creare ita et eas¹³ invicem commutare se vindicando aut potentiam suam seu¹⁴ misericordiam declarando non absurdum¹⁵ credimus; sicut uxorem Loth in statuam salis, et aquam in vinum, vel, interiore manente natura,¹⁶ extra¹⁷ solum transformare.¹⁸

Species tantum, non naturas, possunt dæmones mutare.

¹ *adductæ*, A. B. D.

² *et*, E.

³ *regis*, ins. C. D.

⁴ *demonis*, E.

⁵ *deorum*] om. E.

⁶ C. D. introduce the following passage here: "*Isidorus, Etymologiarum xi^o, capitulo ultimo. Fiunt quandoque monstruosæ transformationes hominum in bestias, quod fit magicis carminibus aut herbarum veneficiis. Quidam enim recipiunt mutationem per ipsam naturam; quidam vero per corruptionem transeunt in alias species, ut de putridis vitulis apes, de equis scarabæi; unde Ovidius: 'Concava litorei si demas brachia cancri, Scorpius exhibit caudaque*

"*minabitur unca.*" For *quida m* D. has *quædam* twice. See p. 208.

⁷ *de*, ins. A.

⁸ Abbreviated in C. D. See vol. i. p. 358.

⁹ *ac*, C. D.

¹⁰ *non mutant*, C. D.

¹¹ *magicis artibus*, C. (not D.)

¹² *Deum vero*, C. D.

¹³ *et eas*] so A. D.; ut *eas*, E.; et *ea*, B.; *eas et*, C.

¹⁴ *vel*, A.; *sive*, D.

¹⁵ *absurde*, C. D.

¹⁶ *materia*, C. (not D.)

¹⁷ *exterius*, C. D.

¹⁸ *sicut in prædictis patet exemplis*, C. D. (D. has various clerical errors and omissions in this citation).

pider by craft of fendes in stede of þe men,¹ as hit is i-knowe TREVISA.
 þat an hynde was i-brouȝt and i-put in stede of Iphigenia,²
 Agamemnon³ his douȝter; and sche was i-lad away. Þat
 foules at Diomedes temple springeþ water, and flatereth wiþ
 þe Grees, þat is by excitynge of þe deuel for to brynge men
 in witte for to trowe⁴ þat Dyomede is i-made a god, þat
 men be so begiled in worschippyng of false goddes. R.
 Loke more of þis mattere in þe firste book, capitulo *Hibernia*.
Giraldus in Topographia. Fendes and wicked men mowe
 not chaunge kynde but by suffraunce of God; þei mowe
 chaunge liknesse and schappe and lette manis wittes and
 bygile men, so þat þinges semeþ nouȝt as þey beþ. But
 by strengþe of fantasie and of wiccheecraft men haueþ semyng
 by feyned schappes; but it is nouȝt vnsittyng⁵ þat we trowe
 þat God as he makeþ þinges of nouȝt, so he chaungeþ hem
 oon into anoper,⁶ forto take riȝtful wreche oper forto schewe
 his myȝt oper mercie. So he tornede Loth is wyf in to an
 ymage of salt, and water in to wyn; oper chaunge þe liknesse
 wiþ oute and leue þe kynde vnchaunged wiþ ynne.

illusion of the deuelle, and subrogate in þe places of those MS. HARL.
 men. Lyke as a herte was knowen to haue bene putte in 2261.
 the place of Iphigenia² doȝter of Agamemnon.³ And that
 grete bryddes caste water with their bylles in the temple of
 Diomedes, and schewe as a glosenge chere to men of Grece,
 is causede by the illusion of the deuelle, causenge men to
 beleve that Diomedes was a godde, that men scholde be
 deceyvede in the worschippenge of false goddes. R. Be-
 holde more of this matere afore, libro primo, capitulo 34^o.
Giraldus in Topographia. Deuelles or ylle men may not
 chaunge nature of eny thyng, but thei may chaunge simi-
 litudes thro the permission of God, so that the trawthe
 of the thyng dothe not appere, the wyttes oppressede with
 the illusion of the deuelle; but after a similitude fantasti-
 calle made and causede by wycchecraft. But we beleve
 Godde, that made nature, to chaunge theym, lyke as he
 chaungede the wife of Loth in to a grete parte and quantite
 of salte, and water in to wyne.

¹ Clauses varied in Cx.

² *Ephigenia*, MSS. and Cx.

³ *Agamenon*, MSS. and Harl. MS.

⁴ *for to trowe, &c.*] to believe Dio-
 mede to be made a god, Cx.

⁵ Sic MS.; and so *a. β. γ.*, Cx.

⁶ *oper, a. β. γ.*

CAP. XXVI.

De Ænea et Didone, et de regibus Latinis. Quæ in Græcia acciderunt tempore Sampson.¹

Æneas in
Italiam
venit.

Martinus. Post Trojæ excidium Æneas² cum Anchise patre suo³ Ascanioque⁴ filio in⁵ navibus duodecim venerunt in⁶ Siciliam, ubi Anchise mortuo, cum vellet Æneas navigare Italiam, tempestate pulsus⁷ venit⁸ in Africam; ubi a Didone regina⁹ nimium est adamatus. Sed post aliquantulæ moræ spatium relicta Didone devenit¹⁰ Italiam. *Ranulphus.* Sed si verum est quod Trogus et Papias et alii docti dicunt Carthaginem fuisse fundatam a Didone septuagesimo secundo anno ante conditionem urbis Romæ, quæ condita est anno quarto Achaz regis Judæ, constabit¹¹ quod Æneas nunquam vidit Didonem reginam Carthaginis, quia Æneas præcessit Didonem,¹² et obiit ante foundationem Carthaginis plusquam trecentis annis. Et hoc¹³ innuit Augustinus primo libro Confessionum in fine,¹⁴ dicens quod docti negant¹⁵ Æneam vidisse Carthaginem.¹⁶ *Hugutio, capitulo Elissa.* Hæc Dido vocata est Elissa, id est virago, ab eventu subsecuto; quia viriliter

Anno Abr. 804.
Anno Abdon 3.

Utrum
Didonem
viderit
Æneas,
necne.

¹ No title in MSS.

² Æneas] om. B.

³ et, ins. C.D.

⁴ So A.B.; E. omits que.

⁵ in] suo cum, C.D.

⁶ in] om. A.B.

⁷ repulsus, C.D.

⁸ devenit, C.D.

⁹ regina] om. B.

¹⁰ So A.B.D.; venit, E.

¹¹ constat, A.B.

¹² Didonem] om. A.B.

¹³ Et hoc] ut, B.

¹⁴ in fine] so A.B.; om. E.

¹⁵ negabant, A.B.

¹⁶ Ranulphus . . . Carthaginem] om. C.D.

Capitulum vicesimum sextum.

TREVISA.

AFTER þe destroyenge¹ of Troye, Eneas wip his fader Anchises and his sone Ascanius wip twelue schippes come to Sicil. Þere² Anchises deide. And whanne Eneas wolde seille into Itali, tempest drof hym in to Affrica.³ Þere he was hugeliche⁴ i-loued of Dido þe queene; but after a schort tyme he lefte Dido and come in to Italy. R. Yf it is soop þat Trogus and Papy and oþer wise men telleþ, þat Dido bulde Cartage þre score þere and twelue to fore þe byldynge of þe citee of Rome, þat was i-bulde þe fourþe þere of Achaz, kyng of Iuda, þanne it is soop þat Eneas sygþ⁵ neuere Dido þe queene of Cartage; for Eneas was to forehonde,⁶ and deide þre hondred þere and more to fore þe buldynge of Cartage. And þat menep Seint Austyn primo libro Confessionum in fine, and seiþ þat wise men denyep þat Eneas sey Cartage.⁷ *Hugutio, capitulo Elissa.* Þis Dido heet Elissa, þat is Virago, a manliche womman; for hap þat fel afterward, for sche

*Capitulum vicesimum sextum.*MS. HARL.
2261.

Martinus. Eneas, with Anchisen his fader, and Ascanius his son, come to Sicille with xij. schippes, after the batelle of Troy, where Anchisen diede, whiche dedde, Eneas willenge to sayle to Ytaly, was brouzhte thro tempestes in the see vn to Affrike, where he was luffede moche of Dido the qwene. Whiche, levenge Dido the qwene, wente in to Ytaly. R. And if that be trawthe that Trogus and Papias reherse, seyenge that cite of Carthago to haue bene made by Dido in the lxxij. yere afore the makenge of the cite of Rome, whiche was edifiede in the iiijth yere of Achaz kyng of Iuda; then hit may be concludede that Eneas see neuer Dido qwene of Carthago, for Eneas was before the fundacion of Carthago more than ccc. yere. To the whiche confirmation Seynte Austyn seythe, primo libro Confessionum, in the ende, that men discrete denye Eneas to have seen Carthago.⁷ *Hugutio, capitulo Elissa.* That Dido was callede Elissa, that is to say, virago, of a chaunce folowenge, for

¹ destruction, Cx.² and there, Cx.³ Sentence varied in Cx.⁴ hugeliche] right wel, Cx.⁵ So a.; sawe, Cx.; seiþ, MS. (probably clerical error for seiþ).⁶ was bifore, Cx., who varies the sentence.⁷ So a. β. γ.; *Cartago*, MS. and Harl. MS.

se occidit. *Trogus, libro octavodecimo.* Ipsa denique Elissa, soror Pygmaleonis, cum ad¹ accipiendum maritum a populo quasi urgeretur, ascendit super pyram quam ipsa² sibi³ construxerat, et⁴ seipsam occidit, ac pro dea diu culta est. *Martinus.* Æneas igitur Italiam veniens confœderatus est regi Evandro, qui in septem montibus tunc regnabat. Hi duo pugnaverunt contra Latinum, regem Latinorum, et contra Turnum, regem Tusciæ,⁵ generum scilicet regis Latini. In quo bello Pallas filius Evandri et Turnus occiduntur.⁶ *Ranulphus.*⁷ Vult tamen Trogus,⁸ libro xliij^o.⁹ quod Æneas in primo adventu suo tantam gratiam coram rege Latino invenerit,¹⁰ quod in partem regni intraverit, et quod filiam ejusdem Latini, Laviniam, sponsam Turni, in uxorem acceperit.¹¹ Unde et ambo sic confœderati, Æneas et Latinus,¹² bellum contra¹³ Turnum¹⁴ propter fraudatas Laviniaë nuptias susceperunt.¹⁵ In quo¹⁶ bello Turnus et Latinus ceciderunt.¹⁷ Igitur Æneas post hanc victoriam utroque regno potitus, scilicet Latinorum et Tuscorum,¹⁸ urbem nomine uxoris vocatam Lavinium condidit, et⁹ bellum deinde contra regem^{20 21}

Æneas et Evander contra Latinum et Turnum pugnant.

Æneas eorum regnis potitur. Lavinium condit ;

¹ *ad]* om. B.
² *ipsa]* om. D.
³ *sibi]* om. C. (not D.)
⁴ *et]* om. B.D.
⁵ *Thussia,* A.
⁶ Citation slightly abbreviated in C.D.
⁷ *Ranulphus]* om. A.B.
⁸ *Pompeius,* ins. C.D.
⁹ 93^o, C.D. wrongly. See lib. xliii. c. 1.
¹⁰ *Latini meruit,* C.D.
¹¹ Slightly abbreviated in C.D.
¹² *Æneas et Latinus]* om. C.D.
¹³ *adversus,* C.D.
¹⁴ *regem Tuscorum,* ins. C.D.
¹⁵ *susceperint,* A.; *protulerunt,* C.D.
¹⁶ *quidem,* ins. C.D.
¹⁷ *occubuerunt,* C.D.
¹⁸ *scilicet . . . Tuscorum]* om. C.D.
¹⁹ *et]* om. C.D.
²⁰ *urbem . . . regem]* om. A.B.
²¹ *Tuscorum,* ins. C.D.

slow³ hir self manliche. *Trogus, libro octavo decimo.*¹ At pe TREVISIA.
 laste pis Elissa, Pygmalion² his douzter, whan he³ schulde be⁴ —
 compelled of pe peple forto take an housbonde, sche wente in
 to a greet fuyre þat sche hadde i-made; and so sche slow hir
 self manliche, and was longe after i-worschipped as a goddes.
Martinus. Ðan Eneas com in to Itali, and was confedered and
 i-swore to kyng Euander, þat þoo regnede in seuene hilles.
 Ðese tweyne fauzte azenst Latyn, kyng of Latyns, and azenst
 Turnus,⁵ kyng [of Tuscan, kyng]⁶ Latyn his douzter hous-
 bonde. In þat batayle Pallas Euander his sone and Turnus
 were i-slawe. R. Nopeles Trogus, libro quadragesimo tertio,
 wil mene þat Eneas in his firste comyng fond so grete grace
 wip kyng Latyn, þat he entrede into a partye of pe kyngdom,
 and wedded Lauyn,⁷ kyng Latyn his douzter, þat was Turnus
 his spouse; and so boþe Latyn and Eneas i-confedered to
 gidres toke batayle azenst Turnus for pe gileful mariage of
 Lauyn, and Latyn and Turnus were boþe dede in þat bataile.
 And Eneas afterward was kyng of eiper kyngdom of Latyns
 and of Tuscans, and bulde a citee and cleped pe citee Lauin-
 ium by pe name of his wif, and werred afterward azenst pe

sche did sle here selfe manly. *Trogus, libro decimo octavo.* MS. HARL. 2261.
 That Elissa, dozhter vn to Pygmalion, compelled by the
 peple to take an howsebonde, wente in to a place that sche
 hade made, and did sle here selfe, whiche was worschippede
 longe for a godesse. *Martinus.* Eneas, commenge
 to Ytaly, was confederate with Euander kyng, whiche
 reignede in vij. mowntes. Whiche ij. so confederate zafe
 batelle ageyne Latinus, kyng off Latynes, and ageyne
 Turnus, kyng of Tuscia, son in lawe to kyng Latinus,
 in whiche batelle Pallas, the son of Euander, and Turnus
 were sleyn. R. But Trogus rehersethe, libro xliiiij^o, that
 Eneas in his firste commenge to Ytaly founde suche grace
 of kyng Latinus, that he admittede hym in to parte of
 his realme; whiche toke Lauina, pe wife of Turnus and
 dozhter of kyng Latinus, in to his wife. Wherefore thei,
 so confederate as Eneas and Latinus, zafe batelle ageyne
 Turnus for the fraude and delay of the weddyng of La-
 uina his dozhter. In whiche batelle Turnus and Latinus
 were sleyn. That batelle doen, Eneas reioycede bothe the
 realmes, of Latynes and of Tuscia, and made a cite, cal-
 lenge hit Lauinium, after the name of his wife, whiche

¹ So a. and Cx.; octavo, MS.,
 wrongly. See lib. xviii. c. 6.

² Pigmalion, MS.

³ So also a.; she, Cx.; heo, ß;
 a. 7.

⁴ haue be, Cx.

⁵ Tornus, MS., a. (not ß., Cx.)

⁶ Added from a. ß. and Cx.

⁷ So a. and Cx.; Lamyn, MS.,
 and so below.

In bello
contra Me-
zentium
occiditur.
De Iulo,
qui et As-
canius
vocatur.

Mesentium¹ egit;² in quo et³ Æneas⁴ occubuit, relicto post se Ascanio filio⁵ quem ex Creüsa genuerat apud Trojam.⁶ *Isidorus, Etymologiarum libro quarto.*⁷ Iulus⁸ fuit filius Æneæ, qui primo loco dictus⁹ est Ascanius, ab Ascanio fluvio Phrygiæ, et postmodum¹⁰ dictus est Iulus¹¹ ab Ilo¹² rege Trojano. *Hugutio, capitulo Iulus.*¹³ Postmodum¹⁴ occiso Mesentio¹⁵ Tuscorum¹⁶ rege certamine singulari, Ascanius¹⁷ vocatus est Iulus,¹⁸ a prima lanugine barbæ tunc primum¹⁹ in ea²⁰ apparente, quæ proprie dicitur Iulus;²¹ et est nomen disyllabum, licet quandoque metrice ponatur trisyllabum.²² *Ranulphus.* Hic notandum est quod²³ nisi tres²⁴ anni regni²⁵ Æneæ computentur infra annos regis²⁶ Latini vacillabit historiæ calculatio, quæ dicit Latinum regnasse xxxij. annis; præsertim cum anno xxv^o. regis Latini²⁷ secundum omnes historicos Æneas, capta Troja,²⁸ Italiam venerit.

Ascanius
Albam
Longam
condit.

²⁹ Ascanius filius Æneæ cœpit regnare apud Latinos, et regnavit triginta octo³⁰ annis. Qui relicto oppido Lavinio, quod pater suus³¹ construxerat, Albam Lon-

¹ So A.D.E.; *Mecentium*, B. Commonly written *Mezentius*, but text agrees with Greek form.

² *gessit*, C.D., and *genuit* below.

³ *et*] om. A.

⁴ *et Æneas*] om. C.D.

⁵ *filio*] om. C.D.

⁶ *apud Trojam*] om. C.D.

⁷ *libro quarto*] om. B.D.; *quarto*, om. A.

⁸ *Ylus*, B.

⁹ *vocatus*, C.D.

¹⁰ *et postmodum*] *postea*, C.D.

¹¹ So D.E. (second hand); *Ilus*, A.; *Ylus*, B.C.

¹² *Ylo*, B.D.

¹³ *Julius*, B.

¹⁴ *Postea*, C.D.

¹⁵ *Mecencio*, B.

¹⁶ So D.; *Ruscorum*. A.E., placing *rege* before *Mesentio*.

¹⁷ *Ascanius*] om. C.D.

¹⁸ *Ylus*, B.

¹⁹ *tunc primum*] primo, B.; *populum*, E.

²⁰ *eo*, B.D.

²¹ *Yulus*, B.

²² *licet . . . trisyllabum*] om. C.D.

²³ *Hic . . . quod*] Et, C.D.

²⁴ *tres*] added from C.D.

²⁵ Added from A.B.C.D.

²⁶ *regni*, C.D., with other slight variations.

²⁷ *xxxij. . . . Latini*] small blank left in B.

²⁸ Here and elsewhere MSS. frequently have *Troya*.

²⁹ *Trogus, libro quadragesimo tertio*, ins. A.B.

³⁰ *septem*, C.D.

³¹ *Æneas*, ins. A.B.

kyng of Messene in Tuscan. And in pat bataile Eneas was dede,¹ and lefte after hym his sone Ascanius, pat he hadde i-gete on² Creusa at Troye. *Isidorus, Etymolog.* Iulus was Eneas his sone, and heet firste Ascanius by þe name of a ryuer of Frigia pat so hatte,³ and was afterwarde i-cleped Iulus, by þe name of Iulus kyng of Troye. *Hugutio, capitulo Iulus.* Afterward, whan þe kyng of Mesens was i-slawe in a singuler batayle of stalworþe men, þanne Ascanius was i-cleped Iulus for his firste spryngyng of berd [pat þo was first i-sene; for þe firste spring of berd]⁴ is properliche i-cleped Iulus in Latyn [and is]⁵ a name of tweie silables, [þey hit be operwhiles i-sette in þre sylables]⁶ by cause of metre. *R.* Here take hede pat but þe ʒeres of Eneas his regnyng be accounted wip ynn þe ʒeres of kyng Latyn, þe acountyng of þe storie schal faille. For þe storie seiþ pat kyng Latyn reignede two and pritty ʒere; and specialliche while Eneas, whan Troye was i-take, come in to Itali, þe fyue and twenty ʒere of kyng Latyn, as alle stories telleþ. *Trogus, libro quadragesimo tertio.* Ascanius, Eneas his sone, bygan to regne among þe Latyns; and regnede eiʒte and pritty ʒere, and lefte⁷ þe citee Lauinium, pat his fader Eneas hadde somtyme i-bulde, and bulde þe citee Alban along vpon þe ryuer

TREVISA.

ʒafe batelle after that vn to Mese[n]tius kyng of Tuscia, in whom Eneas was sleyn, levenge after hym Ascanius his son, whom he gate of Creusa, at Troye. *Isidorus, Ethym.* Iulus was the son of Eneas; callede afore Ascanius, of a floode in Frigia callede Ascanius; callede after Iulus, by Iulus kyng of the Troianes. *Hugutio, capitulo Iulus.* Whiche ʒiffenge batelle to Messentius, and sleenge hym, was callede Iulus; for in that tyme he began to haue a berde. *R.* Also hit is to be attendede but if the yeres of Eneas be acomptede with in þe yeres of kyng Latinus, the calculacion of the story schalle fayle, whiche seythe kyng Latinus to haue reignede xxxiiij. yere; and after alle storyes after the takenge of Troy, Eneas come to Ytaly in the xxv. yere of the reigne of kyng Latinus. *Trogus, libro 43.* Ascanius, the son of Eneas, began to reigne amonge the Latynes, contynuenge his reigne by xxxviiij. yere; whiche levenge the citee callede Lauinium, whiche his fader made, edifiede a citee, callenge hit Alba, on the water of Tibere,

MS. HARL.
2261.¹ *slayne*, Cx.² So *a.* and Cx.; *in*, MS.³ *heet*, Cx.⁴ Added from *a.* and Cx.⁵ Added from *a.* and Cx.⁶ Added from *a. β. γ.*; wanting in Cx.⁷ *specialliche lefte*, MS. (not *a. β.* or Cx.)

gam super ripam Tiberis construxit, quæ trecentis annis caput regni illius fuit; a qua urbe Latini reges dicti sunt Albani.¹ *Trogus, libro xliij.*² Hic Ascanius³ fratrem suum⁴ Silvium Posthumum ex⁵ Lavinia noverca sua, post mortem patris⁶ natum, summa pietate educavit. Qui ideo dictus est Posthumus, quia post humationem patris natus. Et Silvius dictus est, quia in silva nutritus. A quo postmodum Latinorum⁷ reges dicti sunt Silvii.⁸ Huic quoque⁹ Silvio Posthumo Ascanius postquam regnasset triginta octo annis regnum reliquit, eo quod filius suus Iulus,¹⁰ a quo familia Juliorum¹¹ orta est, adhuc tenellæ erat ætatis, sicut dicit Marianus libro primo.¹²

Silvius
Posthumus
succedit.

Quæ in
tempore
Sampson
acciderunt.

Sampson¹³ iudicavit Israel xx. annis; cujus tempore¹⁴ ea contigerunt¹⁵ de Græco Ulixe, quæ fabulæ tradunt; quomodo videlicet Scyllam¹⁶ fugerit et Sirenas. De quo dicit Palæphatus,¹⁷ libro primo Incredibilium, quod Scylla fuit mulier hospites suos spoliare¹⁸ consueta, et Sirenas¹⁹ dicit esse meretrices,²⁰ quæ deceperunt²¹ navigantes.²² Eoque tempore²³ Ægyptiorum²⁴ Pyrrhus ab Oreste in templo Delphici Apollinis occiditur.²⁵ Quo etiam²⁶ tempore quidam tradunt Homerum floruisse.²⁷

Anno Abr. 850.
Anno Sampsoni.

¹ Sentence abbreviated in C.D.

² C.D. omit all reference, probably rightly; A.B. have *Eutropius* only. The reference to Eutropius is certainly false; and although Trogius, *i.e.* Justin (lib. xliii. c. 1), is properly quoted for the preceding sentence, the information here given does not occur there.

³ *Aschanius*, A.

⁴ *suum*] om. B.

⁵ *a*, B.

⁶ *sui*, ins. B.

⁷ *Latini*, B.

⁸ *Hic . . . Silvii*] slightly varied in C.D.

⁹ *etiam*, C.D.; *quo*, A., by error for *quoque*.

¹⁰ *Iulus*] *Ilus*, A.E.; om. B.

.E.; *Yliorum*, B.

¹² *eo . . . primo*] om. C.D.; *sicut*

. . . *primo*, om. A.B.

¹³ *filius Manue*, ins. C.D.

¹⁴ *cujus tempore*] om. C.D.

¹⁵ *contiquerunt*, E.

¹⁶ *Scillam* or *Cillam*, MSS.

¹⁷ *Palefatus*, MSS.

¹⁸ *scilicet*, ins. A.

¹⁹ *Sirenes*, B.

²⁰ *esse*] om. B.

²¹ *decipiunt*, B.

²² Slightly abbreviated in C.D.

²³ *Eoque tempore*] om. C.D.

²⁴ So MSS., but corruptly. Probably we should read *Epirotarum rex*.

²⁵ Slightly transposed in C.D.

²⁶ *etiam*] om. C.D.

²⁷ *fuisse*, C.D.

Tibre. Þat cite was hede of þat kyngdom þre hondred ȝere; TREVISA.
 by þe name of þat citee kynges Latyns were i-cleped kыnges
 Albans, Reges Albani. *Eutropius.* Þis Ascanius norsched
 vp ful mydeliche his broþer Siluius Posthumus¹ þat was
 i-bore of his stepdame Lauinia² after his fader deþ, and was
 i-cleped Posthumus, for he was i-bore after þat his fader was
 i-buried; and was i-cleped Siluius, for he was i-norsched in
 a wode.³ A woode is *silva* in Latyn. By his name þe kynges
 of Latyns were i-cleped Siluies. Ascanius, whanne he hadde
 i-regned eiȝte and þretty ȝere, he lefte þe kyngdom to⁴ Siluius
 Posthumus; for his owne sone Iulus was ȝet of tender age, so
 seiþ Marianus libro primo. Of þis Iulus þe mayny⁵ þat is
 i-cleped Familia Iliorum hadde þat name. Sampson was iuge
 in Israel twenty ȝere. In his tyme byfel þat þe fables telleth of
 Vlixes⁶ of Grecia, how he fleigh Scylla and Sirenes. Þerof
 spekeþ Palephatus⁷ libro primo Incredibilum, and seiþ þat
 Scylla was a womman þat vsede to robbe hir gестes, and seiþ
 þat Sirenes were hoores þat bygiled men þat seilled on þe see.
 Also þat tyme Orestes slow Pyrrhus⁸ of Egipt in Appolyn
 Delphicus his temple. Also som telleþ þat Homerus was þat

whiche was adnecte to the realme off Latynes by ccc. yere, MS. HARL.
 of whom the kynges of Latynes were callede Albani. *Eu-* 2261.
tropius. This Ascanius norischede for pite his broþer Sil-
 uius Posthumus, geten of Lauinia² his stappemoder after the
 dethe of his fader, whiche was callede Posthumus, in that he
 was borne after the dethe of his fader. He was callede
 Siluius, for he was noryschede in a woode; of whom kynges
 of Latynes were namede Siluii afterwarde. To whom As-
 canius, after that he hade reignede xxx^{ti}viiij. [yere], lefte
 that realme, in that Iulus his son was but of tendre age, as
 Marianus rehersethe, libro primo. Sampson was gouernoure
 in Israel xx^{ti} yere; in whose tyme those thynges happede
 of Vlixes the Greke, after the fables, that he causede Scylla
 and Sirenes to flee, of whom Palephatus,⁶ libro primo Ince-
 dibilium, rehersethe, seyenge that Scilla was a woman wonte
 to spoyle here gестes, and Sirenes to be commune women
 whiche deceyvede men saylenge, in that Pyrrhus was sleyne
 of Orestes in the temple of Apollo Delphicus in the tymes
 of men of Egipte. In whiche tyme somme men saye
 Omerus the poete to haue bene, of the tyme of whom greet

¹ *Postumus*, MS., here and us ually
 (not always) below. A few very
 slight errors in spelling proper
 names below have been tacitly cor-
 rected.

² *Lavina*, MSS. and Cx.

³ Sentence varied in Cx.

⁴ So Cx.; *of*, MS.

⁵ *meyne*, Cx.

⁶ So Cx.; *Flizes*, MS., as before.

⁷ *Palefatus*, MS.; *Polefatus*,
 Harl. MS.

⁸ *Pirus*, MS.; *Pirrus*, Cx., Harl.
 MS.

De Homeri *De* cuius tempore apud veteres magna dissonantia est ;
 ctate. nam quidam centesimo anno, alii centesimo¹ quadra-
 gesimo anno, nonnulli centesimo octogesimo anno, alii
 ducentesimo quadragesimo² anno post eversam Trojam
 fuisse perhibent ; quidam³ ante Trojam eversam⁴
 fuisse putant. Huc usque liber Judicum annos tre-
 centos⁵ sub duodecim iudicibus numerat.

CAP. XXVII.

*Hely, [etiam de Bruto, et de rerum Britannicarum
 primordiis].*⁶

Heli. HELY sacerdos iudicavit Israel post Sampsonem Anno Abr. 870.
Anno Hely 1.
 quadraginta annis, secundum Isidorum libro quinto, et
 secundum Josephum libro sexto ; sed secundum Sep-
 tuaginta interpretes Hely præsedet populo⁷ viginti annis.
 In cuius diebus facta fame in terra Israel contigit historia
 Ruth⁸ Moabitidis. Hectoris filii receperunt⁹ Ilium,
 id est Trojam,¹⁰ expulsis posteris Antenoris, opitulante
 Heleno filio Priami.¹¹ Latinorum¹² tertius Silvius Post- Anno Abr. 888.
Anno Hely 18.
 humus, filius Æneæ et frater¹³ Ascanii, ex Lavinia no-
 verca progenitus,¹⁴ cœpit regnare ; et regnavit triginta

Hectoris
 filii Tro-
 jam recu-
 perant.

¹ anno . . . centesimo] om. B.

² 200^o, C.D.

³ diu, ins. C.D.

⁴ captam, C.D.

⁵ 200, C.D.

⁶ MSS. have *Hely* only, for title.

⁷ *Hely præsedet populo*] om. C.D.

⁸ *Ruth*] om. C.D.

⁹ *receperunt*] So A.B.C.D.; *cepe-
 runt*, E.

¹⁰ *id est Trojam*] om. C.D.

¹¹ Slightly transposed in C.D.

¹² *Latinus*, Gale.

¹³ *frater*] om. Gale.

¹⁴ *progenitus*] om. C.D.

tyme. But to speke of his tyme, olde men discordeþ. For ^{*TREVIS.} som menep¹ þat he was an hondred ʒere, some an hondred ʒere and fourty, some an hondred ʒere and foure score, som two hondred ʒere and fourty after þat Troye was destroyed, and some trowep þat he was to fore þat Troye was destroyed.² Hyderto þe book of Iuges, liber Iudicum, acountep þe hondred ʒere vnder twelue iuges.

Capitulum vicesimum septimum. Hely.

HELY þe preost after Sampson was iuge in Israel fourty ʒere; so seiþ Isidorus libro quinto, and Iosephus libro sexto; but þe Seuenty telleþ þat Hely was ouer þe peple twenty ʒere. In his dayes fil a greet³ honger in þe lond of Israel; and þe storie of Ruth, þat was of Moab, fil in his tyme. Hector his children took Ilium, þat is Troye, and putte out Antenor his ofspringe by helpe of Helenus, Priamus his sone. Siluius Posthumus, Eneas his sone, and Ascanius his broþer, i-gete of his stepdame Lauinia, was þe þridde kyng of Latyns, and bygan to reigne and reigned nyne and þritty ʒere; in þe

dissonaunce is hade amonge olde men, for somme men say ^{MS. HARL.} that he was in the c. yere, other in the cxi^{ti} yere, and ^{2261.} mony men in the clxxx., after the takenge of Troye. And mony men suppose that Omerus was a fore the takenge of Troye. The booke of Iudicum nowmbrethe ccc. yere vn to thys tyme, vnder xij. dukes and gouernoures.

Capitulum vicesimum septimum.

ELY the preste was gouernoure in Israel, after Sampson, xli^{ti} yere, after Ysidor, libro quinto, and after Iosephus, libro sexto; but after the lxx^{ti} interpretatores, Hely was gouernoure by xx^{ti} yere. In the tyme of whom the story of Ruth Moabitidis happede, a grete hungre beenge that tyme in Israel. The sonnes of Hector recurede and toke þe cite of Troye, expellenge the succession of Antenor, thro helpe off Helenus son off Priamus. Siluius Posthumus, son of Eneas, geten of Lauinia, brother to Ascanius, the thrydde kyng of Latynes, began to reigne; whiche reignede xxx^{ti} yeres þer. In whiche yere Brutus, son of Siluius,

¹ *saye*, Cx.

² The text of this sentence as in a. β. γ. The numbers are confused in MS.

³ So a. and Cx. (who has *felle*); *fil greet*, MS.

Brutus,
filius Silvii
Postumi,
Britanniam
occupat.

novem¹ annis. Quo² anno Brutus, filius Silvii, filii Ascanii, secundum historicos³ Britanniam occupavit. *Ranulphus*.⁴ De patre istius⁵ Bruti historiae videntur dissonare. Nam Britonum historia dicit istum Brutum fuisse filium Silvii, filii⁶ Ascanii; sed historia⁷ Romana dicit Ascanium genuisse Iulum,⁸ a quo familia Juliorum⁹ exorta est, nullam penitus¹⁰ de Silvio faciens mentionem. Nisi ergo¹¹ iste Iulus¹² fuerit binomius, et dictus Silvius, altera dictarum¹³ historiarum vacillat.¹⁴ Nam cum Brutus iste asseratur patrem suum venando quindennis¹⁵ occidisse, et Silvius Posthumus secundum omnes historicos sit¹⁶ filius Æneæ, non filius Ascanii, diuque post¹⁷ non occisus vixerit et¹⁸ regnaverit: liquet profecto quod iste Silvius Posthumus non sit pater Bruti; nisi forsan¹⁹ quia historia Romana dicit Ascanium post mortem Æneæ Silvium Posthumum summa pietate educasse, ob hoc²⁰ patrem ejus²¹ putandum fore. Quod quidem²² indubitanter admitterem, si Silvius Posthumus a Bruto filio occisus minime legeretur.

Historia
Bruti
narratur.

Gaufridus et Alfridus. Hic igitur Brutus, quia matrem in puerperio et patrem postmodum²³ quindennis occidit,²⁴ idcirco de Italia pulsus Græciam adiit;

¹ *quinque*, Gale.

² *Hoc*, C.D.

³ *secundum historicos*] om. C.D.

⁴ *Ranulphus*] om. C.D.

⁵ *illius*, C. (not D.)

⁶ *filii*] om. Gale.

⁷ *historia quoque*, C.D.

⁸ *Julium*, B.

⁹ *Iulorum*, E. (not A.B.D.)

¹⁰ *penitus*] om. C.D.

¹¹ *igitur*, A.D.

¹² *Julius*, B.

¹³ *istarum*, B.

¹⁴ *multum nutat*, C.D.

¹⁵ *quindennis venando*, B.

¹⁶ *sit*] om. C.D. (having *Ascanii fuerit*.)

¹⁷ *Ascanium*, ins. C.D.

¹⁸ *vixerit et*] om. C.D.

¹⁹ *forte*, B.

²⁰ *ob hoc*] ideo, C.D.

²¹ *suum*, B.

²² *quidem*] om. C.D.

²³ *venatu*, ins. A.B.; *venatu ut fertur*, ins. C.D.

²⁴ *occiderat*, B.

whiche ȝere Brut, Siluius his sone, pat was Ascanius his sone, occupied Britayne, as stories telleþ. **R.**¹ Hit semep pat stories discordeþ, pat telleþ of pis Brute his fader; for þe storie of Britouns seiþ pat pis Brut was Siluius his sone, [þe whiche Siluius was Ascanius his sone].² But þe storie of Rome seiþ pat Ascanius gat Iulus, of þe whiche come the mayny, Familia Iuliorum, and makeþ noon menciou of Siluius. Þan bot³ pis Iulus hadde tweie names, and were i-cleped Siluius also, pat⁴ oon of þe stories failleþ. For me seiþ pat pis Brute, whan he was fiftene ȝere olde, slouȝ his fader at hontynge; and alle stories telleþ pat Siluius Posthumus was Eneas his sone, and nouȝt Ascanius sone, and leued long age⁵ afterward vnslawe, and regned also. Þanne hit is soop pat pis Siluius Posthumus was nouȝt Brute his fader, bote vppon caas for þe storie of Rome seiþ pat Ascanius after Eneas his deth norsched vp tenderliche Siluius Posthumus, þerfore he is acounted his fader. Herto I wolde assente wiþ oute doute, ner pat me redeþ pat Siluius was i-slawe of his sone Brute. *Gaufridus.* Dis Brute slowh his moder in his burþe, and his fader afterward an⁶ hontynge, whan he was fiteuene ȝere olde. Þerfore he was i-putte out of Italy, and went into Grees, and

TREVISA.

son of Ascanius, after storyes, began to occupye Briteyne. **MS. HARL.**
R. Storyes seme to discorde moche of the fader of Brute. 2261.
 For the storie of Britones seythe Brute to haue bene the son of Siluius, son to Ascanius. But the story of the Romanes seythe Ascanius to haue geten Iulus, makenge no mencion of Siluius: with owte pis Iulus hade ij. names, and [was] calde Siluius, the oon story faylethe. For hit ys seide that this Brute, of xv. yere in age, did sle his fader in huntenge, and Siluius Posthumus, after alle storyes, was the son of Eneas, and not the son of Ascanius, reignenge and lyenge longe after that; but peraenture that the storye of the Romanes seythe Ascanius to haue noryschede pro pite Siluius Posthumus after the dethe of Eneas, and for that to haue bene trawede his fader. Whiche thyng y wolde admitte, if hit were not redde that Siluius Posthumus was sleyn of Brute his son. *Giraldus.* This Brute, whiche did sle his moder in the childenge, and also when he was of xv. yere in age, he did slee his fader in huntenge; wherefore Brute, putte from Ytaly, wente to the londe

¹ R.] added from a. β. γ. (not in Cx.)

² Added from a. β. γ.

³ ij, Cx.

⁴ þc, a. γ. (not β. or Cx.)

⁵ longe after, a. β. γ., Cx.

⁶ at, Cx.

ubi¹ ope Trojanorum Pandrasum² regem Græcorum devicit, filiamque regis Pandrasi Innogen desponsavit, Trojanos liberavit; deinde enavigans,³ responso Dianæ accepto, Africam appulit.⁴ Inde aris Philænorum,⁵ lacu salinarum, flumine Maluæ, columnisque Herculis pertransitis, Tyrrenum æquor apprehendit; ac⁶ reperto ibidem Corineo⁷ ad Acquitanniam pervenit; ubi Gophario⁸ Pictavorum duce devicto, (sed Turno, Bruti nepote, apud urbem Turnip⁹ seu Turonensem,¹⁰ de nomine suo dictam, occiso,) prosperis velis insulam Britanniae apud Totonesium¹¹ litus in Cornubia tenuit. In qua primus monarcha¹² effectus¹³ gigantes incolas¹⁴ destruxit. Insulam a nomine suo Britanniam, sociosque suos Britones vocavit, Cornubiam Corineo tradidit, urbem Trinovantum, quasi Novam Trojam, quæ nunc Londonia,¹⁵ Bruti filii. super Thamisim fluvium construxit. Tres filios, Locrinum, Cambrum, et Albanactum, progenuit; et, postquam viginti quatuor annis insulam rexisset, decessit. Sicyoniorum¹⁶ reges defecerunt, qui¹⁷ centum lxxij. annis regnaverant.¹⁸

¹ ubi] om. C.D.

² So A.D.; *Prandrasum*, E.

³ *enavigans*] so A.B.; *navigans*, D.E.

⁴ Slightly varied and abbreviated in C.D.

⁵ *Philencorum*, B.

⁶ ac] om. C.D.

⁷ *Corneo*, B.; *Corrineo*, D.

⁸ *Sophario*, A.; *Goffario*, D.; *Gaphario*, Gale.

⁹ *Turnei*, B.; *Turnew*, Gale.

¹⁰ *Tureñ*, A.; *Turonis*, D.; *Turon*, Gale.

¹¹ *Totonestium*, B.

¹² *monarchia*, C. (not D.)

¹³ *effectus*] om. C.D.

¹⁴ *inhabitantes*, C.D.

¹⁵ *London*, Gale.

¹⁶ *Schicioniorum*, B.; *Scicionorum*, E.

¹⁷ *postquam*, E.

¹⁸ *post quos sacerdotes constituit eunt*, ins. C.D.

þere by help of þe Troians he ouercome Pandrasus þe kyng of Grees, and wedded Pandrasus þe kynges douȝter Innoges. Sche¹ delyuered þe Troians, and seillede þennes, and hadde answeere of þe goddes, and londede in Affrica. Þan he passede þe aunteres² of Philenes, þe lake þat hatte Lacus Salinarum, þe salt lake, þe ryuer þat hatte³ Malue, and Hercules his pilers, and com in to þe see Tyren, and fonde þere Corinius,⁴ and wente into Gyan, and ouercome þere Gopharnys,⁵ duke of Peytow. And Turnus, Brute his newew, was i-slawe at a citee þat heet Turnupt⁶ oper Taroun⁷ by his owne name. And þanne Brute hadde good wynde, and seilled into Britayne, and helde Bretayne at þe clif of Totenes in Cornewayle, and was first kyng of Bretayne al hoole, and destroyed þe geantes þat wonede þerynne; and cleped þe ilond Bretayne by his owne name, and cleped his felawes Britouns, and bytake⁸ Cornewayle to Cor[i]neus, and bulde a citee, and cleped hit Trinouantum, as it were Newe Troye. Þat citee nowe hatte Londoun, and is vppon Themise.⁹ Brut gat þre sones, Locrinus, Camber, and Albanactus; and deyde whan he hadde i-regned foure and twenty ȝere in þe ilond. Þe kynges of Scicions¹⁰ faillede whan þey hadde i-reigned an hondred ȝere

TREVISA.

of Grece, ouercommenge Pandrasus, kyng of hit, thro the helpe of the Troianes, and did wedde Ymogen his doȝter, and delyuerede the Troianes; whiche sayleng from that cuntre, hauenge an answeere of Diana, londede at Affrike. After that he entrede in to the see of Tirus, whiche fyndenge there Corineus, brouȝhte hym in his companye to Acquittanye; whiche ouercommenge Gepharyus, the duke of Pictaues, and Turnus, the son of the suster to Brute, dedde, at Turnip, or elles Tiroune, callede after his name, come to Briteyne, to Totenese in Cornewaile. In whom he, occupieng the monarchye, destroyede gigantes that inhabite that cuntre, namenge that yle Briteyne, and his felawes Britones; ȝiffenge to Corineus Cornewaile; made a cite on the water of Thamys, callenge hit Urbs Trinouantum, as Newe Troye, callede now London. Whiche gate iij. childer, Locrinus, Camber, and Albanactus, dienge after that he hade gouernede that yle xxiiij. yere. The kynges of Scitia faylede, whiche hade reignede a clxij. yere; after that prestes

MS. HARL.
2261.The cite of
London was
edifiede by
Brute.¹ He, a. β., Cx., correctly.² auenters, Cx.; but auters (altars) is doubtless the true reading, and so β. γ.³ þat hatte] om. a. β. γ.⁴ Corneus, Cx.⁵ Gopharyns, Cx.⁶ Turnip, a. β. γ.⁷ Turon, a. (Cx. has Turon oowther Turon).⁸ bytook, a.⁹ Temse, a.¹⁰ Read Sicyon.

De Samuel
propheta.]

Samuel post mortem Hely judicavit Israel annis duodecim, secundum Josephum libro octavo; cum tamen Scriptura de hoc taceat. A quo tempora prophetarum incipiunt; cujus anno tertio David natus est.¹ ² Iste Samuel judex et propheta³ primus⁴ instituit cuneos et⁵ conventus psallentium religiosorum; qui etiam dicebantur psallere,⁶ id est, jugiter Deum laudare.⁷ Postmodum⁸ sub Saule judicavit annis octodecim.

Anno Abr. 910.
Anno Samuel 1.

Loctrinus,
filius Bruti,
in Britan-
nia regnat.

Loctrinus, filius⁹ Bruti,¹⁰ ¹¹ cœpit regnare quasi super tertiam partem insulæ Britannicæ; a meridiano scilicet¹² freto usque ad Humbrum fluvium,¹³ quam partem¹⁴ Loegriam¹⁵ nomine suo nuncupavit,¹⁶ sicut¹⁷ supra libro primo de Britannia dictum est. Sed, Albanacto fratre suo occiso, et Cambro tertio fratre defuncto, Loctrinus post vicesimum annum regni sui occisus est in bello, quod ei uxor sua Guendolena propter pellicem Estrildam intulerat. Guendolena post maritum regnavit quindecim annis.¹⁷

Anno Abr. 911.
Anno Samuel 2.

¹ nascitur, C.D.

² Petrus, ins. A.B.D.

³ judex et propheta] om. A.B.C.D.

⁴ primo, B.

⁵ cuneos et] om. A.B.C.D.

⁶ prophetare, A.B.C.D.

⁷ Deum laudare] laudabant, C.D.

⁸ Post hoc. This sentence transposed before the preceding one in C.D.

⁹ filius] primogenitus, A.C.D.

¹⁰ Loctrinus primogenitus Bruti, B., Gale.

¹¹ hoc anno, ins. C.D.

¹² scilicet] om. C.D.

¹³ Humbram, Gale; usque flumen Humbrum, B.

¹⁴ insulæ, ins. A.B.

¹⁵ a, ins. C.D., Gale.

¹⁶ appellavit, C.D.

¹⁷ sicut . . . annis] Camber vero illam partem tenuit quæ est ultra Sabrinam usque ad occidentalem oceanum; quam a nomine suo Cambriam vocavit.* At Albanactus transhumbranas partes ad boream adiit, terramque ex nomine suo Albaniam vocavit. Quo tandem a rege Hunorum Humbro superveniente interfecto, Cambroque postmodum defuncto, Loctrinus solus regnum tenuit, ac post decem regni annos occisus est in bello, quod ei uxor sua Guendolena propter pellicem Estrildem superinductam intulerat, C.D. After which, Guendolena post eum quindecim annis regnum tenuit, C. (only).

* appellavit Cambriam, D.

pre score and tweyne. Samuel after Hely was iuge in Israel twelfe zere ; so seip Iosephus, libro octavo, nopeles þe Skripture spekep nouzt þerof. From his tyme bygan þe tymes of prophetes, tempora prophetarum. [And]¹ in his þridde zere Daid was i-bore. *Petrus.* Þis Samuel ordeyned first companye of clerkes and queres forto synge ; and þan me seide þat þey prophecied, þat is to menyng, þei worschipped God bysiliche. Afterward Samuel was iuge in Israel vnder Saul eiʒtene zere. Locrinus, Brute his eldest sone, bygan to reigne as it were vppon þe souþ see to þe ryuer of Homber,² and cleped þat partye of þe ilond Loegria, þat is Engelond, as it is i-seide in þe firste book in þe chapitre of Briteyne. But Albanactus was i-slawe, and Camber deide ; and Locrinus, after þat þey³ hadde i-regned twenty zere, was i-slawe also in [a]⁴ batayle þat his wif Guendolena ʒaf hym, by cause of a strompet þat heet Estrilda. And Guendolena reigned aftir hire housbonde fiftene zere.

TREVISA.

were made iugges and gouernoures. Samuel was gouernoure in Israel xij. yere after the dethe of Ely, after Iosephus libro octavo ; but the story dothe not expresse that from whom the tymes of prophetes began, in the thrydde yere of whom kynge Daid was borne. *Petrus.* This Samuel ordeynede conuentes of religious men, whiche were seide also to prophecy, that is, to lawde Godde. Locrinus, the firste son of Brute, began to reigne as on the thrydde parte of Briteyne, from the sowthe see of hit vn to the water of Humbre, whiche parte he callede Loegria, after his name. Albanactus his brother sleyne, and Camber the thrydde brother dedde, Locrinus was sleyne in batelle after the xx^{ti} yere of his reigne, whiche batelle Guendolena his wife movede for an hoore callede Estrilda, whiche reignede after her howsebonde xv. yere.

MS. HART.
2261.Religion
began.¹ Added from a. β. γ. and Cx.² *Humber, a.*³ *he, a.*⁴ Added from a. β. γ. (not in Cx.)

CAP. XXVIII.

Saul. [*Plura de Græcia, item de Britannia. Ætas mundi tertia terminatur.*]¹

Saul primus rex Israel.

SAUL de tribu Benjamin, primus rex Hebræorum, secundum Josephum regnavit viginti annis; de quibus Sacra² Scriptura tacet. *Petrus, capitulo quinto.*³ Nam Saul, vivente Samuele,⁴ regnavit octodecim annis, et post mortem ejus⁵ duobus annis. ⁶Latinorum quartus Æneas Silvius, filius Posthumi, cœpit regnare; et regnavit xxxi.⁷ annis. *Ranulphus.* Secundum aliquas historias frater Posthumi Latinus Silvius ponitur quartus, et iste Æneas Silvius ponitur quintus; sed hoc in⁸ loco iste Æneas ponitur quartus.⁹

Anno Abr. 922.
Anno Saul 1.

Anno Abr. 927.
Anno Saul 6.

Codrus Athenis regnat.

Atheniensium dux septimusdecimus Codrus, Melanthis filius, cœpit regnare, et regnavit xxi. annis; post cujus mortem defecerunt reges Atheniensium¹⁰ *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo quartodecimo.*¹¹ ¹²Rebellantibus Peloponnesensibus¹³ contra Athenienses responsum est per oraculum, quod illi forent victores quorum dux occideretur; unde¹⁴ militibus ante omnia indicta est Codri¹⁵ regis custodia. Rex tamen Codrus, assumpto pauperis habitu, sarmenta¹⁶ collo gerens castra hostium ingreditur; ubi in turba, jurgio provocato a milite quem falce vulneraverat, occiditur.¹⁷ Quo cognito Dorienses¹⁸ absque bello discedunt,¹⁹ Athenienses

¹ MSS. have *Saul* only, for title.

² *Sacra*] om. B.

³ C.D. omit reference; A.B. omit *capitulo quinto*.

⁴ *Samuel, vivente Saul*, B.

⁵ *mortem ejus*] eum, C.D.

⁶ *Petrus*, ins. C.D.

⁷ *xiii.*, Gale.

⁸ *in*] om. B.

⁹ *sed . . . quartus*] om. C.D., which insert: *Augustinus de Civitate, libro 18, capitulo 9.*

¹⁰ *Athenienses*, D.

¹¹ C.D. transpose reference as above.

¹² *De isto Codro legitur quod*, ins. C.D.

¹³ *Peloponensibus*, MSS., as usual.

¹⁴ *et*, ins. A.B.

¹⁵ *Codri*] om. B.

¹⁶ *armamenta*, B.

¹⁷ *interficitur*, D. The latter part slightly abbreviated in C. (not D.)

¹⁸ *Peloponenses*, C.D.

¹⁹ *descendant*, A.

Capitulum vicesimum octavum. Saul.

TREVISA.

SAUL of þe lynage of Beniamyn was þe firste kyng of Hebrewes, and regned twenty þere; so seiþ Iosephus. Of þe whiche þeres þe Scripture spekeþ not. *Petrus*. For Saul regnede eiȝtene þere while Samuel lyuede, and two þere after his deth. Þe fourþe kyng of Latyns, Eneas Siluius, was Posthumus his sone, and bygan to regne and regned oon and pritty þere. In som stories Posthumus his brother, Latinus Siluius,¹ is i-sette þe fourþe, and² þis Eneas is i-sette þe fift. But in þis place þis Eneas schal be sette þe fourþe. Þe seuentepe duke of Athene, Codrus, Melanthus³ his sone, bygan to reigne, and regnede oon and twenty þere. After his deth kynges of Athene faillede. *Augustinus, libro octavodecimo, capitulo quartodecimo*. Þe Peloponens, men of Thessalia, weren rebel aȝenst men of Athene. Þanne was answerd i-zeue of⁴ þe goddes, þat in wheþer side þe duke were i-slawe, þat side schulde haue þe maistrye. Þerfore þe knyȝtes were i-charged ouer al þing to take good kepe of kyng Codrus. Nopeles Codrus took a pore manis cloþinge and a burpen of fagettes on his nekke, and entrede in to þe strengþe of his enemyes. And þere was strif arered amonge þe peple; and a knyȝt slow hym, þat he hadde raper i-wounded wiþ an hook. Whan þat was i-knowe þe Doreyns⁵ wente away wiþ oute

*Capitulum vicesimum octavum.*MS. HARL.
2261.

SAUL, of the tribe of Beniamyn, firste kyng of men of Hebrewes, reignede xx^{ti} yere, after Iosephus, whom Holy Scripture expresseth not. *Petrus*. For, Samuel lyvenge, Saul reignede xvij. yere, and ij. yere after his dethe. Eneas Siluius, the son of Siluius Posthumus, the iiij^{the} kyng of Latyns, began to reigne, whiche reignede .xxxii^{ti} yere. Codrus, the son of Melanthus,³ the xvij^{the} duke of Athenes, began to reigne, whiche reignede xxxj^{ti} yere, after the dethe of whom kynges of Athenes faylede. *Augustinus, libro decimo octavo, capitulo 14^o*. Men of Peloponense beyng rebellous ageyne men of Athenes, an answer was ȝifen that theke parte scholde haue þe victory, the gouernoure of whom scholde be sleyne; wherefore the knyȝtes were commaundede that thei scholde not slee kyng Codrus in eny wyse. Neuertheles kyng Codrus, cloþenge hym in a vile habite, berenge as kyttinges of trees in his nekke, come amonge the companyes of his enmyes, where, a stryfe movede, Codrus was sleyne of a knyȝte whom he hade woundede with a sythe. Whiche thyng y-knowen, men callede Dorienses wente from batelle, and men off Athenes

¹ *Siluius*, MS. (not Cx.)² So a. and Cx.; in, MS.³ *Melantus*, MSS.⁴ So a. B. γ.; to, MS.⁵ that coreus, Cx.

liberantur. Maluit enim Codrus mori dummodo¹ vincerent sui, quam vivere suis superatis. Post cuius mortem apud Athenas² res publica per magistratus diu administrata est; solaque libido dominantium pro lege erat; quousque³ Solon,⁴ insignis legum conditor, in ducem⁵ eligeretur.

Post mortem Codri res publica mutatur.

Maddan rex Britanniae.

Maddan,⁶ filius Loerini et Guendolenae,⁷ regnavit apud Britannos⁸ quadraginta annis, genuitque Mempricum et Maulum.

Anno Abr. 936.
Anno Saul 15.

Amazones invadunt Asiam.

Saul cum filiis suis⁹ occiditur in Monte Gelboe.

Ætas mundi tertia terminatur.

Et sic terminatur tertia ætas seculi ab ortu Abrahamæ usque ad regnum David; habens annos, secundum Isidorum,¹⁰ nongentos quadraginta octo, per generationes quatuordecim; sed¹¹ secundum utramque editionem,¹² habet¹³ annos nongentos quadraginta duos. *Ranulphus*. Hæc diversitas¹⁴ emergit ex hoc,¹⁵ quod Isidorus dicit Samuelem et Saulem præfuisse populo Israel quadraginta annis; cum tamen Josephus, libro octavo, et Magister in historiis dicant Samuelem præfuisse¹⁶ duodecim annis solum,¹⁷ et post illum¹⁸ Saulem regnasse viginti annis.¹⁹

¹ *dum*, C.D.

² *apud Athenas*] om. C,D.

³ *usque*, B.

⁴ So B.; *Salon*, A.C.D.E.

⁵ *judicem*, B.

⁶ So A,B,D., Gale; *Maudan*, E.

⁷ *Gvedalene*, A.

⁸ *apud Britones*, A.; *in Britanniam*, C,D.

⁹ *suis*] om. C,D.

¹⁰ *quinto libro*, ins. A,B,D.

¹¹ *sed*] om. A.

¹² *sed . . . editionem*] secundum vulgarem editionem, B.

¹³ *habens*, C,D.

¹⁴ *Ista autem varietas*, C,D.

¹⁵ *eo*, C,D.

¹⁶ *populo . . . præfuisse*] om. B.

¹⁷ *solus*, A,D,E.; *se solo*, B.

¹⁸ *post illum*] postmodum, D.

¹⁹ Slightly transposed in C,D

bataile, and þe Athenes were delyuered. Codrus were leuere TREVISA.
 deye and his men haue þe maistrie, þan lyue and his men be
 ouercome. After his deef þe commounalte of Athene was
 gouerned by maistres. For þere was no lawe bot likyng of
 lordeschippe, forto þat Solon¹ þe noble makere of lawes was
 i-chose to iuge.² Maddan, Locrinus his sone, on Guendolena³
 i-gete, regnede fourty þere among þe Britouns, and gat Mem-
 pricius and Maulus. Þe Amazonas werreþ in Asia. Saul
 and his children beep i-slawe in þe hille, Mont Gelboe. And
 so endep þe þridde age of þe world from þe burþe of Abraham
 to þe kyngdom of Daud. Isidorus libro quinto seiþ þat the
 þridde age of þe worlde conteynep nyne hondred þere and
 two⁴ and fourty by fourtene generaciouns. But eiper trans-
 lacioun seiþ þat þe þridde age of þe world conteynep nyne
 hondred þere and two and fourty. R. Þis dyuersite bifalleþ
 for Isidorus seiþ þat Samuel and Saul rulede þe peple fourty
 þere; nopeles Iosephus, libro octavo, and þe Maister of Stories
 telleþ⁵ þat Samuel rulede þe peple allone twelue þere, and
 after hym Saul regnede twenty þere.

were delyuerede. For Codrus wyllede rather to dye, that MS. HARL.
 his subiectes myȝhte be victores, then for to lyve his sub- 2261.
 iectes oppressede. After the dethe of whom eny man
 reignede there after his pleasure, vn tille that Solon,¹ the
 nowble man and maker of there lawes, was electe in to
 there gouernoure. Maddan, the son of Locrinus, reignede
 on the Britones xl^{ti} yere, whiche gate Mempricius and
 Maulus. The Amazonas entrede in to Asia. Saul was
 sleyne with his sonnes in the hilles of Gelboe. And so the
 thrydde age off the worlde is terminate, for⁶ the byrthe
 of Abraham vn to the reigne of kyng Daud, hauenge after
 Ysidor, libro 5^o, ix^c yere and xlvij., by xiiij. genera-
 ciones, and after oþer ix^c. xlij. yere. R. This diuersite of
 yeres may be causede of that thyng, that Ysidorus seythe
 Samuel and Saul to haue rowlede the peple of Israel xl^{ti}
 yere. But Iosephus seythe, libro octavo, and the Maister
 of storyes, Samuel to haue ben gouernoure in Israel oonly
 xij. yere, and Saul to haue reignede after hym xx^{ti} yere.

¹ *Salon*, MSS. and Cx.

² So a.; *iuges*, MS.; *was chosen*
iugge, Cx.

³ So Cx.; *Guendelona*, MS.

⁴ *eyzte*, a., Cx..

⁵ *acorden*, Cx.

⁶ So Harl. MS.; probably a
 clerical error for *fro*.

LONDON:

Printed by GEORGE E. EYRE and WILLIAM SPOTTISWOODE,
Printers to the Queen's most Excellent Majesty,
For Her Majesty's Stationery Office.

[—750.—4/69.]

CATALOGUE
OF
RECORD PUBLICATIONS
ON SALE

BY

Messrs. Longman & Co., London ;
Messrs. James Parker & Co., Oxford and London ;
Messrs. Macmillan & Co., Cambridge and London ;
Messrs. A. & C. Black, Edinburgh ;
and Mr. A. Thom, Dublin.

12001717

70117 0318 01 01001

CONTENTS.

	Page
CALENDARS OF STATE PAPERS, &c. - - - -	3
CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND DURING THE MIDDLE AGES - - - -	9
PUBLICATIONS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, &c. - - - -	25
WORKS PUBLISHED IN PHOTOZINCOGRAPHY - - - -	30

CALENDARS OF STATE PAPERS, &c.

[IMPERIAL 8vo., cloth. *Price 15s. each Volume or Part.*]

As far back as the year 1800, a Committee of the House of Commons recommended that Indexes and Calendars should be made to the Public Records, and thirty-six years afterwards another Committee of the House of Commons reiterated that recommendation in more forcible words; but it was not until the incorporation of the State Paper Office with the Public Record Office that the present Master of the Rolls found himself in a position to take the necessary steps for carrying out the wishes of the House of Commons.

On 7 December 1855, he stated to the Lords of the Treasury that although "the Records, State Papers, and Documents in his charge constitute the most complete and perfect series of their kind in the civilized world," and although "they are of the greatest value in a historical and constitutional point of view, yet they are comparatively useless to the public, from the want of proper Calendars and Indexes."

Acting upon the recommendations of the Committees of the House of Commons above referred to, he suggested to the Lords of the Treasury that to effect the object he had in view it would be necessary for him to employ a few persons fully qualified to perform the work which he contemplated.

Their Lordships assented to the necessity of having Calendars prepared and printed, and empowered the Master of the Rolls to take such steps as might be necessary for this purpose.

The following Works have been already published under the direction of the Master of the Rolls :—

CALENDARIUM GENEALOGICUM; for the Reigns of Henry III. and Edward I. *Edited by* CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office. 2 Vols. 1865.

This is a work of great value for elucidating the early history of our nobility and landed gentry.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGNS OF EDWARD VI., MARY, and ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* ROBERT LEMON, Esq., F.S.A. 1856-1865.
Vol. I.—1547-1580. | Vol. II.—1581-1590.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH (continued), preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. 1867-1869.
Vol. III.—1591-1594. | Vol. IV.—1595-1597.

The first, second, third, and fourth volumes are published, extending from 1547 to 1597.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF JAMES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. 1857-1859.

Vol. I.—1603-1610. | Vol. III.—1619-1623.
Vol. II.—1611-1618. | Vol. IV.—1623-1625, with Addenda.

Mrs. Everett Green has completed a Calendar of the Domestic State Papers of the reign of James I. in four volumes. The mass of historical matter thus rendered accessible to investigation is large and important. It throws new light on the Gunpowder-plot; the rise and fall of Somerset; the particulars connected with the Overbury murder; the disgrace of Sir Edward Coke; and other matters connected with the reign.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOHN BRUCE, Esq., F.S.A. 1858-1868.

Vol. I.—1625-1626. | Vol. VII.—1634-1635.
Vol. II.—1627-1628. | Vol. VIII.—1635.
Vol. III.—1628-1629. | Vol. IX.—1635-1636.
Vol. IV.—1629-1631. | Vol. X.—1636-1637.
Vol. V.—1631-1633. | Vol. XI.—1637.
Vol. VI.—1633-1634.

This Calendar is in continuation of that of the Domestic State Papers of the reign of James I., and will extend to the Restoration of Charles II. At present it comprises the first thirteen years of the reign of Charles I., but is in active progress towards completion. It presents notices of a large number of original documents of great value to all inquirers into the history of the period to which it relates. Many of these documents have been hitherto unknown.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES II., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. 1860-1866.

Vol. I.—1660-1661. | Vol. V.—1665-1666.
Vol. II.—1661-1662. | Vol. VI.—1666-1667.
Vol. III.—1663-1664. | Vol. VII.—1667.
Vol. IV.—1664-1665.

Seven volumes, of the period between 1660 and 1667, have been published.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to SCOTLAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARKHAM JOHN THORPE, Esq., of St. Edmund Hall, Oxford. 1858.

Vol. I., the Scottish Series, of the Reigns of Henry VIII., Edward VI., Mary, and Elizabeth, 1509-1589.
Vol. II., the Scottish Series, of the Reign of Elizabeth, 1589-1603; an Appendix to the Scottish Series, 1543-1592; and the State Papers relating to Mary Queen of Scots during her Detention in England, 1568-1587.

The above two volumes of State Papers relate to Scotland, and embrace the period between 1509 and 1603. In the second volume are notices of the State Papers relating to Mary Queen of Scots.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. 1860-1867.

Vol. I.—1509-1573. | Vol. II.—1574-1585.

The above have been published under the editorship of Mr. Hans Claude Hamilton; another volume is in progress.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. NOEL SAINSBURY, Esq. 1860-1862.

Vol. I.—America and West Indies, 1574-1660.

Vol. II.—East Indies, China, and Japan, 1513-1616.

The first volume is a Calendar of Colonial Papers relating to America and the West Indies, from 1574 to 1660. The second volume relates to the East Indies, China, and Japan, from 1513 to 1616. They include an analysis of all Papers from the three great archives of the Public Record Office, the India Office, and the British Museum. The third volume is in the press. The regular series of the East India Papers in the Public Record Office are calendared to the year 1623; those relating to the same subject in the Domestic Correspondence to 1625; and in the Foreign Correspondence to 1621; the Court Minutes of the East India Company to 1621; and the Original Correspondence in the India Office to 1621. Many undated Papers have been dated and arranged.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1862-1867.

Vol. I.—1509-1514.

Vol. II. (in Two Parts)—1515-1518.

Vol. III. (in Two Parts)—1519-1523.

These volumes contain summaries of all State Papers and Correspondence relating to the reign of Henry VIII., in the Public Record Office, of those formerly in the State Paper Office, in the British Museum, the Libraries of Oxford and Cambridge, and other Public Libraries; and of all letters that have appeared in print in the works of Burnet, Strype, and others. Whatever authentic original material exists in England relative to the religious, political, parliamentary, or social history of the country during the reign of Henry VIII., whether despatches of ambassadors, or proceedings of the army, navy, treasury, or ordinance, or records of Parliament, appointments of officers, grants from the Crown, &c., will be found calendared in these volumes.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD VI., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. 1547-1553. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, and Correspondant du Comité Impérial des Travaux Historiques et des Sociétés Savantes de France. 1861.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF MARY, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. 1553-1558. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law, and Correspondant du Comité Impérial des Travaux Historiques et des Sociétés Savantes de France. 1861.

The two preceding volumes exhibit the negotiations of the English ambassadors with the courts of the Emperor Charles V. of Germany, of Henry II. of France, and of Philip II. of Spain. The affairs of several of the minor continental states also find various incidental illustrations of much interest.

A valuable series of Papers descriptive of the circumstances which attended the loss of Calais merits a special notice; while the progress of the wars in the north of France, into which England was dragged by her union with Spain, is narrated at some length. The domestic affairs of England are of course passed over in these volumes, which treat only of its relations with foreign powers.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, &c. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham. 1863-1867.

Vol. I.—1558-1559.

Vol. II.—1559-1560.

Vol. III.—1560-1561.

Vol. IV.—1561-1562.

Vol. V.—1562.

These five volumes contain a calendar of the Foreign Correspondence of Queen Elizabeth, from her accession in 1558, to 1562, of which the originals, drafts, or contemporary copies, are deposited in the Public Record Office, &c. These documents are of the greatest value as exhibiting the position of England at one of the most interesting periods of history, in regard to its relations with France, Scotland, Spain, and Germany. They are of especial importance as illustrating not only the external but also the domestic affairs of France during the period which immediately preceded the outbreak of the first great war of religion under the Prince of Condé and the Duke of Guise.

CALENDAR OF TREASURY PAPERS, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. 1557-1696. *Edited by* JOSEPH REDINGTON, Esq. 1868.

The Papers connected with the administration of the affairs of the Treasury, from 1556-7 to 1696, comprising petitions, reports, and other documents relating to services rendered to the State, grants of money and pensions, appointments to offices, remissions of fines and duties, &c., are calendared in this volume. They illustrate civil and military events, financial and other matters, the administration in Ireland and the Colonies, &c., and afford information nowhere else recorded.

CALENDAR OF THE CAREW PAPERS, preserved in Lambeth Library. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London; and WILLIAM BULLEN, Esq. 1867-1869.

Vol. I.—1515-1574.

Vol. II.—1575-1588.

Vol. III.—1589-1600.

The Carew Papers relating to Ireland deposited in the Lambeth Library are not only unique in themselves, but are of great importance. Three volumes of the Calendar of these valuable Papers have been published, extending from 1515 to 1600, which cannot fail to be welcome to all students of Irish history. Another volume is in the press.

CALENDAR OF LETTERS, DESPATCHES, AND STATE PAPERS, relating to the Negotiations between England and Spain, preserved in the Archives at Simancas, and elsewhere. *Edited by* G. A. BERGENROTH. 1862-1868.

Vol. I.—Hen. VII.—1485-1509.

Vol. II.—Hen. VIII.—1509-1525.

Supplement to Vol. I. and Vol. II.

Mr. Bergenroth was engaged in compiling a Calendar of the Papers relating to England preserved in the archives of Simancas in Spain, and the corresponding portion removed from Simancas to Paris. It was deemed essential that Mr. Bergenroth should also visit Madrid, and examine the Papers there, bearing on the reign of Henry VIII. The first volume contains the Spanish Papers of the reign of Henry VII.; the second volume, those of the first portion of the reign of Henry VIII. The Supplement to Vols. I. and II. contains new information relating to the private life of Queen Katharine of England; and to the projected marriage of Henry VII. with Queen Juana, widow of King Philip of Castile, and mother of the Emperor Charles V.

- CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS, relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by* RAWDON BROWN, Esq. 1864-1867.
 Vol. I.—1202-1509.
 Vol. II.—1509-1519.

Of the Papers in the Venetian archives, Mr. Rawdon Brown has published two volumes of his Calendar, extending from 1202 to 1519, and has made considerable progress in the third volume. Mr. Brown's researches have brought to light a number of important documents relating to the various periods of English history, and his contributions to historical literature are of the most interesting and important character.

- REPORT OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS AND THE REV. J. S. BREWER TO THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS, upon the Carte and Carew Papers in the Bodleian and Lambeth Libraries. 1864. *Price 2s. 6d.*
- REPORT OF THE DEPUTY KEEPER OF THE PUBLIC RECORDS TO THE MASTER OF THE ROLLS, upon the Documents in the Archives and Public Libraries of Venice. 1866. *Price 2s. 6d.*

In the Press.

- CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, COLONIAL SERIES, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, and elsewhere. *Edited by* W. NOEL SALNSBURY, Esq. Vol. III.—East Indies, China, and Japan. 1617, &c.
- CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, FOREIGN SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham. Vol. VI.—1563.
- CALENDAR OF LETTERS AND PAPERS, FOREIGN AND DOMESTIC, OF THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office, the British Museum, &c. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vol. IV.—1524, &c.
- CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS AND MANUSCRIPTS, relating to ENGLISH AFFAIRS, preserved in the Archives of Venice, &c. *Edited by* RAWDON BROWN, Esq. Vol. III.—1520-1526.
- CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF CHARLES I., preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* JOHN BRUCE, Esq., F.S.A. Vol. XII.—1637-1638.
- CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS, DOMESTIC SERIES, OF THE REIGN OF ELIZABETH (continued), preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* MARY ANNE EVERETT GREEN. Vol. V.—1598-1600.
- CALENDAR OF THE CAREW PAPERS, preserved in Lambeth Library. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London; and WILLIAM BULLEN, Esq. Vol. IV.—1601, &c.
- SYLLABUS, IN ENGLISH, OF RYMER'S FÆDERA; with Index. Vol. I.
-

In Progress.

CALENDAR OF STATE PAPERS relating to IRELAND, preserved in Her Majesty's Public Record Office. *Edited by* HANS CLAUDE HAMILTON, Esq., F.S.A. Vol. III.—1586, &c.

THE CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF GREAT BRITAIN
AND IRELAND DURING THE MIDDLE AGES.

[ROYAL 8vo., half-bound. Price 10s. each Volume or Part.]

On 25 July 1822, the House of Commons presented an address to the Crown, stating that the editions of the works of our ancient historians were inconvenient and defective; that many of their writings still remained in manuscript, and, in some cases, in a single copy only. They added, "that an uniform and convenient edition of the whole, published under His Majesty's royal sanction, would be an undertaking honourable to His Majesty's reign, and conducive to the advancement of historical and constitutional knowledge; that the House therefore humbly besought His Majesty, that He would be graciously pleased to give such directions as His Majesty, in His wisdom, might think fit, for the publication of a complete edition of the ancient historians of this realm, and assured His Majesty that whatever expense might be necessary for this purpose would be made good."

The Master of the Rolls, being very desirous that effect should be given to the resolution of the House of Commons, submitted to Her Majesty's Treasury in 1857 a plan for the publication of the ancient chronicles and memorials of the United Kingdom, and it was adopted accordingly. In selecting these works, it was considered right, in the first instance, to give preference to those of which the manuscripts were unique, or the materials of which would help to fill up blanks in English history for which no satisfactory and authentic information hitherto existed in any accessible form. One great object the Master of the Rolls had in view was to form a *corpus historicum* within reasonable limits, and which should be as complete as possible. In a subject of so vast a range, it was important that the historical student should be able to select such volumes as conformed with his own peculiar tastes and studies, and not be put to the expense of purchasing the whole collection; an inconvenience inseparable from any other plan than that which has been in this instance adopted.

Of the Chronicles and Memorials, the following volumes have been published. They embrace the period from the earliest time of British history down to the end of the reign of Henry VII.

1. **THE CHRONICLE OF ENGLAND**, by JOHN CAPGRAVE. *Edited by the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford.* 1858.

Capgrave was prior of Lynn, in Norfolk, and provincial of the order of the Friars Hermits of England shortly before the year 1464. His Chronicle extends from the creation of the world to the year 1417. As a record of the language spoken in Norfolk (being written in English), it is of considerable value.

2. **CHRONICON MONASTERII DE ABINGDON**. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard.* 1858.

This Chronicle traces the history of the great Benedictine monastery of Abingdon in Berkshire, from its foundation by King Ina of Wessex, to the reign of Richard I., shortly after which period the present narrative was drawn up by an inmate of the establishment. The author had access to the title-deeds of the house; and incorporates into his history various charters of the Saxon kings, of great importance as illustrating not only the history of the locality but that of the kingdom. The work is now printed for the first time.

3. **LIVES OF EDWARD THE CONFESSOR**. I.—*La Estoire de Seint Aedward le Rei*. II.—*Vita Beati Edvardi Regis et Confessoris*. III.—*Vita Æduardi Regis qui apud Westmonasterium requiescit*. *Edited by HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge.* 1858.

The first is a poem in Norman French, containing 4,686 lines, addressed to Alianor, Queen of Henry III., and probably written in the year 1245, on the occasion of the restoration of the church of Westminster. Nothing is known of the author. The second is an anonymous poem, containing 536 lines, written between the years 1440 and 1450, by command of Henry VI., to whom it is dedicated. It does not throw any new light on the reign of Edward the Confessor, but is valuable as a specimen of the Latin poetry of the time. The third, also by an anonymous author, was apparently written for Queen Edith, between the years 1066 and 1074, during the pressure of the suffering brought on the Saxons by the Norman conquest. It notices many facts not found in other writers, and some which differ considerably from the usual accounts.

4. **MONUMENTA FRANCISCANA ; scilicet**, I.—*Thomas de Eccleston de Adventu Fratrum Minorum in Angliam*. II.—*Adæ de Marisco Epistolæ*. III.—*Registrum Fratrum Minorum Londoniæ*. *Edited by J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London.* 1858.

This volume contains original materials for the history of the settlement of the order of Saint Francis in England, the letters of Adam de Marisco, and other papers connected with the foundation and diffusion of this great body. It has been the aim of the editor to collect whatever historical information could be found in this country, towards illustrating a period of the national history for which only scanty materials exist. None of these have been before printed.

5. **FASCICULI ZIZANIORUM MAGISTRI JOHANNIS WYCLIF CUM TRITICO**. Ascribed to THOMAS NETTER, of WALDEN, Provincial of the Carmelite Order in England, and Confessor to King Henry the Fifth. *Edited by the Rev. W. W. SHIRLEY, M.A., Tutor and late Fellow of Wadham College, Oxford.* 1858.

This work derives its principal value from the fact that it is the only contemporaneous account of the rise of the Lollards. At the time it was written,

the disputes of the schoolmen had been extended to the field of theology, and they appear both in the writings of Wycliff and in those of his adversaries. Wycliff's little bundles of tares are not less metaphysical than theological, and the conflict between Nominalists and Realists rages side by side with the conflict between the different interpreters of Scripture. The "Fasciculi Zizaniorum" gives a good idea of the controversies at the end of the 14th and the beginning of the 15th centuries.

6. **THE BUIK OF THE CRONICLIS OF SCOTLAND ; or, A Metrical Version of the History of Hector Boece ;** by WILLIAM STEWART. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* W. B. TURNBULL, Esq., of Lincoln's Inn, Barrister-at-Law. 1858.

This is a metrical translation of a Latin Prose Chronicle, and was written in the first half of the 16th century. The narrative begins with the earliest legends, and ends with the death of James I. of Scotland, and the "evil ending of the traitors that slew him." Strict accuracy of statement is not to be looked for in such a work as this ; but the stories of the colonization of Spain, Ireland, and Scotland are interesting if not true ; and the chronicle is valuable as a reflection of the manners, sentiments, and character of the age in which it was composed. The peculiarities of the Scottish dialect are well illustrated in this metrical version, and the student of language will find ample materials for comparison with the English dialects of the same period, and with modern lowland Scotch.

7. **JOHANNIS CAPGRAVE LIBER DE ILLUSTRIBUS HENRICIS.** *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1858.

This work is dedicated to Henry VI. of England, who appears to have been, in the author's estimation, the greatest of all the Henries. It is divided into three distinct parts, each having its own separate dedication. The first part relates only to the history of the Empire, and extends from the election of Henry I., the Fowler, to the end of the reign of the Emperor Henry VI. The second part is devoted to English history, and extends from the accession of Henry I. in the year 1100, to the year 1446, which was the twenty-fourth year of the reign of King Henry VI. The third part contains the lives of illustrious men who have borne the name of Henry in various parts of the world.

Capgrave was born in 1393, in the reign of Richard II., and lived during the Wars of the Roses, for the history of which period his work is of some value.

8. **HISTORIA MONASTERII S. AUGUSTINI CANTUARIENSIS,** by THOMAS OF ELMHAM, formerly Monk and Treasurer of that Foundation. *Edited by* CHARLES HARDWICK, M.A., Fellow of St. Catharine's Hall, and Christian Advocate in the University of Cambridge. 1858.

This history extends from the arrival of St. Augustine in Kent until 1191. Prefixed is a chronology as far as 1418, which shows in outline what was to have been the character of the work when completed. The only copy known is in the possession of Trinity Hall, Cambridge. The author was connected with Norfolk, and most probably with Elmham, whence he derived his name.

9. **EULOGIUM (HISTORIARUM SIVE TEMPORIS) :** Chronicon ab Orbe condito usque ad Annum Domini 1366 ; a Monacho quodam Malmesbiriensi exaratum. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* F. S. HAYDON, Esq., B.A. 1858-1863.

This is a Latin Chronicle extending from the Creation to the latter part of the reign of Edward III., and written by a monk of the Abbey of Malmesbury, in Wiltshire, about the year 1367. A continuation, carrying the history of England down to the year 1413, was added in the former half of the fifteenth century by an author whose name is not known. The original Chronicle is divided into five books, and contains a history of the world generally, but more especially

of England to the year 1366. The continuation extends the history down to the coronation of Henry V. The Eulogium itself is chiefly valuable as containing a history, by a contemporary, of the period between 1356 and 1366. The notices of events appear to have been written very soon after their occurrence. Among other interesting matter, the Chronicle contains a diary of the Poitiers campaign, evidently furnished by some person who accompanied the army of the Black Prince. The continuation of the Chronicle is also the work of a contemporary, and gives a very interesting account of the reigns of Richard II. and Henry IV. It is believed to be the earliest authority for the statement that the latter monarch died in the Jerusalem Chamber at Westminster.

10. MEMORIALS OF HENRY THE SEVENTH: Bernardi Andreae Tholosatis Vita Regis Henrici Septimi; necnon alia quædam ad eundem Regem spectantia. Edited by JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq. 1858.

The contents of these volumes are—(1) a life of Henry VII., by his poet laureate and historiographer, Bernard André, of Toulouse, with some compositions in verse, of which he is supposed to have been the author; (2) the journals of Roger Machado during certain embassies on which he was sent by Henry VII. to Spain and Brittany, the first of which had reference to the marriage of the King's son, Arthur, with Catharine of Arragon; (3) two curious reports by envoys sent to Spain in the year 1505 touching the succession to the Crown of Castile, and a project of marriage between Henry VII. and the Queen of Naples; and (4) an account of Philip of Castile's reception in England in 1506. Other documents of interest in connexion with the period are given in an appendix.

11. MEMORIALS OF HENRY THE FIFTH. I.—Vita Henrici Quinti, Roberto Redmanno auctore. II.—Versus Rhythmici in laudem Regis Henrici Quinti. III.—Elmhami Liber Metricus de Henrico V. Edited by CHARLES A. COLE, Esq. 1858.

This volume contains three treatises which more or less illustrate the history of the reign of Henry V., viz.: A Life by Robert Redman; a Metrical Chronicle by Thomas Elmham, prior of Lenton, a contemporary author; Versus Rhythmici, written apparently by a monk of Westminster Abbey, who was also a contemporary of Henry V. These works are printed for the first time.

12. MUNIMENTA GILDHALLÆ LONDONIENSIS; Liber Albus, Liber Custumarum, et Liber Horn, in archivis Gildhallæ asservati. Vol. I., Liber Albus. Vol. II. (in Two Parts), Liber Custumarum. Vol. III., Translation of the Anglo-Norman Passages in Liber Albus, Glossaries, Appendices, and Index. Edited by HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., Barrister-at-Law. 1859–1862.

The manuscript of the *Liber Albus*, compiled by John Carpenter, Common Clerk of the City of London in the year 1419, a large folio volume, is preserved in the Record Room of the City of London. It gives an account of the laws, regulations, and institutions of that City in the twelfth, thirteenth, fourteenth, and early part of the fifteenth centuries.

The *Liber Custumarum* was compiled probably by various hands in the early part of the fourteenth century during the reign of Edward II. The manuscript, a folio volume, is also preserved in the Record Room of the City of London, though some portion in its original state, borrowed from the City in the reign of Queen Elizabeth and never returned, forms part of the Cottonian MS. Claudius D. II. in the British Museum. It also gives an account of the laws, regulations, and institutions of the City of London in the twelfth, thirteenth, and early part of the fourteenth centuries.

13. CHRONICA JOHANNIS DE OXENEDES. Edited by Sir HENRY ELLIS, K.H. 1859.

Although this Chronicle tells of the arrival of Hengist and Horsa in England in the year 449, yet it substantially begins with the reign of King Alfred, and

comes down to the year 1292, where it ends abruptly. The history is particularly valuable for notices of events in the eastern portions of the kingdom, which are not to be elsewhere obtained, and some curious facts are mentioned relative to the floods in that part of England, which are confirmed in the Friesland Chronicle of Anthony Heinrich, pastor of the Island of Mohr.

14. A COLLECTION OF POLITICAL POEMS AND SONGS RELATING TO ENGLISH HISTORY, FROM THE ACCESSION OF EDWARD III. TO THE REIGN OF HENRY VIII. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A. 1859-1861.

These Poems are perhaps the most interesting of all the historical writings of the period, though they cannot be relied on for accuracy of statement. They are various in character; some are upon religious subjects, some may be called satires, and some give no more than a court scandal; but as a whole they present a very fair picture of society, and of the relations of the different classes to one another. The period comprised is in itself interesting, and brings us, through the decline of the feudal system, to the beginning of our modern history. The songs in old English are of considerable value to the philologist.

15. The "OPUS TERTIUM," "OPUS MINUS," &c., of ROGER BACON. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. 1859.

This is the celebrated treatise—never before printed—so frequently referred to by the great philosopher in his works. It contains the fullest details we possess of the life and labours of Roger Bacon: also a fragment by the same author, supposed to be unique, the "*Compendium Studii Theologie*."

16. BARTHOLOMÆI DE COTTON, MONACHI NORWICENSIS, HISTORIA ANGLICANA; 449-1298: necnon ejusdem Liber de Archiepiscopis et Episcopis Angliæ. *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1859.

The author, a monk of Norwich, has here given us a Chronicle of England from the arrival of the Saxons in 449 to the year 1298, in or about which year it appears that he died. The latter portion of this history (the whole of the reign of Edward I. more especially) is of great value, as the writer was contemporary with the events which he records. An Appendix contains several illustrative documents connected with the previous narrative.

17. BRUT Y TYWYSOGION; or, The Chronicle of the Princes of Wales. *Edited by* the Rev. JOHN WILLIAMS AB ITHEL, M.A. 1860.

This work, also known as "The Chronicle of the Princes of Wales," has been attributed to Caradoc of Llancarvan, who flourished about the middle of the twelfth century. It is written in the ancient Welsh language, begins with the abdication and death of Caedwala at Rome, in the year 681, and continues the history down to the subjugation of Wales by Edward I., about the year 1282.

18. A COLLECTION OF ROYAL AND HISTORICAL LETTERS DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY IV. 1399-1404. *Edited by* the Rev. F. C. HINGESTON, M.A., of Exeter College, Oxford. 1860.

This volume, like all the others in the series containing a miscellaneous selection of letters, is valuable on account of the light it throws upon biographical history, and the familiar view it presents of characters, manners, and events. The period requires much elucidation; to which it will materially contribute.

19. THE REPRESSOR OF OVER MUCH BLAMING OF THE CLERGY. By REGINALD PECOCK, sometime Bishop of Chichester. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1860.

The "Repressor" may be considered the earliest piece of good theological disquisition of which our English prose literature can boast. The author was born

about the end of the fourteenth century, consecrated Bishop of St. Asaph in the year 1444, and translated to the see of Chichester in 1450. While Bishop of St. Asaph, he zealously defended his brother prelates from the attacks of those who censured the bishops for their neglect of duty. He maintained that it was no part of a bishop's functions to appear in the pulpit, and that his time might be more profitably spent, and his dignity better maintained, in the performance of works of a higher character. Among those who thought differently were the Lollards, and against their general doctrines the "Repressor" is directed. Peacock took up a position midway between that of the Roman Church and that of the modern Anglican Church; but his work is interesting chiefly because it gives a full account of the views of the Lollards and of the arguments by which they were supported, and because it assists us to ascertain the state of feeling which ultimately led to the Reformation. Apart from religious matters, the light thrown upon contemporaneous history is very small, but the "Repressor" has great value for the philologist, as it tells us what were the characteristics of the language in use among the cultivated Englishmen of the fifteenth century. Peacock, though an opponent of the Lollards, showed a certain spirit of toleration, for which he received, towards the end of his life, the usual mediæval reward—persecution.

20. *ANNALES CAMBRÆ. Edited by the Rev. JOHN WILLIAMS AB ITHEL, M.A. 1860.*

These annals, which are in Latin, commence in the year 447, and come down to the year 1288. The earlier portion appears to be taken from an Irish Chronicle, which was also used by Tigernach, and by the compiler of the Annals of Ulster. During its first century it contains scarcely anything relating to Britain, the earliest direct concurrence with English history is relative to the mission of Augustine. Its notices throughout though brief, are valuable. The annals were probably written at St. Davids, by Blegewryd, Archdeacon of Llandaff, the most learned man in his day in all Cymru.

21. *THE WORKS OF GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS. Vols. I., II., and III. Edited by J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vols. V. and VI. Edited by the Rev. JAMES F. DIMOCK, M.A., Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire. 1861-1868.*

The first three volumes contain the historical works of Gerald du Barry, who lived in the reigns of Henry II., Richard I., and John, and attempted to re-establish the independence of Wales by restoring the see of St. Davids to its ancient primacy. His works are of a very miscellaneous nature, both in prose and verse, and are remarkable chiefly for the racy and original anecdotes which they contain relating to contemporaries. He is the only Welsh writer of any importance who has contributed so much to the mediæval literature of this country, or assumed, in consequence of his nationality, so free and independent a tone. His frequent travels in Italy, in France, in Ireland, and in Wales, gave him opportunities for observation which did not generally fall to the lot of mediæval writers in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, and of these observations Giraldus has made due use. Only extracts from these treatises have been printed before, and almost all of them are taken from unique manuscripts.

The *Topographia Hibernica* (in Vol. V.) is the result of Giraldus' two visits to Ireland. The first in the year 1183, the second in 1185-6, when he accompanied Prince John into that country. Curious as this treatise is, Mr. Dimock is of opinion that it ought not to be accepted as sober truthful history, for Giraldus himself states that truth was not his main object, and that he compiled the work for the purpose of sounding the praises of Henry the Second. Elsewhere, however, he declares that he had stated nothing in the *Topographia* of the truth of which he was not well assured, either by his own eyesight or by the testimony, with all diligence elicited, of the most trustworthy and authentic men in the country; that though he did not put just the same full faith in their reports as in what he had himself seen, yet, as they only related what they had themselves seen, he could not but believe such credible witnesses. A very interesting portion of this treatise is devoted to the animals of Ireland. It shows that he was a very accurate and acute observer, and his descriptions are given in a way that a scientific naturalist of the present day could hardly improve upon. The *Expugnatio Hibernica* was written about the year 1188, and may be regarded rather

as a great epic than a sober relation of facts occurring in his own days. No one can peruse it without coming to the conclusion that it is rather a poetical fiction than a prosaic truthful history.

Vol. VI. contains the *Itinerarium Kambriæ et Descriptio Kambriæ*.

22. **LETTERS AND PAPERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE WARS OF THE ENGLISH IN FRANCE DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY THE SIXTH, KING OF ENGLAND.** Vol. I., and Vol. II. (in Two Parts). *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham, and Vicar of Leighton Buzzard. 1861-1864.

The letters and papers contained in these volumes are derived chiefly from originals or contemporary copies extant in the Bibliothèque Impériale, and the Dépôt des Archives, in Paris. They illustrate the line of policy adopted by John Duke of Bedford and his successors during their government of Normandy, and such other provinces of France as had been acquired by Henry V. We may here trace, step by step, the gradual declension of the English power, until we are prepared to read of its final overthrow.

23. **THE ANGLO-SAXON CHRONICLE, ACCORDING TO THE SEVERAL ORIGINAL AUTHORITIES.** Vol. I., Original Texts. Vol. II., Translation. *Edited and translated by* BENJAMIN THORPE, Esq., Member of the Royal Academy of Sciences at Munich, and of the Society of Netherlandish Literature at Leyden. 1861.

This Chronicle, extending from the earliest history of Britain to the year 1154, is justly the boast of England; for no other nation can produce any history, written in its own vernacular, at all approaching it, either in antiquity, truthfulness, or extent, the historical books of the Bible alone excepted. There are at present six independent manuscripts of the Saxon Chronicle, ending in different years, and written in different parts of the country. In the present edition, the text of each manuscript is printed in columns on the same page, so that the student may see at a glance the various changes which occur in orthography, whether arising from locality or age.

24. **LETTERS AND PAPERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE REIGNS OF RICHARD III. AND HENRY VII.** Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* JAMES GAIRDNER, Esq. 1861-1863.

The Papers are derived from MSS. in the Public Record Office, the British Museum, and other repositories. The period to which they refer is unusually destitute of chronicles and other sources of historical information, so that the light obtained from these documents is of special importance. The principal contents of the volumes are some diplomatic Papers of Richard III.; correspondence between Henry VII. and Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain; documents relating to Edmund de la Pole, Earl of Suffolk; and a portion of the correspondence of James IV. of Scotland.

25. **LETTERS OF BISHOP GROSSETESTE, illustrative of the Social Condition of his Time.** *Edited by* HENRY RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1861.

The Letters of Robert Grosseteste (131 in number) are here collected from various sources, and a large portion of them is printed for the first time. They range in date from about 1210 to 1253, and relate to various matters connected not only with the political history of England during the reign of Henry III., but with its ecclesiastical condition. They refer especially to the diocese of Lincoln, of which Grosseteste was bishop.

26. **DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF MANUSCRIPTS RELATING TO THE HISTORY OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.** Vol. I. (in Two Parts); Anterior to the Norman Invasion. Vol. II.; 1066-1200. *By* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records. 1862-1865.

The object of this work is to publish notices of all known sources of British history, both printed and unprinted, in one continued sequence. The materials,

when historical (as distinguished from biographical), are arranged under the year in which the latest event is recorded in the chronicle or history, and not under the period in which its author, real or supposed, flourished. Biographies are enumerated under the year in which the person commemorated died, and not under the year in which the life was written. This arrangement has two advantages: the materials for any given period may be seen at a glance; and if the reader knows the time when an author wrote, and the number of years that had elapsed between the date of the events and the time the writer flourished, he will generally be enabled to form a fair estimate of the comparative value of the narrative itself. A brief analysis of each work has been added when deserving it, in which the original portions are distinguished from those which are mere compilations. When possible, the sources are indicated from which such compilations have been derived. A biographical sketch of the author of each piece has been added, and a brief notice has also been given of such British authors as have written on historical subjects.

27. **ROYAL AND OTHER HISTORICAL LETTERS ILLUSTRATIVE OF THE REIGN OF HENRY III.** From the Originals in the Public Record Office. Vol. I., 1216-1235. Vol. II., 1236-1272. *Selected and edited by* the Rev. W. W. SHIRLEY, D.D., Regius Professor in Ecclesiastical History, and Canon of Christ Church, Oxford. 1862-1866.

The letters contained in these volumes are derived chiefly from the ancient correspondence formerly in the Tower of London, and now in the Public Record Office. They illustrate the political history of England during the growth of its liberties, and throw considerable light upon the personal history of Simon de Montfort. The affairs of France form the subject of many of them, especially in regard to the province of Gascony. The entire collection consists of nearly 700 documents, the greater portion of which is printed for the first time.

28. **CHRONICA MONASTERII S. ALBANI. — 1. THOMÆ WALSINGHAM HISTORIA ANGLICANA; Vol. I., 1272-1381; Vol. II., 1381-1422. 2. WILLELMI RISHANGER CHRONICA ET ANNALES, 1259-1307. 3. JOHANNIS DE TROKELowe ET HENRICI DE BLANEFORDE CHRONICA ET ANNALES, 1259-1296; 1307-1324; 1392-1406. 4. GESTA ABBATUM MONASTERII S. ALBANI, A THOMA WALSINGHAM, REGNANTE RICARDO SECUNDO, EJUSDEM ECCLESIE PRÆCENTORE, COMPILATA; Vol. I., 793-1290; Vol. II., 1290-1349. Edited by** HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge; and of the Inner Temple, Barrister-at-Law. 1868-1867.

In the first two volumes is a history of England, from the death of Henry III. to the death of Henry V., written by Thomas Walsingham, precentor of St. Albans and prior of the Cell of Wymundham, belonging to that abbey. Walsingham's work is printed from MS. VII. in the Arundel Collection in the College of Arms, London, a manuscript of the fifteenth century, collated with MS. 13 E. IX. in the King's Library in the British Museum, and MS. VII. in the Parker Collection of Manuscripts at Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.

In the third volume is a Chronicle of English History, from 1259 to 1306, attributed to William Rishanger, monk of Saint Albans, who lived in the reign of Edward I., printed from the Cottonian Manuscript, Faustina B. IX. (of the fourteenth century) in the British Museum, collated with MS. 14 C. VII. (fols. 219-231) in the King's Library, British Museum, and the Cottonian Manuscript Claudius E. III., fols. 306-331: Also an account of transactions attending the award of the kingdom of Scotland to John Balliol by King Edward I., 1291-1292, from MS. Cotton. Claudius, D. VI., attributed to William Rishanger above mentioned, but on no sufficient ground: A short Chronicle of English History, from 1292 to 1300, by an unknown hand, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI.: A short Chronicle from 1297 to 1307, Willelmi Rishanger Gesta Edwardi Primi Regis Angliæ, from MS. 14 C. I. in the Royal Library, and MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI., with an addition of Annales Regum Angliæ, probably by the same hand: A fragment of a Chronicle of English History, 1299, 1300, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI.: A fragment of a Chronicle of English History,

1295 to 1300, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI. : and a fragment of a Chronicle of English History, 1285 to 1307, from MS. 14 C. I. in the Royal Library.

In the fourth volume is a Chronicle of English History, by an anonymous writer, 1259 to 1296, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI. : Also Annals of King Edward II., 1307 to 1323, by John de Trokelowe, a monk of St. Albans, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI. : A continuation of Trokelowe's Annals, 1323, 1324, by Henricus de Blancorde, from MS. Cotton. Claudius D. VI. : Also a full Chronicle of English History, by an anonymous writer of St. Albans, 1392 to 1406, from MS. VII. in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge : and an account of the past benefactors of St. Albans, written in the early part of the fifteenth century, from MS. VI. in the Library of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge.

In the fifth volume begins a history of the abbots of St. Albans, from 793 to the close of the fourteenth century, compiled by Thomas Walsingham, præcentor of St. Albans, from MS. Cotton. Claudius E. IV., in the British Museum. This is continued in the sixth volume.

29. *CHRONICON ABBATIÆ EVESHAMENSIS, AUCTORIBUS DOMINICO PRIORE EVESHAMLE ET THOMA DE MARLEBERGE ABBATE, A FUNDATIONE AD ANNUM 1213, UNA CUM CONTINUATIONE AD ANNUM 1418.* Edited by the Rev. W. D. MACRAY, M.A., Bodleian Library, Oxford. 1863.

The Chronicle of Evesham illustrates the history of that important monastery from its foundation by Egwin, about 690, to the year 1418. Its chief feature is an autobiography, which makes us acquainted with the inner daily life of a great abbey, such as but rarely has been recorded. Interspersed are many notices of general, personal, and local history which will be read with much interest. This work exists in a single MS., and is for the first time printed.

30. *RICARDI DE CIRENCESTRIA SPECULUM HISTORIALE DE GESTIS REGUM ANGLIÆ.* Vol. I., 447-871. Edited by JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1863.

Of the compiler of this work, which is in four parts, very little is known. In the prologue he calls himself Richard, a monk of Westminster, and at the end of the first part, Richard of Cirencester, a monk of St. Peter's, Westminster. One volume only, containing the first three books, has been published, the remainder is in the press, and will shortly appear. There is a continuation of the work down to the year 1348, which in due time will also be printed.

31. *YEAR BOOKS OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD THE FIRST.* Years 20-21, 30-31, and 32-33. Edited and translated by ALFRED JOHN HORWOOD, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law. 1863-1866.

The volumes known as the "Year Books" contain reports in Norman-French of cases argued and decided in the Courts of Common Law. They may be considered to a great extent as the "lex non scripta" of England, and have been held in the highest veneration by the ancient sages of the law, and were received by them as the repositories of the first recorded judgments and dicta of the great legal luminaries of past ages. They are also worthy of the attention of the general reader on account of the historical information and the notices of public and private persons which they contain, as well as the light which they throw on ancient manners and customs.

32. *NARRATIVES OF THE EXPULSION OF THE ENGLISH FROM NORMANDY ; 1449-1450.—Robertus Blondelli de Reductione Normanniæ : Le Recouvrement de Normendie, par Berry, Hérault du Roy : Conférences between the Ambassadors of France and England.* Edited, from MSS. in the Imperial Library at Paris, by the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham. 1863.

This volume contains the narrative of an eye-witness who details with considerable power and minuteness the circumstances which attended the final expulsion of the English from Normandy in the year 1450. The history commences

with the infringement of the truce by the capture of Fougères, and ends with the battle of Formigny and the embarkation of the Duke of Somerset. The whole period embraced is less than two years.

33. *HISTORIA ET CARTULARIUM MONASTERII S. PETRI GLOUCESTRÆ*. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* W. H. HART, Esq., F.S.A., Membre correspondant de la Société des Antiquaires de Normandie. 1863-1867.

This work consists of two parts, the History and the Cartulary of the Monastery of St. Peter, Gloucester. The history furnishes an account of the monastery from its foundation, in the year 681, to the early part of the reign of Richard II., together with a calendar of donations and benefactions. It treats principally of the affairs of the monastery, but occasionally matters of general history are introduced. Its authorship has generally been assigned to Walter Froucester, the twentieth abbot, but without any foundation.

34. *ALEXANDRI NECKAM DE NATURIS RERUM LIBRI DUO ; with NECKAM'S POEM, DE LAUDIBUS DIVINÆ SAPIENTIÆ*. *Edited by* THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A. 1863.

Neckam was a man who devoted himself to science, such as it was in the twelfth century.

In the "De Naturis Rerum" are to be found what may be called the rudiments of many sciences mixed up with much error and ignorance. Neckam was not thought infallible, even by his contemporaries, for Roger Bacon remarks of him, "this Alexander in many things wrote what was true and useful; but he neither can nor ought by just title to be reckoned among authorities."

Neckam, however, had sufficient independence of thought to differ from some of the schoolmen who in his time considered themselves the only judges of literature. He had his own views in morals, and in giving us a glimpse of them, as well as of his other opinions, he throws much light upon the manners, customs, and general tone of thought prevalent in the twelfth century.

The poem entitled "De Laudibus Divinæ Sapientiæ" appears to be a metrical paraphrase or abridgment of the "De Naturis Rerum." It is written in the elegiac metre; and though there are in it many lines which violate classical rules, it is, as a whole, above the ordinary standard of mediæval Latin.

35. *LEECHDOMS, WORTCUNNING, AND STARCRAFT OF EARLY ENGLAND ; being a Collection of Documents illustrating the History of Science in this Country before the Norman Conquest*. Vols. I., II., and III. *Collected and edited by* the Rev. T. OSWALD COCKAYNE, M.A., of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1864-1866.

This work illustrates not only the history of science, but the history of superstition. In addition to the information bearing directly upon the medical skill and medical faith of the times, there are many passages which incidentally throw light upon the general mode of life and ordinary diet. The volumes are interesting not only in their scientific, but also in their social aspect. The manuscripts from which they have been printed are valuable to the Anglo-Saxon scholar for the illustrations they afford of Anglo-Saxon orthography.

36. *ANNALES MONASTICI*. Vol. I. :—*Annales de Margan, 1066-1232 ; Annales de Theokesberia, 1066-1263 ; Annales de Burton, 1004-1263*. Vol. II. :—*Annales Monasterii de Wintonia, 519-1277 ; Annales Monasterii de Waverleia, 1-1291*. Vol. III. :—*Annales Prioratus de Duns-taplia, 1-1297 ; Annales Monasterii de Bermundeseia, 1042-1432*. Vol. IV. :—*Annales Monasterii de Oseneia, 1016-1347 ; Chronicon vulgo dictum Chronicon Thomæ Wykes, 1066-1289 ; Annales Prioratus de Wigornia, 1-1377*. Vol. V. :—*Index and Glossary*. *Edited by* HENRY

RICHARDS LUARD, M.A., Fellow and Assistant Tutor of Trinity College, and Registrar of the University, Cambridge. 1864-1869.

The present collection of Monastic Annals embraces all the more important chronicles compiled in religious houses in England during the thirteenth century. These distinct works are seven in number. The extreme period which they embrace ranges from the year 1 to 1432, although they refer more especially to the reigns of John, Henry III., and Edward I. Some of these narratives have already appeared in print, but others are printed for the first time.

37. *MAGNA VITA S. HUGONIS EPISCOPI LINCOLNIENSIS*. From Manuscripts in the Bodleian Library, Oxford, and the Imperial Library, Paris. *Edited by* the Rev. JAMES F. DIMOCK, M.A., Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire. 1864.

This work contains a number of very curious and interesting incidents, and, being the work of a contemporary, is very valuable, not only as a truthful biography of a celebrated ecclesiastic, but as the work of a man, who, from personal knowledge, gives notices of passing events, as well as of individuals who were then taking active part in public affairs. The author, in all probability, was Adam Abbot of Evesham. He was domestic chaplain and private confessor of Bishop Hugh, and in these capacities he was admitted to the closest intimacy. Bishop Hugh was Prior of Witham for 11 years before he became Bishop of Lincoln. His consecration took place on the 21st September 1186; he died on the 16th of November 1200; and was canonized in 1220.

38. *CHRONICLES AND MEMORIALS OF THE REIGN OF RICHARD THE FIRST*. Vol. I. :—*ITINERARIUM PEREGRINORUM ET GESTA REGIS RICARDI*. Vol. II. :—*EPISTOLÆ CANTUARIENSES*; the Letters of the Prior and Convent of Christ Church, Canterbury; 1187 to 1199. *Edited by* WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Vicar of Navestock, Essex, and Lambeth Librarian. 1864-1865.

The authorship of the Chronicle in Vol. I., hitherto ascribed to Geoffrey Vinesauf, is now more correctly ascribed to Richard, Canon of the Holy Trinity of London. The narrative extends from 1187 to 1199; but its chief interest consists in the minute and authentic narrative which it furnishes of the exploits of Richard I., from his departure from England in December 1189 to his death in 1199. The author states in his prologue that he was an eye-witness of much that he records; and various incidental circumstances which occur in the course of the narrative confirm this assertion.

The letters in Vol. II., written between 1187 and 1199, are of value as furnishing authentic materials for the history of the ecclesiastical condition of England during the reign of Richard I. They had their origin in a dispute which arose from the attempts of Baldwin and Hubert, archbishops of Canterbury, to found a college of secular canons, a project which gave great umbrage to the monks of Canterbury, who saw in it a design to supplant them in their function of metropolitan chapter. These letters are printed, for the first time, from a MS. belonging to the archiepiscopal library at Lambeth.

39. *RECUEIL DES CRONIQUES ET ANCHIENNES ISTORIES DE LA GRANT BRETAGNE A PRESENT NOMME ENGLETERRE*, par JEHAN DE WAURIN. Vol. I., Albina to 688. Vol. II., 1399-1422. *Edited by* WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A. 1864-1868.
40. *A COLLECTION OF THE CHRONICLES AND ANCIENT HISTORIES OF GREAT BRITAIN, NOW CALLED ENGLAND*, by JOHN DE WAURIN. Albina to 688. (Translation of the preceding Vol. I.) *Edited and translated by* WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A. 1864.

This curious chronicle extends from the fabulous period of history down to the return of Edward IV. to England in the year 1471, after the second deposition of

Henry VI. The manuscript from which the text of the work is taken is preserved in the Imperial Library at Paris, and is believed to be the only complete and nearly contemporary copy in existence. The work, as originally bound, was comprised in six volumes, since rebound in morocco in 12 volumes, folio maximo, vellum, and is illustrated with exquisite miniatures, vignettes, and initial letters. It was written towards the end of the fifteenth century, having been expressly executed for Louis de Bruges, Seigneur de la Gruthuyse and Earl of Winchester, from whose cabinet it passed into the library of Louis XII. at Blois.

41. **POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN**, with Trevisa's Translation. Vols. I. and II. *Edited by* CHURCHILL BABINGTON, B.D., Senior Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. 1865-1869.

This is one of the many mediæval chronicles which assume the character of a history of the world. It begins with the creation, and is brought down to the author's own time, the reign of Edward III. Prefixed to the historical portion, is a chapter devoted to geography, in which is given a description of every known land. To say that the Polychronicon was written in the fourteenth century is to say that it is not free from inaccuracies. It has, however, a value apart from its intrinsic merits. It enables us to form a very fair estimate of the knowledge of history and geography which well-informed readers of the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries possessed, for it was then the standard work on general history.

The two English translations, which are printed with the original Latin, afford interesting illustrations of the gradual change of our language, for one was made in the fourteenth century, the other in the fifteenth. The differences between Trevisa's version and that of the unknown writer are often considerable.

42. **LE LIVRE DE REIS DE BRITANIE E LE LIVRE DE REIS DE ENGLETERE**. *Edited by* JOHN GLOVER, M.A., Vicar of Brading, Isle of Wight, formerly Librarian of Trinity College, Cambridge. 1865.

These two treatises, though they cannot rank as independent narratives, are nevertheless valuable as careful abstracts of previous historians, especially "Le Livre de Reis de Engleterre." Some various readings are given which are interesting to the philologist as instances of semi-Saxonized French.

It is supposed that Peter of Ickham must have been the author, but no certain conclusion on that point has been arrived at.

43. **CHRONICA MONASTERII DE MELSA, AB ANNO 1150 USQUE AD ANNUM 1406**. Vols. I., II., and III. *Edited by* EDWARD AUGUSTUS BOND, Esq., Assistant Keeper of the Manuscripts, and Egerton Librarian, British Museum. 1866-1868.

The Abbey of Meaux was a Cistercian house, and the work of its abbot is both curious and valuable. It is a faithful and often minute record of the establishment of a religious community, of its progress in forming an ample revenue, of its struggles to maintain its acquisitions, and of its relations to the governing institutions of the country. In addition to the private affairs of the monastery, some light is thrown upon the public events of the time, which are however kept distinct, and appear at the end of the history of each abbot's administration. The text has been printed from what is said to be the autograph of the original compiler, Thomas de Burton, the nineteenth abbot.

44. **MATTHÆI PARISIENSIS HISTORIA ANGLORUM, SIVE, UT VULGO DICITUR, HISTORIA MINOR**. Vols. I., II., and III. 1067-1245. *Edited by* Sir FREDERIC MADDEN, K.H., Keeper of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum. 1866-1869.

The exact date at which this work was written is, according to the chronicler, 1250. The history is of considerable value as an illustration of the period during which the author lived, and contains a good summary of the events which followed the Conquest. This minor chronicle is, however, based on another work (also written by Matthew Paris) giving fuller details, which has been called the 'Historia Major.' The chronicle here published, nevertheless, gives some information not to be found in the greater history.

45. **LIBER MONASTERII DE HYDA: A CHRONICLE AND CHARTULARY OF HYDE ABBEY, WINCHESTER, 455-1023.** *Edited, from a Manuscript in the Library of the Earl of Macclesfield, by EDWARD EDWARDS, Esq.* 1866.

The "Book of Hyde" is a compilation from much earlier sources, which are usually indicated with considerable care and precision. In many cases, however, the Hyde chronicler appears to correct, to qualify, or to amplify—either from tradition or from sources of information not now discoverable—the statements which, in substance, he adopts. He also mentions, and frequently quotes from, writers whose works are either entirely lost or at present known only by fragments.

There is to be found, in the "Book of Hyde," much information relating to the reign of King Alfred which is not known to exist elsewhere. The volume contains some curious specimens of Anglo-Saxon and Mediæval English.

46. **CHRONICON SCOTORUM: A CHRONICLE OF IRISH AFFAIRS, from the EARLIEST TIMES to 1135; with a SUPPLEMENT, containing the Events from 1141 to 1150.** *Edited, with a Translation, by WILLIAM MAUNSELL HENNESSY, Esq., M.R.I.A.* 1866.

There is, in this volume, a legendary account of the peopling of Ireland and of the adventures which befell the various heroes who are said to have been connected with Irish history. The details are, however, very meagre both for this period and for the time when history becomes more authentic. The plan adopted in the chronicle gives the appearance of an accuracy to which the earlier portions of the work cannot have any claim. The succession of events is marked, year by year, from A.M. 1599 to A.D. 1150. The principal events narrated in the later portion of the work are the invasions of foreigners and the wars of the Irish among themselves. The text has been printed from a MS. preserved in the library of Trinity College, Dublin, written partly in Latin, partly in Irish.

47. **THE CHRONICLE OF PIERRE DE LANGTOFT, IN FRENCH VERSE, FROM THE EARLIEST PERIOD TO THE DEATH OF EDWARD I.** Vols. I. and II. *Edited by THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A.* 1866-1868.

It is probable that Pierre de Langtoft was a canon of Bridlington, in Yorkshire, and that he lived in the reign of Edward I., and during a portion of the reign of Edward II. This chronicle is divided into three parts; in the first is an abridgment of Geoffrey of Monmouth's "Historia Britonum," in the second, a history of the Anglo-Saxon and Norman kings, down to the death of Henry III., and in the third a history of the reign of Edward I. The principal object of the work was apparently to show the justice of Edward's Scottish wars. The language is singularly corrupt, and a curious specimen of the French of Yorkshire.

48. **THE WAR OF THE GAEDHIL WITH THE GAILL, OR, THE INVASIONS OF IRELAND BY THE DANES AND OTHER NORSEMEN.** *Edited, with a Translation, by JAMES HENTHORN TODD, D.D., Senior Fellow of Trinity College, and Regius Professor of Hebrew in the University, Dublin.* 1867.

The work in its present form, in the editor's opinion, is a comparatively modern version of an undoubtedly ancient original. That it was compiled from contemporary materials has been proved by curious incidental evidence. It is stated in the account given of the battle of Clontarf that the full tide in Dublin Bay on the day of the battle (23 April 1014) coincided with sunrise; and that the returning tide in the evening aided considerably in the defeat of the Danes. The fact has been verified by astronomical calculations, and the inference is that the author of the chronicle, if not himself an eye-witness, must have derived his information from those who were eye-witnesses. The contents of the work are sufficiently described in its title. The story is told after the manner of the Scandinavian Sagas, with poems and fragments of poems introduced into the prose narrative.

49. *GESTA REGIS HENRICI SECUNDI BENEDICTI ABBATIS. THE CHRONICLE OF THE REIGNS OF HENRY II. AND RICHARD I., 1169-1192 ; known under the name of BENEDICT OF PETERBOROUGH. Vols. I. and II. Edited by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, Oxford, and Lambeth Librarian. 1867.*

This, a chronicle of the reigns of Henry II. and Richard I., known commonly under the name of Benedict of Peterborough, is one of the best existing specimens of a class of historical compositions of the first importance to the student.

50. *MUNIMENTA ACADEMICA, OR, DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ACADEMICAL LIFE AND STUDIES AT OXFORD (in Two Parts). Edited by the Rev. HENRY ANSTEY, M.A., Vicar of St. Wendron, Cornwall, and lately Vice-Principal of St. Mary Hall, Oxford. 1868.*

The purpose of this work is to supply materials for a History of Academical Life and Studies in the University of Oxford during the 13th, 14th, and 15th centuries.

51. *CHRONICA MAGISTRI ROGERI DE HOVEDENE. Vols. I. and II. Edited by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 1868-1869.*

This work has long been justly celebrated, but not thoroughly understood until Mr. Stubbs' edition. The earlier portion, extending from 732 to 1148, appears to be a copy of a compilation made in Northumbria about 1161, to which Hoveden added little. From 1148 to 1169—a very valuable portion of this work—the matter is derived from another source, to which Hoveden appears to have supplied little, and not always judiciously. From 1170 to 1192 is the portion which corresponds with the Chronicle known under the name of Benedict of Peterborough (*see* No. 49); but it is not a copy, being sometimes an abridgment, at others a paraphrase; occasionally the two works entirely agree, showing that both writers had access to the same materials, but dealt with them differently. From 1192 to 1201 may be said to be wholly Hoveden's work; it is extremely valuable, and an authority of the first importance.

In the Press.

- A COLLECTION OF SAGAS AND OTHER HISTORICAL DOCUMENTS relating to the Settlements and Descents of the Northmen on the British Isles. *Edited by* GEORGE WEBBE DASENT, Esq., D.C.L., Oxon.
- OFFICIAL CORRESPONDENCE OF THOMAS BEKYNTON, SECRETARY TO HENRY VI., with other LETTERS and DOCUMENTS. *Edited by* the Rev. GEORGE WILLIAMS, B.D., Senior Fellow of King's College, Cambridge.
- ROLL OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF IRELAND, 16 RICHARD II. *Edited by* the Rev. JAMES GRAVES, A.B., Treasurer of St. Canice, Ireland.
- RICARDI DE CIRENCESTRIA SPECULUM HISTORIALE DE GESTIS REGUM ANGLIÆ. Vol. II., 872-1066. *Edited by* JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge.
- THE WORKS OF GIRALDUS CAMBRENSIS. Vol. IV. *Edited by* J. S. BREWER, M.A., Professor of English Literature, King's College, London. Vol. VII. *Edited by* the Rev. JAMES F. DIMOCK, M.A., Rector of Barnburgh, Yorkshire.
- CHRONICON RADULPHI ABBATIS COGGESHALENSIS MAJUS; and, CHRONICON TERRÆ SANCTÆ ET DE CAPTIS A SALADINO HIÆROSOLYMIS. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH STEVENSON, M.A., of University College, Durham.
- POLYCHRONICON RANULPHI HIGDEN, with Trevisa's Translation. Vol. III. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH RAWSON LUMBY, M.A., of Magdalene College, Cambridge.
- ITER BRITANNIARUM: THE PORTION OF THE ANTONINE ITINERARY OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE RELATING TO GREAT BRITAIN. *Edited by* WILLIAM HENRY BLACK, Esq., F.S.A.
- WILLELMI MALMESBIRIENSIS DE GESTIS PONTIFICUM ANGLORUM LIBRI V. *Edited, from William of Malmesbury's Autograph MS., by* N. E. S. A. HAMILTON, Esq., of the Department of Manuscripts, British Museum.
- YEAR BOOKS OF THE REIGN OF EDWARD THE FIRST. Years 21-22. *Edited and translated by* ALFRED JOHN HORWOOD, Esq., of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law.
- HISTORICAL MUNIMENTS IN THE ARCHIVES OF THE CITY OF DUBLIN. *Edited by* JOHN T. GILBERT, Esq., M.R.I.A., Secretary of the Public Record Office of Ireland.
- THE ANNALS OF LOCH CÉ. *Edited by* WILLIAM MAUNSELL HENNESSY, Esq., M.R.I.A.
- CHRONICLE OF ROBERT OF BRUNNE. *Edited by* FREDERICK JAMES FURNIVALL, Esq., M.A., of Trinity Hall, Cambridge, Barrister-at-Law.

CHRONICA MONASTERII S. ALBANI.—4. GESTA ABBATUM MONASTERII S. ALBANI, A THOMA WALSINGHAM, REGNANTE RICARDO SECUNDO, EJUSDEM ECCLESIE PRÆCENTORE, COMPILATA. Vol. III. *Edited by* HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge; and of the Inner Temple, Barrister-at-Law.

DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF MANUSCRIPTS RELATING TO THE HISTORY OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND. Vol. III.; 1201, &c. *By* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq., Deputy Keeper of the Public Records.

In Progress.

DOCUMENTS RELATING TO ENGLAND AND SCOTLAND, FROM THE NORTHERN REGISTERS. *Edited by* the Rev. JAMES RAINE, M.A., Canon of York, and late Fellow of the University, Durham.

LIBER NIGER ADMIRALITATIS. *Edited by* Sir TRAVERS TWISS, D.C.L., Queen's Advocate-General.

THE METRICAL CHRONICLE OF ROBERT OF GLOUCESTER. *Edited by* WILLIAM ALDIS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A., Librarian of Trinity College, Cambridge.

ORIGINAL LETTERS AND DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF GENERAL AND DOMESTIC HISTORY. *Edited by* the Rev. WILLIAM CAMPBELL, M.A.

RECUEIL DES CRONIQUES ET ANCHIENNES ISTORIES DE LA GRANT BRETAGNE A PRESENT NOMME ENGLETERRE, par JEHAN DE WAURIN. Vol. III. *Edited by* WILLIAM HARDY, Esq., F.S.A.

CHRONICA MONASTERII S. ALBANI.—5. JOHANNIS AMUNDESHAM, MONACHI MONASTERII S. ALBANI, ANNALES. *Edited by* HENRY THOMAS RILEY, Esq., M.A., of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge; and of the Inner Temple, Barrister-at-Law.

CHRONICA MAGISTRI ROGERI DE HOUEDENE. Vol. III. *Edited by* WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History, and Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford.

LIVES OF ARCHBISHOP DUNSTAN. *Edited by* the Rev. JOHN RICHARD GREEN, M.A., Vicar of St. Philip's, Stepney, Middlesex.

THE ANGLO-LATIN SATIRISTS OF THE TWELFTH CENTURY. *Edited by* THOMAS WRIGHT, Esq., M.A.

PUBLICATIONS
OF
THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, &c.

- ROTULORUM ORIGINALIUM IN CURIA SCACCARII ABBREVIATIO. Henry III.—Edward III. *Edited by* HENRY PLAYFORD, Esq. 2 vols. folio (1805—1810). *Price* 25s. boards, or 12s. 6d. each.
- CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM SIVE ESCAETARUM. Henry III.—Richard III. *Edited by* JOHN CALEY and JOHN BAYLEY, Esqrs. Vols. 3 and 4, folio (1821—1828), boards: vol. 3, *price* 21s.; vol. 4, *price* 24s.
- LIBRORUM MANUSCRIPTORUM BIBLIOTHECÆ HARLEIANÆ CATALOGUS. Vol. 4. *Edited by* the Rev. T. HARTWELL HORNE. Folio (1812), boards. *Price* 18s.
- ABBREVIATIO PLACITORUM. Richard I.—Edward II. *Edited by* the Right Hon. GEORGE ROSE and W. ILLINGWORTH, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1811), boards. *Price* 18s.
- LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, INDICES. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. Folio (1816), boards, (Domesday-Book, vol. 3). *Price* 21s.
- LIBRI CENSUALIS vocati DOMESDAY-BOOK, ADDITAMENTA EX CODIC. ANTIQUISS. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. Folio (1816), boards, (Domesday-Book, vol. 4). *Price* 21s.
- STATUTES OF THE REALM. *Edited by* Sir T. E. TOMLINS, JOHN RAITHEY, JOHN CALEY, and WM. ELLIOTT, Esqrs. Vols. 4 (in 2 parts), 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11, including 2 vols. of Indices, large folio (1819—1828). *Price* 31s. 6d. each; except the Alphabetical and Chronological Indices, *price* 30s. each.
- VALOR ECCLESIASTICUS, temp. Hen. VIII., Auctoritate Regia institutus. *Edited by* JOHN CALEY, Esq., and the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. Vols. 3 to 6, folio (1817—1834), boards. *Price* 25s. each.
* * The Introduction, separately, 8vo., cloth. *Price* 2s. 6d.
- ROTULI SCOTIÆ IN TURRI LONDINENSI ET IN DOMO CAPITULARI WESTMONASTERIENSI ASSERVATI. 19 Edward I.—Henry VIII. *Edited by* DAVID MACPHERSON, JOHN CALEY, and W. ILLINGWORTH, Esqrs., and the Rev. T. HARTWELL HORNE. 2 vols. folio (1814—1819), boards. *Price* 42s.
- FÆDERA, CONVENTIONES, LITTERÆ, &c.; or, RYMER'S FÆDERA, New Edition, 1066—1377. Vol. 3, Parts 1 and 2, folio (1825—1830). *Edited by* JOHN CALEY and FRED. HOLBROOKE, Esqrs. *Price* 21s. each Part.

- DUCATUS LANCASTRIÆ CALENDARIUM INQUISITIONUM POST MORTEM, &c. Part 3, Calendar to the Pleadings, &c., Henry VII.—Ph. and Mary; and Calendar to the Pleadings, 1—13 Elizabeth. Part 4, Calendar to the Pleadings to end of Elizabeth. (1827—1834.) *Edited by* R. J. HARPER, JOHN CALEY, and WM. MINCHIN, Esqrs. Folio, boards, Part 3 (or Vol. 2), *price* 31s. 6d.; and Part 4 (or Vol. 3), *price* 21s.
- CALENDARS OF THE PROCEEDINGS IN CHANCERY, IN THE REIGN OF QUEEN ELIZABETH; to which are prefixed, Examples of earlier Proceedings in that Court from Richard II. to Elizabeth, from the Originals in the Tower. *Edited by* JOHN BAYLEY, Esq. Vols. 2 and 3 (1830—1832), folio, boards, *price* 21s. each.
- PARLIAMENTARY WRITS AND WRITS OF MILITARY SUMMONS, together with the Records and Muniments relating to the Suit and Service due and performed to the King's High Court of Parliament and the Councils of the Realm. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. (1830—1834.) Folio, boards, Vol. 2, Division 1, Edward II., *price* 21s.; Vol. 2, Division 2, *price* 21s.; Vol. 2, Division 3, *price* 42s.
- ROTULI LITTERARUM CLAUSARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 2 vols. folio (1833, 1844). Vol. 1, 1204—1224. Vol. 2, 1224—1227. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. *Price* 81s., cloth; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 63s.; Vol. 2, *price* 18s.
- PROCEEDINGS AND ORDINANCES OF THE PRIVY COUNCIL OF ENGLAND. 10 Richard II.—33 Henry VIII. *Edited by* Sir NICHOLAS HARRIS NICOLAS. 7 vols. royal 8vo. (1834—1837), cloth. *Price* 98s.; or separately, 14s. each.
- ROTULI LITTERARUM PATENTIUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 1201—1216. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1835), cloth. *Price* 31s. 6d.
* * The Introduction, separately, 8vo., cloth. *Price* 9s.
- ROTULI CURIÆ REGIS. Rolls and Records of the Court held before the King's Justiciars or Justices. 6 Richard I.—1 John. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 2 vols. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 28s.
- ROTULI NORMANNIÆ IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 1200—1205; also, 1417 to 1418. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 12s. 6d.
- ROTULI DE OBLATIS ET FINIBUS IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI, tempore Regis Johannis. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1835), cloth. *Price* 18s.
- EXCERPTA E ROTULIS FINIUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATIS. Henry III., 1216—1272. *Edited by* CHARLES ROBERTS, Esq. 2 vols. royal 8vo. (1835, 1836), cloth, *price* 32s.; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 14s.; Vol. 2, *price* 18s.
- FINES, SIVE PEDES FINIUM; SIVE FINALES CONCORDIÆ IN CURIÂ DOMINI REGIS. 7 Richard I.—16 John, 1195—1214. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. In Counties. 2 vols. royal 8vo. (1835—1844), cloth, *price* 11s.; or separately, Vol. 1, *price* 8s. 6d.; Vol. 2, *price* 2s. 6d.

- ANCIENT KALENDARS AND INVENTORIES OF THE TREASURY OF HIS MAJESTY'S EXCHEQUER; together with Documents illustrating the History of that Repository. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 3 vols. royal 8vo. (1836), cloth. *Price* 42s.
- DOCUMENTS AND RECORDS illustrating the History of Scotland, and the Transactions between the Crowns of Scotland and England; preserved in the Treasury of Her Majesty's Exchequer. *Edited by* Sir FRANCIS PALGRAVE. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1837), cloth. *Price* 18s.
- ROTULI CHARTARUM IN TURRI LONDINENSI ASSERVATI. 1199—1216. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1837), cloth. *Price* 30s.
- REPORT OF THE PROCEEDINGS OF THE RECORD COMMISSIONERS, 1831—1837. 1 vol. folio (1837), boards. *Price* 8s.
- REGISTRUM vulgariter nuncupatum "The Record of Caernarvon," e codice MS. Harleiano, 696, descriptum. *Edited by* Sir HENRY ELLIS. 1 vol. folio (1838), cloth. *Price* 31s. 6d.
- ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF ENGLAND; comprising Laws enacted under the Anglo-Saxon Kings, from Æthelbirt to Cnut, with an English Translation of the Saxon; the Laws called Edward the Confessor's; the Laws of William the Conqueror, and those ascribed to Henry the First; also, Monumenta Ecclesiastica Anglicana, from the 7th to the 10th century; and the Ancient Latin Version of the Anglo-Saxon Laws; with a compendious Glossary, &c. *Edited by* BENJAMIN THORPE, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1840), cloth. *Price* 40s. Or, 2 vols. royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 30s.
- ANCIENT LAWS AND INSTITUTES OF WALES; comprising Laws supposed to be enacted by Howel the Good; modified by subsequent Regulations under the Native Princes, prior to the Conquest by Edward the First; and anomalous Laws, consisting principally of Institutions which, by the Statute of Ruddlan, were admitted to continue in force. With an English Translation of the Welsh Text. To which are added, a few Latin Transcripts, containing Digests of the Welsh Laws, principally of the Dimetian Code. With Indices and Glossary. *Edited by* ANEURIN OWEN, Esq. 1 vol. folio (1841), cloth. *Price* 44s. Or, 2 vols. royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 36s.
- ROTULI DE LIBERATE AC DE MISIS ET PRÆSTITIS, Regnante Johanne. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 6s.
- THE GREAT ROLLS OF THE PIPE FOR THE SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH YEARS OF THE REIGN OF KING HENRY THE SECOND, 1155—1158. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 4s. 6d.
- THE GREAT ROLL OF THE PIPE FOR THE FIRST YEAR OF THE REIGN OF KING RICHARD THE FIRST, 1189—1190. *Edited by* the Rev. JOSEPH HUNTER. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1844), cloth. *Price* 6s.

- DOCUMENTS ILLUSTRATIVE OF ENGLISH HISTORY in the 13th and 14th centuries, selected from the Records of the Department of the Queen's Remembrancer in the Exchequer. *Edited by* HENRY COLE, Esq. 1 vol. fcp. folio (1844), cloth. *Price* 45s. 6d.
- MODUS TENENDI PARLIAMENTUM. An Ancient Treatise on the Mode of holding the Parliament in England. *Edited by* THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq. 1 vol. 8vo. (1846), cloth. *Price* 2s. 6d.
- MONUMENTA HISTORICA BRITANNICA, or, Materials for the History of Britain from the earliest period. Vol. 1, extending to the Norman Conquest. Prepared, and illustrated with Notes, by the late HENRY PETRIE, Esq., F.S.A., Keeper of the Records in the Tower of London, assisted by the Rev. JOHN SHARPE, Rector of Castle Eaton, Wilts. Finally completed for publication, and with an Introduction, by THOMAS DUFFUS HARDY, Esq., Assistant Keeper of Records. (Printed by command of Her Majesty.) Folio (1848). *Price* 42s.
- REGISTRUM MAGNI SIGILLI REGUM SCOTORUM in Archivis Publicis asservatum. 1306—1424. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1814). *Price* 15s.
- THE ACTS OF THE PARLIAMENTS OF SCOTLAND. 11 vols. folio (1814—1844). Vol. I. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON and COSMO INNES, Esqrs. *Price* 42s. Also, Vols. 4, 7, 8, 9, 10, and 11; *price* 10s. 6d. each.
- THE ACTS OF THE LORDS AUDITORS OF CAUSES AND COMPLAINTS (ACTA DOMINORUM AUDITORUM). 1466—1494. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1839). *Price* 10s. 6d.
- THE ACTS OF THE LORDS OF COUNCIL IN CIVIL CAUSES (ACTA DOMINORUM CONCILII). 1478—1495. *Edited by* THOMAS THOMSON, Esq. Folio (1839). *Price* 10s. 6d.
- ISSUE ROLL OF THOMAS DE BRANTINGHAM, Bishop of Exeter, Lord High Treasurer of England, containing Payments out of His Majesty's Revenue, 44 Edward III., 1370. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 vol. 4to. (1835), cloth. *Price* 35s. Or, royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 25s.
- ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER, containing similar matter to the above; James I.; extracted from the Pell Records. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 vol. 4to. (1836), cloth. *Price* 30s. Or, royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 21s.
- ISSUES OF THE EXCHEQUER, containing similar matter to the above; Henry III.—Henry VI.; extracted from the Pell Records. *Edited by* FREDERICK DEVON, Esq. 1 vol. 4to. (1837), cloth. *Price* 40s. Or, royal 8vo. cloth. *Price* 30s.
- HANDBOOK TO THE PUBLIC RECORDS. *By* F. S. THOMAS, Esq., Secretary of the Public Record Office. 1 vol. royal 8vo. (1853), cloth. *Price* 12s.
- HISTORICAL NOTES RELATIVE TO THE HISTORY OF ENGLAND; from the Accession of Henry VIII. to the Death of Queen Anne (1509—1714). Designed as a Book of instant Reference for ascertaining the Dates of Events mentioned in History and Manuscripts. The Name of every Person and Event mentioned in History within the above period is

placed in Alphabetical and Chronological Order, and the Authority whence taken is given in each case, whether from Printed History or from Manuscripts. *By* F. S. THOMAS, Esq. 3 vols. 8vo. (1856), cloth. *Price* 40s.

STATE PAPERS, DURING THE REIGN OF HENRY THE EIGHTH : with Indices of Persons and Places. 11 vols., 4to. (1830—1852), cloth. *Price* 5l. 15s. 6d. ; or separately, *price* 10s. 6d. each.

Vol. I.—Domestic Correspondence.

Vols. II. & III.—Correspondence relating to Ireland.

Vols. IV. & V.—Correspondence relating to Scotland.

Vols. VI. to XI.—Correspondence between England and Foreign Courts.

WORKS PUBLISHED IN PHOTOZINCOGRAPHY.

DOMESDAY BOOK, or the GREAT SURVEY OF ENGLAND OF WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR, 1086 ; fac-simile of the part relating to each county, separately (with a few exceptions of double counties). Photozincographed, by Her Majesty's Command, at the Ordnance Survey Office, Southampton, Colonel SIR HENRY JAMES, R.E., F.R.S., &c., Director. 35 parts, imperial quarto and demy quarto (1861-1863) boards. *Price 4s. 6d.* to 17. 1s. each part, according to size ; or, bound in 2 vols., 18*l.*

This important and unique survey of the greater portion of England* is the oldest and most valuable record in the national archives. It was commenced about the year 1084 and finished in 1086. Its compilation was determined upon at Gloucester by William the Conqueror, in council, in order that he might know what was due to him, in the way of tax, from his subjects, and that each at the same time might know what he had to pay. It was compiled as much for their protection as for the benefit of the sovereign. The nobility and people had been grievously distressed at the time by the king bringing over large numbers of French and Bretons, and quartering them on his subjects, "each according to the measure of his land," for the purpose of resisting the invasion of Cnut, King of Denmark, which was apprehended. The commissioners appointed to make the survey were to inquire the name of each place ; who held it in the time of King Edward the Confessor ; the present possessor ; how many hides were in the manor ; how many ploughs were in demesne ; how many homagers ; how many villeins ; how many cottars ; how many serving men ; how many free tenants ; how many tenants in soccage ; how much wood, meadow, and pasture ; the number of mills and fish-ponds ; what had been added or taken away from the place ; what was the gross value in the time of Edward the Confessor ; the present value ; and how much each free man or soc-man had, and whether any advance could be made in the value. Thus could be ascertained who held the estate in the time of King Edward ; who then held it ; its value in the time of the late king ; and its value as it stood at the formation of the survey. So minute was the survey, that the writer of the contemporary portion of the Saxon Chronicle records, with some asperity—"So very narrowly he caused it to be traced out, that there was not a single hide, nor one virgate of land, nor even, " it is shame to tell, though it seemed to him no shame to do, an ox, nor a cow, " nor a swine was left, that was not set down."

Domesday Survey is in two parts or volumes. The first, in folio, contains the counties of Bedford, Berks, Bucks, Cambridge, Chester and Lancaster, Cornwall, Derby, Devon, Dorset, Gloucester, Hants, Hereford, Herts, Huntingdon, Kent, Leicester and Rutland, Lincoln, Middlesex, Northampton, Nottingham, Oxford, Salop, Somerset, Stafford, Surrey, Sussex, Warwick, Wilts, Worcester, and York. The second volume, in quarto, contains the counties of Essex, Norfolk, and Suffolk.

Domesday Book was printed *verbatim et literatim* during the last century, in consequence of an address of the House of Lords to King George III. in 1767. It was not, however, commenced until 1773, and was completed early in 1783. In 1860, Her Majesty's Government, with the concurrence of the Master of the Rolls, determined to apply the art of photozincography to the production of a fac-simile of Domesday Book, under the superintendence of Colonel Sir Henry James, R.E., director of the Ordnance Survey, Southampton. The fac-simile was completed in 1863.

* For some reason left unexplained, many parts were left unsurveyed ; Northumberland, Cumberland, Westmoreland, and Durham, are not described in the survey ; nor does Lancashire appear under its proper name ; but Furness, and the northern part of Lancashire, as well as the south of Westmoreland, with a part of Cumberland, are included within the West Riding of Yorkshire. That part of Lancashire which lies between the Ribble and Mersey, and which at the time of the survey comprehended 688 manors, is joined to Cheshire. Part of Rutland is described in the counties of Northampton and Lincoln.

FAC-SIMILES OF NATIONAL MANUSCRIPTS, FROM WILLIAM THE CONQUEROR TO QUEEN ANNE, selected under the direction of the Master of the Rolls, and Photozincographed, by Command of Her Majesty, by Colonel SIR HENRY JAMES, R.E., Director of the Ordnance Survey. Price, each part, double foolscap folio, 1*l.* 1*s.*

Part I., with translations and notes (William the Conqueror to Henry VII.), 1865.

Part II. (Henry VIII. and Edward VI.), 1866.

Part III. (Mary and Elizabeth), 1867.

Part IV. (James I. to Anne), 1868.

The first Part extends from William the Conqueror to Henry VII., and contains autographs of the kings of England, as well as of many other illustrious personages famous in history, and some interesting charters, letters patent, and state papers. The second Part, for the reigns of Henry VIII. and Edward VI., consists principally of holograph letters and autographs of kings, princes, statesmen, and other persons of great historical interest, who lived during those reigns. The third Part contains similar documents for the reigns of Mary and Elizabeth, including a signed bill of Lady Jane Grey. The fourth Part concludes the series, and comprises a number of documents taken from the originals belonging to the Constable of the Tower of London; also several records illustrative of the Gunpowder Plot, and a woodcut containing portraits of Mary Queen of Scots and James VI., circulated by their adherents in England, 1580-3.

Public Record Office,
April 1869.



Ref. H.29.9.46.



